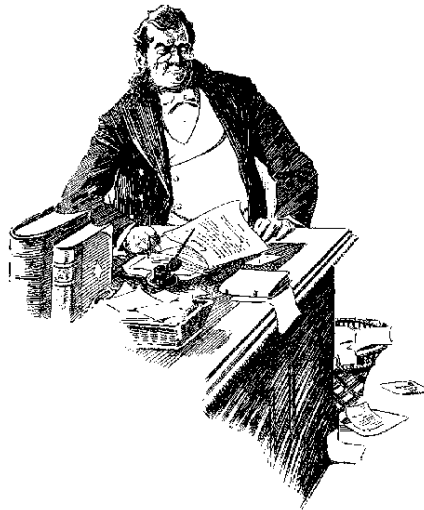
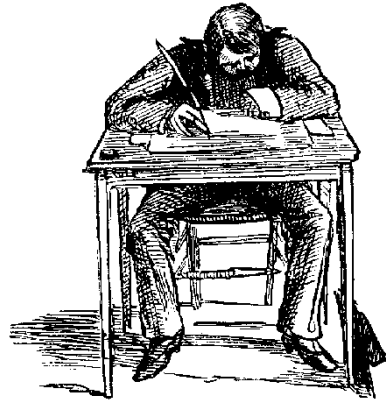


2011

**CONTRACT ATTORNEYS
DESKBOOK**



Volume II

CONTRACT ATTORNEYS COURSE DESKBOOK

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS i
Volume II Chapters 19-33

BIOGRAPHIES OF PROFESSORSiii

VOLUME II

| <u>CHAPTER</u> | <u>TITLE</u> |
|----------------|---|
| 19 | Inspection, Acceptance, & Warranty |
| 20 | Contract Payment |
| 21 | Contract Changes |
| 22 | Contract Dispute Act |
| 23 | Pricing of Contract Adjustments |
| 24 | Contract Terminations for Convenience (T4C) |
| 25 | Contract Terminations for Default (T4D) |
| 26 | Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR) |
| 27 | Government Information Practices (GIP) |
| 28 | Procurement Fraud |
| 29 | Construction Contracting |
| 30 | Contingency & Deployment Contracting |
| 31 | Contingency Contractor Personnel |
| 32A | Army Nonappropriated Fund (NAF) Contracting |

32B Air Force Nonappropriated Fund (NAF) Contracting

33 Contract Law Research Materials

APPENDIX

TITLE

Appendix A Alphabetical Listing of Contract Abbreviations

Appendix B Federal Acquisition Regulation Case 2008-24, Inflation
Adjustments of Acquisition Related Thresholds

Appendix C Contract Formations Seminar Problem I

Appendix D Contract Formations Seminar Problem II

Appendix E Contract Administration Seminar Problem

**THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL
CONTRACT AND FISCAL LAW DEPARTMENT**

BIOGRAPHIES OF PROFESSORS

LIEUTENANT COLONEL CHRISTINE M. SCHVERAK, JA, Professor and Chair, Contract and Fiscal Law Department. B.A., Indiana University, 1994; J.D., University of Florida Levin College of Law (High Honors), 2002; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course (Commandant's List), 2002; LL.M. Military Law (Contract Specialty), The Judge Advocate General's School, 2006. Career Highlights: Chief, Contract and Fiscal Law, ARCENT/Third Army (OCP), Camp Arifjan, Kuwait, August 2010-March 2011; Chief, Military Justice, Fort Carson, Colorado, 2006-2008; Trial Counsel and Senior Trial Counsel, Fort Riley, Kansas, 2003-2005; Combat Training Developer, CASCOM, 1999; Combined Logistics Officer Advanced Course (Commandant's List), 1998; Commander, 766th Ordnance Company (EOD), 1995-1998. Member of the Bar of Florida; admitted to practice before the U.S. Supreme Court.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL BRENDAN M. KLAPAK, United States Marine Corps. Presently assigned as a Professor and Vice-Chair, Contract and Fiscal Law Department. LL.M., The Judge Advocate General's Legal Center and School, 2007. J.D., Seton Hall University School of Law, 2002; B.S., State University of New York at Albany, 1991. Previous assignments include: Associate Counsel, Procurement and Fiscal Law, Eastern Area Counsel Office, Camp Lejeune, NC, 2007-2010; Contingency Contracting Attorney, Multi-National Force – West, Al Asad, Iraq, 2009; Senior Defense Counsel, Marine Corps Base Quantico, Virginia, 2004-2006; Deputy Staff Judge Advocate / Officer in Charge Civil Law, Marine Corps Base Quantico, Virginia, 2003-2004; Trial Counsel, Marine Corps Base Quantico, Virginia, 2002-2003; Student, Excess Leave Law Program, Seton Hall University, Newark, New Jersey, 1999-2002; Supply Officer, Headquarters and Service Battalion, 3d Force Service Support Group, Okinawa, Japan, 1998-1999; Supply Officer / Contracting Officer, 4th Low Altitude Air Defense Battalion, Inspector Instructor Staff, Pasadena, California, 1996-1998; Supply Officer, Headquarters Battery, 11th Marine Regiment, 1st Marine Division, Camp Pendleton, California, 1993-1996. Member of the bars of Virginia and New Jersey.

MAJOR ALAN M. APPLE, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department. B.S., Louisiana Tech University, 1992; M.S., Louisiana Tech University, 1993; J.D., University of Oklahoma School of Law; 2004; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course (Commandants List), 2005; LL.M. Military Law, The Judge Advocate Generals School, 2009. Career Highlights; Deputy, Contracts and Fiscal Law, United States Forces Afghanistan, Kabul, Afghanistan, 2009-2010; Trial Counsel, 7th Joint Military Training Center, Schweinfurt, Germany, 2008-2009; Trial Counsel, 1st Armored Division, Friedberg, Germany, 2007-2008; Officer in Charge of 1st Armored Division Tax Centers, 2006; Aeromedical Safety Officer, Marine Corps Aircraft Group- 14, Cherry Point North Carolina, 1999-2001; Aerospace Physiologist, Norfolk Aviation Survival Training Center, Norfolk, Virginia, 1998-1999; Aerospace Physiologist, Naval Operational Medical Institute, Pensacola, Florida, 1997. Member of the Bar of Oklahoma; admitted to practice before the U.S. Court of Federal Claims and U.S. Supreme Court.

MAJOR GREG A. MARCHAND, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department, U.S. Army Reserve. B.A., University of Pittsburgh (summa cum laude), 1996; J.D., Harvard Law School (cum laude), 1999; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course (Commandant's List), 2000; Judge Advocate Officer Advanced Course (Honor Graduate), 2006. Career Highlights: Deputy Assistant General Counsel, Government Accountability Office, 2005-present; Counsel, U.S. House of Representatives, Committee on Armed Services, Subcommittee on Oversight & Investigations, 2007-2008; 151st Legal Support Organization (General Officer Support Team, 2009-2010; OTJAG Criminal Law Division Team, 2006-2009; S-1, 2005-2006); Administrative and Operational Law Attorney, Multi-National Force – Iraq, 2004-2005; Law Clerk to the Honorable Judge Andrew Effron, U.S. Court of Appeals for the Armed Forces, 2003-2004; Assistant Counsel for Legislative, Fiscal, and General Law, Office of the Chief Counsel, Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (Honors Program), 2000-2003; Attorney, Wiley, Rein & Fielding LLP, 1999. Member of the Bar of Pennsylvania; admitted to practice before the U.S. Supreme Court, U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, and U.S. Court of Appeals for the Armed Forces.

MAJOR DARREN W. POHLMANN, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department. B.A., Washington and Lee University, 1999; J.D., American University-Washington College of Law, 2002; 160th Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course, 2003; LL.M Military Law, The Judge Advocate General's School, 2011. Career Highlights: Battalion Judge Advocate, 1st Battalion, 7th Special Forces Group (Airborne), Fort Bragg, North Carolina, and Kandahar, Afghanistan, 2008-2010; Acquisition Attorney, US Army Space and Missile Defense Command/Army Forces Strategic Command, Redstone Arsenal, Alabama, 2006-2008; Trial Counsel, 4th BCT, 3d Infantry Division, Fort Stewart, Georgia and Baghdad, Iraq, 2005-2006; Administrative Law and Contract Law Attorney, 3d Infantry Division, Fort Stewart, Georgia, and Baghdad, Iraq, 2003-2005; Legal Assistance Attorney, 3d Infantry Division, 2003. Member of the Bar of the Commonwealth of Virginia; admitted to practice before the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Armed Forces.

MAJOR KEVIN B. SHRINER, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department, Army National Guard of the United States. B.S., University of Virginia, 1996; J.D., George Mason University School of Law, 2003; LL.M Military Law, The Judge Advocate General's School, 2010. Career Highlights: Senior Military Liaison for Rule of Law, U.S. Embassy, Kabul, Afghanistan 2009; Contracts Attorney, National Guard Bureau, 2007–2009; Legal Services Support, District of Columbia National Guard, 2006; Executive Officer, 3rd U.S. Infantry, Arlington, Virginia 1998–2000; Platoon Leader, 2nd Infantry Division, Korea, 1997–1998; Platoon Leader, 29th Infantry Division, Bedford, Virginia 1993–1996; Military Intelligence Analyst, 2nd Infantry Division, Korea 1990–1991. Member of the Bar of the District of Columbia.

MAJOR HEIDI E. WEAVER, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department. B.S., The Pennsylvania State University, 1998; J.D., Temple University Beasley School of Law, 2005; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course, 2005; LL.M Military Law, The Judge Advocate General's School, 2010. Career Highlights: Chief, Civil and Administrative Law, 101st Airborne Division

(Air Assault), Fort Campbell, Kentucky, 2009; Command Judge Advocate, 101st Joint Logistics Command, 101st Combined Joint Task Force, Afghanistan, 2008; Brigade Judge Advocate, 101st Sustainment Brigade, Fort Campbell, Kentucky, 2006-2007; Administrative Law Attorney, Multi-National Division-North, COB Speicher, Iraq, 2006; Aide-de-Camp, Great Plains Regional Medical Command, Fort Sam Houston, Texas, 2001-2002; Dietitian, Brooke Army Medical Center, Fort Sam Houston, Texas, 1999-2001; U.S. Army Military Dietetic Internship, 1998-1999. Member of the Bar of Pennsylvania; admitted to practice before the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Armed Forces and the U.S. Supreme Court.

BIOGRAPHIES OF RESERVE PROFESSORS

LIEUTENANT COLONEL JENNIFER S. ZUCKER, JA, Professor and Vice-Chair, Contract and Fiscal Law Department, U.S. Army Reserve, DIMA. B.S., Boston University, 1992; J.D., Brooklyn Law School, 1995; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course, 1996; Judge Advocate Officer Advanced Course, 2008 (Commandant's List); LL.M., Government Procurement Law, George Washington University National Law Center, Expected 2010. Career Highlights: Partner, Government Contracts, Patton Boggs LLP, Washington, DC, 2005-present; Associate General Counsel, Defense Human Intelligence (Operations), Defense Intelligence Agency, Pentagon, 2007-2008; Senior Legislative Advisor, Office of the Deputy Under Secretary of Defense, Personnel and Readiness, Military Personnel Policy, Pentagon, 2005-2007; Trial Attorney, Contract and Fiscal Law Division, United States Army Legal Services Agency, 2002-2005; Command Judge Advocate, 66th Military Intelligence Group, United States Army Intelligence and Security Command, Darmstadt, Germany, 2000-2002; Chief, Operational Law, Eighth United States Army (EUSA), Operational Law Attorney, United States Forces Korea (USFK), United Nations Command/USFK/EUSA, Office of the Judge Advocate, Seoul, Korea, 1999-2000; Defense Counsel, 2d Infantry Division, Camp Casey, Korea, 1998-1999; Trial Counsel, 3d Armored Cavalry Regiment, Fort Carson, Colorado, 1996-1998. Member of the Bars of New York and the District of Columbia; admitted to practice before the United States Court of Federal Claims.

MAJOR CHARLENE T. STORINO, JA, U.S. Army Reserve. B.A., Asian Studies (summa cum laude and All College Honors), Carthage College, 2000; J.D., University of Wisconsin Law School, 2003; Judge Advocate Basic Course, 2003. Career Highlights: Attorney, National Capital Region Contracting Center, Alexandria, Virginia, 2009-Present; Legal Counsel, Mission and Installation Contracting Center – Fort Eustis, Fort Eustis, Virginia, 2006-2009; Administrative and Operational Law Attorney, Office of the Staff Judge Advocate, Fort Huachuca, Arizona, 2005-2006; Legal Assistance Attorney, Office of the Staff Judge Advocate, Fort Huachuca, Arizona, 2003-2005. Member of the Bar of Wisconsin.

CAPTAIN THOMAS J. WARREN, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department, U.S. Army Reserve, DIMA. B.A., Political Science, Furman University, 2002; J.D., University of Oregon School of Law, 2005; Judge Advocate Officer Basic Course (Commandant's List), 2006. Career Highlights: Assistant Counsel for Procurement Law and Contract Disputes, Office of the Chief Counsel, Headquarters, United States Army Corps of Engineers (Military Honors

Program), Washington, DC, 2006-2010; Associate, Government Contracts and Litigation practice groups, Wiley Rein, LLP, Washington, DC, 2010-present. Member of the Bars of Oregon and the District of Columbia.

CAPTAIN KATHYRN E. WITWER, JA, Professor, Contract and Fiscal Law Department, United States Army Reserve, DIMA. B.S., Wheaton College (*summa cum laude*), 2003; J.D., University of Arizona, 2006; Judge Advocate Officer Basis Course (Honor Graduate), 2007; Basic Officer Leader's Course (Honor Graduate), 2007; U.S. Army Airborne School (2007). Career Highlights: Trial Attorney, Commercial Litigation Branch, Department of Justice, 2010-present; Trial Attorney, Contract and Fiscal Law Division, U.S. Army Legal Services Agency, 2009-2010; Contract and Fiscal Law Attorney, Multi-National Division-Baghdad, Camp Liberty, Iraq, 2007-2009; Administrative Law Attorney, 4th Infantry Division, Fort Hood, Texas, 2007; Recruitment Officer, University of Arizona, Cadet Command, Tucson, Arizona, 2006-2007; Department of the Army Office of the General Counsel Honors Program, 2005; Legal Fellow, U.S. Senate Subcommittee on Terrorism, Technology & Homeland Security, 2004; Department of Defense Office of the General Counsel (International Affairs) Honors Program, 2004. Member of the Arizona bar; admitted to practice in the Supreme Court of Arizona, the U.S. Court of Federal Claims, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, and the U.S. Supreme Court.

Chapter 19
**Inspection, Acceptance
and Warranty**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 19

INSPECTION, ACCEPTANCE, AND WARRANTY

| | | |
|------|--|----|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| II. | FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS OF INSPECTION AND TESTING..... | 1 |
| A. | General..... | 1 |
| B. | Origin of the Government’s Right to Inspect. | 2 |
| C. | Operation of the Inspection Clauses..... | 3 |
| III. | GOVERNMENT REMEDIES UNDER THE INSPECTION CLAUSE. | 8 |
| A. | Introduction. | 8 |
| B. | Defective Performance <u>BEFORE</u> the Required Delivery Date..... | 8 |
| C. | Defective Performance <u>ON</u> the Required Delivery Date. | 9 |
| D. | Defective Performance <u>AFTER</u> the Required Delivery Date..... | 10 |
| E. | Remedies if the Contractor Fails to Correct Defective Performance. | 10 |
| F. | Special Rules for Service Contracts. | 11 |
| IV. | STRICT COMPLIANCE VS. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLIANCE. | 12 |
| A. | Strict Compliance. | 12 |
| B. | Substantial Compliance. | 13 |
| C. | Economic Waste..... | 14 |
| V. | PROBLEM AREAS IN TESTING AND INSPECTION..... | 15 |
| A. | Claims Resulting from Unreasonable Inspections..... | 15 |
| B. | Waiver, Prior Course of Dealing, and Other Acts Affecting Testing and Inspection. | 17 |
| VI. | ACCEPTANCE..... | 18 |
| A. | Acceptance..... | 18 |

| | | |
|-------|---|----|
| B. | General Principles of Acceptance..... | 19 |
| C. | Exceptions to the Finality of Acceptance..... | 21 |
| VII. | WARRANTY..... | 23 |
| A. | General Principles..... | 23 |
| B. | Asserting Warranty Claims. | 24 |
| C. | Remedies for Breach of Warranty..... | 25 |
| D. | Mitigation of Damages..... | 25 |
| VIII. | CONCLUSION. | 25 |

CHAPTER 19

INSPECTION, ACCEPTANCE, AND WARRANTY

I. INTRODUCTION.

- A. A fundamental goal of the acquisition process is to obtain quality goods and services. In furtherance of this goal, the government inspects tendered supplies or services to insure that they conform with contract requirements.
- B. While the right to inspect and test is very broad, it is not without limits. Frequently, government inspectors perform unreasonable inspections, rendering the government liable to the contractor for additional costs. Proper inspections are critical, because once the government accepts a product or service, it cannot revoke its acceptance except in narrowly defined circumstances.
- C. Attorneys can contribute to the success of the government procurement process by working with government inspectors and contracting officers to insure that each of these individuals understands the government's rights and obligations regarding inspection, acceptance, and warranty under government contracts.

II. FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS OF INSPECTION AND TESTING.

- A. General.
 - 1. The inspection clauses, which are remedy granting clauses, vest the government with significant rights and remedies. FAR 52.246-2 thru 52.246-12.
 - 2. In any dispute, the parties must identify the correct theory of recovery and applicable contractual provisions. The theory of recovery normally flows from a contractual provision. See Morton-Thiokol, Inc., ASBCA No. 32629, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,207 (government denial of cost reimbursement rejected-board noted government's failure to cite Inspection clause).

B. Origin of the Government's Right to Inspect.

1. The government has the right to inspect to ensure that it receives conforming goods and services. FAR Part 46. The particular inspection clauses contained in a contract, if any, determine the government's right to inspect a contractor's performance.
2. Contract inspections fall into three general categories, depending on the extent of quality assurance needed by the government for the acquisition involved. These include:
 - a. Government reliance on inspection by the contractor (FAR 46.202-2);
 - b. Standard inspection requirements (FAR 46.202-3); and
 - c. Higher-level contract quality requirements (FAR 46.202-4).
3. The FAR contains several different inspection clauses. In determining which clause to use, consider:
 - a. The contract type (e.g., fixed-price, cost-reimbursement, time-and-materials, and labor-hour); and
 - b. The nature of the item procured (e.g., supply, service, construction, transportation, or research and development).
4. Depending upon the specific clauses in the contract, the government has the right to inspect and test supplies, services, materials furnished, work required by the contract, facilities, and equipment at all places and times, and, in any event, before acceptance. See, e.g., FAR 52.246-2 (supplies-fixed-price), 52.246-4 (services-fixed-price), 52.246-5 (services-cost-reimbursement), 52.246-6 (time-and-materials and labor-hour), 52.246-8 (R&D-cost-reimbursement), 52.246-9 (R&D), 52.246-10 (facilities), and 52.246-12 (construction).

C. Operation of the Inspection Clauses.

1. Definitions.

- a. “Government contract quality assurance” is “the various functions, including inspection, performed by the Government to determine whether a contractor has fulfilled the contract obligations pertaining to quality and quantity.” FAR 46.101.
- b. “Testing” is “that element of inspection that determines the properties or elements of products, including the functional operation of supplies or their components, by the application of established scientific principles and procedures.” FAR 46.101.

2. The government may require a contractor to maintain an inspection system that is adequate to ensure delivery of supplies and services that conform to the requirements of the contract. David B. Lilly Co., ASBCA No. 34678, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,973 (government ordered contractor to submit new inspection plan to eliminate systemic shortcomings in the inspection process).

3. Inspection and testing must *reasonably relate* to the determination of whether performance is in compliance with contractual requirements.

- a. Contractually-specified inspections or tests are presumed reasonable unless they conflict with other contract requirements. General Time Corp., ASBCA No. 22306, 80-1 BCA ¶ 14,393.
- b. If the contract specifies a test, the government may not require a higher level of performance than measured by the method specified. United Technologies Corp., Sikorsky Aircraft Div. v. United States, 27 Fed. Cl. 393 (1992).

- c. The government may use tests other than those specified in the contract provided the tests do not impose a more stringent standard of performance. Donald C. Hubbs, Inc., DOT BCA No. 2012, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,379 (use of rolling straightedge permitted after initial inspection determined that road was substantially nonconforming); Puroflow Corp., ASBCA No. 36058, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,191 (upholding government's rejection of First Article Test Report for contractor's failure to perform an unspecified test).

- d. Absent contractually specified tests, the government may use any tests that do not impose different or more stringent standards than those required by the contract. Space Craft, Inc., ASBCA No. 47997, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,341 (government reasonably measured welds on clamp assemblies); Davey Compressor Co., ASBCA No. 38671, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,433; Al Johnson Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 4170, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,952.

- e. If the contract specifies no particular tests, consider the following factors in selecting a test or inspection technique:
 - (1) Consider the intended use of the product or service. A-Nam Cong Ty, ASBCA No. 14200, 70-1 BCA ¶ 8,106 (unreasonable to test coastal water barges on the high seas while fully loaded).

 - (2) Measure compliance with contractual requirements, and inform the contractor of the standards it must meet. Service Eng'g Co., ASBCA No. 40275, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,382 (board refused to impose a military standard on contract for ship repair, where contract simply required workmanship in accordance with "best commercial marine practice"); Tester Corp., ASBCA No. 21312, 78-2 BCA ¶ 13,373, mot. for recon. denied, 79-1 BCA ¶ 13,725.

 - (3) Use standard industry tests, if available. DiCecco, Inc., ASBCA No. 11944, 69-2 BCA ¶ 7,821 (use of USDA mushroom standards upheld). But see Chelan Packing Co., ASBCA No. 14419, 72-1 BCA ¶ 9,290 (government inspector failed to apply industry standard properly).

- (4) The government must inspect and test correctly. Baifield Indus., Div. of A-T-O, Inc., ASBCA No. 13418, 77-1 BCA ¶ 12,308 (cartridge cases/rounds fired at excessive pressure).
- (5) Generally, the government is not required to perform inspections. Cannon Structures, Inc., AGBCA No. 90-207-1, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,059.
- (a) The government's failure to discover defects during inspection does not relieve the contractor of the requirement to tender conforming supplies. FAR 52.246-2(c); George Ledford Constr., Inc., ENGBCA No. 6218, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,172.
- (b) However, the government may not unreasonably deny a contractor's request to perform preliminary or additional testing. Alonso & Carus Iron Works, Inc., ASBCA No. 38312, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,148 (no liability for defective fuel tank because government refused to allow a preliminary water test not prohibited by the contract); Praoil, S.R.L., ASBCA No. 41499, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,840 (government unreasonably refused contractor's request, per industry practice, to perform retest of fuel; termination for default overturned).
- (6) Requiring a contractor to perform tests not specified in the contract may entitle the contractor to an equitable adjustment of the contract price. CBI NA-CON, Inc., ASBCA No. 42268, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,187.

4. Costs

- a. The burden of paying for testing depends on the clause used in the contract
- (1) For supplies, generally the contractor pays for all reasonable facilities and assistance for the safe and convenient performance of Government inspectors. FAR 52.246-2(d).
 - (a) The Government pays for all expenses for inspections or tests at other than the contractor or subcontractor's premises. FAR 52.246-2(d).
 - (b) If supplies are not ready for tests or inspections, the contractor may be charged for the additional costs of re-inspection or tests. FAR 52.246-2(e)(1).
 - (c) The contractor may also be charged for additional costs of inspection following a prior rejection. FAR 52.246-2(e)(2).
 - (2) For services, the contractor and subcontractors are required to furnish, at no additional costs, reasonable facilities and assistance for the safe and convenient performance of tests or inspections on the premises of the contractor or subcontractor. FAR 52.246-4(d).
 - (3) For construction, the contractor shall furnish, at no increase in contract price, all facilities, labor, and material reasonably needed for performing safe and convenient inspection and tests as may be required.
 - (a) If the work is not ready for tests or inspections or following a prior rejection, the contractor may be charged for the additional costs of re-inspection or tests. FAR 52.246-12(e).

- (b) The Government is required to perform tests and inspections in a manner that will not unnecessarily delay the work. FAR 52.246-12(e).
 - (c) The Government may engage in destructive testing, i.e. examining already completed work by removing it or tearing it out. The contractor must promptly furnish all necessary facilities, labor, or material.
 - (i) If the work is defective, the contractor must defray the expenses of the examination and satisfactory reconstruction.
 - (ii) If the work meets contract requirements, the contractor will receive an equitable adjustment for the additional services involved in the test and reconstruction, to include an extension of time if completion of the work was delayed by the test.
- b. If a test is found to be unreasonable, courts and boards may find that the government assumed the risk of loss resulting from an unreasonable test. See *Alonso & Carus Iron Works, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 38312, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,148.

III. GOVERNMENT REMEDIES UNDER THE INSPECTION CLAUSE.

A. Introduction.

1. The inspection clauses give the government significant remedies. FAR 46.407; FAR 52.246; DFARS 246.407
2. The government's remedies under the inspection clauses operate in two phases. Initially, the government may demand correction of deficiencies. If this proves to be unsuccessful, the government may obtain corrective action from other sources.
3. Under the inspection clauses, the government's remedies depend upon when the contractor delivers nonconforming goods or services.

B. Defective Performance **BEFORE** the Required Delivery Date.

1. If the contractor delivers defective goods or services before the required delivery date, the government may:
 - a. Reject the tendered product or performance. Andrews, Large & Whidden, Inc. and Farmville Mfg. Corp., ASBCA No. 30060, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,542 (government demand for replacement of non-conforming windows sustained); But see Centric/Jones Constr., IBCA No. 3139, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,404 (government failed to prove that rejected work was noncompliant with specifications; contractor entitled to equitable adjustment for performing additional tests to secure government acceptance);
 - b. Require the contractor to correct the nonconforming goods or service, giving the contractor a reasonable opportunity to do so. Premiere Bldg. Servs., Inc., B-255858, Apr. 12, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 252 (government may charge reinspection costs to contractor); or,

c. Accept the nonconforming goods or services at a reduced price. Federal Boiler Co., ASBCA No. 40314, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,381 (change in cost of performance to the contractor, not the damages to the government, is the basis for adjustment); Blount Bros. Corp., ASBCA No. 29862, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,644 (government entitled to a credit totaling the amount saved by contractor for using nonconforming concrete). See also Valley Asphalt Corp., ASBCA No. 17595, 74-2 BCA ¶ 10,680 (although runway built to wrong elevation, only nominal price reduction allowed because no loss in value to the government).

2. The government may not terminate the contract for default based on the tender of nonconforming goods or services before the required delivery date.

C. Defective Performance **ON** the Required Delivery Date.

1. If the contractor delivers nonconforming goods or services on the required delivery date, the government may:

a. Reject or require correction of the nonconforming goods or services;

b. Reduce the contract price and accept the nonconforming product; or

c. Terminate for default if performance is not in substantial compliance with the contract requirements. See FAR 52.249-6 to 52.249-10. When the government terminates a contract for default, it acquires rights and remedies under the Termination Clause, including the right to reprocure supplies or services similar to those terminated and charge the contractor the additional costs. See FAR 52.249-8(b).

2. If the contractor has complied substantially with the requirements of the contract, the government must give the contractor notice and the opportunity to correct minor defects before terminating the contract for default. Radiation Tech., Inc. v. United States, 366 F.2d 1003 (Ct. Cl. 1966).

D. Defective Performance **AFTER** the Required Delivery Date.

1. Reject and require correction of the late nonconforming goods or services;
2. Accept the late nonconforming goods or services at a reduced price; or
3. Terminate the contract for default. However, if the contractor has complied substantially with the requirements of the contract, albeit after the required delivery date, the government should give the contractor notice of the defects and an opportunity to correct them. See Franklin E. Penny Co. v. United States, 524 F.2d 668 (Ct. Cl. 1975) (late nonconforming goods may substantially comply with contract requirements). Note: Penny arguably expanded the concept of substantial compliance to include late delivery of nonconforming goods. While the courts and boards have not widely followed Penny, they have also not overruled it.

E. Remedies if the Contractor Fails to Correct Defective Performance.

If the contractor fails to correct defective performance after receiving notice and a reasonable opportunity to correct the work, the government may:

1. Contract with a commercial source to correct or replace the defective goods or services (obtaining funding is often difficult and may make this remedy impracticable), George Bernadot Co., ASBCA No. 42943, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,242; Zimcon Professionals, ASBCA Nos. 49346, 51123, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,839 (Government may contract with a commercial source to correct or replace the defective goods or services and may charge cost of correction to original contractor);
2. Correct or replace the defective goods or services itself;
3. Accept the nonconforming goods or services at a reduced price, or;
4. Terminate the contract for default. FAR 52.246-4(f); Firma Tiefbau Meier, ASBCA No. 46951, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,593.

F. Special Rules for Service Contracts.

1. The inspection clause for fixed-price service contracts, FAR 52.246-4, is different than FAR 52.246-2, which pertains to fixed-price supply contracts.
2. The government's remedies depend on whether it is possible for the contractor to perform the services correctly.
 - a. Normally, the government should permit the contractor to re-perform the services and correct the deficiencies, if possible. Pearl Properties, HUD BCA No. 95-C-118-C4, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,219 (government's failure to give contractor notice and an opportunity to correct deficient performance waived right to reduce payment).
 - b. Otherwise, the government may:
 - (1) Require the contractor to take adequate steps to ensure future compliance with the contract requirements; and
 - (2) Reduce the contract price to reflect the reduced value of services received. Teltara, Inc., ASBCA No. 42256, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,485 (government properly used random sampling inspections to calculate contract price reductions); Orlando Williams, ASBCA No. 26099, 84-1 BCA ¶ 16,983 (although default termination of janitorial contract was sustained, the government acted unreasonably by withholding maximum payments when some work had been performed satisfactorily). Even if it reduces the contract price, the government may also recover consequential damages. Hamilton Securities Advisory Servs., Inc. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 164 (2000).

- c. Authorities disagree about whether the same failure in contract performance can support both a reduction in contract price and a termination for default. Compare W.M. Grace, Inc., ASBCA No. 23076, 80-1 BCA ¶ 14,256 (monthly deductions due to poor performance waived right to T4D during those months) and Wainwright Transfer Co., ASBCA No. 23311, 80-1 BCA ¶ 14,313 (deduction for HHG shipments precluded termination) with Cervetto Bldg. Maint. Co. v. United States, 2 Cl. Ct. 299 (1983) (reduction in contract price and termination are cumulative remedies).

IV. STRICT COMPLIANCE VS. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLIANCE.

A. Strict Compliance.

1. As a general rule, the government is entitled to strict compliance with its specifications. Blake Constr. Co. v. United States, 28 Fed. Cl. 672 (1993); De Narde Construction Co., ASBCA No. 50288, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,929 (government entitled to type of rebar it ordered, even if contrary to trade practice). See also Cascade Pac. Int'l v. United States, 773 F.2d 287 (Fed. Cir. 1985); Ace Precision Indus., ASBCA No. 40307, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,629 (government rejection of line block final assemblies that failed to meet contract specifications was proper). But see Zeller Zentralheizungsbau GmbH, ASBCA No. 43109, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,657 (government improperly rejected contractor's use of "equal" equipment where contract failed to list salient characteristics of brand name equipment).
2. Contractors must comply with specifications even if they vary from standard commercial practice. R.B. Wright Constr. Co. v. United States, 919 F.2d 1569 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (contract required three coats over painted surface although commercial practice was to apply only two); Graham Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 37641, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,721 (specification requiring redundant performance sustained).
3. Slight defects are still defects. Mech-Con Corp., GSBCA No. 8415, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,889 (installation of 2" pipe insulation did not satisfy 1½" requirement).

B. Substantial Compliance.

1. “Substantial compliance” is a judicially created concept to avoid the harsh result of termination for default based upon a minor breach, and to avoid economic waste. The concept originated in construction contracts and has been extended to other types of contracts. See Radiation Tech., Inc. v. United States, 366 F.2d 1003 (Ct. Cl. 1966).
2. Substantial compliance gives the contractor the right to attempt to cure defective performance, even if that requires an extension of time beyond the original delivery date. The elements of substantial compliance are:
 - a. Timely delivery;
 - b. Contractor’s good faith belief that it has complied with the contract’s requirements, See Louisiana Lamps & Shades, ASBCA No. 45294, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,577 (no substantial compliance because contractor had attempted unsuccessfully to persuade government to permit substitution of American-made sockets for specified German-made sockets);
 - c. Minor defects;
 - d. The defects can be corrected within a reasonable time; and
 - e. Time is not of the essence, i.e., the government does not require strict compliance with the delivery schedule.
3. Generally, the doctrine of substantial compliance does not require the government to accept defective performance by the contractor. Cosmos Eng’rs, Inc., ASBCA No. 19780, 77-2 BCA ¶ 12,713.

4. Except in those rare situations involving economic waste (discussed below), the doctrine of substantial compliance affects only when, not whether, the government may terminate for default. While substantial compliance requires the government to give the contractor a reasonable amount of time to correct the defects, including, if necessary, an extension beyond the original required delivery date, it does not preclude the government from terminating the contract for default if the contractor fails to correct the defects with a reasonable period of time. Firma Tiefbau Meier, ASBCA No. 46951, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,593 (termination for default justified by contractor's repeated refusal to correct defective roof panels).

C. Economic Waste.

1. The doctrine of economic waste requires the government to accept noncompliant construction if the work, as completed, is suitable for its intended purpose and the cost of correction would far exceed the gain that would be realized. Granite Constr. Co. v. United States, 962 F.2d 998 (Fed. Cir. 1992), cert. denied, 113 S. Ct. 965 (1993); A.D. Roe Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 48782, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,398 (economic waste is exception to general rule that government can insist on strict compliance with contract).
2. To be "suitable for its intended purpose," the work must substantially comply with the contract. Amtech Reliable Elevator Co. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 13184, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,821 (no economic waste where contractor used conduits for fire alarm wiring which were not as sturdy as required by specifications and lacked sufficient structural integrity); Triple M Contractors, ASBCA No. 42945, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,003 (no economic waste where placement of reinforcing materials in drainage gutters reduced useful life from 25 to 20 years); Shirley Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 41908, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,245 (concrete slab not in substantial compliance even though it could support the design load; without substantial compliance, doctrine of economic waste inapplicable); Valenzuela Engineering, Inc., ASBCA No. 53608, 53936, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32,517 (absent expert testimony, government can demand strict performance for structure designed to contain explosions).

V. PROBLEM AREAS IN TESTING AND INSPECTION.

A. Claims Resulting from Unreasonable Inspections.

1. Government inspections may give rise to equitable adjustment claims if they delay the contractor's performance or cause additional work. The government:
 - a. Must perform reasonable inspections. FAR 52.246-2. Donald C. Hubbs, Inc., DOT BCA No. 2012, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,379 (more sophisticated test than specified, rolling straightedge, was reasonable).
 - b. Must avoid overzealous inspections. The government may not inspect to a level beyond that authorized by the contract. Overzealous inspection may impact adversely upon the government's ability to reject the contractor's performance, to assess liquidated damages, or to otherwise assert its rights under the contract. See The Libertatia Associates, Inc., 46 Fed. Cl. 702 (2000) (COR told contractor's employees that he was Jesus Christ and that CO was God); Gary Aircraft Corp., ASBCA No. 21731, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,122 ("overnight change" in inspection standards was unreasonable); Donohoe Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 47310, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,076, motion for reconsideration granted in part on other grounds, ASBCA No. 47310, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,387 (government quality control manager unreasonably rejected proposed schedules, ignored contractor submissions for weeks, and told contractor he would "get even" with him).
 - c. Must resolve ambiguities involving inspection requirements in a timely manner. P & M Indus., ASBCA No. 38759, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,471.
 - d. Must exercise reasonable care when performing tests and inspections prior to acceptance of products or services, and may not rely solely on destructive testing of products after acceptance to discover a deficiency it could have discovered before acceptance. Ahern Painting Contractors, Inc., GSBCA No. 7912, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,291.

2. Improper inspections:

- a. May excuse a contractor's delay, thereby delaying or preventing termination for default. Puma Chem. Co., GSBCA No. 5254, 81-1 BCA ¶ 14,844 (contractor justified in refusing to proceed when government test procedures subjected contractor to unreasonable risk of rejection).

- b. May justify claims for increased costs of performance under the delay of work or changes clauses in the contract. See, e.g., Hull-Hazard, Inc., ASBCA No. 34645, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,173 (contract specified joint inspection, however, government conducted multiple inspections and bombarded contractor with "punch lists"); H.G. Reynolds Co., ASBCA No. 42351, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,797; Harris Sys. Int'l, Inc., ASBCA No. 33280, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,641 (10% "spot mopping" specified, government demanded 100% for "uniform appearance"). But see Trans Western Polymers, Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12440, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,381 (government properly performed lot by lot inspection after contractor failed to maintain quality control system); Space Dynamics Corp., ASBCA No. 19118, 78-1 BCA ¶ 12,885 (defects in aircraft carrier catapult assemblies justified increased government inspection).

- c. May give rise to a claim of government breach of contract. Adams v. United States, 358 F.2d 986 (Ct. Cl. 1966) (government breached contract when inspector disregarded inspection plan, doubled inspection points, complicated construction, delayed work, increased standards, and demanded a higher quality tent pin than specified); Electro-Chem Etch Metal Markings, Inc., GSBCA No. 11785, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,148. But see Southland Constr. Co., VABCA No. 2217, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,548 (government engineer's "harsh and vulgar" language, when appellant contributed to the tense atmosphere, did not justify refusal to continue work) Olympia Reinigung GmbH, ASBCA Nos. 50913, 51225, 51258, 02-2 BCA ¶ 32,050 (allegation of aggressive government inspections did not render termination for default arbitrary or capricious).

3. It is a constructive change to test a standard commercial item to a higher level of performance than is required in commercial practice. Max Blau & Sons, Inc., GSBCA No. 9827, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,626 (insistence on extensive deburring and additional paint on a commercial cabinet was a constructive change).
4. Government breach of its duty to cooperate with the contractor may shift the cost of damages caused by testing to the government. See Alonso & Carus Iron Works, Inc., ASBCA No. 38312, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,148 (government refusal to permit reasonable, preliminary test proposed by contractor shifted the risk of loss to the government).

B. Waiver, Prior Course of Dealing, and Other Acts Affecting Testing and Inspection.

1. By his actions, an authorized government official may waive contractual requirements if the contractor reasonably believes that a required specification has been suspended or waived. Gresham & Co. v. United States, 470 F.2d 542, 554 (Ct. Cl. 1972), Perkin-Elmer's Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 672 (2000).
2. The government may also be estopped from enforcing a contract requirement. The elements of equitable estoppel are:
 - a. Authorized government official;
 - b. Knowledge by government official of true facts;
 - c. Ignorance by contractor of true facts; and
 - d. Detrimental reliance by the contractor. Longmire Coal Corp., ASBCA No. 31569, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,110.
3. Normally, previous government acceptance of similar nonconforming performance is insufficient to demonstrate waiver of specifications.

- a. Government acceptance of nonconforming performance by other contractors normally does not waive contractual requirements. Moore Elec. Co., ASBCA No. 33828, 87-3 BCA ¶ 20,039 (government’s allowing deviation to another contractor on prior contract for light pole installation did not constitute waiver, even where both contractors used the same subcontractor).
 - b. Government acceptance of nonconforming performance by the same contractor normally does not waive contractual requirements. Basic Marine, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5299, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,426.
4. However, numerous government acceptances of similar nonconforming performance by the same contractor may waive the requirements of that particular specification. Gresham & Co. v. United States, 470 F.2d 542 (Ct. Cl. 1972) (acceptance of dishwashers without detergent dispensers eventually waived requirement to equip with dispensers); Astro Dynamics, Inc., ASBCA No. 28381, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,832 (acceptance of seven shipments of rocket tubes with improper dimensions precluded termination for default for same reason on the eighth shipment). But see Kvass Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 45965, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,513 (Navy’s acceptance on four prior construction contracts of “expansion compensation devices” for a heat distribution system did not waive contract requirement for “expansion loops”).
 5. Generally, an inspector’s failure to require correction of defects is insufficient to waive the right to demand correction. Hoboken Shipyards, Inc., DOT BCA No. 1920, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,752 (government not bound by an inspector’s unauthorized agreement to accept improper type of paint if a second coat was applied).

VI. ACCEPTANCE.

A. Acceptance.

Acceptance is the “act of an authorized representative of the government that asserts ownership of identified supplies tendered or approves specific services rendered as partial or complete performance of the contract.” FAR 46.101.

B. General Principles of Acceptance.

1. Acceptance is conclusive except for latent defects, fraud, gross mistakes amounting to fraud, or as otherwise provided for in the contract, e.g., warranties. FAR 52.246-2(k); Hogan Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 39014, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,398 (government improperly terminated contract for default after acceptance).
2. Acceptance entitles the contractor to payment and is the event that marks the passage of title from the contractor to the government.
3. The government generally uses a DD Form 250 to expressly accept tendered goods or services.
4. The government may impliedly accept goods or services by:
 - a. Making final payment. Norwood Precision Prods., ASBCA No. 24083, 80-1 BCA ¶ 14,405. See also Farruggio Constr. Co., DOT CAB No. 75-2-75-2E, 77-2 BCA ¶ 12,760 (progress payments on wharf sheeting contract did not shift ownership and risk of loss to the government). Note, however, that payment, even if no more monies are due under a contract, does not necessarily constitute final acceptance. Spectrum Leasing Corp., GSBCA No. 7347, 90-3 BCA ¶ 22,984 (no acceptance because contract provided that final testing and acceptance would occur after the last payment). See also Ortech, Inc., ASBCA No. 52228, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,764 (contractor's acceptance of final payment from the government may preclude a later claim by the contractor).
 - b. Unreasonably delaying acceptance. See, e.g., Cudahy Packing Co. v. United States, 75 F. Supp. 239 (Ct. Cl. 1948) (government took two months to reject eggs); Mann Chem. Labs, Inc. v. United States, 182 F. Supp. 40 (D. Mass. 1960).

- c. Using or changing a product. Ateron Corp., ASBCA No. 46,867, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,165 (government use of products inconsistent with contractor's ownership); The Interlake Cos. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11876, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,813 (government improperly rejected material handling system after government changes rendered computer's preprogrammed logic useless).
5. Unconditional acceptance of partial deliveries may waive the right to demand that the final product perform satisfactorily. See Infotec Dev., Inc., ASBCA No. 31809, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,909 (multi-year contract for Minuteman Missile software).
6. As a general rule, contractors bear the risk of loss or damage to the contract work prior to acceptance. See FAR 52.246-16, Responsibility for Supplies (supply); FAR 52.236-7, Permits and Responsibilities (construction). See also Meisel Rohrbau GmbH, ASBCA No. 40012, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,716 (damage caused by children); DeRalco Corp., ASBCA No. 41306, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,576 (structure destroyed by 180 MPH hurricane winds although construction was 97% complete and only required to withstand 100 MPH winds); G&C Enterprises, Inc. v. United States, 55 Fed. Cl. 424 (2003) (no formal acceptance where structure destroyed by windstorm after project 99% complete and Army had begun partial occupation).
 - a. If the contract specifies f.o.b. destination, the contractor bears the risk of loss during shipment even if the government accepted the supplies prior to shipment. FAR 52.246-16; KAL M.E.I. Mfg. & Trade Ltd., ASBCA No. 44367, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,582 (contractor liable for full purchase price of cover assemblies lost in transit, even though cover assemblies had only scrap value).
 - b. In construction contracts, the government may use and possess the building prior to completion. FAR 52.236-11, Use and Possession Prior to Completion. The contractor is relieved of responsibility for loss of or damage to work resulting from the government's possession or use. See Fraser Eng'g Co., VABCA No. 3265, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,223 (government responsible for damaged cooling tower when damage occurred while tower was in its sole possession and control).

C. Exceptions to the Finality of Acceptance.

1. Latent defects may enable the government to avoid the finality of acceptance. To be latent, a defect must have been:
 - a. Unknown to the government. See Gavco Corp., ASBCA No. 29763, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,095;
 - b. In existence at the time of acceptance. See Santa Barbara Research Ctr., ASBCA No. 27831, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,098; mot. for recon. denied, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,020 (failure to prove crystalline growths were in laser diodes at the time of acceptance and not reasonably discoverable); and
 - c. Not discoverable by a reasonable inspection. Munson Hammerhead Boats, ASBCA No. 51377, 00-2 BCA ¶ 31,143 (defects in boat surface, under paint and deck covering, not reasonably discoverable by government until four months later); Stewart & Stevenson Services, Inc., ASBCA No. 52140, 00-2 BCA ¶ 31,041 (government could revoke acceptance even though products passed all tests specified in contract); Wickham Contracting Co., ASBCA No. 32392, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,559 (failed spliced telephone and power cables were latent defects and not discoverable); Dale Ingram, Inc., ASBCA No. 12152, 74-1 BCA ¶ 10,436 (mahogany plywood was not a latent defect because a visual examination would have disclosed); But see Perkin-Elmer Corp. v. United States., 47 Fed. Cl. 672 (2000) (six years was too long to wait before revoking acceptance based on latent defect).
2. Contractor fraud allows the government to avoid the finality of acceptance. See D&H Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 37482, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,070 (contractors' use of counterfeited National Sanitation Foundation and Underwriters' Laboratories labels constituted fraud). To establish fraud, the government must prove that:
 - a. The contractor intended to deceive the government;
 - b. The contractor misrepresented a material fact; and

- c. The government relied on the misrepresentation to its detriment. BMY – Combat Sys. Div. Of Harsco Corp., 38 Fed.Cl. 109 (1997) (contractor’s knowing misrepresentation of adequate testing was fraud); United States v. Aerodex, Inc., 469 F.2d 1003 (5th Cir. 1972).
3. A gross mistake amounting to fraud may avoid the finality of acceptance. The elements of a gross mistake amounting to fraud are:
 - a. A major error causing the government to accept nonconforming performance;
 - b. The contractor’s misrepresentation of a fact, Bender GmbH, ASBCA No. 52266, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32,474 (repeated false invoices in “wonton disregard of the facts” allowed government to revoke final acceptance); and
 - c. Detrimental government reliance on the misrepresentation. Z.A.N. Co., ASBCA No. 25488, 86-1 BCA ¶ 18,612 (gross mistake amounting to fraud established where the government relied on Z.A.N. to verify watch caliber and Z.A.N. accepted watches from subcontractor without proof that the caliber was correct);
4. Warranties. Warranties operate to revoke acceptance if the nonconformity is covered by the warranty.
5. Revocation of Acceptance.
 - a. Once the government revokes acceptance, its normal rights under the inspection, disputes, and default clauses of the contract are revived. FAR 52.246-2(l) (Inspection-Supply clause expressly revives rights); Spandome Corp. v. United States, 32 Fed. Cl. 626 (1995) (government revoked acceptance, requested contractor to repair structure, and demanded return of purchase price when contractor refused); Jo-Bar Mfg. Corp., ASBCA No. 17774, 73-2 BCA ¶ 10,311 (contractor’s failure to heat treat aircraft bolts entitled government to recover purchase price paid). Cf. FAR 52.246-12 (Inspection-Construction clause is silent on reviving rights).

- b. Failure to timely exercise revocation rights may waive the government's contractual right to revoke acceptance. Perkin-Elmer's Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 672 (2000) (Air Force attempted to revoke acceptance of "portable wear metal analyzer" six years after acceptance; Court of Federal Claims held the six-year delay in revoking acceptance was unreasonable, thus prohibiting government recovery on the claim).

VII. WARRANTY.

A. General Principles.

- 1. Warranties may extend the period for conclusive government acceptance. FAR 46.7; DFARS 246.7; AR 700-139, ARMY WARRANTY PROGRAM (9 Feb 04).
- 2. Warranties may be express or implied. Fru-Con Constr. Corp., 42 Fed. Cl. 94 (1998) (design specifications result in an implied warranty; no implied warranty with performance specifications because of the broader discretion afforded the contractor in their implementation).
- 3. Normally, warranties are defined by the time and scope of coverage.
- 4. The use of warranties is not mandatory. FAR 46.703. In determining whether a warranty is appropriate for a specific acquisition, consider:
 - a. Nature and use of the supplies or services;
 - b. Cost;
 - c. Administration and enforcement;
 - d. Trade practice; and
 - e. Reduced quality assurance requirements, if any.

- f. GSA schedule contracts may no longer routinely provide commercial warranties.

B. Asserting Warranty Claims.

1. When asserting a warranty claim, the government must prove:
 - a. That there was a defect when the contractor completed performance. Vistacon Inc. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12580, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,887;
 - b. That the warranted defect was the most probable cause of the failure. Hogan Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 38801, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,396; A.S. McGaughan Co., PSBCA No. 2750, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,229; R.B. Hazard, Inc., ASBCA No. 41061, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,709 (government denied recovery under warranty theory because it failed to prove that pump failure was not the result of government misuse and that defective material or workmanship was the most probable cause of the damage);
 - c. That the defect was within the scope of the warranty;
 - d. That the defect arose during the warranty period;
 - e. That the contractor received notice of the defect and its breach of the warranty, Land O’Frost, ASBCA Nos. 55012, 55241, 2003 B.C.A. (CCH) ¶ 32,395 (Army’s warranty claim failed to provide specific notice of a defect covered by the warranty); and
 - f. The cost to repair the defect, if not corrected by the contractor. See Hoboken Shipyards, Inc., DOT BCA No. 1920, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,752; Globe Corp., ASBCA No. 45131, 93-3 BCA ¶ 25,968 (reducing government’s claim against the contractor because the government inconsistently allocated the cost of repairing defects).
2. The government may invalidate a warranty through improper maintenance, operation, or alteration.

3. A difficult problem in administering warranties on government contracts is identifying and reporting defects covered by the warranty.
4. Warranty clauses survive acceptance. Shelby's Gourmet Foods, ASBCA No. 49883, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,200 (government entitled to reject defective "quick-cooking rolled oats" under warranty even after initial acceptance).

C. Remedies for Breach of Warranty.

The FAR provides the basic outline for governmental remedies. See FAR 52.246-17 and 52.246-18. If the contractor breaches a warranty clause, the government may—

1. Order the contractor to repair or replace the defective product;
2. Retain the defective product at a reduced price;
3. Correct the defect in-house or by contract if the contractor refuses to honor the warranty; or
4. Permit an equitable adjustment in the contract price. However, the adjustment cannot reduce the price below the scrap value of the product.

D. Mitigation of Damages.

1. The government must attempt to mitigate its damages.
2. The government may recover consequential damages. Norfolk Shipbldg. and Drydock Corp., ASBCA No. 21560, 80-2 BCA ¶ 14,613 (government entitled to cost of repairs caused by ruptured fuel tank).

VIII. CONCLUSION.

Chapter 20

Contract Payment



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 20

CONTRACT PAYMENT

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| | A. Objectives..... | 1 |
| | B. Perspective..... | 1 |
| II. | REFERENCES..... | 1 |
| III. | POLICIES AND PROCEDURES..... | 2 |
| | A. FAR Part 32..... | 2 |
| | B. Disbursing Authority..... | 2 |
| | C. Contract Payments..... | 2 |
| | D. Advances..... | 3 |
| | E. Invoice Payments vs. Financing Payments.. | 3 |
| | F. Order of Preference..... | 4 |
| | G. Payment Requirements..... | 4 |
| | H. Invoice Payment Due Date..... | 4 |
| | I. Financing Payment Due Date..... | 5 |
| IV. | CONTRACT PAYMENT METHODS..... | 5 |
| | A. Definitions..... | 5 |
| | B. Non-Commercial Contract Payments..... | 5 |
| | C. Commercial Item Purchase Payments.. | 12 |
| | D. Progress Payments on Construction Contracts..... | 15 |
| V. | THE PROMPT PAYMENT ACT..... | 15 |
| | A. Applicability of the Prompt Payment Act (PPA)..... | 15 |
| | B. Invoice Payment Procedures..... | 17 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| C. | Fixed-Price Construction Contracts. | 22 |
| D. | Fixed-Price Architect-Engineer Contracts. | 22 |
| E. | Prompt Payment Discounts. | 23 |
| F. | Waiver. | 23 |
| VI. | ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFERS (EFT)..... | 24 |
| A. | Mandatory Use. | 24 |
| B. | Specified Payment Date.. | 25 |
| C. | Assignment of Claims.. | 25 |
| D. | Central Contractor Registration (CCR).. | 25 |
| E. | Incorrect EFT Information.. | 26 |
| F. | Payment by Government Purchase Card. | 26 |
| G. | FAR Clauses. | 26 |
| H. | Liability for Erroneous Transfer..... | 26 |
| I. | Wide Area Work Flow (WAWF). | 27 |
| VII. | ASSIGNMENT OF CLAIMS..... | 27 |
| A. | General Rule. | 27 |
| B. | Protection for the Assignee.. | 28 |
| VIII. | DEBT DETERMINATION AND COLLECTION PROCEDURES. | 29 |
| A. | Debts Covered by Contract Collection Procedures.. | 29 |
| B. | Determination of Contractor Debt..... | 30 |
| C. | Enforcing Government Claims-Collecting the Debt. | 32 |
| D. | Compromise Actions. | 33 |
| E. | Funds Received from the Contractor..... | 33 |

CHAPTER 20

CONTRACT PAYMENT

I. INTRODUCTION.

- A. Objectives. Following this block of instruction, students should understand these concepts:
1. The various methods used by the Government to pay contractors.
 2. The methods, and order of preference, for financing Government contracts.
 3. The application of “The Prompt Payment Act.”
 4. The Government’s policies and procedures for identifying and collecting contract debts.
- B. Perspective. “The Department [of Defense] continues to experience an unacceptable number of contract payment problems. These problems are caused by a number of factors including systems deficiencies and contract structure.”¹

II. REFERENCES.

- A. 10 U.S.C. § 2307, Contract Financing.
- B. 31 U.S.C. § 3901, Prompt Payment.
- C. 31 U.S.C. § 3701, Claims.
- D. 31 U.S.C. § 3727 and 41 U.S.C. § 15, Assignment of Claims Act of 1940.

1. Memorandum, The Under Secretary of Defense, Acquisition and Technology, to Assistant Secretaries of the Military Departments, subject: Reducing Contract Fund Citations (30 Apr. 1999).

- E. 41 U.S.C. § 255, Advance or other payments.
- F. Federal Acquisition Regulation, Part 32, Contract Financing.
- G. DoD Financial Management Regulation (FMR) (DoD 7000.14-R), vol. 10, Contract Payment Policy and Procedures.
- H. 5 CFR Part 1315, "Prompt Payment."

III. POLICIES AND PROCEDURES.

- A. FAR Part 32. This Part prescribes policies and procedures for contract financing and other payment matters.
- B. Disbursing Authority.
 - 1. The Financial Management Service (FMS), a bureau of the U.S. Department of the Treasury, is the principle disbursing agent of the Federal government, accounting for approximately 85% of all Federal payments. The FMS website is at: <http://www.fms.treas.gov/>.
 - 2. The Department of Defense, the United States Marshal's Office, and the Department of Homeland Security (with respect to public money available for the Coast Guard's expenditure when it is not operating as a service in the Navy) have statutory authority to disburse public money. 31 U.S.C. § 3321. The Defense Finance and Accounting Service (DFAS) website is at: <http://www.dfas.mil/>.
- C. Contract Payments. All solicitations and contracts shall specify the payment procedures, payment due dates, and interest penalties for late invoice payment. FAR 32.903(a). There are two major types of government contract payments:
 - 1. Payment of the contract price for completed work.
 - 2. Payment in advance of work performance.

- D. Advances. An advance of public money may be made only if authorized by Congress or the President. 31 U.S.C. § 3324(b). Chapter 4 of Volume 10, DoD FMR covers all aspects of the various types of advance payments for DoD.
- E. Invoice Payments vs. Financing Payments. FAR Subpart 32.9.
1. Invoice payments are payments made upon delivery of goods or performance of services and acceptance by the government. Invoice payments include: See Ch. 7, Vol. 10 of DoD FMR.
 - a) Final payments of the contract price, costs, or fee in accordance with the contract or as settled by the government and the contractor.
 - b) Payments for partial deliveries or partial performance under fixed-price contracts.
 - c) Progress payments:
 - (1) Construction contracts.
 - (2) Architect/Engineer contracts.
 2. Financing payments are made to a contractor before acceptance of goods or services by the government. Such payments include: See ¶ 100401, Ch. 10, Vol. 10 of DoD FMR.
 - a) Advance payments.
 - b) Performance-Based Payments.
 - c) Commercial advance and interim payments.
 - d) Progress payments based on costs.
 - e) Progress payments based on a percentage or stage of completion under FAR 52.232-5 or 52.232-10.

- f) Interim payments on cost-type contracts. But see FAR 32.908(c)(3) (allowing interim payments for cost-type service contracts).
 - 3. Financing payments DO NOT include invoice payments, payments for partial deliveries or lease and rental payments.
- F. Order of Preference. FAR 32.106 provides the following order of preference when a contractor requests contract financing, unless an exception would be in the Government's interest in a specific case:
- 1. Private financing without Government guarantee (note, however, that the intent is not to require private financing at unreasonable terms or from other agencies);
 - 2. Customary contract financing (see FAR 32.113);
 - 3. Loan guarantees;
 - 4. Unusual contract financing (see FAR 32.114); and
 - 5. Advance payments (see exceptions at FAR 32.402(b)).
- G. Payment Requirements. Payments are based on receipt of a proper invoice or contract financing request, and satisfactory contract performance. FAR 32.905(a).
- H. Invoice Payment Due Date. The due date for making an invoice payment is prescribed in FAR 32.905. Government acceptance of supplies or services or receipt by the designated billing office of a proper invoice, whichever is later, triggers the time period for calculation of prompt payment. Failure of the Government to pay the contractor by the due date results in payment of interest.

- I. Financing Payment Due Date. The due date for making a contract financing payment is prescribed in FAR 32.007. Generally, the due date for contract financing payments is 30 days from date of receipt by the designated billing office of a proper payment request. Failure of the Government to make a contract financing payment by the due date does not normally entitle the contractor to interest.² However, late payment can be a defense to a default termination. But see Jones Oil Company, ASBCA No. 42651, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,691 (contractor will succeed in appealing a default termination of a contract only if the late payment rendered appellant financially incapable of continuing performance, was the primary or controlling cause of the default, or was a material rather than insubstantial or immaterial breach).

IV. CONTRACT PAYMENT METHODS.

41 U.S.C. § 255; 10 U.S.C. § 2307; FAR Part 32. FAR Part 32 draws a distinction between contract payments for commercial items and noncommercial items.

A. Definitions.

1. Commercial items are defined at FAR 2.101. For example, a computer qualifies as a commercial item because it is sold to the general public.
2. A non-commercial item is a supply or service that is not available for sale to the public, such as a major weapon system.

B. Non-Commercial Contract Payments. Payment methods for non-commercial item supplies or services include partial payments, advance payments, progress payments, loan guarantees, provisional delivery payments, and performance-based payments.

1. Partial Payments.

- a) Partial payments are payments made under fixed-price contracts for supplies or services that are accepted by the government but are only part of the contract requirements. FAR 32.102(d).
- b) Although partial payments are generally treated as a method of payment and not as a method of contract financing, using partial payments can help contractors participate in government contracts

2. FAR 32.904(e) establishes a due date for interim payments on cost-reimbursement contracts for services 30 days after the date of receipt of a proper invoice.

without, or with minimal, contract financing. When appropriate, agencies shall use this payment method. FAR 32.102(d).

c) FAR 52.232-1 provides that unless otherwise specified in the contract, the government must make payment under fixed-price contracts when it accepts partial deliveries if:

- (1) The amount due on the deliveries warrants it; or
- (2) The contractor requests payment and the amount due on partial deliveries is at least \$1,000 or 50% of the total contract price.

2. Advance Payments. FAR Subpart 32.4; FAR 52.232-12, Advance Payments.

a) Advance payments are advances of money by the government to a prime contractor before, in anticipation of, and for the purpose of complete performance under one or more contracts. They are expected to be liquidated from payments due to the contractor incident to performance of the contract. Advance payments may be made to a prime contractor for the purpose of making advances to subcontractors.

b) This is the least preferred method of contract financing.

c) Requirements. FAR 32.402(c).

- (1) The contractor must give adequate security.
- (2) Advance payments cannot exceed the unpaid contract price.
- (3) The agency head or designee must determine that advance payment is in the public interest or facilitates the national defense.

- d) According to FAR 32.402(c)(2), the agency head or designee³ must make written findings that:
- (1) Advance payment will not exceed the contractor's interim cash needs.
 - (2) Advance payment is necessary to supplement other funds or credit available to a contractor.
 - (3) The recipient is otherwise qualified as a responsible contractor.
 - (4) The government will benefit.
 - (5) The case fits one or more of the categories described in FAR 32.403.
- e) Advance payments can be authorized in addition to progress or partial payments on the same contract. (FAR 32.402(d)).
- f) Advance payments may be appropriate for the following (FAR 32.403):
- (1) Contracts for experimental, research or development projects with nonprofit education or research institutions.
 - (2) Contracts solely for management and operation of Government-owned plants.
 - (3) Contracts of such highly classified nature that assignment of claim is undesirable for national security reasons.
 - (4) Contracts with financially weak contractors with essential technical ability. In such a case, contractor performance shall be closely monitored to reduce Government's financial risk.

³ For the Army, the designee is the Assistant Secretary of the Army (Financial Management), see AFARS 5132.402. The Air Force designee is the Assistant for Accounting and Banking, Office of the Assistant Secretary of the Air Force (Financial Management and Comptroller) (SAF/FMPB), see AFFARS 5332.409.

- (5) Contracts for which a loan by a private financial institution is not practicable.
 - (6) Contracts with small business concerns.
 - (7) Contracts where exceptional circumstances make advance payments the most advantageous contract financing method for both the contractor and the Government.
3. Progress Payments. There are two types of progress payments: those based on costs incurred and those based on the stage of completion of the contracted work.
- a) Costs Incurred. Progress payments can be made on the basis of costs incurred by the contractor as work progresses under the contract. FAR Subpart 32.5; FAR 52.232-16, Progress Payments.
 - (1) Unless otherwise provided for in agency regulations, the contracting officer shall not provide for progress payments to a large business if the contract amount is less than \$2.5 million or to a small business if the contract amount is less than the simplified acquisition threshold (currently \$150,000). FAR 32.104(d)(2)-(3).
 - (2) Subject to the dollar thresholds, a contracting officer may provide for progress payments if the contractor must expend money during the predelivery period that will have a “significant impact” on its working capital, and there is a substantial time from contract inception to delivery (six months for a large business and four months for a small business). FAR 32.104(d)(1).
 - (3) As part of a request for progress payments, a contractor may include the full amount of payments due to subcontractors as progress payments under the contract and subcontracts. FAR 32.504(b).
 - (4) Progress payments made under indefinite-delivery contracts should be administered under each individual order as if the order constituted a separate contract, unless agency procedures provide otherwise. FAR 32.503-5(c) (as amended by FAC 97-16). But see *Aydin Corp. v. Widnall*, 61 F.3d 1571 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (contractor entitled to

administrative and production costs incurred to implement cost segregation requirements imposed by the contracting officer, where DFARS clause provided for progress payments based on cumulative total costs of the contract).

- (5) Progress payments can be added to the contract after award by contract modification, but the contractor must provide adequate consideration. FAR 32.005.
- (6) Customary progress payments. FAR 32.501-1 and FAR 32.502-1.
 - (a) The FAR provides that the customary amount is 80% for large businesses and 85% for small businesses. FAR 32.501-1(a).
 - (b) DFARS provides for a customary uniform progress payment rate of 80% for large business, 90% for small business, and 95% for small, disadvantaged businesses. DFARS 232.501-1(a)(i).
- (7) Unusual progress payments. Unusual contract financing is financing with additional approval requirements. FAR 32.001.
 - (a) Contracting officer may provide unusual progress payments only if (FAR 32.501-2):
 - (i) Contract necessitates predelivery expenditures that are large in relation to the contractor's working capital and credit;
 - (ii) Contractor fully documents an actual need to supplement private financing available;
 - (iii) Contractor's request is approved by the head of the contracting activity or designee.
 - (b) DoD requires advance approval of the Director of Defense Procurement & Acquisition Policy (OUSD(AT&L)DPAP) for any "unusual" progress payment requests. DFARS 232.501-2.

b) Percentage or Stage of Contract Completion. Progress payments also can be based on a percentage or stage of contract completion, if authorized by agency procedures. Use of this type of progress payment is subject to the following restrictions:

- (1) DFARS 232.102 provides that these types of progress payments are only authorized for construction contracts, shipbuilding, and ship conversion, alteration or repair.
- (2) The agency must ensure that payments are commensurate with the work accomplished. Greenhut Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41777, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,374 (after hurricane damaged previously completed construction work, Navy was entitled to review the work and pay only the amount representing satisfactorily completed work).
- (3) Under undefinitized contract actions, such payments cannot exceed 80% of the eligible costs of work accomplished.

4. Loan Guarantees.

- a) FAR Subpart 32.3 prescribes policies and procedures for designated agencies' guarantees of loans made by private financial institutions to borrowers performing contracts related to national defense.
- b) The use of guaranteed loans requires the availability of certain congressional authority. DoD has not requested authority in recent years, and none is now available. DFARS 232.302.

5. Provisional Delivery Payments. DFARS 232.102-70.

- a) The contracting officer may establish provisional delivery payments to pay contractors for the costs of supplies and services delivered to and accepted by the government under the following contract actions, if undefinitized:
 - (1) Letter contracts contemplating a fixed-price contract,
 - (2) Orders under basic ordering agreements,

- (3) Unpriced equitable adjustments on fixed-price contracts, and
 - (4) Orders under indefinite delivery contracts.
 - b) Provisional delivery payments shall be used sparingly, priced conservatively, and reduced by liquidating previous progress payments in accordance with the Progress Payments Clause.
 - c) Provisional delivery payments shall not include profit, exceed funds obligated for the undefinitized contract action, or influence the definitized contract price.
- 6. Performance-Based Payments.⁴ Performance-based payments are the preferred financing method when the contracting officer finds its use practical and the contractor agrees to its use. FAR 32.1001(a). However, in a recent report the DoD IG reported that DoD failed to adequately administer performance-based payments on 43 of 67 reviewed contracts. Additionally, the DoD IG found that “\$4.1 billion of the \$5.5 billion in performance-based payments lacked adequate documentation to ensure the payments were for demonstrated performance.”⁵
 - a) Performance-based payments may be made either on a whole contract or on a deliverable item basis, unless otherwise prescribed by agency regulations. FAR 32.1004.
 - (1) Financing payments made on a whole contract basis apply to the entire contract.
 - (2) Financing payments made on a deliverable item basis apply to a specific deliverable item.
 - b) Performance-based payments may not exceed 90 percent of the contract price if on a whole contract basis, or 90 percent of the delivery item price if on a delivery item basis. FAR 32.1004(b)(2).

4. The Defense Contract Management Agency website at http://guidebook.dcm.mil/7/guidebook_process.htm provides guidance on the use and administration of performance-based payments (PBPs).

5. OFFICE OF THE INSPECTOR GENERAL OF THE DEP'T OF DEFENSE, REP. NO. D-2003-106, *Administration of Performance-Based Payments Made to Defense Contractors* (June 2003).

- c) The payments may be made on any of the following bases (FAR 32.1002):
 - (1) Performance measured by objective, quantifiable methods;
 - (2) Accomplishment of defined events; or
 - (3) Other quantifiable measures of results.
- d) The contracting officer may use performance-based payments only when the contracting officer and the offeror agree on the performance-based payment terms, the contract is a definitized fixed-price type contract, and the contract does not provide for other methods of contract financing, except for advance payments or loan guarantees. FAR 32.1003.
- e) FAR 32.1000 provides that performance-based payments are not used in the following instances:
 - (1) Payments under cost-reimbursement contracts.
 - (2) Contracts for architect-engineer services or construction, or for shipbuilding or ship conversion, alteration, or repair, when the contracts provide for progress payments based on a percentage or stage of completion.

C. Commercial Item Purchase Payments. 10 U.S.C.§ 2307(f); 41 U.S.C.§ 255(f); FAR 32.2.

- 1. General Rule. Although financing of the contract is normally the contractor's responsibility, in some markets, the provision of financing by the buyer is a commercial practice. The contracting officer may include appropriate financing terms in contracts for commercial purchases when it is in the best interests of the government.
- 2. Types of Payments. FAR 32.202-2:
 - a) Commercial advance payment.
 - (1) Payments made before any performance of work.
 - (2) Limited to 15% of contract price.

- (3) Not subject to Prompt Payment Act interest.
 - (4) Payment is made on contract specified date, or 30 days after receipt by the designated billing office of a proper request for payment, whichever is later. DFARS 232.206(f)(i).
 - b) Commercial interim payment. FAR 32.001 (Similar to Progress Payments)
 - (1) Not commercial advance payment or delivery payment.
 - (2) Payments made after some work has been done.
 - (3) Late payment is not subject to Prompt Payment Act interest penalty.
 - (4) Payment is made on entitlement date specified in the contract, or 14 days from the receipt by the designated billing office of a proper request for payment, whichever is later. DFARS 232.206(f)(ii).
 - c) Delivery payment. FAR 32.001
 - (1) Payment for accepted supplies or services.
 - (2) Includes partial deliveries.
 - (3) Considered an invoice payment subject to Prompt Payment Act interest.
 - (4) The prompt payment standards for commercial delivery payments are the same as specified in FAR Subpart 32.9.
 - d) Installment payment financing for commercial items shall not be used for defense contracts unless market research has established that this form of contract financing is both appropriate and customary in the marketplace. DFARS 232.206(g).
3. Prerequisites. FAR 32.202-1. Commercial item purchase financing, consisting of either interim payments or advance payments, may be made under the following circumstances:

- a) The item financed is a commercial supply or service.
- b) The contract price exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold.
- c) The contracting officer determines that it is appropriate/customary in the commercial marketplace to make financing payments for the item.
- d) This form of contract financing is in the best interest of the government. To help make this determination, the FAR authorizes agencies to establish standards, such as type of procurement, type of item, or dollar level. FAR 32.202-1(e).
- e) Adequate security is obtained from the contractor. FAR 32.202-4.
 - (1) Subject to agency regulations, the contracting officer may determine the offeror's financial condition to be adequate security provided the offeror agrees to provide additional security should that financial condition become inadequate as security. DFARS 232.202-4 states that an offeror's financial condition may be sufficient to make the contractor responsible for award purposes, but not be adequate security for commercial contract financing.
 - (2) Types of Security.
 - (a) Paramount lien.
 - (b) Irrevocable letters of credit.
 - (c) Surety bond.
 - (d) Guarantee of repayment from a person or corporation of demonstrated liquid net worth connected by significant ownership to the contractor.
 - (e) Title to identified contractor assets of adequate worth.
 - (3) The value of the security must be at least equal to the maximum unliquidated amount of contract financing

payments to be made to the contractor. The value of security may be adjusted during contract performance as long as it is always equal to or greater than the amount of unliquidated financing. FAR 32.202-4(a)(3).

- D. Progress Payments on Construction Contracts. FAR 32.103; FAR 52.232-5, Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts.
1. When a construction contract provides for progress payments and the contractor fails to achieve satisfactory performance for a period for which a progress payment is to be paid, the government may retain a percentage of the progress payment. The retainage shall not exceed 10 percent of the progress payment.
 2. Entitlement to progress payments requires compliance with the contract and relevant regulations. The Davis Group, Inc., ASBCA No. 48431, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,702.

V. THE PROMPT PAYMENT ACT. 31 U.S.C. § 3901-3907; 5 C.F.R. 1315;⁶ FAR SUBPART 32.9.

- A. Applicability of the Prompt Payment Act (PPA).
1. Background.
 - a) Prior to enactment of the Prompt Payment Act of 1982 (Pub. Law No. 97-177), the Federal government did not have uniform criteria for establishing due dates for payments to contractors.
 - b) Many invoices were paid too early or too late. The General Accounting Office (GAO) estimated that contractors were losing at least \$150 million annually due to late payments, and the Federal Government could save at least \$900 million annually if payments that had been paid early had instead been paid when due.⁷
 - c) To address these concerns, the PPA and implementing guidance and regulations issued by the Office of Management and Budget

⁶ OMB Circular A-125 was rescinded in 1999 and replaced by the Prompt Payment regulations at 5 CFR Part 1315.

⁷ Actions to Improve Timeliness of Bill Paying by the Federal Government Could Save Hundreds of Millions of Dollars, (AFMD-82-1, Oct. 1, 1981).

(OMB) provided for payment due dates and interest penalties for late payments.

- d) The PPA provides that interest begins when the government fails to make timely payments to the contractor after receipt of a proper invoice from the contractor.

2. Coverage.

- a) The PPA applies to all government contracts except for contracts where payment terms and late payment penalties have been established by other governmental authority (e.g., tariffs). FAR 32.901. See Prompt Payment Act Interest on Utility Bills, B-214479, Sept. 22, 1986, 1986 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 497. See also National Park Service—Late Payment Charges for Utility Services, B-222944, Oct. 23, 1987, 1987 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 316 (holding that elements of implied contract governed payment terms with private, unregulated utility company)
- b) The PPA applies to all government agencies.
- c) There are no geographical limitations to applicability of the PPA's procedural requirements. FAR 32.901. Ingenieurgesellschaft Fuer Technische Dienste, ASBCA No. 42029, 42030, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,569.

3. In analyzing whether the contractor is entitled to PPA interest, the government must determine that:

- a) PPA applies to the payment,
- b) Invoice is proper,
- c) Government has accepted the supplies or services, and
- d) Government has paid the invoice late.

4. Applicability to Types of Payments. The PPA applies to invoice payments i.e., payments made for supplies or services accepted by the government. For purposes of applying the PPA, invoice payments include (FAR 32.901(b)):

- a) Payment for supplies or services accepted by the Government.
 - b) Payments for partial deliveries accepted by the Government under fixed-price contracts.
 - c) Final cost or fee payments where the Government and the contractor have settled the amounts owed.
 - d) Progress payments under fixed-price architect-engineer contracts.
 - e) Progress payments under fixed-price construction contracts.
 - f) Interim payments on cost-reimbursement service contracts.⁸
5. The PPA does not apply to contract financing payments made prior to acceptance of supplies or services. FAR 32.901(b). For purposes of applying the PPA, contract financing payments include (FAR 32.001):
- a) Advance payments.
 - b) Progress payments based on cost.
 - c) Progress payments based on percentage or stage of completion (except for those made under the fixed-price construction and fixed-price architect-engineer payments clauses noted above).
6. The PPA does not require payment of interest when payment is not made because of a dispute over the amount of payment due or compliance with the contract. *Active Fire Sprinkler Corp. v General Servs. Admin.*, 2001 GSBICA LEXIS 172 (July 11, 2001).

B. Invoice Payment Procedures.

- 1. Proper invoice required. The contractor must submit a proper invoice to trigger the PPA. FAR 32.904(b)(1)(i). Invoice means a contractor's bill or written request for payment under the contract for supplies delivered or services performed. FAR 2.101.

8. FAR 32.907 imposes an interest penalty on interim payments on cost-reimbursement contracts for services, when such payment is made more than 30 days after the designated billing office receives a proper invoice. 66 Fed. Reg. 65,359 (Dec. 18, 2001). Section 1007 of the National Defense Appropriations Act for FY 02 also requires payment of Prompt Payment Act interest for these late payments.

- a) Under FAR 32.905(b), a proper invoice must include:
- (1) Name and address of contractor.
 - (2) Invoice date.
 - (3) Contract number or other authorization.
 - (4) Description, quantity, unit of measure, and cost of supplies delivered or services performed.
 - (5) Shipping and payment terms.
 - (6) Name and address (EFT banking information & TIN if required) of contractor official to whom payment is to be sent.
 - (7) Name, telephone number, and mailing address of person to notify if the invoice is defective.
 - (8) Any other information or documentation required by the contract, such as evidence of shipment.
 - (9) Though not required, contractors are strongly encouraged to assign an identification number to each invoice.
- b) Notice of defective invoice. The government must notify the contractor of any defective invoice within 7 days (3 days for meat, meat food products, and fish; 5 days for perishable agricultural commodities, dairy, and edible fats or oils) after receipt of the invoice at the designated payment office. The notice should include a statement identifying the defect in the invoice. FAR 32.905(b)(3).
- (1) If such notice is not timely, an adjusted due date for purposes of determining an interest penalty will be established in accordance with FAR 32.907-1(b).
 - (2) FAR 52.232-25(a)(3) provides that the due date on the corrected invoice will be adjusted by subtracting from it the

number of days taken beyond the prescribed notification of defects period.

- (3) The contractor will not be entitled to PPA interest for late payment, despite the agency's failure to notify the contractor of a defective invoice, if the contractor knew that its invoice was defective. Masco, Inc., HUDBCA No. 95-G-147-C16, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28364 (contractor knew that invoiced work had not yet been completed).

c) Supporting documentation is required. FAR 32.905(f).

- (1) A receiving report or some other government document authorizing payment must support all invoice payments. A receiving report is evidence that the government accepted the supplies delivered or services performed by the contractor.
- (2) The agency receiving official must forward supporting documentation by the 5th working day after government acceptance or approval, unless the parties have made other arrangements. This period of time does not extend the payment due date.

2. Payment due date. FAR 32.904(a) provides the payment due date for invoice payments, not including architect-engineer, construction, or food and specified item contracts, is the later of:

- a) The 30th day after the designated billing office receives a proper invoice; or
- b) The 30th day after government acceptance of supplies delivered or services performed by the contractor.
 - (1) On a final invoice where the payment amount is subject to contract settlement actions, acceptance occurs on the effective date of the settlement.
 - (2) For the sole purpose of computing an interest penalty, government acceptance occurs constructively on the seventh day after the contractor has delivered the supplies or performed the services, unless there is a disagreement

over quantity, quality, or contractor compliance with a contract requirement.

- (3) Except for commercial items as defined in FAR 2.101, the contracting officer may specify a longer period for constructive acceptance. This is normally to afford the government a reasonable opportunity to inspect and test the supplies furnished or to evaluate the services performed, but cannot be used as a routine agency practice. The contract file must indicate the justification for extending the constructive acceptance period beyond 7 days.
 - c) Special payment periods. The payment due date on contracts for perishable agricultural commodities is shorter. (meat, 7 days; fish, 7 days; perishable agricultural commodities, 10 days; dairy, 10 days; etc.) FAR 32.904(f).
 - d) It is DOD policy to assist small disadvantaged businesses by paying them as quickly as possible after receipt of a proper invoice, and before normal payment due dates in the contract. This policy does not alter the payment due date for purposes of the Prompt Payment Act. DFARS 232.903.
3. Interest penalty for late payment. The government incurs an interest penalty for late invoice payment, including late payment of progress payments under fixed-price architect-engineering contracts and fixed-price construction contracts. FAR 32.907. Under the new interim final rule, interest penalties also accrue for late payment of interim payments on cost-reimbursement service contracts.⁹
 - a) Accrual. The interest penalty accrues when the government pays the contractor after the contract payment due date. Interest penalties will not accrue for more than one year. See FAR 32.907 and 5 CFR §1315.10(a)(3).
 - b) Automatic payment. The interest penalty accrues automatically and must be paid by the government without request by the

⁹ See 66 Fed. Reg. 53,485 (Sep. 22, 2001) for final rule. *See also* FAR 32.908(c)(3).

contractor. The government must pay any interest penalty of \$1 or more.¹⁰ FAR 32.907.

- c) The interest penalty is not excused by temporary unavailability of funds. FAR 32.907(f).
- d) Late payment penalty upon interest penalty.
 - (1) The contractor is entitled to a penalty payment if the contractor is owed an interest penalty of \$1 or more, the agency fails to make a required interest penalty payment within 10 days after the date the invoice amount is paid, and the contractor makes a written demand for the penalty within 40 days after the payment. FAR 32.907(c).
 - (2) The penalty upon penalty amount is 100% of the interest penalty owed the contractor, not to exceed \$5,000, nor be less than \$25. 5 CFR §1315.11(b)&(c).

4. Contract Disputes Act Interest Distinguished from Prompt Payment Act Interest.

- a) Under the CDA, the government pays interest on amounts found to be due to a contractor on claims submitted to the contracting officer. Such CDA interest accrues from the date the contracting officer receives a proper claim until payment of the amount due on the claim. FAR 33.208. 41 U.S.C. § 611. See Paragon Energy Corp., ENG BCA No. 5302, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,349 (payment of CDA claim presumed to include interest).
- b) PPA and CDA interest is based on the rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury and published in the Federal Register. 31 U.S.C. § 3902 and 41 U.S.C. § 611.¹¹ Under the CDA, the

¹⁰ The Defense Finance and Accounting Service (DFAS) has expressed concern that the costs of making such small payments may not justify the payments. In FY 1996, DFAS Columbus made 10,789 interest payments—about one quarter of all interest payments--totaling \$28,701. DFAS regulations require documentation of the reason for the late payment, and in one case a \$1.05 payment was supported with nine pages of documentation. Financial Management: The Prompt Payment Act and DoD Problem Disbursements (GAO/AIMD-97-71, May 23, 1997).

¹¹ Information concerning the interest rate can be obtained through the Federal Register or from the Department of the Treasury, Financial Management Service (FMS), Washington, DC 20227 (202) 874-6995. The rate applicable from 1 January 2011 to 30 June 2011 is 2.625%. This rate is published semi-annually in the Federal Register. See 75 Fed. Reg. 82146 (Dec. 29, 2010). The FMS website is <www.fms.treas.gov>. The current and prior PPA interest rates are at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/prompt/rates.html>.

government pays simple interest and adjusts the rate every six months in accordance with the current Treasury rate. In contrast, PPA interest is compounded and is not adjusted during the one year accrual period.

- c) If a contractor files a claim under the CDA for PPA interest, interest will run under the PPA until government receipt of the claim, after which CDA interest will apply. Technocratica, ASBCA No. 44444, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,584.

C. Fixed-Price Construction Contracts.

1. The government must pay interest on approved construction contract progress payments that remain unpaid for more than 14 days after the designated billing office receives a proper payment request. FAR 32.904(d).
2. Similarly, the contractor must pay interest on unearned progress payments, e.g., when the contractor's performance for which progress payments are made does not conform to contract terms. FAR 32.904(d)(4)(i). FAR 52.232-5(d), Payments under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts. The government must demand payment of the underlying debt in a sum certain. Electronic & Space Corp., ASBCA No. 47539, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,768 (the government's letter which simply stated "it appears" progress payments were overpaid was ruled to be an improper demand letter).
3. The government must pay interest on any retained amount that is approved for release if the government does not pay the retained amount to the contractor by the 30th day (unless specified otherwise in contract) after release. FAR 32.904(d)(1)(ii).
4. Interest penalties are not required on payment delays due to disagreement between the parties over the payment amount or other issues involving contract compliance. Claims involving disputes and any interest thereon will be resolved in accordance with the Disputes clause. FAR 52.232-27 (a)(4)(ii). FAR 32.907(d).

- D. Fixed-Price Architect-Engineer Contracts. The government must pay interest penalties on approved contract progress payments that remain unpaid for more than 30 days after government approval of contractor estimates of work or services accomplished. FAR 52.232-10, Payments Under Fixed-Price Architect-

Engineer Contracts; FAR 52.232-26, Prompt Payment for Fixed-Price Architect-Engineer Contracts. FAR 32.904(c).

E. Prompt Payment Discounts.

1. Discount for prompt payment means an invoice payment reduction voluntarily offered by the contractor, in conjunction with the clause at FAR 52.232-8, Discounts for Prompt Payment, if payment is made by the government prior to the due date. The due date is calculated from the date of the contractor's invoice. If the contractor has not placed a date on the invoice, the due date is calculated from the date the designated billing office receives a proper invoice, provided the agency annotates such invoice with the date of receipt at the time of receipt. When the discount date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or legal holiday when federal government offices are closed and government business is not expected to be conducted, payment may be made on the following business day and a discount may be taken. FAR 32.906(e).
2. The government may take prompt payment discounts offered by a contractor only when it makes payment within the specified discount period.¹²
3. The PPA imposes an interest penalty on improperly taken discounts, and the agency must pay the penalty without request by the contractor. FAR 32.907(b).
4. The government policy provisions at FAR 32.906(a) state that the government shall not make invoice and contract financing payments earlier than 7 days prior to the dates specified in the contract unless the agency head, or designee, determines to make earlier payment on a case-by-case basis.

- F. Waiver. A contractor may waive an interest penalty payment issued to it under the PPA either by an express written statement or by acts and conduct which indicate an intent to waive. Central Intelligence Agency - Waiver of Interest Under Prompt Payment Act, 62 Comp. Gen. 673 (1983) (contractor refused to accept interest check prepared by agency).

¹² For a discussion on the propriety of taking a prompt payment discount for progress payments made in the normal course of contract administration, See Prompt Payment Discounts Based on Progress Payments, ARMY LAW., Aug. 1994, at 54.

VI. ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFERS (EFT). FAR SUBPART 32.11.

- A. Mandatory Use. Payment by EFT is the mandatory method of contract payment¹³ in normal contracting situations except for the following situations listed in FAR 32.1103:
1. The office making payment under a contract requiring EFT loses the ability to release payment by EFT. In such a case, the paying office shall make all the necessary payments by check or some other mutually acceptable method of payment. FAR 32.1103(a).
 2. The payment will be received by or on behalf of a contractor outside the United States and Puerto Rico. FAR 32.1103(b). However the agency head may authorize EFT for a non-domestic transaction if the political, financial, and communications infrastructure in the foreign country supports EFT payment. FAR 32.1106(b)(1).
 3. The payment will be paid in other than US currency. FAR 32.1103(c). However, the agency head may authorize EFT if such a transaction may be made safely. FAR 32.1106(b)(2).
 4. Classified contracts, where EFT payments could compromise the safeguarding of classified information or national security, or where arrangements for appropriate EFT payments would be impractical due to security considerations. FAR 32.1103(d).
 5. Contracts executed by deployed contracting officers in the course of military operations, including but not limited to, contingency operations as defined in 10 U.S.C. § 101(a)(13), or a contract awarded during emergency operations, such as natural disasters or national or civil emergencies.
 6. The agency does not expect to make more than one payment to the same recipient within a one year period. FAR 32.1103(f).
 7. The agency's need for supplies and services is of such unusual and compelling urgency that the government would be seriously injured unless payment is by a method other than EFT. FAR 32.1103(g).

¹³ 31 USC §3332 requires use of EFT in all situations except when recipients certify in writing that they do not have an account with a financial institution.

8. There is only one source for supplies and services and the government would be seriously injured unless payment is by a method other than EFT. FAR 32.1103(h).
 9. Payment by a method other than EFT is otherwise authorized by the Department of Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR 208. FAR 32.1103(i).
- B. Specified Payment Date. FAR 32.902. See also FAR 52.232-33 & 34.
1. The date on which the funds are to be transferred to the contractor's account by the financial agent according to agency's EFT payment transaction instruction given to the Federal Reserve System.
 2. If no date has been specified in the instruction, the specified payment date is 3 business days after the payment office releases the EFT payment transaction instruction.
- C. Assignment of Claims. Using EFT payment methods is not a substitute for a properly executed assignment of claims. EFT information showing the ultimate recipient of the transfer to be other than the contractor, in the absence of a proper assignment of claims, is considered to be incorrect EFT information. FAR 32.1105.
- D. Central Contractor Registration (CCR). FAR Subpart 4.11. FAR 52.204-7.
1. Contractors provide EFT data to DOD by registering in the CCR. Registration is mandatory prior to award of a contract, basic agreement, basic ordering agreement, or blanket purchase agreement. The contractor identifies itself through a Data Universal Numbering System number or DUNS assigned by Dun and Bradstreet Information Services. See FAR 52.204-6.
 2. Exceptions to this policy: FAR 4.1102.
 - a) Purchases made with the Government-wide commercial purchase card or other micro-purchase methods,
 - b) Awards made to foreign vendors for work performed outside the United States,
 - c) Classified contracts or purchases,

- d) Contracts executed by deployed contracting officers in the course of military operations, including but not limited to, contingency operations as defined in 10 U.S.C. § 101(a)(13), or a contract awarded during emergency operations, such as natural disasters or national or civil emergencies.
 - e) Contracts to support unusual or compelling needs.
- E. Incorrect EFT Information. If the contractor's EFT information is incorrect, the Government need not make payment until the contractor supplies the correct information. Any invoice submitted under the contract is deemed not to be a proper invoice for purposes of prompt payment. FAR 52.232-33(d); FAR 52.232-34(d); FAR 32.905(b)(ix)(B).
- F. Payment by Government Purchase Card.¹⁴ The financial institution that issued the government credit card may make immediate payment to the contractor. The government will reimburse the financial institution. FAR 32.1108.¹⁵
- G. FAR Clauses: Unless payment will be made exclusively through the government purchase card, other third party arrangement, or pursuant to an exception in FAR 32.1103, the contracting officer shall insert the clause at FAR 52.232-33, Payment by Electronic Funds Transfer-Central Contractor Registration, in all solicitations where the paying office uses the Central Contractor Registration database as its source of EFT information. In contracts where clause 52.232-33 is not inserted, the contracting officer will insert the clause at FAR 52.232-34, Payment by Electronic Funds Transfer-Other than Central Contractor Information.
- H. Liability for Erroneous Transfer
 - 1. If an uncompleted or erroneous transfer occurs because the government failed to use the contractor provided EFT information in the correct manner, the government remains responsible for making a correct payment, paying any prompt penalty due, and recovering any erroneously directed funds. FAR 52.232-33(e)(1).

¹⁴ DoD requires use of the purchase card as payment for any purchase at or below the micro-purchase threshold (\$2,500). A written determination by a Senior Executive Service member, Flag Officer, or General Officer is required in certain instances where the card is not used. DFARS 232.1108 and 213.270.

¹⁵ Written contracts to be paid by purchase card should include the clause at 52.232-36, Payment by Third Party, as prescribed by FAR 32.1110(d). However, payment by a purchase card also may be made under a contract that does not contain the clause if the contractor agrees to accept the card as a method of payment. FAR 32.1108(b).

2. If an uncompleted or erroneous transfer occurs because the contractor provided incorrect EFT information, and if the funds are no longer in the control of the payment office, the government is deemed to have made payment and the contractor is solely responsible for recovery of any of the erroneously directed funds. If the funds remain under the control of the payment office, the government retains the right to either make payment by mail or suspend the payment. FAR 52.232-33(e)(2).
 3. Prompt Payment Act. A payment shall be deemed to have been made in a timely manner if the EFT payment transaction instructions given to the Federal Reserve System specifies the date for settlement of the payment on or before the prompt payment due date, whether or not the Federal Reserve System actually makes the payment by that date. FAR 52.232-33(f) & -34(f).
- I. Wide Area Work Flow (WAWF).
1. WAWF is the mandated method for using EFT for payments for DoD contracts. DFARS 232.7003. WAWF combines, in a secure web-based system, electronic invoicing, receipt, and acceptance. WAWF website is at <https://wawf.eb.mil/>.
 2. A contractor and contracting officer may agree to process payment and a receiving report using an electronic form other than WAWF, but must agree to a plan and timeline specifying when the contractor will transfer to WAWF. DFARS 232.7003(b).
 3. From March 2002 through May 2003, the Defense Contract Management Agency (DCMA) conducted a pilot program using WAWF. The program involved about 31,000 transactions valued at about \$1.5 billion dollars. Comparable paper-based transactions would result in an average of about \$315,000 dollars in PPA interest payments. In the pilot program, 99.9% of WAWF payments were processed on time, incurring only \$54 dollars in PPA interest.

VII. ASSIGNMENT OF CLAIMS.

- A. General Rule. A contractor may assign its right to be paid by the government for contract performance. FAR 32.802.
1. Under the Assignment of Claims Act (31 U.S.C. § 3727) and Assignment of Contracts Act (41 U.S.C. § 15), a contractor may assign monies due or to become due under a contract if all of the following conditions are met:

- a) The contract specifies payments aggregating \$1,000 or more.
- b) The contractor makes the assignment to a bank, trust company, or other financing institution, including any federal lending agency.
- c) The contract does not prohibit the assignment.
- d) Unless the contract expressly permits otherwise, the assignment:
 - (1) Covers all unpaid amounts payable under the contract;
 - (2) Is made only to one party; and
 - (3) Is not subject to further assignment.
- e) The assignee sends a written notice of assignment together with a true copy of the assignment instrument to the:
 - (1) Contracting officer or agency head,
 - (2) Surety on any bond applicable to the contract; and
 - (3) Disbursing officer designated in the contract to make payment.

- 2. The provisions of the Assignment of Claims Act are construed strictly. See Summerfield Housing Limited Partnership v. United States, 42 Fed. Cl. 160 (1998).

B. Protection for the Assignee. 41 U.S.C. § 15; FAR 32.804.

- 1. Once the assignee notifies the government of the assignment, the government must pay the assignee. Payment to the contractor will not discharge the government's obligation to pay the assignee. Tuftco Corp. v. United States, 222 Ct. Cl. 277 (1980).
- 2. The government cannot recover payments made to the assignee based on the contractor's liability to the government. FAR 32.804.
- 3. DOD may include a "no-setoff" provision in its contracts upon a determination of need by the President published in the Federal Register.

41 U.S.C. § 15(e). Formerly, agencies could only use a “no-setoff” provision upon a Presidential proclamation of war or national emergency. This authority has been delegated to the Head of the Agency after such determination has been published in the Federal Register. Use of the “no-setoff” provision may be appropriate to facilitate the national defense, in the event of a national emergency or natural disaster, or when the use of a “no-setoff” provision may facilitate private financing of contract performance. If the offeror is significantly indebted to the Government, this information should be used in the determination. FAR 32.803(d).

4. If the contract contains a no-setoff commitment clause (FAR 52.232-23, Alt I), the assignee will receive contract payments free of reduction or setoff for:
 - a) Any liability of the contractor arising independent of the contract. FAR 32.804(b)(1). See Bank of Amer. Nat. Trust and Sav. Ass’n v. United States, 23 F.3d 380 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (SBA loans to fund contract performance are “independent” of the contract and not subject to set-off). See also Applied Companies v. United States, 37 Fed. Cl. 749 (1997) (discussing use of no-setoff provision by assignor).
 - b) Certain liabilities arising under the same contract, such as fines, penalties, and withheld taxes (FAR 32.804(b)(2)).

VIII. DEBT DETERMINATION AND COLLECTION PROCEDURES. FAR SUBPART 32.6

- A. Debts Covered by Contract Collection Procedures. FAR 32.602.
 1. Damages or excess costs arising from a contractor’s default in performance.
 2. Breaches of contract obligations by the contractor concerning progress payments, advance payments, or government-furnished property or material.
 3. Expenses incurred by the government in correcting defects.

4. Government overpayment to contractors due to billing errors, such as stating an incorrect quantity, or deficiencies in quality or erroneous payments made through EFT.¹⁶
5. Retroactive price reductions resulting from contract terms for price redetermination or for determination of prices under incentive-type contracts.
6. Delinquency in contractor payments due to the government under agreements for deferral or postponement of collections.
7. Reimbursement of costs as provided in FAR 33.102(b) and 33.104(h)(1), paid by the Government where a postaward protest is sustained as a result of an awardee's misstatement, misrepresentation, or mis-certification.

B. Determination of Contractor Debt.

1. Overpayment problem. Contractor reconciliation of its billings to government accounting and payment data is a key procedure for identifying government overpayments.¹⁷ In 2002, Congress enacted the Improper Payments Information Act of 2002 that requires agencies to annually identify programs and activities susceptible to significant improper payments and report an annual estimate of improper payments to Congress.¹⁸
2. Cooperation among government officials. The FAR requires contracting officers, contract financing offices, disbursing officials, and auditors to cooperate fully with each other to properly identify and promptly collect contract debts. FAR 32.605(a).

¹⁶ The General Accounting Office (GAO) has issued numerous reports highlighting DoD's problems concerning overpayments to contractors. In fiscal years 1994 through 1998, defense contractors returned \$4.6 billion to the Defense Finance and Accounting Center in Columbus, Ohio, due to overpayments resulting from contract administration actions and payment processing errors. See DoD Procurement: Funds Returned by Defense Contractors (GAO/NSIAD-98-46R, Oct. 28, 1997), and DoD Procurement: Millions in Overpayments Returned by DoD Contractors (GAO/NSIAD-94-106, Mar. 14, 1994). For FY 01, DFAS Columbus records revealed that DoD made approximately \$488 million in overpayments. See GEN. ACCT. OFF. REP. NO. GAO-02-635, *DoD Contract Management: Overpayments Continue and Management and Accounting Issues Remain* (May 30, 2002).

¹⁷ See DoD Contract Management: Greater Attention Needed to Identify and Recover Overpayments (GAO/NSIAD-99-131, July 19, 1997). In the FY 02 National Defense Authorization Act, section 831 amended Title 31 of the U.S. Code to require that the head of each executive agency establish a cost effective program for identifying payment errors and for the recovery of overpayments. Pub. L. No. 107-107, §831, 115 Stat. 1012, 1186 (2001).

18. Pub. L. No. 107-300, 116 Stat. 2350 (2002).

3. Responsibility.

- a) Normally, the contracting officer has primary responsibility for determining the amount of a debt and for collecting it. FAR 32.605(b).
- b) For DOD agencies, the disbursing officer is responsible for determining the amount and collecting contract debts whenever the government makes overpayment or erroneous payments. DFARS 232.605(b).

4. Procedures.

- a) The responsible official determines the substantive basis for the government's entitlement. FAR 32.606.
 - (1) Contractual. Identify the specific contract provision(s) upon which the government's claim is based. Common bases include:
 - (a) Defective Pricing. See FAR 15.407-1, Defective Cost or Pricing Data.
 - (b) Excess Costs of Reprocurement. See FAR 49.402-6, Repurchase Against Contractor's Account.
 - (c) Recovery of Unliquidated Progress Payments. See FAR 52.232-16(h).
 - (d) Recovery of Unliquidated Advance Payments. See FAR 52.232-12; Do-Well Machine Shop Inc., ASBCA Nos. 34565, 40895, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,320 (SBA entitled to unliquidated advance payment following default termination of 8(a) contractor); Johnson Mgmt. Group CFC Inc., HUDBCA Nos. 96-C-132-C15, 97-C-109-C2, 1999 HUD BCA LEXIS 7 (HUD had paramount lien on start-up equipment purchased with advance payments).

(2) Other bases for government entitlement include common law (e.g., breach of contract, consequential damages) and debts from other contracts.

b) The responsible official must issue a demand letter notifying the contractor of the debt as soon as the responsible official has computed the amount of refund due. FAR 32.610.

C. Enforcing Government Claims-Collecting the Debt.

1. Collection methods.

a) Voluntary Payment by the Contractor. After receiving the demand letter, the contractor may pay, arrange to defer payment, or arrange to make installment payments.

b) Administrative Set-Off. If the disbursing officer is responsible for collection of a contract debt or is notified of the debt by the responsible official, and if the disbursing officer has contractor invoices on hand for payment by the government, the disbursing official shall make an appropriate set-off in the payment to the contractor. FAR 32.611.

c) Withholding. If the contractor fails to make payment within 30 days of a demand, and has failed to request deferment, the government shall immediately initiate withholding of principal and interest. FAR 32.612.

d) Tax Refund Offsets. 31 U.S.C. § 3720A authorizes the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) to collect certain past due and legally enforceable debts by offset against tax refunds. This is done through the Department of Treasury Offset Program administered by the Financial Management Service's Debt Management Services. DOD FMR, vol. 10, para. 180403.

2. Deferment of Collection. FAR 32.613.

a) If the contractor is not appealing the debt, the government and the contractor may agree to a debt deferment or installment payments if the contractor is unable to pay in full at once or if the contractor's operations under national defense contracts would be seriously impaired. FAR 32.613(f).

- b) If the contractor is appealing the debt, suspension or delay of the collection action is not required. However, the responsible official shall consider whether deferment of the debt is advisable to avoid possible overcollection. FAR 32.613(d).
- c) Deferment pending disposition of appeal may be granted when the contractor is a small business concern or is financially weak. FAR 32.613(e).
- d) The government grants deferments pursuant to a written agreement. FAR 32.613(h) specifies the necessary terms. According to FAR 32.613(i), if the contractor's appeal of the debt determination is pending when it requests deferment, any deferment/installment agreement must provide that the contractor will:
 - (1) prosecute the appeal diligently; and
 - (2) pay the debt in full when the appeal is decided or the parties agree on the debt amount.
- (3) e. The filing of an action under the contract's Disputes clause shall not suspend or delay collection of government claims. To obtain deferment of a debt determination that has been appealed under the Disputes clause, the contractor must present a bond or other collateral in the amount of the claim to the government. FAR 32.613(l).

D. Compromise Actions. DoD FMR, Vol. 10, Ch. 18

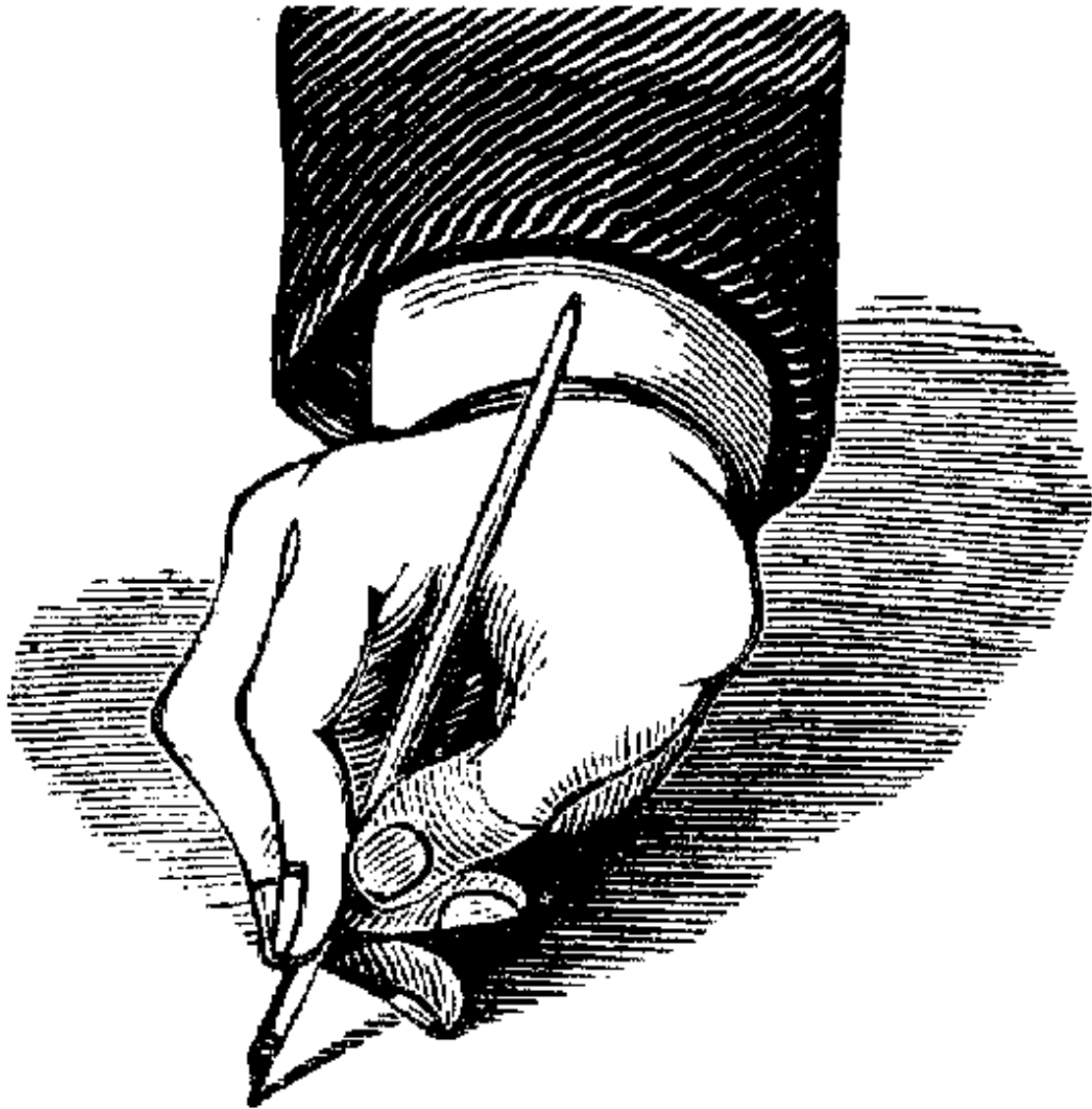
- 1. For debts under \$100,000 (excluding interest), if further collection is not practicable or would cost more than the amount of the recovery, the agency may compromise the debt or terminate or suspend further collection action. FAR 32.610.
- 2. For debts over \$100,000, DFAS must forward the debt to the Department of Justice (DOJ) for further action when the debt is not serviced by Department of Treasury. If DOJ determines that the debt is uncollectible, it must notify DFAS that the debt should be written off. DoD FMR, vol. 10, 180801.

E. Funds Received from the Contractor.

1. Miscellaneous Receipts Statute (MRS). 31 U.S.C. § 3302(b). Most funds received from a source outside the appropriations process must be deposited in the general fund of the United States Treasury.
2. Exceptions. Exceptions to the MRS are scattered throughout the United States Code and public law.
3. For more on the MRS and its exceptions, see General Accounting Office, Principles of Federal Appropriations Law, vol. II, ch. 6, § E (2d Ed. 1992); Major Timothy D. Matheny, Go On, Take the Money and Run: Understanding the Miscellaneous Receipts Statute and Its Exceptions, Army Lawyer, Sep. 1997, at 31.

Chapter 21

Contract Changes



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 21

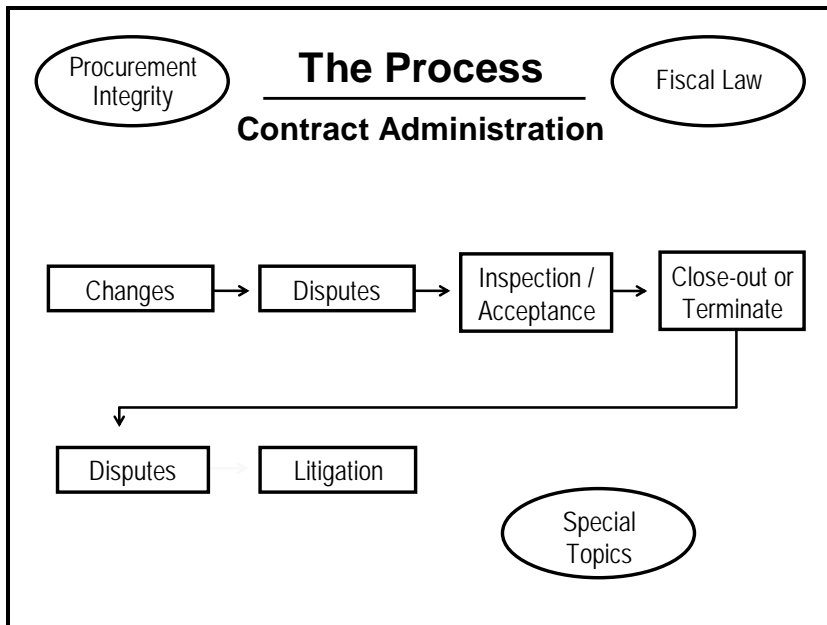
CONTRACT CHANGES

| | | |
|-------|---|----|
| I. | INTRODUCTION. | 1 |
| II. | REFERENCES. | 1 |
| III. | INTRODUCTION TO Contract Change. | 1 |
| IV. | FORMAL CONTRACT CHANGES. | 3 |
| A. | Types of Formal Changes. | 3 |
| B. | Requirements for Formal Changes. | 5 |
| C. | Purpose of the Change Clauses. | 6 |
| V. | SCOPE DETERMINATIONS. | 6 |
| VI. | CONSTRUCTIVE CHANGES. | 19 |
| VII. | TYPES OF CONSTRUCTIVE CHANGES. | 21 |
| VIII. | FISCAL IMPLICATIONS TO CONTRACT CHANGES. | 51 |
| IX. | CONTRACTOR NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS. | 57 |
| X. | CONCLUSION. | 60 |
| XI. | APPENDICES. | 61 |

CHAPTER 21

CONTRACT CHANGES

- I. INTRODUCTION.** Following this instruction, the student will understand:
- A. How to analyze change issues arising in government contracts.
 - B. How to make formal changes to government contracts.
 - C. How to recognize constructive changes in government contracts, and to resolve constructive change issues.
- II. REFERENCES.**
- A. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) Part 43, 50.1, 52.243-1 to 7, 52.233-1.
 - B. John Cibinic, Ralph Nash and James Nagle, Administration of Government Contracts, Chapter Four, Changes (4th Ed., 2006).
- III. INTRODUCTION TO CONTRACT CHANGE.**
- A. **Contract Change:** A contract changes refers to any written or formal change to the terms of a contract and some unwritten or "constructive" changes. Contract Changes are made to a contract after award, during contract administration.



B. Two Categories of Contract Change.

1. Formal Changes: Written & Intentional.
2. Constructive Changes: Informal, Unwritten & Unintentional.

C. Terminology of Contract Change.

1. **Contract Modification:** Any written change in the terms of a contract. FAR 2.101.
2. **Amendment:** Typically, if the government needs to modify a solicitation prior to award, it issues an amendment to the solicitation. FAR 14.208 and 15.206. Thus, solicitations are amended and contracts are modified. As such, an amendment is not a contract change. However, this term could be misused. It is wise to confirm that with your client that the amendment was to a solicitation and not to a contract.
3. **Change Order:** A written order, signed by the contracting officer, directing the contractor to make a change that the Changes clause authorizes the contracting officer to order without the contractor's consent. FAR 2.101.

4. **Supplemental Agreement:** A contract modification that is accomplished by the mutual action of the parties. FAR 2.101.

5. **Equitable Adjustment:** An equitable adjustment entitles the contractor to receive certain additional costs of performance plus a reasonable profit on those costs. Although the term refers to money, use of this term should alert the attorney that a formal or constructive contract change is the likely source of the request for an equitable adjustment. The major contract clauses calling for equitable adjustments are FAR 52.243-1 through -5. For a more thorough discussion, see the chapter on pricing adjustments in the contract attorneys course deskbook.

6. **Adjustment:** An adjustment entitles the contractor to recover certain additional performance costs, but not profit. The rationale for lack of profit is that there is no change in work and/or risk - only the period in which performance occurs. Although the term refers to money, use of this term should alert the attorney that a formal or constructive contract change is the likely source of the request for an adjustment. The major contract clauses calling for an adjustment are the Suspension of Work Clause in FAR 52.242-14 and the Government Delay of Work Clause in FAR 52.242-17. For a more thorough discussion, see the chapter on pricing adjustments in the contract attorneys course deskbook.

IV. FORMAL CONTRACT CHANGES.

A. TYPES OF FORMAL CHANGES.

1. Unilateral. A unilateral modification is a modification that is signed only by the Contracting Officer. FAR 43.103. The following are examples of typical unilateral contract modifications.
 - a. Administrative change. A unilateral written change that does not affect the substantive rights of the parties. Example: a change in paying office, a change in appropriation data, or a change in telephone number for an agency point of contact. FAR 43.101.

- b. Change order. A unilateral, written order, signed by the contracting officer, directing the contractor to make a change that a Changes Clause authorizes. FAR 43.103(b)(2). This is an order for a change in the contract, with or without the contractor's consent. This is a right to make a unilateral change vested in the Government, not the contractor. FAR 43.201.
 - c. Changes authorized by Other Contract Clauses. This includes:
 - i. The property clause: (This clause gives the contracting officer broad power to unilaterally increase, decrease, substitute, or even withdraw government-furnished property. See FAR 52.245-1),
 - ii. The options clauses: (These clauses give the contracting officer the ability to unilaterally extend the contract, or order additional supplies/services. See FAR 52.217-7 thru FAR 52.217-9), and
 - iii. The suspension of work clause (See FAR 52.242.14).
 - d. Termination Notices (See FAR 52.249-1 through FAR 52.249-12).
2. Bilateral modification (supplemental agreement).¹ A contract modification signed by the contractor and the contracting officer. FAR 43.103(a). Bilateral modifications are used for:
- a. Negotiating equitable adjustments that result from the issuance of a change order;
 - b. Definitizing a letter contract; and
 - c. Reflecting other agreements of the parties modifying the terms of a contract.

¹ Per FAR 43.102, there is a general government preference for bilateral modifications rather than unilateral modifications.

B. REQUIREMENTS FOR FORMAL CHANGES.

1. **Authority.** Only contracting officers acting within their authority may execute modifications. FAR 43.102(a); Hensel Phelps Constr. Co., GSBCA Nos. 14744, 14877, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,249; Daly Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 34322, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,469; *affirmed by* Daly Constr. V. Garrett, 5 F.3d 520 (Fed. Cir. 1993).
2. **Written.** Contracting officers shall issue modifications on SF 30, Amendment of Solicitation/Modification of Contract, under most circumstances. FAR 43.102; FAR 43.301; Kato Corp., ASBCA No. 51462, 2006-2 BCA ¶ 33,293 (oral modifications not reduced to writing are ineffective); Daly Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 34322, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,469; but see Robinson Contracting Co. v. United States, 16 Cl. Ct. 676 (1989) (SF 30 **not** required for proof of agreement, where Plaintiff's actions frustrated the execution of the SF 30). See Appendix D.
3. **Price.** The contracting officer must price modifications before executing them if this can be done without adversely affecting the interests of the government. If the price cannot be negotiated prior to execution, negotiate a maximum price. FAR 43.102(b).
4. **Before final payment.** The contracting officer may order a change at any time prior to final payment. Final payment means payment in the full amount of the contract balance owed, received, and accepted by the contractor after delivery of supplies or the performance of services, with the understanding that no further payments are due. Design & Prod., Inc. v. United States, 18 Cl. Ct. 168 (1989); Gulf & Western Indus., Inc. v. United States, 6 Cl. Ct. 742 (1984).
5. **Government Benefit.** The government must receive a benefit. Northrup Grumman Computing Systems, Inc., GSBCA No. 16367, 2006-2 BCA ¶ 33,324.
6. **Proper funds must be available.** FAR 43.105(a); DOD 7000.14-R, vol. 3, ch. 8, para. 080304.C-E; DFAS-IN Reg. 37-1, tbl. 8-7; AFI 65-601, vol. I, para. 6.3.7 and Figure 6.1.
7. **Scope.** Unilateral Changes must be within the scope of the applicable Changes Clause and within scope of the overall contract. Bilateral modifications must be within the scope of the overall contract.

C. PURPOSE OF THE CHANGE CLAUSES.

1. Provide operating flexibility for the Government through a unilateral right to order contract changes to meet changes in Government's needs.
2. Allow the contractor a means to propose contract changes to the government that may improve contract performance.
3. Provide Government authority to unilaterally order in-scope contract changes thereby avoiding the necessity to award a separate contract.
4. Provide the contractor with a means to file claims against the Government for additional work. *See*, John Cibinic, Jr., Ralph C. Nash, Jr., and James F. Nagle, Administration of Government Contracts, 380-381 (4th ed. 2006) [hereinafter Administration of Gov't Contracts].

V. SCOPE DETERMINATIONS

A. Unilateral versus Bilateral Changes.

1. Unilateral changes must be of a type specified in the applicable **Change Clause and within the General Scope of the Overall Contract**. The scope of the changes clause is limited to the language of the particular clause itself.
 - a. Major Clauses: Supplies, FAR 52.243-1; Services, FAR 52.243-1, Alt. 1; Construction, FAR 52.243-4; Commercial Items, FAR 52.212-4(c).
 - b. The Change Clauses differ in specific types of authorized changes.
 - (1) The Supply Changes Clause (FAR 52.243-1) permits in-scope changes to drawings, designs, and specifications *only* when the supplies are "specially manufactured for the Government," the Construction Changes Clause (FAR 52.243-4(a)) permits any in-scope change to the drawings, designs, and specifications.

(2) The Commercial Items clause uniquely permits only bilateral contract modifications.

(3) The construction changes clause uniquely permits acceleration of the performance of work.

2. Bilateral changes must be **within the general scope of the overall contract**. See, Administration of Government Contracts, 381.

B. Framework of a Scope Analysis – Within the General Scope of the Contract.

1. Overview. The Change Clauses specifically requires that all modifications be “within the scope of the contract.” FAR 52.243-1 and 52.243-4.

a) The phrase “within the scope of the contract” has been interpreted by the GAO, the BCAs, and the courts. This phrase refers to more than simply the language of the Change Clause and normally refers to other portions of the contract with more specific language such as the specifications, the performance work statement, etc.

b) **Two Forums**. The focus of the analysis differs slightly depending upon whether the case concerns a dispute or a protest. The two forum and two tests are summarized below:

(1) Bid Protest Forum. Scope of Competition Test. A 3rd party competitor is protesting to GAO that the government made an ‘out of scope’ contract modification that materially alters the nature of the contract. The protestor wants GAO to recommend that the government either recompete the original contract or separately compete a contract for the work that is the subject of the contract modification.

(2) Contract Dispute Forum. Contemplation of the Parties Test. Generally, an incumbent contractor is arguing the contract was modified in order to get additional money for work it performed. The incumbent contract may also seek to avoid performance of the “out of scope” work.

(3) Factors. Identical factors are examined and applied to both of the tests and forums above. The factors are discussed after the individual tests are discussed in the outline below.

2. Bid Protest Forum – GAO - Scope of Competition Test. The Government Accountability Office (GAO) will only review contract modifications if the protestor alleges the modification is out of scope.

a) Background to GAO's Jurisdiction.

(1) The Competition in Contracting Act (CICA) requires “full and open competition” in government procurements as obtained through the use of competitive procedures. 41 U.S.C. § 253a(a)(1)(A) (2000). GAO has jurisdiction to review situations where a competitor is alleging the government did not award the contract using the proper competitive procedures under CICA.

(2) Once a contract is awarded, GAO will generally not review modifications to that contract, because such matters are related to contract administration. They are beyond the scope of GAO's bid protest function. Bid Protest Regulations, 4.C.F.R. § 21.5(a) (2008).

(3) Exception: GAO will review contract modifications if the protestor alleges the modification is out of or beyond the scope of the original contract because, absent a valid sole-source determination, the work covered by the modification would be subject to the statutory requirements for competition. Engineering & Prof'l Servs., Inc., B-289331, Jan. 28, 2002, 2002 CPD ¶ 24 at 3.

c) Scope of Competition Test. The test used by GAO and COFC is:

(1) **Did the change so materially alter the contract that the *field of competition* for the contract, as modified, would be significantly different from that obtained for the original contract, as awarded?** Krykowski Const. Co., Inc. v. U.S., 94 Fed.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996); H.G. Properties A. LP v. U.S., 68 fed. Appx. 192 (Fed. Cir. 2003).

(2) Restated: **Should offerors (prior to award) have reasonably anticipated this type of Contract Change based upon what was in the solicitation?** A modification falls within the scope of the original procurement if potential offerors would have reasonably anticipated such a change prior to initial award. AT&T Communications, Inc. v. Wiltel, Inc., 1 F.3d 1201, 1205 (Fed. Cir. 1993)(stating a modification generally falls within the scope of the original procurement if potential bidders would have expected it to fall within the contract's changes clause).

(3) A modification falls within the scope of the original procurement if the solicitation for the original contract adequately advised offerors of the potential for the type of change found in the modification. DOR Biodefense, Inc.; Emergent BioSolutions, B-296358.3; B-298358.4, Jan. 31, 2006, 2006 CPD ¶ 35 at 6.

(4) To determine whether a modification triggers the competition requirements in CICA, GAO looks to whether there is a material difference between the modified contract and the contract that was originally awarded. MCI Telecomms. Corp., B-276659.2, Sept. 29, 1997, 97-2 CPD ¶ 90 at 7.

(5) Evidence of a material difference between the modification and the original contract is found by examining any changes:

(i) in the type of work,

(ii) in the performance period,

(iii) in the costs between the contract as awarded and as modified,
and

(iv) whether the agency had historically procured services under a separate contract. Atlantic Coast Contracting, Inc., B-288969.4, June 21, 2002, 2002 CPD ¶ 104 at 4; Hughes Space and Communications, Co., B-276040, 97-1 CPD ¶ 158.

c. **Result.** For protests: If GAO finds a contract modification is outside the scope of the contract, GAO may recommend that the government terminate the modification and then issue a solicitation for a separate contract requesting offerors for this work. See Poly-Pacific Technologies.

3. Contract Dispute Forum - Contemplation of the Parties.

a. In a **contract dispute**, the parties to the contract do not agree. The incumbent contractor is alleging that the government made an out-of-scope change to the contract.

b. Jurisdiction. The BCAs will have jurisdiction to review contract modifications through the Contract Disputes Act if the dispute "arises under" the contract per the Disputes Clause contained in the contract. FAR 33.215 and 52.233-1; 41 U.S.C. §§ 601 – 13).

c. Contemplation of the Parties Test.

(1) **Should the contract, as modified, “be regarded as having been fairly and reasonably within the contemplation of the parties when the contract was entered into?”** See Freund v. United States, 260 U.S. 60 (1922); Shank-Artukovich v. U.S., 13 Cl. Ct. 346 (1986); Air-A-Plane Corp. v. United States, 408 F.2d 1030 (Ct. Cl. 1969); GAP Instrument Corp., ASBCA No. 51658, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,358; Gassman Corp., ASBCA Nos. 44975, 44976, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,720.

(2) Restated: **Is the contract, as modified, for essentially the same work as the parties originally bargained for?**

d. **Result.** For disputes (contract claims to BCAs or COFC): If the court or board finds a contract modification to be outside the scope of the contract (a.k.a. “cardinal change”), then:

(1) the contractor is *not required to perform* the work and

(2) the contractor may be entitled to “*breach damages*.”

(3) Note: If the contract elects to perform the out of scope work, the contractor is limited to an equitable adjustment pursuant to the changes clause. The contractor may not receive breach damages. *See discussion on acceptance, below.*

(4) See Cities Service Helix v. U.S., 211 Ct. Cl. 222 (1976) (stating that if the government contract modification results in a material breach, then the contractor may elect to either perform or not to perform). *See Also Dow Chemical Co. v. U.S.*, 226 F.3d 1334 (Fed. Cir. 2000). E. L. Hamm & Assocs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43792, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,724 (holding that that because the Navy’s modification of a lease contract –which transformed the contract into a purchase contract—was beyond the scope of the contract, the contractor could be entitled to “breach damages”). *See also, Amertex Enter., Ltd. v. United States*, 1997 U.S. App. LEXIS 3301 (Fed. Cir. 1997), *cert. denied*, 522 U.S. 1075 (1998). Nevertheless, if the contractor elects to perform a contract modification, the contractor cannot later prevail on a contract claim for material breach of contract. Amertex Enter., Ltd. Once the contractor chooses to perform a modification, the contractor has, in fact, waived its material breach claim. Id.

C. Scope Determination Factors (Apply to Both Protest and Dispute Forum).

1. Four Major Scope Determination Factors: (1) Changes to function/type of work; (2) changes in quantity; (3) the number and cost of changes; and (3) changes to the time of performance. Each is discussed in turn below.
2. Changes in the Function of the Item or the Type of Work.
 - a. In determining the materiality of a change, the most important factor to consider is the extent to which a product or service, as changed, differs from the requirements of the original contract.

See E. L. Hamm & Assocs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43792, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,724 (change from lease to lease/purchase was out-of-scope); Matter of: Makro Janitorial Servs., Inc., B-282690, Aug. 18, 1999, 99-2 CPD ¶ 39 (task order for housekeeping outside scope of an IDIQ contract for preventive maintenance); Hughes Space and Communications Co., B-276040, May 2, 1997, 97-1 CPD ¶ 158; Aragona Constr. Co. v. United States, 165 Ct. Cl. 382 (1964); 30 Comp Gen. 34 (B-95069)(1950)(stating that in a construction contract to build a hospital, modifying the contract to add another building to serve as living quarters for hospital employees was outside the scope of the contract).

- b. Substantial changes in the work may be in-scope if the parties entered into a broadly conceived contract.

AT&T Communications, Inc. v. Wiltel, Inc., 1 F.3d 1201 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (more latitude allowed where the activity requires a state-of-the-art product); Engineering & Professional Svcs., Inc., B-289331, 2002 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 11, 2002 Comp. Gen. Proc. Dec. ¶ 24 (provision of technologically advanced, ruggedized, handheld computers was not beyond the scope of the original contract that called for a wide array of hardware and software and RFP indicated the engineering change proposal process would be utilized to implement technological advances); Paragon Sys., Inc., B-284694.2, 2000 CPD ¶ 114 (contract awarded for broad range of services given wide latitude when issuing a task order); Gen. Dynamics Corp. v. United States, 585 F.2d 457 (Ct. Cl. 1978).

- c. An agency's preaward statements that certain work was outside the scope of the contract can bind the agency if it later attempts to modify the contract to include the work. Octel Communications Corp. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12975-P, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,315 (appeal of decision granted on different grounds).

2. Changes in Quantity.

- a. Generally, the Changes clause permits increases and decreases in the quantity of minor items or portions of the work unless the variation alters the entire bargain.

See Connor Bros. Const. Co. v. U.S., 65 Fed. Cl. 657 (2005) (modification of ductwork in Army hospital was not an out-of-scope change). *Cf.* Lucas Aul, Inc., ASBCA No. 37803, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,609. *See also* Kentucky Bldg. Maint., Inc., ASBCA No. 50535, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,846 (holding that agency clause that supplements the standard Changes Clause (a Hospital Aseptic Management Services clause) was not illegal).

- b. Increases and decreases in the quantity of major items or portions of the work are generally considered to be outside the scope of a contract.

See, e.g., Valley Forge Flag Co., Inc., VABCA Nos. 4667, 5103, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,246 (stating that in a requirements contract, a major increase in the total quantity of flags ordered (over 109,000) was outside the scope of the contract); Liebert Corp., B-232234.5, Apr. 29, 1991, 91-1 CPD ¶ 413, 70 Comp. Gen. 448 (order in excess of maximum quantity was a material change). *But see* Master Security, Inc., B-274990, Jan. 14, 1997, 97-1 CPD ¶ 21 (tripling the number of work sites not out-of-scope change); Caltech Serv. Corp., B-240726.6, Jan. 22, 1992, 92-1 CPD ¶ 94, 1992 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 102 (increase in cargo tonnage on containerization requirements contract was within scope).

- c. Generally, increases are new procurements, and decreases are partial terminations for convenience. *Cf.* Lucas Aul, Inc., ASBCA No. 37803, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,609 (order was deductive change, not partial termination).

3. Number and Cost of Changes.

- a. Neither the number nor the cost of changes alone dictates whether modifications are beyond the scope of a contract. PCL Constr. Serv., Inc. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 745 (2000) (series of contract modifications did not constitute cardinal change); Triax Co. v. United States, 28 Fed. Cl. 733 (1993); Reliance Ins. Co. v. United States, 20 Cl. Ct. 715 (1990), *aff'd*, 931 F.2d 863 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (over 200 changes still held to be within scope); Coates Indus. Piping, Inc., VABCA No. 5412, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,479; Combined Arms Training Sys., Inc., ASBCA Nos. 44822, 47454, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,617; Bruce-Andersen Co., ASBCA No. 35791, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,871.

- b. However, the cumulative effect of a large number of changes is controlling. Air-A-Plane Corp. v. United States, 408 F.2d 1030 (Ct. Cl. 1969) (dispute involving over 1,000 changes sent back for trial on merits). See Caltech Serv. Corp., B-240726.6, Jan. 22, 1992, 92-1 CPD ¶ 94 at 5 (finding a 30 percent increase in workload volume is not beyond the scope of the original contract).
4. Changes in Time of Performance.
- a. The Supply Changes Clause does not provide for unilateral acceleration of performance. FAR 52.243-1.
 - b. Under the Services Changes Clause, the contracting officer unilaterally may change “when” a contractor is to perform but not the overall performance period. FAR 52.243-1, Alternate I.
 - c. The Construction Changes Clause authorizes unilateral acceleration of performance. FAR 52.243-4(a)(4).
 - d. Granting a contractor additional time to perform will normally be considered within scope. Saratoga Indus., Inc., B-247141, 92-1 CPD ¶ 397.
5. Acceptance of a Change.
- a. If a contractor performs under a change order, it may not subsequently argue that the change constituted a breach of contract. Ameritex Enter., Ltd. v. United States, 1997 U.S. App. LEXIS 3301 (Fed. Cir. 1997), *cert. denied*, 522 U.S. 1075 (1998); Silberblatt & Lasker, Inc. v. United States, 101 Ct. Cl. 54 (1944); C.E. Lowther & Son, ASBCA No. 26760, 85-2 BCA ¶ 18,149. Similarly, once the contractor waives the breach and performs, the Government is obligated to pay for the out-of-scope work. Mac-Well Co., ASBCA No. 23097, 79-2 BCA ¶ 13,895.

- b. Agreeing to a change does not convert an out-of-scope change into one that is within the scope of the contract for competition purposes; it simply means that the parties have agreed to process the change under the Changes clause. The contracting officer may not use modifications to avoid the statutory mandate for competition. Corbin Superior Composites, Inc., B-235019, July 20, 1989, 89-2 CPD ¶ 67, 1989 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 793.

- c. Reducing Work. A bi-lateral modification for a reduced scope and repricing of work operates as an accord and satisfaction as to the subject matter of the modification. It bars any claim of breach or equitable adjustment arising from the modification. Corners and Edges, Inc. , CBCA nos. 693, 762, 23 Sept 2008. Trataros Construction, Inc. v. General Services Administration, GSBCA 15344, 03-1 BCA ¶ 32,251, at 159,459. Cygnus Corp. v. United States, 63 Fed. Cl. 150, 156 (2004), aff'd, 177 Fed Appx. 186 (Fed.Cir. 2006)(finding no government liability arising from bi-lateral modification eliminating database from option year of contract and repricing option year work.)

D. Scope Determinations & The Duty to Continue Performance.

1. In-Scope Change: The contractor has a duty to continue performance pending the resolution of a dispute over an **in-scope change**.

(a) *See* FAR 52.233-1(i), Disputes (stating the “Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract, pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action *arising under the contract*, and comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer”). *See* Appendix A. “Arising under the contract” refers to an in-scope change. *See also* FAR 52.243-1(e), Changes-Fixed Price, and 33.213.

(b) Exceptions to the duty to proceed.

(i) The government withholds progress payments improperly. Sterling Millwrights v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 49 (1992). *But see* D.W. Sandau Dredging, ENG BCA No. 5812, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,064 (holding two late payments of 12 days and 19 days did not discharge the contractor from its duty to continue performance where contractor did not demonstrate the late payments had impacted its ability to perform).

(ii) Continued performance is impractical. United States v. Spearin, 248 U.S. 132 (1918) (government refused to provide safe working conditions); Xplo Corp., DOT BCA No. 1289, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,125.

(iii) The government fails to provide clear direction to the contractor. James W. Sprayberry Constr., IBCA No. 2130, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,645 (contractor justified to await clarification of defective specifications). *Cf.* Starghill Alternative Energy Corp., ASBCA Nos. 49612, 49732, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,708 (a one-month government delay in executing modification did not excuse contractor from proceeding).

2. Out-of-Scope Change: A contractor has no duty to proceed diligently with performance pending resolution of any dispute concerning a change **outside the scope** of the contract (“cardinal change”).

a. See FAR 52.233-1(i). Alliant Techsys., Inc. v United States, 178 F.3d 1260 (Fed. Cir. 1999); CTA Inc., ASBCA No. 47062, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,947; Airprep Tech., Inc. v. United States, 30 Fed. Cl. 488 (1994). Cities Service Helix v. U.S., 211 Ct. Cl. 222 (1976) (stating that if the government issues a modification that is outside the scope of the contract, then the contractor may elect not to perform the work covered by that modification).

b. Cardinal Change: An out-of-scope change is also called a “**cardinal change.**” It is a change to the contract that is so profound that it is not redressable under the contract and thus renders the Government in breach. Thomson and Pratt Insurance Assoc., Inc., GSBCA No. 15979-ST, 2005-1 BCA ¶ 32,944.

3. *Note:* The Alternate Disputes clause requires the contractor to continue to perform pending final resolution of *any* request for relief, claim, appeal, or action arising under or relating to the contract. *See* FAR, 52.233-1, Alternate I. *See* Appendix B. *See also* DFARS 233.215 (mandating use of this alternate clause under certain circumstances).

E. Examples

1. In FY1, the Army issued a task-order ID/IQ contract with a base year and two 1 year options. The Performance Work Statement (PWS) stated the contract required the contractor to provide vehicle leases for government non-tactical and up-armored vehicles in Afghanistan. The contractor was responsible for all routine and unscheduled maintenance on the vehicles. The contract provided a vehicle lease price list (VLPL) of five different makes and models of armored vehicles that the contractor was to provide, if the client ordered them. The contract stated the VLPL would be updated and was subject to change. Later, in FY1, the Army issued a formal unilateral no-cost modification (P0003) to the contract adding four unarmored vehicles to the list of vehicles required to be provided. A competitor, OLG, protested the modification arguing that the Army made an out-of-scope change to the contract that should have been recompeted as a separate requirement under the Competition in Contracting Act (CICA).

Q: Is P0003 an in-scope or out of scope change?

A: Formal unilateral changes must be within the contract's changes clause and within the general scope of the contract. To examine whether a modification triggers CICA, GAO will look at whether there is a material difference between the modified contract and the contract as it was originally awarded. Here, the change is within both the changes clause and the general scope of the contract for two reasons. First, the contract expressly states that the VLPL is subject to change. Second, the contract expressly states that the contractor will provide both "non-tactical" and "up-armored" vehicles. The term "non-tactical" vehicles, when used in combination with "up-armored" vehicles, can reasonably be construed to refer to unarmored vehicles. If NTV referred only NTV with armor, there would have been no logical reason for the RFP to refer to NTV at all, since the category of "up-armored" vehicles reasonably would have included armored NTVs. The purpose and the nature of the original contract were not changed by the modification. Overseas Lease Group, Inc., B-402111, Comp. Gen., January 19, 2010.

VI. CONSTRUCTIVE CHANGES.

A. General Overview.

1. Definition. A “constructive change” occurs when the government changes the work required under the contract, but the government fails to follow the procedures of the Changes clause. Administration of Gov’t Contracts, Cibinic, Nash & Nagle (2006, p. 427). These changes are often unwritten and unintentional.

2. Purpose. This theory also allows the government to compensate the contractor when the cost of the contract work increases due to a constructive change. The theory of constructive changes applies to construction, supply, and services contracts.

(1) If the contractor files a contract claim arguing that its costs have increased due to a constructive change, then it must prove the elements of this basis of recovery.

(2) Although less common, this theory also permits the government to decrease the contract price if the contract work is constructively changed, resulting in a decreased contract cost. Administration of Government Contracts, 426-430.

(3) Constructive contract change claims most often arise where the contracting officer has not issued a formal change order; the contracting officer has contractual authority unilaterally to alter the contractor’s duties under the agreement; the contractor’s performance requirements are enlarged; and extra work is not volunteered but results from direction of the government’s officer. Len Co. & Assocs. v. United States, 385 F.2d 438, 443 (Ct. Cl. 1967).

(4) Under the circumstances in (3), a contractor is entitled to receive an equitable adjustment in contract price for any increase in its costs that it is required to perform. The measure of such an adjustment is the difference between the reasonable cost of performing without the change and the reasonable cost of performing with the change. Celesco Industries, Inc., ASBCA No. 22251, 7901 BCA ¶ 13,604 at 66,683; accord Sauer, Inc. v. Danzig, 224 F.3d 1340, 1348 (Fed. Cir. 2000).

B. Three Basic Elements of a Constructive Change. Note that these three elements are generally applicable to all constructive change claims. Nevertheless, there are additional elements that the contractor must prove depending upon the “type” of constructive change alleged (See below). The Sherman R. Smoot Corp., ASBCA Nos. 52173, 53049, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,252 (appeal later sustained on other aspects of the case); Green’s Multi-Services, Inc., EBCA No. C-9611207, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,649; Dan G. Trawick III, ASBCA No. 36260, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,222.

1. A change occurred either as the result of government action or inaction. Kos Kam, Inc., ASBCA No. 34682, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,546;
2. The contractor did not perform voluntarily. Jowett, Inc., ASBCA No. 47364, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,110; and
3. The change resulted in an increase (or a decrease) in the cost or the time of performance. Advanced Mech. Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 38832, 94-3 BCA ¶ 26,964.

C. Five Types of Constructive Changes:

1. Contract misinterpretation by the government;
2. Defective specifications;
3. Governmental Interference and Failure to Cooperate;
4. Failure to disclose vital information (superior knowledge); and
5. Constructive acceleration.

VII. TYPES OF CONSTRUCTIVE CHANGES.

A. CONTRACT "MIS" INTERPRETATION BY THE GOVERNMENT.

1. General. This type of constructive change occurs when the contractor and the government disagree on the work the contract specifications require. The main issue is how to interpret the terms of the contract.

(a) Often, the government insists that the contractor perform the contract in a certain—usually more expensive—manner despite the contractor’s assertion that this manner is not required by the contract. Thus, the contractor argues in its constructive change claim that the government *misinterpreted* the contract’s requirements resulting in additional costs.

(b) Since a contractor has a general duty to perform in-scope contract changes, the contractor and government will learn at a much later date whether the government’s interpretation was, in fact, a constructive change or not—assuming the contractor files an appeal under the Contract Disputes Act. Administration of Government Contracts, 431 - 5.

(c) A judge must interpret a contract when the parties do not agree on the meaning of its terms. Contract interpretation is a matter of law. Fruin-Colon Corp. v. United States, 912 F.2d 1426 (Fed. Cir. 1990). The main issues include:

(1) Did the government’s interpretation originate from an employee with authority? See J.F. Allen Co. & Wiley W. Jackson Co., a Joint Venture v. United States, 25 Cl. Ct. 312 (1992).

(2) Did the contractor perform work that the contract did not require?

(3) Did the contractor timely notify the government of the impact of the government’s interpretation? Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Government Contract Changes, 11-2 (2d ed. 1989).

2. Contract Interpretation Framework – Overview of the Three Steps.

(a) Step One: Intrinsic Evidence. Determine the original intent of the parties by the language of the contract. If this fails to resolve the issue, then:

(b) Step Two: Extrinsic Evidence. Determine the original intent of the parties by examining the facts and circumstances surrounding contract formation and performance. If this fails to resolve the issue, then

(c) Step Three: Risk Allocation. Apply *contra proferentem* and the duty to seek clarification.

(d) *Note:* The contractor must continue performance even if it does not agree with the contracting officer's interpretation, absent a material (i.e. outside the scope of the contract) breach. *See* FAR 52.233-1 ("Disputes"); Aero Prods. Co., ASBCA No. 44030, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,868.

3. Step One: Seeking Original Intent - Intrinsic Evidence of Intent

(a) Contract interpretation begins with the language of the written agreement. In determining the objective intent of the parties, first examine the terms of the contract. Harper/Nielsen Dillingham Builders, ASBCA Nos. 53211,53363, 06-1 BCA ¶ 33,185.² U.S. Eagle, Inc., ASBCA No. 41093, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,371.

² In Harper/Nielsen, the ASBCA (Board) analyzed this contract dispute under the generally-accepted principles of contract interpretation. The dispute (ambiguity) involved whether a Navy contract to remodel a parking garage required pipe fittings to be made of ordinary steel or galvanized steel. While contractor argued that the contract required ordinary steel, the Navy argued that contract required galvanized steel. The contractor installed galvanized fittings and then filed a claim for an equitable adjustment based on the Navy's misinterpretation of the contract. In resolving the dispute, the Board first referred to the plain language of the contract to determine whether the contract language was ambiguous. The Board observed that the disputed contract specification mentioned the words "piping" and "fittings" separately. Paragraph 2.1.1 of this specification states, "steel *piping* shall be hot dipped galvanized Schedule 40 [steel]" (emphasis added). This paragraph later states that "sprinkler pipe and fittings shall be steel." The Board interpreted these two sentences to mean that while piping must be galvanized steel, *the fittings may be non-galvanized steel*. The Board further stated that the "appellant's interpretation [was] the only reasonable interpretation." The Board supported its argument by stating that the disputed specification does not treat the words "piping" and "fittings" as synonyms. Rather, this paragraph refers to piping and fittings as separate terms. The ASBCA concluded that because the Navy unreasonably interpreted the contract to require the contractor to install galvanized steel fittings, the Navy thereby constructively changed the contract. Consequently, the Board sustained the contractor's claim for an equitable adjustment for that contract change.

(b) Interpret the contract as a whole. Coast Federal Bank, FSB v. United States, 323 F.3d 1035 (Fed. Cir. 2003); M.A. Mortenson Co. v. United States, 29 Fed. Cl. 82 (1993), 1993 U.S. Claims LEXIS 122 (courts must give reasonable meaning to all parts of the contract and not render any portions of the contract meaningless); Hol-Gar Mfg. Corp. v. United States, 351 F.2d 972 (Ct. Cl. 1965); Bay Ship & Yacht Co., DOT BCA No. 2913, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,236 (contract must be read as a whole, giving reasonable meaning to all its terms); Sheladia Constr. Corp., VABCA No. 3313, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,111 (contractor may not ignore requirement merely because it is not stated in normal section of the specifications). Oakland Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 43986, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,867 (prime contractor responsible for omission in bid caused by subcontractor's failure to bid on contract requirement because subcontractors only received portion of specification from prime contractor).

(1) Give effect to all provisions and do not render any term of the contract meaningless, useless, ineffective, or superfluous. GPA-I, Ltd. P'ship. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 762 (2000); B.D. Click Co. v. United States, 614 F.2d 748 (Ct. Cl. 1980); Jamsar, Inc. v. United States, 442 F.2d 930 (Ct. Cl. 1971); Rex Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 45874, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,370; Elec. Genie, Inc., ASBCA No. 40535, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,307. A phrase gathers meaning from the words around it - "noscitur a sociis." General Dynamics Land Sys., Inc., 540 U.S. at 596.

(2) Interpret a contract in harmony with its principal purpose. Maddox Indus. Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 36091, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,037; *citing Restatement (Second) of Contracts* § 203(a) (1981).

(3) "The plain, obvious and rational meaning of a statute is always to be preferred to any curious, narrow, hidden sense that nothing but the exigency of a hard case and the ingenuity and study of an acute and powerful intellect would discover." Lynch v. Alworth-Stephens Co., 267 U.S. 364, 370 (1925).

(c) Defining Terminology.

(1) If the contract defines a term, one may not substitute an alternate definition. Sears Petroleum & Transp. Corp., ASBCA No. 41401, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,414.

(2) Give ordinary terms their plain and ordinary meaning in defining the rights and obligations of the parties. T.E.C. Constr. v. VA Med. Ctr., VABCA No. 3965, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,833; Elden v. United States, 617 F.2d 254 (Ct. Cl. 1980); Alive & Well Int'l, Inc., ASBCA No. 51850, 2000-1 BCA ¶ 30,778 (since contract left the term “discover” undefined, interpret in accordance with the ordinary meaning).

(3) Give technical terms their technical meanings. Specialized or trade meanings take precedence over “lay” meanings. See Western States Constr. Co. v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 818 (1992) (criticized by later ASBCA case on factual basis; no criticism of legal analysis employed by the Court).

(4) Give scientific and engineering terms their recognized technical meanings unless the context or an applicable usage indicates a contrary intention. American Mechanical, Inc., ASBCA No. 52033, 03-1 BCA ¶ 32,134; Tri-Cor, Inc. v. United States, 458 F.2d 112 (Ct. Cl. 1972); Coastal Drydock & Repair Corp., ASBCA No. 31894, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,618.

(5) Similarly, give terms unique to government contracts their technical meanings. Gen. Builders Supply Co. v. United States, 409 F.2d 246 (Ct. Cl. 1969) (meaning of “equitable adjustment”).

(d) Lists of items.

(1) Lists are presumed exclusive unless qualified. J.A. Jones Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 6164, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,482; Santa Fe Engr's, Inc., ASBCA No. 48331, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,505.

(2) Nonexclusive lists are presumed to include only similar, unspecified items. “Words, like men, are known by the company they keep. The meaning of a doubtful word may be ascertained by reference to the meaning of words with which they are associated.” C.W. Roberts Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 12348, 68-1 BCA ¶ 6819. See also United States v. Turner Constr. Co., 819 F.2d 283 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (unreasonable to include unmentioned item in a list where unmentioned item was most expensive component).

(e) Order of Precedence Clauses.

(1) To resolve inconsistencies, government contracts often contain order of precedence clauses to establish priorities among different sections of the contract. A matter covered by the order of precedence clause will generally be resolved in a manner prescribed by the clause. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009; Hensel Phelps Constr. Co. v. United States, 886 F.2d 1296, 1299 (Fed. Cir. 1989). See, e.g., FAR 52.214-29, Order of Precedence-Sealed Bidding; FAR 52.215-8, Order of Precedence – Uniform Contract Format; FAR 52.236-21, Specifications and Drawings for Construction.

(2) If the order of precedence clause does not resolve the inconsistency, the common law rule is that a specific term takes precedence over a general term. Restatement (Second) of Contracts, § 203 (1981).

(3) **General Rule:**

i. **Construction:** Specifications trump Drawings. FAR 52.236-21.

ii. **Non-Construction:** Drawings trump Specifications. FAR 52.215-8.

(3) Order of Precedence in Construction Contracts:

i. If mentioned in the specifications, but not the drawings, follow the specifications.

ii. If mentioned in the drawings, but not in the specifications, following the drawings.

iii. If the specifications and the drawings conflict, follow the specifications. FAR 52.236-21.

- iv. Patent Ambiguity in Construction Contracts. Some cases hold that in construction contracts, a contractor may rely on the order of precedence clause to resolve a discrepancy between the specifications and drawings even if a discrepancy is patent or known to the contractor prior to bid submission. Manuel Bros., Inc. v. U.S., 55 Fed. Cl. 8 (2002); Hensel Phelps Constr. Co. v. United States, 886 F.2d 1296 (Fed. Cir. 1989); C Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 38098, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,923; Hull-Hazard, Inc., ASBCA No. 34645, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,173. See also Shah Constr. Co. Inc., ASBCA No. 50411, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,330. Other construction cases hold that if a discrepancy is patent, the contractor has the duty to clarify. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009 (finding, in part, that the “existence of a patent ambiguity in itself raises the duty of inquiry regardless of the reasonableness of the contractor’s interpretation”). The Order of Precedence Clause for construction specifically instructs contractors to clarify any discrepancy in the figures, drawings or specifications with the contracting officer. FAR 52.236021.

- v. Omissions. In construction contracts, the DFARS states that the contractor shall perform omitted details of work that are necessary to carry out the intent of the drawings and specifications or that are performed customarily. DFARS 252.236-7001; M.A. Mortenson Co., ASBCA No. 50383, 2000-2 BCA ¶ 30,936 (holding that contractor should have known elevator would require rail support columns despite their omission from drawings); Single Ply Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 42168, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,032; Hull-Hazard, Inc., ASBCA No. 34645, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,173.

4. Step Two - Seeking Original Intent - Extrinsic Evidence of Intent.

(a) Do not consider extrinsic evidence if the contract terms are clear. See Coast Federal Bank, FSB v. United States, 323 F.3d 1035 (Fed. Cir. 2003)(finding that a contract drawing was clear, so no extrinsic evidence allowed to interpret the drawing); D&L Constr. Co., AGBCA No. 97-205-1, 2000-1 BCA ¶ 31,001; Skyline Technical Constr. Servs., ASBCA No. 51076, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,888 (since contract was clear, no extrinsic evidence allowed).

(b) Definition. Extrinsic evidence is external evidence, or that which is not contained in the body of a contract, but which is available from other sources such as statements by the parties and other circumstances surrounding the transaction. Black's Law Dictionary, 1999. For constructive changes, there are four categories of extrinsic evidence discussed below that courts routinely examine: (1) Pre-award communications, (2) Actions during contract performance, (3) prior course of dealings, and (4) Custom or trade usage/Industry Standard.

(c) Preaward communications.

(1) The Explanation to Prospective Offerors clause does not prevent parties from using clarifying statements by "authorized" officials to interpret an ambiguous provision. FAR 52.214-6 (sealed bidding); Max Drill, Inc. v. United States, 192 Ct. Cl. 608, 427 F.2d 1233 (1970); Turner Constr. Co. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11361, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,115, 1992 GSBCA LEXIS 176 (contractor could not rely on preaward statement that was inconsistent with terms of solicitation); Community Heating & Plumbing Co., ASBCA No. 37981, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,870.

(2) Statements made at pre-bid conferences may bind the government. Cessna Aircraft Co., ASBCA No. 48118, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,560, *reversed, in part, by Dalton v. Cessna Aircraft Co.*, 98 F.3d 1298 (Fed. Cir. 1996)(finding that the Navy's statements at a pre-bid conference did not resolve a patent contractual ambiguity so the contractor had a duty to clarify); Grumman Data Systems v. Dalton, 88 F.3d 990 (Fed. Cir. 1996)(finding that the both the solicitation and GSA's answer at to an offeror's inquiry on the meaning of a solicitation provision was patently ambiguous, thus raising the duty to clarify); Gen. Atronics Corp., ASBCA No. 46784, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,112(finding the contractor provided the Navy with a matrix of priced options clearly indicating that the options were not part of the contractor's proposal but separately priced "options" the Navy could purchase). Cf. Orbas & Assoc., ASBCA No. 33359, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,742 (contractor who did not attend pre-bid conference was not bound by explanation of provision where solicitation should have explained provision).

(3) Preaward acceptance of contractor's cost-cutting suggestion was binding on the government. See Pioneer Enters., Inc., ASBCA No. 43739, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,395.

(d) Actions during contract performance. Words and other conduct are interpreted in the light of all the circumstances, and if the principal purpose of the parties is ascertainable it is given great weight. Restatement, Second, Contracts § 202(4)(1981).

(1) To quote one judge, “in this inquiry, the greatest help comes, not from the bare text of the original contract, but from external indications of the parties’ joint understanding, contemporaneously and later, of what the contract imported. [H]ow the parties act under the arrangement, before the advent of controversy is often more revealing than the dry language of the written agreement by itself.” Macke Co. v. U.S., 467 F.2d 1323 (1972);

(2) Cases. Drytech, Inc., ASBCA No. 41152, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,809 (contractor performed for over two years without objection that the work was beyond the scope of the original contract); Tri-States Serv. Co., ASBCA No. 37058, 90-3 BCA ¶ 22,953 (after finding no express language in the contract and no pre-award conduct of the parties, the court found the pre-dispute invoices of the parties over several years indicated that mesh bags were not compensable as an item of laundry).

(e) Prior course of dealing.

(1) To determine the meaning of the current contract, consider a prior course of dealing between the parties in earlier contracts. Superstaff, Inc., ASBCA No. 46112, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,574 (finding it was reasonable for the contractor to rely on past and contemporaneous practice when the contract was silent as to the location of the staging area and directed the contractor to familiarize itself with the job-functions of inhouse personnel); American Transp. Line, Ltd., ASBCA No. 44510, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,156; L.W. Foster Sportswear Co. v. United States, 405 F.2d 1285 (Ct. Cl. 1969).

(2) The parties must be aware of the prior course of dealing. Metric Constructors v. NASA, 169 F.3d 747 (Fed. Cir. 1999); Blake Const. Co. v. U.S., 28 Fed. Cl. 672 (1993); Gresham & Co. v. United States, 470 F.2d 542 (Ct. Cl. 1972); T. L. Roof & Assocs., ASBCA No. 38928; 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,895; Snowbird Indus., ASBCA No. 33027, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,065.

(3) Prior waivers of specifications must be numerous or consistent to vary an unambiguous term. LP Consulting Group v. U.S., 66 Fed. Cl. 238 (2005); Cape Romain Contractors, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 50557, 52282, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,697 (one waiver does not establish a course of dealing); Kvaas Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 45965, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,513 (four waivers not enough); Gen. Sec. Servs. Corp. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11381, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,897 (no waiver based on waivers in six previous contracts because GSA sought to enforce requirement in current contract).

(f) Custom or trade usage/industry standard.

(1) Parties may not use custom and trade usage to contradict unambiguous terms. All Star / SAB Pacific, J.V., ASBCA No. 50856, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,214; Riley Stoker Corp., ASBCA No. 37019, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,143 (contract terms were ambiguous); Harold Bailey Painting Co., ASBCA No. 27064, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,601 (used to define “spot painting”).

(2) Parties may resort to custom and trade usage to explain or define ambiguous terms. Metric Constructors v. NASA, 169 F.3d 747 (Fed. Cir. 1999); PCL Constr. Serv. V. U.S., 47 Fed. Cl. 745 (2000).

(3) Parties also may use an industry standard or trade usage to show that a term is ambiguous. See Metric Constr., Inc. v. Nat’l Aeronautics and Space Admin., 169 F.3d 747 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (contractor reasonably relied on trade practice and custom to show that the specifications were susceptible to different interpretations); Gholson, Byars, & Holmes Constr. Co. v. United States, 351 F.2d 987 (Ct. Cl. 1965); Western States Constr. Co. v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 818 (1992).

(4) The party asserting the industry standard or trade usage bears the burden of proving the existence of the standard or usage. Roxco, Ltd., ENG BCA No. 6435, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,687; DWS, Inc., Debtor in Possession, ASBCA No. 29743, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,404.

5. Step Three – Apply the Rules of Risk Allocation for Ambiguous Language.

(a) **Ambiguity.** If a contract is susceptible to more than one reasonable interpretation after application of the aforementioned rules, it contains an ambiguity. Whether a contract provision is ambiguous is a question of law. An ambiguity is not created by interpretations that are merely arguable, conceivable or possible. GPA-I, Ltd. P’ship. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 762 (2000); Metric Constr., Inc. v. Nat’l Aeronautics and Space Admin., 169 F.3d 747 (Fed. Cir. 1999); American Transport Line, Ltd., ASBCA No. 44510, 93-3 BCA(CCH) ¶26,156 (1993). NOTE: The risk allocation principles do not apply to ambiguities in procurement regulations themselves. Santa Fe Eng’rs, Inc. v. United States, 801 F.2d 379 (Fed. Cir. 1986).

(b) **Risk Allocation Rules.** If a contract is ambiguous, it is then necessary to apply risk allocation principles to determine which party is ultimately responsible. The two rules of risk allocation are:

(i) Contra Proferentem, and

(ii) Duty to Seek Clarification.

(c) **Contra Proferentem (latin for “against the one bringing forth”).**

(1) If one cannot resolve an ambiguity under the contract interpretation rules, construe the ambiguity against the drafter. Keeter Trading Co., Inc. v. U.S., 79 Fed. Cl. 243 (2007); Rotech Healthcare v. U.S., 71 Fed. Cl. 393 (2006); Emerald Maint., Inc., ASBCA No. 33153, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,907.

(2) “[Contra proferentem] puts the risk of ambiguity, lack of clarity, and absence of proper warning on the drafting party which could have forestalled the controversy; it pushes the drafters toward improving contractual forms; and it saves contractors from hidden traps not of their own making.” Veit and Co. v. U.S., 56 Fed. Cl. 30 (2003); Sturm v. United States, 421 F.2d 723 (Ct. Cl. 1970).

(3) **Four Elements of Contra Proferentem.** Construe the language against the drafter, if:

(i) **The contractor’s interpretation is reasonable.** However, a statement by a contractor that the contract, read as a whole, supports its interpretation is not evidence that its interpretation is reasonable. Mere allegations made by a contractor, unsupported by evidence of probative value, are insufficient to prevail. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009. See Teague Bros. Transfer & Storage Co., Inc., ENG BCA Nos. 6312, 6313, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,333 (the board decided that the contractor’s interpretation of the latent ambiguity was reasonable); J.C.N. Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 42263, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,095 (contractor interpretation unreasonable).

(ii) **The opposing party must be the drafter.** This is usually the government, but a contractor may also be the drafter. See Canadian Commercial Corp. v. United States, 202 Ct. Cl. 65 (1973); TRW, Inc., ASBCA No. 27299, 87-3 BCA ¶ 19,964; Prince George Ctr., Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12289, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,889; and

(iii) **The non-drafting party must have detrimentally relied on its interpretation in submitting its bid.** The requirement for prebid reliance underscores the contractor's obligation to establish actual damage as a prerequisite to recovery. Evidence at the time of bidding is thus crucial to proving reliance. American Transport Line, Ltd., ASBCA No. 44510, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,156 (1993)(finding no evidence to support the genuineness of a contractor's self-serving statement of prebid reliance on a contract interpretation); Fruin-Colon Corp. v. United States, 912 F.2d 1426 (Fed. Cir. 1990)(finding that an interpretation first developed under a postaward audit, or based upon an after-award attempt to cut performance cost, cannot substitute for prebid reliance); National Med. Staffing, Inc., ASBCA No. 45046, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,483 (for contra proferentem to apply, the contractor must demonstrate that it relied upon the interpretation in submitting its bid, not merely that it relied during performance); Food Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 46176, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,892.

(iv). **The ambiguity is not Patent.** In general, if the ambiguity is patent, the contractor has a duty to seek clarification.

(d) Duty to Seek Clarification.

(1) Do not apply contra proferentem if an ambiguity is patent and the contractor failed to seek clarification. See Triax Pacific, Inc. v. West, 130 F.3d 1469 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (holding that contractor should have recognized the patent ambiguity and sought clarification before submitting its bid). The existence of a patent ambiguity in itself raises the duty of inquiry regardless of the reasonableness of the contractor's interpretation. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009.

(2) The law establishes the duty of clarification in order to ensure that the government will have the opportunity to clarify its requirements and thereby provide a level playing field to all competitors for the contract before contract award, and to avoid litigation after contract award. A contractor proceeds at its own risk if it relies upon its own interpretation of contract terms that it believes to be ambiguous instead of asking the government for a clarification. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009; Community Heating & Plumbing Co. v. Kelso, 987 F.2d 1575 (Fed. Cir. 1993); Nielsen-Dillingham Builders, J.V. v. United States, 43 Fed. Cl. 5 (1999).

(3) Latent v. Patent Ambiguity.

(i) Latent Ambiguity. An ambiguity that does not readily appear in the language of a document, but instead arises from a collateral matter when the document's terms are applied or executed. Black's Law Dictionary, 1999.

Example: Foothill Eng'g., IBCA No. 3119-A, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,732 (the misplacement of a comma in a figure was a latent ambiguity and did not trigger a duty to inquire, because it was not obvious and apparent in the context of a reasonable, but busy, bidder).

(ii) Patent Ambiguity. An ambiguity that clearly appears on the face of a document, arising from the language, itself. Black's Law Dictionary, 1999.

1. An ambiguity is patent if it would have been apparent to a reasonable person in the claimant's position or if the provisions conflict on their face. Patent ambiguities are "obvious, gross, (or) glaring." Grumman Data Systems Corp., 88 F.3d 990 (1996); H&M Moving, Inc. v. United States, 499 F.2d 660, 671 (Ct. Cl. 1974). See White v. Edsall Constr. Co., Inc., 296 F.3d 1081 (2002) (holding that a note disclaiming the government's warranty on one of several dozen design drawings was patent). "A patent ambiguity is one which is so clearly evident, obvious or glaring that a reasonable man would be impelled by his own good sense, if not his conscience, to ask a question." American Transport Line, Ltd., ASBCA No. 44510, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,156 (1993).

2. A determination of what constitutes a patent ambiguity is made on a case-by-case basis given the facts in each contractual situation. Whether an ambiguity is patent or latent is a question of law. Wilhelm Constr. Co., CBCA 719, Aug. 13, 2009; Interstate General Gov't Contractors, Inc. v. Stone, 980 F.2d 1433 (Fed. Cir. 1992); H.B. Zachry Co. v. United States, 28 Fed. Cl. 77 (1993), *aff'd*, 17 F.3d 1443 (Fed. Cir. 1994)(table). See Hensel Phelps Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 49716, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,925 (holding that an objective standard applied to the latent/patent ambiguity determination).

3. Cases. Technical Sys. Assoc., Inc., GSBCA Nos. 13277-COM, 14538-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,684; Gaston & Assocs., Inc. v. United States, 27 Fed. Cl. 243 (1993) (latent ambiguity); See also Pascal & Ludwig Eng'r, ENG BCA No. 6377, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,135 (indicating that the ratio of the dollar amount at issue due to the ambiguity versus the contract price is a persuasive factor in determining whether the ambiguity is patent).

B. DEFECTIVE SPECIFICATIONS.

1. General.

a. Courts and boards hold the government liable for defects in specifications based upon two theories of recovery:

- (1) The implied warranty the government gives for the use of “**design**” specifications (see Section VII below for definition) in a contract.
- (2) The principles of impracticability/impossibility of performance when the contractor incurs increased costs while attempting to conform to defective performance specifications.

b. Causation. This type of constructive change is deemed to have occurred at the time of contract award on the premise that the contracting officer had an immediate duty to issue an order correcting the defective specifications.

c. **Four Types of Specifications.** Aleutian Constr. v. United States, 24 Cl. Ct. 372 (1991); Monitor Plastics Co., ASBCA No. 14447, 72-2 BCA ¶ 9626.

(1) **DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS** set forth precise measurements, tolerances, materials, tests, quality control, inspection requirements, and other specific information. See Apollo Sheet Metal, Inc., v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 210 (1999); Q.R. Sys. North, Inc., ASBCA No. 39618, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,793 (specified roofing material inadequate for roof type).

(2) **PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS** set forth the operational characteristics desired for the item. In such specifications, design, measurements, and other specific details are neither stated nor considered important as long as the performance requirement is met. See Apollo Sheet Metal, Inc., v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 210 (1999); Interwest Constr. v. Brown, 29 F.3d 611 (Fed. Cir. 1994).

(3) **PURCHASE DESCRIPTIONS** are specifications that designate a particular manufacturer’s model, part number, or product. The phrase “or equal” may accompany a purchase description. M.A. Mortenson Co., ASBCA Nos. 50716, 51241, 51257, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,270.

(4) COMPOSITE SPECIFICATIONS are specifications that are comprised of two or more different specification types. See Defense Sys. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 50918, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,991; Transtechnology Corp., Space Ordnance Sys. Div. v. United States, 22 Cl. Ct. 349 (1990).

d. Scope of Government Liability.

(1) The scope of government liability depends on the specification type. Lopez v. A.C. & S., Inc., 858 F.2d 712 (Fed. Cir. 1988); Morrison-Knudsen Co., ASBCA No. 32476, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,208.

| Type of Specification | Risk Allocation | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Design Specifications | Government | If the Gov't required the use of Gov't design specifications, the Gov't gives an implied warranty that specifications are free of defects. |
| Performance Specifications | Contractor | Contractor accepts responsibility for the design, engineering & achievement of specifications. |
| Purchase Specifications | Contingent | If the Gov't specified use of a brand name, the Gov't is liable if the Ktr used the product correctly and the product failed. If the Ktr used the product incorrectly, the Ktr may be liable if the incorrect use of the product caused the failure. |
| Composite Specifications | Examine for Various Types | Which part of the specification cause the failure? What type of specification is that part? |

(2) Design specifications.

(i) The key issue is whether the government required the contractor to use detailed specifications. Geo-Con, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5749, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,359. Nonconformity to design specifications result in a contract price reduction. Donat Gerg haustechnik, ASBCA Nos. 41197, 42001, 42821, 47456, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,272.

(ii) The government is responsible for design and related omissions, errors, and deficiencies in the specifications and drawings. White v. Edsall Constr. Co., Inc., 296 F.3d 1081 (2002); Apollo Sheet Metal, Inc., v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 210 (1999); Neal & Co. v. United States, 19 Cl. Ct. 463 (1990) (defective design specifications found to cause bowing in wall); International Foods Retort Co., ASBCA No. 34954, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,994 (bland chicken ala king). But see Hawaiian Bitumuls & Paving v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 1234 (1992) (contractor may vitiate warranty by participating in drafting and developing specifications).

(iii) The constructive change theory of defective specifications only applies to “design” specifications (or to the “design” portion of “composite specifications”).

(3) Performance specifications.

(i) If the government uses a performance specification, the contractor accepts general responsibility for the design, engineering, and achievement of the performance requirements. Apollo Sheet Metal, Inc., v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 210 (1999); Blake Constr. Co. v. United States, 987 F.2d 743 (Fed. Cir. 1993); Technical Sys. Assoc., Inc., GSBCA Nos. 13277-COM, 14538-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,684.

(ii) The contractor has discretion as to the details of the work, but the work is subject to the government’s right of final inspection and approval or rejection. Kos Kam, Inc., ASBCA No. 34682, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,546.

(4) Purchase descriptions. Monitor Plastics Co., ASBCA No. 14447, 72-2 BCA ¶ 9626.

(i) If the contractor furnishes or uses in fabrication a specified brand name or an acceptable and approved substitute brand-name product, the responsibility for proper performance generally falls upon the government.

(ii) The government's liability is conditioned upon the contractor's correct use of the product.

(iii) If the contractor elects to manufacture an equal product, it must ensure that the product is equal to the brand name product.

(5) Composite specifications.

(i) If the government uses a composite specification, the parties must examine each portion of the specification to determine which specification type caused the problem. This determination establishes the scope of the government's liability. Aleutian Constr. v. United States, 24 Cl. Ct. 372 (1991); Penguin Indus. v. United States, 530 F.2d 934 (Ct. Cl. 1976). Cf. Hardwick Bros. Co., v. United States, 36 Fed. Cl. 347 (Fed. Cl. 1996) (since mixed specifications were primarily performance-based, there is no warranty covering the specifications).

(ii) The contractor must isolate the defective element of the design portion or demonstrate affirmatively that its performance did not cause the problem. Defense Sys. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 50918, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,991 (finding that contractor failed to demonstrate deficient fuses were due to deficient Government design rather than production problems).

3. Defective Specifications - Theory of Recovery - Implied Warranty of Design.

a. Basis.

(1) This “warranty” is based on an implied promise by the government that a contractor can follow the contract drawings and specifications and perform without undue expense. This promise has been called a warranty; however, recovery is based on a breach of the duty to provide drawings and specifications reasonably free from defects. White v. Edsall Constr. Co., Inc., 296 F.3d 1081 (2002); Fru-Con Constr. Corp. v. United States, 42 Fed. Cl. 94 (1998) (reconsidered on other grounds); United States v. Spearin, 248 U.S. 132 (1918); Luria Bros. & Co. v. United States, 177 Ct. Cl. 676, 369 F.2d 701 (1966).

(2) Defective (**design**) specifications may result in a constructive change. See, e.g., Hol-Gar Mfg. Corp. v. United States, 175 Ct. Cl. 518, 360 F.2d 634 (1964). In some cases, judges have relied on a breach of contract theory. See, e.g., Big Chief Drilling Co. v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 1276 (1992).

b. Recovery. See Transtechology, Corp., Space Ordnance Sys. Div. v. United States, 22 Cl. Ct. 349 (1990).

(1) To recover under the implied warranty of specifications, the contractor must prove that:

(a) It reasonably relied upon the defective (design) specifications and complied fully with them. Phoenix Control Sys., Inc. v. Babbitt, Secy. of the Interior, 1997 U.S. App. LEXIS 8085 (Fed. Cir. 1997); Fruin-Colnon Corp. v. U.S., 912 F.2d 1426 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (reasonably relied on its interpretation in submitting its bid on proposal); Al Johnson Constr. Co. v. United States, 854 F.2d 467 (Fed. Cir. 1988); Gulf & Western Precision Eng'g Co. v. United States, 543 F.2d 125 (Ct. Cl. 1976); Mega Constr. Co., 29 Fed. Cl. 396 (1993); Bart Assocs., Inc., EBCA No. C-9211144, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,479; and

(b) That the defective (design) specifications caused increased costs. McElroy Mach. & Mfg. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 46477, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,185; Pioneer Enters., Inc., ASBCA No. 43739, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,395 (contractor failed to demonstrate that defective specification caused its delay); Chaparral Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 34396, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,813, aff'd, 975 F.2d 870 (Fed. Cir. 1992).

(2) The contractor cannot recover if it has actual or constructive knowledge of the defects prior to award. M.A. Mortenson Co., ASBCA Nos. 50716, 51241, 51257, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,270; Centennial Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 46820, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,511; L.W. Foster Sportswear Co. v. United States, 405 F.2d 1285 (Ct. Cl. 1969) (contractor had actual knowledge from prior contract). Generally, constructive knowledge is limited to patent errors because a contractor has no duty to conduct an independent investigation to determine whether the specifications are adequate. Jordan & Nobles Constr. Co., GSBCA No. 8349, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,659. *Cf.* Spiros Vasilatos Painting, ASBCA No. 35065, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,558 (appealed, modified on other grounds).

(3) A contractor may not recover if it decides unilaterally to perform work knowing that the specifications were defective. Ordnance Research, Inc. v. United States, 221 Ct. Cl. 641, 609 F.2d 462 (1979).

(4) A contractor may not recover if it fails to give timely notice that it was experiencing problems without assistance of the government. McElroy Mach. & Mfg. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 46477, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,185; JGB Enters., Inc., ASBCA No. 49493, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,498.

(5) The government may disclaim this warranty. *See, e.g.,* Serv. Eng'g Co., ASBCA No. 40272, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,106 (reconsideration motion granted; decision modified, in part, on other grounds); Bethlehem Steel Corp., ASBCA No. 13341, 72-1 BCA ¶ 9186. The disclaimer must be obvious and unequivocal, however, in order to shift the risk to the contractor. White v. Edsall Constr. Co., Inc., 296 F.3d 1081 (2002) (holding that a small note disclaiming the government's warranty found on one of several dozen design drawings was hidden and not obvious).

4. Defective Specifications - Theory of Recovery - Impracticability/Impossibility of Performance

a. **Three Elements.** American Mechanical, Inc., ASBCA No. 52033, 03-1 BCA ¶ 32,134; Oak Adec, Inc. v. United States, 24 Cl. Ct. 502 (1991); Reflectone, Inc., ASBCA No. 42363, 98-2 BCA ¶ 28,869; Gulf & Western Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 21090, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,881.

(1) An Unforeseen or Unexpected occurrence.

(i) A significant increase in work usually caused by unforeseen technological problems. Examine the following factors to determine whether a problem was unforeseen or unexpected:

1. The nature of the contract and specifications, i.e., whether they require performance beyond the state of the art;
2. The extent of the contractor's effort; and
3. The ability of other contractors to meet the specification requirements.

(ii) In some cases, a contractor must show that an extensive research and development effort was necessary to meet the specifications or that no competent contractor can meet the performance requirements. Hol-Gar Mfg. Corp. v. United States, 360 F.2d 634 (Ct. Cl. 1964); Reflectone, Inc., ASBCA No. 42363, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,869 (contractor must show specifications "required performance beyond the state of the art" to demonstrate impossibility); Defense Sys. Corp. & Hi-Shear Tech. Corp., ASBCA No. 42939, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,721.

(2) The contractor did not assume the risk of the unforeseen occurrence by agreement or custom. RNJ Interstate Corp. v. United States, 181 F.3d 1329 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding that doctrine of impossibility did not apply to a worksite fire since the contract placed the risk of loss on the contractor until acceptance by the government); Southern Dredging Co., ENG BCA No 5843, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,886; Fulton Hauling Corp., PSBCA No. 2778, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,858.

(i) A contractor may assume the risk of the unforeseen effort by using its own specifications. Short Bros., PLC v. U.S., 65 Fed. Cl. 695 (2005); Costal Indus. v. United States, 32 Fed. Cl. 368 (1994) (use of specification drafted, in part, by contractor's supplier held to be assumption of risk); Technical Sys. Assoc. Inc., GSBCA Nos. 13277-COM, 14538-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,684.

(ii) By proposing to extend the state of the art, a contractor may assume the risk of impossible performance. See J.A. Maurer, Inc. v. United States, 485 F.2d 588 (Ct. Cl. 1973).

(3) Performance is commercially impracticable or impossible.

(i) The contractor must show that the increased cost of performance is so much greater than anticipated that performance is commercially senseless. See Fulton Hauling Corp., PSBCA No. 2778, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,858; Technical Sys. Assoc. Inc., GSBCA Nos. 13277-COM, 14538-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,684; McElroy Mach. & Mfg. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 46477, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,185. But see SMC Info. Sys., Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 9371, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,485 (the increased difficulty cannot be the result of poor workmanship).

(ii) There is no universal standard for determining “commercial senselessness.”

1. Courts and boards sometimes use a “willing buyer” test to determine whether the increased costs render performance commercially senseless. A showing of economic hardship on the contractor is insufficient to demonstrate “commercial senselessness.” The contractor must show that there are no buyers willing to pay the increased cost of production plus a reasonable profit. Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Government Contract Changes, 13-37 to 13-39 (2d ed. 1989).

2. Some decisions have stated that it must be “positively unjust” to hold the contractor liable for the increased costs. Raytheon Co., ASBCA Nos. 50166, 50987, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,245 (57% increase insufficient) *appealed, vacated, in part, on other grounds at* 305 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2002); Weststates Transp. Inc., PSBCA No. 3764, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,633; Gulf & Western Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 21090, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,881 (70% increase insufficient); HLL Lordship Indus., VABCA No. 1785, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,182 (200% increase in gold prices insufficient). *But see* Xplo Corp., DOT BCA No. 1289, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,125 (50% increase in costs was sufficient).

C. INTERFERENCE AND FAILURE TO COOPERATE.

1. General Theory of Recovery.

- (a) Contracting activities have an implied obligation to cooperate with their contractors and not to administer the contract in a manner that hinders, delays, or increases the cost of performance.

Precision Pine & Timber, Inc. v. United States, 50 Fed. Cl. 35, 65-70 (2001) (holding that the Forest Service breached a timber sale contract by suspending the contractor's logging operations when the Mexican spotted owl was listed as an endangered species instead of consulting with the Fish and Wildlife Service and developing a management plan as was required by the ESA) (case later reconsidered, modified judgment entered on other grounds); Coastal Gov't Serv., Inc., ASBCA No. 50283, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,353; R&B Bewachungsgesellschaft GmbH, ASBCA No. 42213, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,310 (cost and fees proceeding on remand); C.M. Lowther, Jr., ASBCA No. 38407, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,296. *See also* Restatement (Second) of Contracts, § 205 (1981) (description of bad faith practices during administration of the contract).

- (b) Generally a contractor may not recover for "interference" that results from a sovereign act.

See Hills Materials Co., ASBCA No. 42410, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,636, *rev'd sub nom.*, Hills Materials Co. v. Rice, 982 F.2d 514 (Fed. Cir. 1992); Orlando Helicopter Airways, Inc. v. Widnall, 51 F.3d 258 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (holding that a criminal investigation of the contractor was a noncompensable sovereign act); Henderson, Inc., DOT BCA No. 2423, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,728 (limitation on dredging period created implied warranty); R&B Bewachungsgesellschaft GmbH, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,310 (criminal investigators took action in government's contractual capacity, not sovereign capacity) (cost and fees proceeding on remand). *See also* Hughes Communications Galaxy, Inc. v. United States, 998 F.2d 953 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (holding that the government may waive sovereign act defense); Oman-Fischbach Int'l, a Joint Venture, ASBCA No. 44195, 00-2 BCA ¶ 31,022 (actions of a separate sovereign were not compensable constructive changes).

2. Bases for Interference Claims.

(a) Overzealous inspection of the contractor's work. Neal & Co., Inc. v. United States, 36 Fed. Cl. 600 (1996) ("nit-picking punch list" held to be overzealous inspection); WRB Corp. v. United States, 183 Ct. Cl. 409 (1968); Adams v. United States, 175 Ct. Cl. 288, 358 F.2d 986 (1966).

(b) Incompetence of government personnel. Harvey C. Jones, Inc., IBCA No. 2070, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,762.

(c) Water seepage or flow caused by the government. See C.M. Lowther, Jr., ASBCA No. 38407, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,296 (water from malfunctioning sump pump was interference); Caesar Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 41059, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,639 (government's failure to remove snow piles which resulted in water seepage constituted a breach of its implied duty not to impede the contractor's performance).

(d) Disruptive criminal investigations conducted in the government's contractual capacity. R&B Bewachungsgesellschaft GmbH, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,310.

3. Bases for Failure to Cooperate Claims. The government must cooperate with a contractor. See, e.g., Whittaker Elecs. Sys. v. Dalton, Secy. of the Navy, 124 F.3d 1443 (Fed. Cir. 1997); James Lowe, Inc., ASBCA No. 42026, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,835; Mit-Con, Inc., ASBCA No. 42916, 92-1 CPD ¶ 24,539. Bases for claims include:

(a) Failure to provide assistance necessary for efficient contractor performance. Chris Berg, Inc. v. United States, 197 Ct. Cl. 503, 455 F.2d 1037 (1972) (implied requirement); Durocher Dock & Dredge, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5768, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,145 (failure to contest sheriff's stop work order was not failure to cooperate); Hudson Contracting, Inc., ASBCA No. 41023, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,466; Packard Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 46082, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,577.

(b) Failure to prevent interference by another contractor. Examine closely the good faith effort of the government to administer the other contract to reduce interference. Northrup Grumman Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 20 (2000); Stephenson Assocs., Inc., GSBCA No. 6573, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,071.

(c) Failure to provide access to the work site. Summit Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 23 Cl. Ct. 333 (1991) (absent specific warranty, site unavailability must be due to government's fault); Atherton Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 48527, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,968; R.W. Jones, IBCA No. 3656-96, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,268; Old Dominion Sec., ASBCA No. 40062, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,173, *recons. denied*, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,374 (failure to grant security clearances); M.A. Santander Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 35907, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,050 (interference excused default); Reliance Enter., ASBCA No. 20808, 76-1 BCA ¶ 11,831.

(d) Abuse of discretion in the approval process. When the contract makes the precise manner of performance subject to approval by the contracting officer, the duty of cooperation requires that the government approve the contractor's methods unless approval is detrimental to the government's interest. Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Government Contract Changes 12-7 (2d ed. 1989). Common bases for claims are:

(i) Failure to approve substitute items or components that are equal in quality and performance to the contract requirements. Page Constr. Co., AGBCA No. 92-191-1, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,060; Bruce-Anderson Co., ASBCA No. 29411, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,135 (contracting officer gave no explanation for refusal).

(ii) Unjustified disapproval of shop drawings or failure to approve within a reasonable time. Orlosky, Inc. v. U.S., 68 Fed. Cl. 296 (2005); Vogt Bros. Mfg. Co. v. United States, 160 Ct. Cl. 687 (1963).

(iii) Improper failure to approve the substitution or use of a particular subcontractor. Lockheed Martin Tactical Aircraft Sys., ASBCA Nos. 49530, 50057, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,852, *recon. denied*, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,930; Manning Elec. & Repair Co. v. United States, 22 Cl. Ct. 240 (1991); Hoel-Steffen Constr. Co. v. United States, 231 Ct. Cl. 128, 684 F.2d 843 (1982); Liles Constr. Co. v. United States, 197 Ct. Cl. 164, 455 F.2d 527 (1972); Richerson Constr., Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11161, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,239. *Cf.* FAR 52.236-5, Material and Workmanship.

D. FAILURE TO DISCLOSE VITAL INFORMATION (SUPERIOR KNOWLEDGE)

1. Theory of Recovery.

(a) Part of the government's duty to cooperate with the contractor and not to hinder or interfere with its performance is a duty to disclose vital information of which the contractor is ignorant. *See* Northrup Grumman v. U.S., 63 Fed. Cl. 12 (2004); Helene Curtis Indus. v. United States, 312 F.2d 774 (Ct. Cl. 1963); Miller Elevator Co. v. United States, 30 Fed. Cl. 662 (1994); Bradley Constr. Inc. v. United States, 30 Fed. Cl. 507 (1994); Maitland Bros., ENG BCA No. 5782, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,473.

(b) Nondisclosure is a change to the contract because the contracting activity should have disclosed the vital information at contract award. Raytheon Co., ASBCA No. 50166, 50987, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,245; *affirmed in part and vacated and remanded in part by* Raytheon Co. v. White, 305 F.3d 1354 (2002).

2. Elements of the Implied Duty to Disclose Vital Information. Hercules, Inc. v. United States, 24 F.3d 188 (Fed. Cir. 1994), *aff'd on other grounds*, 116 S. Ct. 981 (1996); Technical Sys. Assoc. Inc., GSBCA Nos. 13277-COM, 14538-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,684.

(a) The contractor undertakes to perform without vital knowledge of a fact that affects performance costs or duration. Shawn K. Christensen d/b/a Island Wide Contracting, AGBCA No. 94-200-3, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,578; Bradley Constr., Inc. v. United States, 30 Fed. Cl. 507 (1994) (information must have a direct bearing on the cost or duration of contract performance); Johnson & Son Erector Co., ASBCA No. 23689, 86-2 BCA ¶ 18,931 (amount of interference caused by the nondisclosure is a factor in determining whether the information is vital); Numax Elec., Inc., ASBCA No. 29080, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,280 (government failed to disclose that all previous contractors had been unable to manufacture in accordance with the specifications); Riverport Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 30888, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,876 (government must disclose the history of a procurement if the information is necessary to successful performance).

(b) The government was aware the contractor had no knowledge of and had no reason to obtain such information. Fed Group, Inc. v. U.S., 67 Fed. Cl. 87 (2005); Hardeman-Monier-Hutcherson v. United States, 198 Ct. Cl. 472, 458 F.2d 1364 (1972); Max Jordan Bauunternehmung v. United States, 10 Cl. Ct. 672 (1986), *aff'd*, 820 F.2d 1208 (Fed. Cir. 1987); GAF Corp. v. United States, 932 F.2d 947 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (government need not inquire into the knowledge of an experienced contractor).

(c) The contract specification misled the contractor or did not put it on notice to inquire. Raytheon Co., ASBCA Nos. 50166, 50987, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,245 (government-furnished technical data package and specifications implied no further development would be required, although government knew this was not possible) *affirmed in part and vacated and remanded in part by Raytheon Co. v. White*, 305 F.3d 1354 (2002; D.F.K. Enter., Inc. v. United States, 45 Fed. Cl. 280 (1999) (holding that incomplete and inaccurate weather data was an affirmative misrepresentation of job site conditions); Jack L. Olsen, Inc., AGBCA No. 87-345-1, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,767 (information provided in solicitation excused contractor from further inquiry) (reversed and remanded in part, on other grounds). There is no breach of the duty to disclose vital information if the government shows that the contractor knew or should have known of the information. Fed Group, Inc. v. U.S., 67 Fed. Cl. 87 (2005); H.N. Bailey & Assoc. v. United States, 449 F.2d 376 (Ct. Cl. 1971) (information was general industry knowledge); Benju Corp., ASBCA No. 43648, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,274 (Government did not have to disclose readily available information); Metal Trades, Inc., ASBCA No. 41643, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,982; Hydromar Corp. of Del. & Eastern Seaboard v. United States, 25 Cl. Ct. 555 (1992), *aff'd*, 980 F.2d 744 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (undisclosed information reasonably was available to the contractor); Maitland Bros. Co., ENG BCA No. 5782, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,473 (information in public domain).

(d) The government failed to provide the relevant information. P.J. Maffei Bldg. Wrecking Corp. v. United States, 732 F.2d 913 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (contractor failed to prove government had better information than already disclosed); L.W. Matteson, Inc. v. U.S., 61 Fed. Cl. 296 (2004) (contractor failed to establish that the Government was responsible for providing the information in question); Bethlehem Corp. v. United States, 462 F.2d 1400 (Ct. Cl. 1972) (knowledge by one government agency is not attributable to another government agency absent some meaningful connection between the agencies); Marine Indus. Northwest, Inc., ASBCA No. 51942, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,201 (contractor failed to demonstrate that government had superior knowledge).

E. CONSTRUCTIVE ACCELERATION.

1. General. If a contractor encounters an excusable delay, it is entitled to an extension of the contract schedule. Constructive acceleration occurs when the contracting officer refuses to recognize a new contract schedule and demands that the contractor complete performance within the original contract period.

2. Elements of Constructive Acceleration. Fru-Con Constr. Corp. v. United States, 43 Fed. Cl. 306 (1999); Atlantic Dry Dock Corp., ASBCA Nos. 42609, 42610, 42611, 42612, 42613, 42679, 42685, 42686, 44472, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,025; Trepte Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 28555, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,595.

- (a) The existence of one or more excusable delays;
- (b) Notice by the contractor to the government of such delay and a request for an extension of time;
- (c) Failure or refusal by the government to grant the extension request;
- (d) An express or implied order by the government to accelerate; and
- (e) Actual acceleration resulting in increased costs.

3. Excusable Delays. FAR 52.249-8, -9, -10, 14; FAR 52.212-4(f). See also Outline on Terminations for Default.

(a) An excusable delay is a delay which is beyond the control, fault or negligence of both the contractor and the subcontractor. The focus of the determination of "excusable delay" turns on the issue of foreseeability. General Injectables & Vaccines, Inc. v. Secretary of Defense, CAFC No 2007-1119, June 3, 2008, pg. 4.

(b) Examples: Embargoes, fires, floods, strikes, sovereign acts, and unusually severe weather.

(c) Subcontractors. The general rule is a delay in a subcontract does not excuse a prime contractor from performing on time unless the subcontractor's difficulty itself resulted from a delay that would be excusable under the contract. The rationale for this rule is that the prime contractor should not be placed in a better position, risk or liability wise, if the prime subcontracts the work rather than performing the work itself. General Injectables & Vaccines, Inc. v. Secretary of Defense, CAFC No. 2007-1119, June 3, 2008 (holding that a prime contractor was not excused under the sovereign act exception when the FDA refused to allow its subcontractor's to ship vaccine into the country because it was contaminated with bacteria); Johnson Mgmt. Group CFC, Inc. v. Martinez, 308 F.3d 1245, 1252 (Fed. Cir. 2002)("A contractor is responsible for the unexcused performance failures of its subcontractors").

(d) Common Carriers. Generally, a delay of a common carrier is among the conditions that constitute a valid excusable delay because a common carrier delay is considered beyond the reasonable control of the contractor. A common carrier is not considered a sub-contractor. FAR 52.212-4(f). H.B. Nelson Construction Co. v. United States, 87 Ct. Cl. 375 (1938); Malan Construction Corp., VABCA No. 262, 1960 WL 151 (June 17, 1960); General Injectables & Vaccines, Inc. v. Secretary of Defense, CAFC No. 2007-1119, June 3, 2008.

3. Examples of Constructive Acceleration.

(a) The government threatens to terminate when the contractor encounters an excusable delay. Intersea Research Corp., IBCA No. 1675, 85-2 BCA ¶ 18,058;

(b) The government threatens to assess liquidated damages and refuses to grant a time extension. Fraser Constr. Co. v. U.S., 384 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2004); Norair Eng'g Corp. v. United States, 666 F.2d 546 (Ct. Cl. 1981); Unarco Material Handling, PSBCA No. 4100, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,682; or

(c) The government delays approval of a request for a time extension. Fraser Constr. Co. v. U.S., 384 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2004); Fishbach & Moore Int'l Corp., ASBCA No. 18146, 77-1 BCA ¶ 12,300, aff'd, 617 F.2d 223 (Ct. Cl. 1980). *But see* Franklin Pavlov Constr. Co., HUD BCA No. 93-C-13, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,078 (mere denial of delay request due to lack of information not tantamount to government order to accelerate).

(d) Note: The contractor's acceleration efforts need not be successful; a reasonable attempt to meet a completion date is sufficient. Unarco Material Handling, PSBCA No. 4100, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,682; Fermont Div., Dynamics Corp., ASBCA No. 15806, 75-1 BCA ¶ 11,139.

4. Measure of Damages.

(a) The measure of recovery will be the difference between:

(i) The reasonable costs attributable to acceleration or attempting to accelerate; and

(ii) The lesser costs the contractor reasonably would have incurred absent its acceleration efforts; plus

(iii) A reasonable profit on the above-described difference.

(b) Common acceleration costs.

(i) Increased labor costs;

(ii) Increased material cost due to expedited delivery; and

(ii) Loss of efficiency or productivity. A method to compute this cost is to compare the work accomplished per labor hour or dollar during an acceleration period with the work accomplished per labor hour or dollar during a normal period. See Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Government Contract Changes, 18-16 and 18-17 (2d ed. 1989).

VIII. FISCAL IMPLICATIONS TO CONTRACT CHANGES

- A. Note: This material is also discussed in the Time Outline of the Fiscal Law Deskbook. Since this topic involves the application of the bona fide needs rule to contract modifications, please look for more a more thorough discussion of the bona fide needs rule in the Time outline located in the Fiscal Law Deskbook.
- B. Overview. Contract performance often extends over several fiscal years, and modifications to the contract occur for a variety of reasons. If a contract modification results in an increase in contract price, and the modification occurs after the original funds' period of availability has expired, then proper funding of the modification is subject to the bona fide needs rule. See also DOD FMR, Vol. 3, Ch. 8, para. 080304.B. Certain adjustments for contract modification can be made to expired funds, if the rules below are met. Once the expired funds close, however, they are no longer available for adjustment.
- D. Antecedent Liability Rule:
1. General: When a contract modification does not represent a new requirement or liability, but instead only modifies the amount of the government's pre-existing liability, then such a price adjustment is a bona fide need of the same year in which funds were obligated for the original contract.
 - (1) To determine if an adjustment is modifying a pre-existing liability, one must ask whether "the government's liability arises and is enforceable under a provision in the original contract?"
 - a. If yes, then the adjustment is attributable to an "antecedent liability" and original funds are available for obligation for the modification. GAO Redbook, Appropriations Law – Volume I, Page 5-35.
 - b. If no, then fund the modification with funds currently available at the time of the modification.
 - (2) Provisions in the contract that may result in such "antecedent liability" include most clauses granting equitable adjustments to the contract price.

a. Example 1: Changes Clause. If modifications are within the scope of the changes clause, then the change is essentially “within the contract’s statement of work” and it is considered a bona fide need of the same year in which funds were obligated for the original contract. GAO Redbook, Appropriations Law, Vol. I, page 5-34. Recording Obligations Under EPA cost-plus-fixed-fee Contract, B-195732, 59 Comp. Gen. 518 (1980); Obligations and Charges Under Small Business Administration Service Contracts, B-198574, 60 Comp. Gen. 219 (1981).

b. Example 2: Government Property Clause. If modification are within the scope of a government property clause, then it is considered a bona fide need of the same year in which funds were obligated for the original contract. *Id.*

c. Example 3: Overhead Rates Clause. If modifications are within the scope of a negotiated overhead rates clause, then it is considered a bona fide need of the same year in which funds were obligated for the original contract. *Id.*

(3) Summary of Scope Determinations. The determination of whether a contract change is “in-scope” is highly fact specific and depends on the application of multiple factors. For a more complete discussion, please refer to the detailed discussions earlier in the Contract Changes Outline in the Contract Attorneys Deskbook.

a. As a shortened discussion, GAO, courts and boards look to the materiality of the change to see to what extent the product or service, as changed, differs from the requirements of the original contract. They may examine

- (a) changes to the function/type of work,
- (b) changes in quantity;
- (c) the number and cost of changes; and
- (d) changes to the time of performance.
- (e) These factors and their application are discussed at length in the contract changes outline.

b. As a shortened discussion, a contract change is generally within the scope of a contract’s changes clause if either test is met below:

(i) Offerors (prior to award) should have reasonably anticipated this type of contract change based upon what was in the solicitation. In other words, the field of competition for this contract, as modified, is not significantly different from that obtained for the original contract. Krykowski Const. Co., Inc. v. U.S., 94 Fed.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996); H.G. Properties A. LP v. U.S., 68 Fed. Appx. 192 (Fed. Cir. 2003).

OR

(ii) The contract, as modified, is for essentially the same work as the parties originally bargained for. The contract, as modified could “be regarded as having been fairly and reasonably within the contemplation of the parties when the contract was entered into.” See Freund v. United States, 260 U.S. 60 (1922); Shank-Artukovich v. U.S., 13 Cl. Ct. 346 (1986); Air-A-Plane Corp. v. United States, 408 F.2d 1030 (Ct. Cl. 1969); GAP Instrument Corp., ASBCA No. 51658, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,358; Gassman Corp., ASBCA Nos. 44975, 44976, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,720.

c. **Limitations.** For an expired, fixed appropriations account, obligations for contract changes to a program, project, or activity, may not exceed \$4 million in one FY without the approval of the head of the agency. 31 U.S.C. § 1553 (c)(1). Within DoD, the action is submitted to the USD(C) for approval. DOD FMR, Vol. 3, Ch. 10, paras. 100204 and 100206.E.

d. **Limitations.** For an expired, fixed appropriations account, obligations for contract changes to a program, project, or activity, may not exceed \$25 million in one FY without notice to Congress and a 30 days waiting period. 31 U.S.C. § 1553 (c)(1). 31 U.S.C. § 1553 (c)(2). See also DOD FMR, Vol. 3, Ch. 10, para. 100205.

e. **Note:** If a contract permits both unilateral and bilateral changes, then the mere fact that a change is unilateral or bilateral is immaterial to the in-scope/out-of-scope analysis.

(4) **Increases to Quantity**: The government accountability office and Volume 3, Chapter 8 of the DoD Financial Management Regulation offer quite a bit of guidance on how to determine the funding source for contract modifications that add a quantity of supplies or additional services. The DoD FMR should be consulted on fact specific questions.

a. In general, increases to the quantity of items to be delivered on a contract are viewed as outside the scope of most changes clauses. Thus, a modification to increase quantity will amount to a new obligation chargeable to funds current at the time the modification is made. See Request Concerning Funding of Contract Modification After Expiration of Appropriations, B-207433 (1983).

b. Example: The IRS issued a task order with FY1 funds for a specific amount of computer equipment under an ID/IQ contract. There was a cost underrun (it cost less money), so the IRS proposed to modify to the task order in FY2 to use the FY1 money it “saved” to purchase additional computers. GAO opined that a modification of a contract to increase the quantity constitutes a new obligation and is chargeable only to funds current at the time of the modification, even though it was an ID/IQ contract and the IRS argued it “needed” the computers in FY1 but had limited funds available. Modification to Contract Involving Cost Underrun, B-257617, 1995 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 258 (April 18, 1995);

c. Example: In FY7, The Army had a bona fide need for 557 thermal viewers. Due to a limitation of funds, the Army was only able to enter into a fixed price contract for 509 viewers. The Army obligated \$8.2 million for the viewers. In FY8, Army modified the contract to purchase an additional 285 viewers, obligating FY8 funds. In FY9, there was a cost underrun (it cost less than 8.2 million to produce 509 viewers). The Army wanted to use the remaining FY7 funds to purchase 48 viewers. GAO opined that the Army could not use surplus FY7 funds in a succeeding fiscal year. Even though the Army had a bona fide need for 557 viewers in FY7, the Army chose not to obligate for 557 viewers. Any increased quantity in FY9 is a bona fide need of FY9. The funds do not relate back. Magnavox—Use of Contract Underrun Funds, B-207433, 83-2 CPD ¶ 401 (1983).

d. DoD FMR Guidance on Increases in Quantity. “Changes in the quantity of the major items called for by a contract generally are not authorized under the “Changes” clause. Therefore, a change that increases the number of end items ordered on a contract is a change in the scope of the contract and would have to be funded from funds available at the time the change is made.”

(a) “ For example, if the original contract provided for delivery of 50 items and a modification was issued to provide for the delivery of 70 items, the additional 20 items would represent a change in the scope of the contract. . . . However, changes in the quantity of subsidiary items under a contract, such as spare parts, generally are considered to be within the scope of a contract unless they are so significant that they alter the basic contractual undertaking. See also DOD FMR, Vol.3, Ch. 8, para. 080304.C.

e. Severable Services: A modification providing for increased additional deliverable services must be charged to the fiscal year or years in which the services are rendered. Hartgraves, B-235086, 1991 WL 122260 (Comp. Gen)(Apr 24, 1991); Dept. of the Interior, FY Approp. Chargeable for Contract Modifications, B-202222, 61 Comp. Gen. 184 (1981), aff’d upon reconsideration, Aug. 2, 1983; Acumenics Research & Tech., B-224702, 87-2 CPD ¶128 (Aug 5, 1987). Note: In dicta, GAO has suggested that an increased services modification to a contract awarded for 12 months under 2410a would relate back to the funds initially placed on the contract. See GAO Redbook, Volume I, Appropriations Law, page 5-34 (2008).

2. General Rule for Cost –Reimbursement Contracts. Contract modifications that increase the original estimated cost ceiling of a contract are funded with an appropriation current at the time the modification is signed by the contracting officer. The reason is that the agency cannot anticipate the need for or the amount of cost increases at the time of award and ultimately, this type of modification is viewed as discretionary in nature. Therefore, GAO considers it a bona fide need at the time of modification. FINCEN – Obligations Under a Cost Reimbursement Nonseverable Services Contract, Comp. Gen. B-317139, 2009 CPD ¶158, 2009 WL 1621304, June 1, 2009.

3. Cost Plus Fixed Fee - Level of Effort Contracts. See also Contract Types outline.

(1) A term level of effort contract is by presumption, a severable services contract. This is because it requires the performance of a certain number of hours of work within a specified time period, rather than requiring the completion of a series of work objectives. FAR 16.306(d)(2); EPA Level of Effort Contracts, B-214597, December 24, 1985, 65 Comp. Gen. 154, 86-1 CPD ¶ 216. GAO has held that in some cases, this presumption can be overcome because it is always the nature of the work being performed, not the contract type, that drives the analysis. Honorable Byron, B-325678, 30 July 1990; Funding for Air Force CPFF Level of Effort Contract, B-277165, 10 Jan. 2000.

(2) A completion contract, in contrast, is generally a non-severable services contract because it requires the contractor to complete and deliver a specified end product. FAR 16.306(d)(1); EPA Level of Effort Contracts, B-214597, December 24, 1985, 65 Comp. Gen. 154, 86-1 CPD ¶ 216.

(3) **Case Study.** The EPA often used level of effort, term contracts to perform economic cost and benefit analyses and technical analyses of hazardous waste regulations. The contractor might provide, for example, 10,000 hours during one fiscal year base period based on very broad outlines of the type of work to be performed. When the end of FY1 approaches and an agency's term level of effort contract is about to expire, suppose the contractor has only performed 8,000 hours. Can the agency modify the performance period of the contract – such that FY1 funds can be used to continue the contract into FY2 until the full 10,000 hours are completed? Alternately, could the contract be modified to be a non-severable completion contract, so that FY1 funds can be used to continue the contract into FY2?

NO. Either modification is substantially outside the scope of the contract for purposes of competition. As such, neither is an ancillary liability. This is so because both possibilities alter the essential characteristics of the contract type originally solicited. A level of effort contract contemplates a stated level of work for a definite time without a required end product. By extending the period of performance into the next year, the material nature of the level of effort contract is changed. On the other hand, a completion contract contemplates performance of a specific end product. Modifying the contract from a level of effort contract to a completion contract would fundamentally change the work the parties bargained for. From the fiscal perspective, neither modification relates back to any authorized contract change clause in the contract. Annual funds placed on the original term level of effort contract could not be used to fund such a contract modification. Such a modification should be competed as a new requirement. EPA Level of Effort Contracts, B-214597, December 24, 1985, 65 Comp. Gen. 154, 86-1 CPD ¶ 216.

IX. CONTRACTOR NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.

A. Formal changes. The standard Changes clauses each state that “the Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment . . . within 30 days after receipt of a written [change] order.” Courts and boards, however, do not strictly construe this requirement unless the untimely notice is prejudicial to the government. Watson, Rice & Co., HUD BCA No. 89-4468-C8, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,499; SOSA Y Barbera Constrs., S.A., ENG BCA No. PCC-57, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,754; E.W. Jerdon, Inc., ASBCA No. 32957, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,729.

B. Constructive Changes.

1. Supply / Service Contracts. The standard supply and service contract Changes clauses do not prescribe specific periods within which a contractor must seek an adjustment for a constructive change.

2. Construction Contracts. Under the Changes clause for construction contracts, a contractor must assert its right to an adjustment within 30 days of notifying the government that it considers a government action to be a constructive change. FAR 52.243-4(b) and (e). Furthermore, unless the contractor bases its adjustment on defective specifications, it may not recover costs incurred more than 20 days before notifying the government of a constructive change. FAR 52.243-4(d). *But see Martin J. Simko Constr., Inc. v. United States*, 11 Cl. Ct. 257 (1986) (government must show late notice was prejudicial), *vacated in part, on other grounds*, by 852 F.2d 540 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

3. Content of notice for constructive changes. A contractor must assert a positive, present intent to seek recovery as a matter of legal right. Written notice is not required, and there is no formal method for asserting an intent to recover. The notice, however, must be more than an ambiguous letter that evidences a differing opinion. Likewise, merely advising the contracting officer of problems is not sufficient notice. CTA Inc., ASBCA No. 47062, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,947; McLamb Upholstery, Inc., ASBCA No. 42112, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,081.

C. Requests for an Equitable Adjustment.

1. Distinction Between Intent to Submit Adjustment and the Request for Adjustment. The actual request for an adjustment to the contract price or other delivery terms can be submitted at a later time. The above requirement for the contractor to assert its rights to an adjustment places the government on notice that there has been an actual or constructive change to the contract, thus permitting the government to possibly adjust its action/inaction.
2. Statute of Limitations.
 - a. For all contracts entered into subsequent to October 1, 1995, there is a six-year statute of limitations on claims against the government thus requiring the request for an equitable adjustment to be submitted within that time frame. See 41 U.S.C. § 605 and FAR 33.206.

- b. For contracts awarded before October 1, 1995, the contractor's request for an equitable adjustment must be made within a reasonable time unless the contract specifies otherwise. Generally, this will require the contractor to act while the facts supporting the claim are readily available. See LaForge and Budd Construction Co. v. United States 48 Fed. Cl. 566 (2001) (finding *laches* did not bar a contractor's claim submitted seven years after its accrual because the government did not demonstrate it was prejudiced).

3. Effect of Final Payment.

- a. Requests for equitable adjustments raised for the first time after final payment are untimely. Design & Prod., Inc. v. United States, 18 Cl. Ct. 168 (1989) (final payment rule predicated on express contractual provisions); Navales Enter., Inc., ASBCA No. 52202, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,528; Electro-Technology Corp., ASBCA No. 42495, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,750.
- b. Final payment does not bar claims for equitable adjustments that were pending or of which the government had constructive knowledge at the time of final payment. Mingus Constructors, Inc. v. U.S., 812 F.2d 1387 (Fed. Cir. 1987); Miller Elevator Co. v. U.S., 30 Fed. Cl. 662 (1994); Gulf & Western Indus., Inc. v. United States, 6 Cl. Ct. 742 (1984); Navales Enter., Inc., ASBCA No. 52202, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,528; David Grimaldi Co., ASBCA No. 36043, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,341 (contractor must specifically assert a claim as a matter of right; letter merely presented arguments).

4. Government Requests for a Downward Equitable Adjustment.

- a. The Changes clauses do not specify the time within which the government must claim a downward equitable adjustment. They also do not require the government to notify the contractor that it intends to subsequently assert its right to an adjustment.
- b. For contracts awarded subsequent to October 1, 1995, the government must assert any claims it has against a contractor within six years from the accrual of the claim, except claims based upon fraud. See 41 U.S.C § 605 and FAR 33.206(b).

c. For contracts awarded both before and after October 1, 1995, the government's request for an equitable adjustment must be made within a reasonable time unless the contract specifies otherwise. Generally, this will require the government to act while the facts supporting the claim are readily available and before the contractor's position is prejudiced by final settlement with its subcontractors, suppliers, and other creditors. See Aero Union Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 677 (2000) (denying motion for summary judgment where there were issues of fact concerning whether the government had delayed so long the plaintiff was prejudiced by the delay).

X. CONCLUSION.

APPENDIX A: CHANGES CLAUSE (SUPPLIES), FAR 52.243-1.

CHANGES--FIXED-PRICE (AUG 1987)

- (a) The Contracting Officer may at any time, by written order, and without notice to the sureties, if any, make changes within the general scope of this contract in any one or more of the following:
- (1) Drawings, designs, or specifications when the supplies to be furnished are to be specially manufactured for the Government in accordance with the drawings, designs, or specifications.
 - (2) Method of shipment or packing.
 - (3) Place of delivery.
- (b) If any such change causes an increase or decrease in the cost of, or the time required for, performance of any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed by the order, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price, the delivery schedule, or both, and shall modify the contract.
- (c) The Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment under this clause within 30 days from the date of receipt of the written order. However, if the Contracting Officer decides that the facts justify it, the Contracting Officer may receive and act upon a proposal submitted before final payment of the contract.
- (d) If the Contractor's proposal includes the cost of property made obsolete or excess by the change, the Contracting Officer shall have the right to prescribe the manner of the disposition of the property.
- (e) Failure to agree to any adjustment shall be a dispute under the Disputes clause. However, nothing in this clause shall excuse the Contractor from proceeding with the contract as changed.

(End of Clause)

APPENDIX B: CHANGES CLAUSE (SERVICES)

FAR 52.243-1, ALTERNATE I.

CHANGES--FIXED-PRICE (APR 1984)

- (a) The Contracting Officer may at any time, by written order, and without notice to the sureties, if any, make changes within the general scope of this contract in any one or more of the following:
- (1) Description of services to be performed.
 - (2) Time of performance (i.e., hours of the day, days of the week, etc.).
 - (3) Place of performance of the services.
- (b) If any such change causes an increase or decrease in the cost of, or the time required for, performance of any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed by the order, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the contract price, the delivery schedule, or both, and shall modify the contract.
- (c) The Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment under this clause within 30 days from the date of receipt of the written order. However, if the Contracting Officer decides that the facts justify it, the Contracting Officer may receive and act upon a proposal submitted before final payment of the contract.
- (d) If the Contractor's proposal includes the cost of property made obsolete or excess by the change, the Contracting Officer shall have the right to prescribe the manner of the disposition of the property.
- (e) Failure to agree to any adjustment shall be a dispute under the Disputes clause. However, nothing in this clause shall excuse the Contractor from proceeding with the contract as changed.

(End of Clause)

APPENDIX C: CHANGES CLAUSE (CONSTRUCTION), FAR 52.243-4.

CHANGES (JUNE 2007)

- (a) The Contracting Officer may, at any time, without notice to the sureties, if any, by written order designated or indicated to be a change order, make changes in the work within the general scope of the contract, including changes--
- (1) In the specifications (including drawings and designs);
 - (2) In the method or manner of performance of the work;
 - (3) In the Government-furnished property or services; or
 - (4) Directing acceleration in the performance of the work.
- (b) Any other written order or oral order (which, as used in this paragraph (b), includes direction, instruction, interpretation or determination) from the Contracting Officer that causes a change shall be treated as a change order under this clause; provided, that the Contractor gives the Contracting Officer written notice stating (1) the date, circumstances, and source of the order; and (2) that the Contractor regards the order as a change order.
- (c) Except as provided in this clause, no order, statement, or conduct of the Contracting Officer shall be treated as a change under this clause or entitle the Contractor to an equitable adjustment.
- (d) If any change under this clause causes an increase or decrease in the Contractor's costs of, or the time required for, the performance of any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed by any such order, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment and modify the contract in writing. However, except for an adjustment based on defective specifications, no adjustment for any change under paragraph (b) of this clause shall be made for any costs incurred more than 20 days before the Contractor gives written notice as required. In the case of defective specifications for which the Government is responsible, the equitable adjustment shall include any increased cost reasonably incurred by the Contractor in attempting to comply with the defective specifications.
- (e) The Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment under this clause within 30 days after (1) receipt of a written change order under paragraph (a) of this clause or (2) the furnishing of a written notice under paragraph (b) of this clause, by submitting to the Contracting Officer a written statement describing the general nature and amount of the proposal, unless this period is extended by the Government. The statement of proposal for adjustment may be included in the notice under paragraph (b) of this clause.

(f) No proposal by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment shall be allowed if asserted after final payment under this contract.

Appendix D: Standard Form (SF) 30, Amendment of Solicitation/Modification of Contract

| | | | | | |
|---|---|-------------------|---|---|--------------------------------|
| AMENDMENT OF SOLICITATION/MODIFICATION OF CONTRACT | | | | 1. CONTRACT ID CODE | PAGE OF PAGES |
| 2. AMENDMENT/MODIFICATION NO. | | 3. EFFECTIVE DATE | 4. REQUISITION/PURCHASE REQ. NO. | | 5. PROJECT NO. (if applicable) |
| 6. ISSUED BY | | CODE | 7. ADMINISTERED BY (If more than item 6) | | CODE |
| 8. NAME AND ADDRESS OF CONTRACTOR (No., street, county, State and ZIP Code) | | | | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9A. AMENDMENT OF SOLICITATION NO. | |
| | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> 9B. DATED (SEE ITEM 11) | |
| | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> 10A. MODIFICATION OF CONTRACT/ORDER NO. | |
| | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> 10B. DATED (SEE ITEM 13) | |
| CODE | | FACILITY CODE | | 11. THIS ITEM ONLY APPLIES TO AMENDMENTS OF SOLICITATIONS | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The above numbered solicitation is amended as set forth in item 14. The hour and date specified for receipt of Offers <input type="checkbox"/> is extended, <input type="checkbox"/> is not extended. Offers must acknowledge receipt of this amendment prior to the hour and date specified in the solicitation or as amended, by one of the following methods: (a) By completing items 8 and 15, and returning _____ copies of the amendment; (b) By acknowledging receipt of this amendment on each copy of the offer submitted; or (c) By separate letter or telegram which includes a reference to the solicitation and amendment numbers. FAILURE OF YOUR ACKNOWLEDGMENT TO BE RECEIVED AT THE PLACE DESIGNATED FOR THE RECEIPT OF OFFERS PRIOR TO THE HOUR AND DATE SPECIFIED MAY RESULT IN REJECTION OF YOUR OFFER. If by virtue of this amendment your desire to change an offer already submitted, such change may be made by telegram or letter, provided each telegram or letter makes reference to the solicitation and this amendment, and is received prior to the opening hour and date specified. | | | | | |
| 12. ACCOUNTING AND APPROPRIATION DATA (if required) | | | | | |
| 13. THIS ITEM ONLY APPLIES TO MODIFICATION OF CONTRACTS/ORDERS. IT MODIFIES THE CONTRACT/ORDER NO. AS DESCRIBED IN ITEM 14. | | | | | |
| CHECK ONE | A. THIS CHANGE ORDER IS ISSUED PURSUANT TO: (Specify authority) THE CHANGES SET FORTH IN ITEM 14 ARE MADE IN THE CONTRACT ORDER NO. IN ITEM 10A. | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | B. THE ABOVE NUMBERED CONTRACT/ORDER IS MODIFIED TO REFLECT THE ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGES (such as changes in paying office, appropriation date, etc.) SET FORTH IN ITEM 14, PURSUANT TO THE AUTHORITY OF FAR 43.103(b). | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | C. THIS SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT IS ENTERED INTO PURSUANT TO AUTHORITY OF: | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | D. OTHER (Specify type of modification and authority) | | | | |
| E. IMPORTANT: Contractor <input type="checkbox"/> is not, <input type="checkbox"/> is required to sign this document and return _____ copies to the issuing office. | | | | | |
| 14. DESCRIPTION OF AMENDMENT/MODIFICATION (Organized by UCP section headings, including solicitation/contract subject matter where feasible) | | | | | |
| Except as provided herein, all terms and conditions of the document referenced in item 9A or 10A, as heretofore changed, remains unchanged and in full force and effect. | | | | | |
| 15A. NAME AND TITLE OF SIGNER (Type or print) | | | 16A. NAME AND TITLE OF CONTRACTING OFFICER (Type or print) | | |
| 15B. CONTRACTOR/OFFEROR | | 15C. DATE SIGNED | 16B. UNITED STATES OF AMERICA | | 16C. DATE SIGNED |
| (Signature of person authorized to sign) | | | (Signature of Contracting Officer) | | |
| NSN 7540-01-152-8070 Previous edition unusable | | | STANDARD FORM 30 (REV. 10-83) Prescribed by GSA FAR (48 CFR) 53.243 | | |

Chapter 22
**Contract Disputes Act
(CDA) Claims**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 22

CONTRACT DISPUTE ACT

| | | |
|------|--|----|
| I. | INTRODUCTION.. | 1 |
| II. | OVERVIEW. | 1 |
| | A. Historical Development. | 1 |
| | B. The Disputes Process. | 4 |
| III. | APPLICABILITY OF THE DISPUTES CLAUSE. | 6 |
| | A. Appropriated Fund Contracts. | 6 |
| | B. Nonappropriated Fund (NAF) Contracts. | 7 |
| IV. | CONTRACTOR CLAIMS. | 8 |
| | A. Proper Claimants. | 8 |
| | B. Definition of a Claim. | 9 |
| | C. Elements of a Claim. | 11 |
| | D. Demand for a Sum Certain. | 17 |
| | E. Supporting Data. | 19 |
| | F. Settlement. | 19 |
| | G. Interest. | 19 |
| | H. Termination for Convenience (T4C) Settlement Proposals. | 20 |
| | I. Statute of Limitations. | 21 |
| V. | GOVERNMENT CLAIMS. | 22 |
| | A. Requirement for Final Decision. | 22 |
| | B. Contractor Notice. | 23 |
| | C. Certification. | 24 |
| | D. Interest. | 24 |

| | |
|---|----|
| E. Finality..... | 24 |
| VI. FINAL DECISIONS..... | 24 |
| A. General..... | 24 |
| B. Time Limits..... | 24 |
| C. Format..... | 26 |
| D. Delivery..... | 27 |
| E. Independent Act of a Contracting Officer..... | 28 |
| F. Finality..... | 29 |
| VII. APPEALS TO THE ARMED SERVICES BOARD OF CONTRACT APPEALS..... | 30 |
| A. The Right to Appeal..... | 30 |
| B. The Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA)..... | 30 |
| C. Jurisdiction..... | 31 |
| D. Standard of Review..... | 31 |
| E. Perfecting an Appeal..... | 31 |
| F. Regular Appeals..... | 33 |
| G. Accelerated Appeals..... | 37 |
| H. Expedited Appeals..... | 37 |
| I. Remedies..... | 38 |
| J. Payment of Judgments..... | 39 |
| K. Appealing an Adverse Decision..... | 39 |
| VIII. ACTIONS BEFORE THE COURT OF FEDERAL CLAIMS (COFC)..... | 40 |
| A. The Right to Appeal..... | 40 |
| B. The Court of Federal Claims (COFC)..... | 40 |
| C. Jurisdiction..... | 40 |

| | | |
|-----|---|----|
| D. | Standard of Review..... | 41 |
| E. | Perfecting an Appeal..... | 41 |
| F. | Procedures..... | 43 |
| G. | Remedies..... | 43 |
| H. | Payment of Judgments..... | 44 |
| I. | Appealing an Adverse Decision..... | 44 |
| IX. | APPEALS TO THE COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT (CAFC)..... | 44 |
| A. | National Jurisdiction..... | 44 |
| B. | Standard of Review..... | 45 |
| C. | Frivolous Appeals..... | 45 |
| D. | Supreme Court Review..... | 45 |
| X. | CONTRACT ATTORNEY RESPONSIBILITIES IN THE DISPUTES PROCESS..... | 45 |
| A. | Actions upon Receipt of a Claim..... | 45 |
| B. | Contracting Officer’s Final Decision..... | 45 |
| C. | R4 File..... | 46 |
| D. | Discovery..... | 46 |
| E. | Hearings..... | 46 |
| F. | Client Expectations..... | 47 |
| G. | Settlement..... | 47 |
| XI. | CONCLUSION..... | 47 |
| | ATTACHMENT – DISPUTES CLAUSES..... | 49 |

CHAPTER 22

CONTRACT DISPUTE ACT

I. INTRODUCTION. As a result of this instruction, the student will understand:

- A. The claims submission and dispute resolution processes provided by the CDA.
- B. The jurisdiction of the Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA) and the U.S. Court of Federal Claims (COFC) to decide appeals from contracting officer final decisions.
- C. The role of the contract attorney in addressing contractor claims, defending against contractor appeals, and prosecuting government claims.

II. OVERVIEW.

- A. Historical Development.
 - 1. Pre-Civil War Developments. Before 1855, government contractors had no forum in which to sue the United States. In 1855, the Congress created the Court of Claims as an Article I (legislative) court to consider claims against the United States and recommend private bills to Congress. Act of February 24, 1855, 10 Stat. 612. The service secretaries, however, continued to resolve most contract claims. As early as 1861, the Secretary of War appointed a board of three officers to consider and decide specific contract claims. See Adams v. United States, 74 U.S. 463 (1868). Upon receipt of an adverse board decision, a contractor's only recourse was to request a private bill from Congress.

2. Civil War Reforms. In 1863, Congress expanded the power of the Court of Claims by authorizing it to enter judgments against the United States. Act of March 3, 1863, 12 Stat. 765. In 1887, Congress passed the Tucker Act to expand and clarify the jurisdiction of the Court of Claims. Act of March 3, 1887, 24 Stat. 505, codified at 28 U.S.C. § 1491. In that Act, Congress granted the Court of Claims authority to consider monetary claims based on: (1) the Constitution; (2) an act of Congress; (3) an executive regulation; or (4) an express or implied-in-fact contract.¹ As a result, a government contractor could now sue the United States as a matter of right.

3. Disputes Clauses. Agencies responded to the Court of Claim's increased oversight by adding clauses to government contracts that appointed specific agency officials (e.g., the contracting officer or the service secretary) as the final decision-maker for questions of fact. The Supreme Court upheld the finality of these officials' decisions in Kihlberg v. United States, 97 U.S. 398 (1878). The tension between the agencies' desire to decide contract disputes without outside interference, and the contractors' desire to resolve disputes in the Court of Claims, continued until 1978. This tension resulted in considerable litigation and a substantial body of case law.

4. Boards of Contract Appeals (BCAs). During World War I (WWI), the War and Navy Departments established full-time BCAs to hear claims involving wartime contracts. The War Department abolished its board in 1922, but the Navy board continued in name (if not fact) until World War II (WWII). Between the wars, an interagency group developed a standard disputes clause. This clause made contracting officers' decisions final as to all questions of fact. WWII again showed that boards of contract appeals were needed to resolve the massive number of wartime contract disputes. See Penker Constr. Co. v. United States, 96 Ct. Cl. 1 (1942). Thus, the War Department created a board of contract appeals, and the Navy revived its board. In 1949, the Department of Defense (DOD) merged the two boards to form the current ASBCA.

¹ The Tucker Act did not give the Court of Claims authority to consider claims based on implied-in-law contracts.

5. Post-WWII Developments. In a series of cases culminating in Wunderlich v. United States, 342 U.S. 98 (1951), the Supreme Court upheld the finality (absent fraud) of factual decisions issued under the disputes clause by a department head or his duly authorized representative. Congress reacted by passing the Wunderlich Act, 41 U.S.C. §§ 321-322, which reaffirmed that the Court of Claims could review factual and legal decisions by agency BCAs. At about the same time, Congress changed the Court of Claims from an Article I (legislative) to an Article III (judicial) court. Pub. L. No. 83-158, 67 Stat. 226 (1953). Later, the Supreme Court clarified the relationship between the Court of Claims and the agency BCAs by limiting the jurisdiction of the boards to cases ~~arising under~~ "remedy granting clauses in the contract. See Utah Mining and Constr. Co. v. United States, 384 U.S. 394 (1966).

6. The Contract Disputes Act (CDA) of 1978, 41 U.S.C. §§ 601-613. Congress replaced the previous disputes resolution system with a comprehensive statutory scheme. Congress intended that the CDA:
 - a. Help induce resolution of more disputes by negotiation prior to litigation;
 - b. Equalize the bargaining power of the parties when a dispute exists;
 - c. Provide alternate forums suitable to handle the different types of disputes; and
 - d. Insure fair and equitable treatment to contractors and Government agencies. S. REP. NO. 95-1118, at 1 (1978), *reprinted in* 1978 U.S.C.C.A.N. 5235.

7. Federal Courts Improvement Act of 1982, Pub. L. No. 97-164, 96 Stat. 25. Congress overhauled the Court of Claims and created a new Article I court (i.e., the Claims Court) from the old Trial Division of the Court of Claims. Congress also merged the Court of Claims and the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals to create the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC).²

² The Act revised the jurisdiction of the new courts substantially.

8. Federal Courts Administration Act of 1992, Pub. L. No. 102-572, 106 Stat. 3921. Congress changed the name of the Claims Court to the United States Court of Federal Claims (COFC), and expanded the jurisdiction of the court to include the adjudication of nonmonetary claims.
9. Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act (FASA) of 1994, Pub. L. No. 103-355, 108 Stat. 3243. Congress increased the monetary thresholds for requiring CDA certifications and requesting expedited and accelerated appeals.³

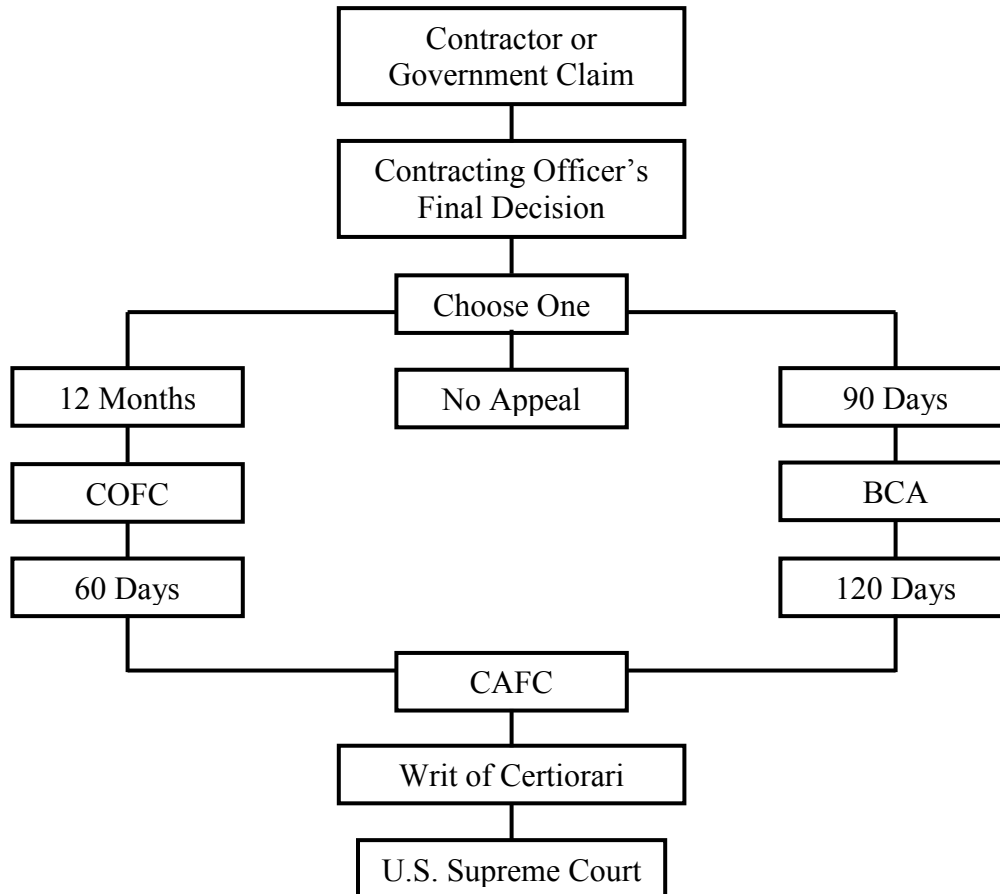
B. The Disputes Process.

1. The CDA establishes procedures and requirements for asserting and resolving claims subject to the Act.
2. Distinguishing bid protests from disputes.
 - a. In bid protests, disappointed bidders or offerors seek relief from actions that occur **before** contract award. See generally FAR Subpart 33.1.
 - b. In contract disputes, contractors seek relief from actions and events that occur **after** contract award. See generally FAR Subpart 33.2.
 - c. The Boards of Contract Appeals lack jurisdiction over bid protest actions. See United States v. John C. Grimberg, Inc., 702 F.2d 1362 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (stating that ~~the~~ [CDA] deals with contractors, not with disappointed bidders); Ammon Circuits Research, ASBCA No. 50885, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,318 (dismissing an appeal based on the contracting officer's written refusal to award the contractor a research contract); RC 27th Ave. Corp., ASBCA No. 49176, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,658 (dismissing an appeal for lost profits arising from the contracting officer's failure to award the contractor a grounds maintenance services contract).

³ This Act represented Congress's first major effort to reform the federal procurement process since it passed the CDA.

3. The disputes process flowchart.⁴

The Disputes Process



⁴ Note that for maritime contract actions, the CDA recognizes jurisdiction of district courts to hear appeals of ASBCA decisions, or to entertain suits filed following a contracting officer's final decision. See 41 U.S.C. § 603; See also *Marine Logistics, Inc. v. Secretary of the Navy*, 265 F.3d 1322 (Fed. Cir. 2001).

4. The Election Doctrine. The CDA provides alternative forums for challenging a contracting officer's final decision. Once a contractor files its appeal in a particular forum, this election is normally binding and the contractor can no longer pursue its claim in the other forum. The "election doctrine," however, does not apply if the forum originally selected lacked subject matter jurisdiction over the appeal. 41 U.S.C. §§ 606, 609(a)(1). See Bonneville Assocs. v. United States, 43 F.3d 649 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (dismissing the contractor's suit because the contractor originally elected to proceed before the GSBCA); see also Bonneville Assocs. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 13134, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,122 (refusing to reinstate the contractor's appeal), aff'd, Bonneville Assoc. v. United States, 165 F.3d 1360 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

III. APPLICABILITY OF THE DISPUTES CLAUSE.

A. Appropriated Fund Contracts.

1. The CDA applies to most express and implied-in-fact⁵ contracts.⁶ 41 U.S.C. § 602; FAR 33.203.
2. The Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) implements the CDA by requiring the contracting officer to include a Disputes clause in solicitations and contracts.⁷ FAR 33.215.
 - a. FAR 52.233-1, Disputes, requires the contractor to continue to perform pending resolution of disputes ~~arising under~~⁸ the contract. See Attachment A.

⁵ An "implied-in-fact" contract is similar to an "express" contract. It requires: (1) "a meeting of the minds" between the parties; (2) consideration; (3) an absence of ambiguity surrounding the offer and the acceptance; and (4) an agency official with actual authority to bind the government. James L. Lewis v. United States, 70 F.3d 597 (Fed. Cir. 1995).

⁶ The CDA normally applies to contracts for: (1) the procurement of property; (2) the procurement of services; (3) the procurement of construction, maintenance, and repair work; and (4) the disposal of personal property. 41 U.S.C. § 602. Cf. G.E. Boggs & Assocs., Inc., ASBCA Nos. 34841, 34842, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,515 (holding that the CDA did not apply because the parties did not enter into a contract for the procurement of property, but retaining jurisdiction pursuant to the disputes clause in the contract).

⁷ The CDA—and hence the Disputes clause—does not apply to: (1) tort claims that do not arise under or relate to an express or an implied-in-fact contract; (2) claims for penalties or forfeitures prescribed by statute or regulation that another federal agency is specifically authorized to administer, settle or determine; (3) claims involving fraud; and (4) bid protests. 41 U.S.C. §§ 602, 604, 605(a); FAR 33.203; FAR 33.209; FAR 33.210.

- b. FAR 52.233-1, Alternate I, Disputes, requires the contractor to continue to perform pending resolution of disputes ~~arising under or relating to~~⁹ the contract.¹⁰ See Attachment A.

B. Nonappropriated Fund (NAF) Contracts.

1. Exchange Service contracts. The CDA applies to contracts with the Army and Air Force, Navy, Marine Corps, Coast Guard, and NASA Exchanges. See 41 U.S.C. § 602(a), 28 U.S.C. §§ 1346, 1491. The CDA does **not** apply to other nonappropriated fund contracts.¹¹ See e.g. Furash & Co. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 518 (2000) (dismissing suit concerning contract with Federal Housing Finance Board).
2. In the past, the government often included a disputes clause in non-exchange NAF contracts, thereby giving a contractor the right to appeal a dispute to a BCA. See AR 215-4, Chapter 6, para.6-11c.(3); Charitable Bingo Assoc. Inc., ASBCA No. 53249, 01-2 BCA ¶ 31,478 (holding that the board had jurisdiction over a dispute with a NAF based on the inclusion of the disputes clause). Further, an agency directive granting NAF contractors a right of appeal has served as the basis for board jurisdiction, even when the contract contained no disputes clause. See DoDD 5515.6; Recreational Enters., ASBCA No. 32176, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,675 (board had jurisdiction over NAF contract dispute because DOD directives required contract clause granting a right of appeal).

⁸ —~~Arising under the contract~~” is defined as falling within the scope of a contract clause and therefore providing a remedy for some event occurring during contract performance. RALPH C. NASH ET AL., THE GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS REFERENCE BOOK, at 8 (2d ed. 1998).

⁹ —~~Relating to the contract~~” means having a connection to the contract. The term encompasses claims that cannot be resolved through a contract clause, such as for breach of contract or correction of mistakes. Prior to passage of the CDA, contractors pursued relief for mutual mistake (rescission or reformation) under the terms of Pub. L. No. 85-804 (see FAR 33.205; FAR Part 50, Extraordinary Contractual Actions). RALPH C. NASH ET AL., THE GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS REFERENCE BOOK, at 438 (2d ed. 1998).

¹⁰ The Department of Defense (DOD) typically uses this clause for mission critical contracts, such as purchases of aircraft, naval vessels, and missile systems. DFARS 233.215.

¹¹ In addition, the CDA does not normally apply to: (1) Tennessee Valley Authority contracts; (2) contracts for the sale of real property; or (3) contracts with foreign governments or agencies. 41 U.S.C. § 602; FAR 33.203.

3. However, See Pacrim Pizza v. Secretary of the Navy, 304 F.3d 1291 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (CAFC refused to grant jurisdiction over non-exchange NAFI contract dispute; even though the contract included the standard disputes clause, the court held that only Congress can waive sovereign immunity, and the parties may not by contract bestow jurisdiction on a court). See also Sodexo Marriott Management, Inc., f/k/a Marriott Mgmt. Servs. V. United States, 61 Fed. Cl. 229 (2004) (holding that the non-appropriated funds doctrine barred the COFC from having jurisdiction over a NAF food service contract with the Marine Corps Recruit Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Center), Core Concepts of Florida, Inc. v. United States, 327 F.3d 1331 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (CAFC upheld a COFC decision that it lacked jurisdiction over a Federal Prison Industry (FPI) contract under the Tucker Act because FPI was a self-sufficient NAFI).

IV. CONTRACTOR CLAIMS.

A. Proper Claimants.

1. Only the parties to the contract (i.e., the prime contractor and the government) may normally submit a claim. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a).
2. Subcontractors.
 - a. A subcontractor cannot file a claim directly with the contracting officer. United States v. Johnson Controls, 713 F.2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (dismissing subcontractor claim); see also Detroit Broach Cutting Tools, Inc., ASBCA No. 49277, 96-2 BCA 28,493 (holding that the subcontractor's direct communication with the government did not establish privity); Southwest Marine, Inc., ASBCA No. 49617, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,347 (rejecting the subcontractor's assertion that the Suits in Admiralty Act gave it the right to appeal directly); cf. Department of the Army v. Blue Fox, 119 S. Ct. 687 (1999) (holding that a subcontractor may not sue the government directly by asserting an equitable lien on funds held by the government). But see Choe-Kelly, ASBCA No. 43481, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,910 (holding that the board had jurisdiction to consider the subcontractor's unsponsored claim alleging an implied-in-fact contract).

- b. A prime contractor, however, can sponsor claims (also called ~~pass-through~~ claims”) on behalf of its subcontractors. Erickson Air Crane Co. of Washington, Inc. v. United States, 731 F.2d 810 (Fed. Cir. 1984); McPherson Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 50830, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,349 (appeal dismissed where prime stated it did not wish to pursue the appeal).
3. Sureties. Absent privity of contract, sureties may not file claims. Admiralty Constr., Inc. v. Dalton, 156 F.3d 1217 (Fed. Cir. 1998) (surety must finance contract completion or take over performance to invoke doctrine of equitable subrogation); William A. Ransom and Robert D. Nesen v. United States, 900 F.2d 242 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (discussing doctrine of equitable subrogation). However, see also Fireman’s Fund Insurance Co. v. England, 313 F.3d 1344 (Fed Cir. 2002) (although the doctrine of equitable subrogation is recognized by the COFC under the Tucker Act, the CDA only covers ~~claims~~ by a contractor against the government relating to a contract,” thus a surety is not a ~~contractor~~” under the CDA.
 4. Dissolved/Suspended Corporations. A corporate contractor must possess valid corporate status, as determined by applicable state law, to assert a CDA appeal. See Micro Tool Eng’g, Inc., ASBCA No. 31136, 86-1 BCA ¶ 18,680 (holding that a dissolved corporation could not sue under New York law). But cf. Fre’nce Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 46233, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,802 (allowing a ~~resurrected~~” contractor to prosecute the appeal). Allied Prod. Management, Inc., and Richard E. Rowan, J.V., DOT CAB No. 2466, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,585 (allowing a contractor to appeal despite its suspended corporate status). In determining what powers survive dissolution, courts and boards look to the laws of the state of incorporation. See AEI Pacific, Inc., ASBCA No. 53806, 05-1 BCA ¶ 32,859 (holding that a dissolved Alaska corporation could initiate proceedings before the ASBCA as part of its ~~winding up~~ its affairs” as allowed by the Alaskan Statute concerning the dissolution Alaskan Corporations.)

B. Definition of a Claim.

1. Contract Disputes Act. The CDA does not define the term ~~claim~~.” As a result, courts and boards look to the FAR for a definition. See Essex Electro Eng’rs, Inc. v. United States, 960 F.2d 1576 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (holding that the executive branch has authority to issue regulations implementing the CDA, to include defining the term ~~claim~~,” and that the FAR definition is consistent with the CDA).

2. FAR. The FAR defines a “claim” as “a written demand or written assertion by one of the contracting parties seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of contract terms, or other relief arising under or relating to a contract.” FAR 2.101; FAR 52.233-1.
- a. Claims arising under or relating to the contract include those supported by remedy granting clauses, breach of contract claims, and mistakes alleged after award.
 - b. A written demand (or written assertion) seeking the payment of money in excess of \$100,000 is not a valid CDA claim until the contractor properly certifies it. FAR 2.101.
 - c. A request for an equitable adjustment (REA) is not a “routine request for payment” and satisfies the FAR definition of “claim.” Reflectone, Inc. v. Dalton, 60 F.3d 1572 (Fed. Cir. 1995).
 - d. A voucher, invoice, or other routine request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted is not a valid CDA claim. FAR 2.101; 52.233-1. A contractor may convert such a submission into a valid CDA claim if:
 - (1) The contractor complies with the submission and certification requirements of the Disputes clause; and
 - (2) The contracting officer:
 - (a) Disputes the submission as to either liability or amount; or
 - (b) Fails to act in a reasonable time. FAR 33.201; FAR 52.233-1. See S-TRON, ASBCA No. 45890, 94-3 BCA ¶ 26,957 (contracting officer’s failure to respond for 6 months to contractor’s “relatively simple” engineering change proposal (ECP) and REA was unreasonable).

C. Elements of a Claim.

1. The demand or assertion must be in writing. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a); FAR 33.201. See Honig Indus. Diamond Wheel, Inc., ASBCA No. 46711, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,955 (granting the government's motion to strike monetary claims that the contractor had not previously submitted to the contracting officer); Clearwater Constructors, Inc. v. United States, 56 Fed. Cl. 303 (2003) (a subcontractor's letter detailing its dissatisfaction with a contracting officer's contract interpretation, attached to a contractor's cover-letter requesting a formal review and decision, constituted a non-monetary claim under the CDA).

2. Seeking as a matter of right,¹² one of the following:
 - a. Payment of money in a sum certain;

 - b. Adjustment or interpretation of contract terms. TRW, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 51172 and 51530, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,047 (seeking decision on allowability and allocability of certain costs). Compare William D. Euille & Assocs., Inc. v. General Services Administration, GSBCA No. 15,261, 2000 GSBCA LEXIS 105 (May 3, 2000) (dispute concerning directive to remove and replace building materials proper contract interpretation claim), with Rockhill Industries, Inc., ASBCA No. 51541, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,693 (money claim — masquerading as claim for contract interpretation”); or

 - c. Other relief arising under or relating to the contract. See General Electric Co.; Bayport Constr. Co., ASBCA Nos. 36005, 38152, 39696, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,958 (demand for contractor to replace or correct latent defects under Inspection clause).
 - (1) Reformation or Rescission. See McClure Electrical Constructors, Inc. v. United States, 132 F.3d 709 (Fed. Cir. 1997); LaBarge Products, Inc. v. West, 46 F.3d 1547 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (ASBCA had jurisdiction to entertain reformation claim).

¹² Some submissions, such as cost proposals for work the government later decides it would like performed, would not be considered submissions seeking payment — as a matter of right.” Reflectone v. Dalton, 60 F.3d 1572, n.7 (Fed. Cir. 1995).

- (2) Specific performance is not an available remedy. Western Aviation Maintenance, Inc. v. General Services Administration, GSBCA No. 14165, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,816.
3. Submitted to the contracting officer for a decision. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a).
- a. The Federal Circuit has interpreted the CDA's submission language as requiring the contractor to "commit" the claim to the contracting officer and "yield" to his authority to make a final decision. Dawco Constr., Inc. v. United States, 930 F.2d 872 (Fed. Cir. 1991).
- b. The claim need not be sent only to the contracting officer, or directly to the contracting officer. If the contractor submits the claim to its primary government contact with a request for a contracting officer's final decision, and the primary contact delivers the claim to the contracting officer, the submission requirement can be met. Neal & Co. v. United States, 945 F.2d 385 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (claim requesting contracting officer's decision addressed to Resident Officer in Charge of Construction). See also D.L. Braughler Co., Inc. v. West, 127 F.3d 1476 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (submission to resident engineer not seeking contracting officer decision not a claim); J&E Salvage Co., 37 Fed. Cl. 256 (1997) (letter submitted to the Department of Justice rather than the Defense Reutilization and Marketing Office was not a claim).
- c. Only receipt by the contracting officer triggers the time limits and interest provisions set forth in the CDA. See 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(1), § 611.
- d. A claim should implicitly or explicitly request a contracting officer's final decision. See Ellett Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (holding that submission to the contracting officer is required, but the request for a final decision may be implied); Heyl & Patterson, Inc. v. O'Keefe, 986 F.2d 480, 483 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (stating that "a request for a final decision can be implied from the context of the submission"); Transamerica Ins. Corp. v. United States, 973 F.2d 1572, 1576 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (stating that no "magic words" are required "as long as what the contractor desires by its submissions is a final decision").

- e. A contracting officer cannot issue a valid final decision if the contractor explicitly states that it is not seeking a final decision. Fisherman's Boat Shop, Inc. ASBCA No. 50324, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,257 (holding that the contracting officer's final decision was a nullity because the contractor did not intend for its letter submission to be treated as a claim).
4. Certification. A contractor must certify any claim that exceeds \$100,000. 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(1); FAR 33.207. CDA certification serves to create the deterrent of potential liability for fraud and thereby discourage contractors from submitting unwarranted or inflated claims. See Fischbach & Moore Int'l Corp. v. Christopher, 987 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1993).
- a. Determining the Claim Amount.
 - (1) A contractor must consider the aggregate effect of increased and decreased costs to determine whether the claim exceeds the dollar threshold for certification.¹³ FAR 33.207(d).
 - (2) Claims that are based on a "common or related set of operative facts" constitute one claim. Placeway Constr. Corp., 920 F.2d 903 (Fed. Cir. 1990).
 - (3) A contractor may not split a single claim that exceeds \$100,000 into multiple claims to avoid the certification requirement. See, e.g., Walsky Constr. Co v. United States, 3 Ct. Cl. 615 (1983); Warchol Constr. Co. v. United States, 2 Ct. Cl. 384 (1983); D&K Painting Co., Inc., DOTCAB No. 4014, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,064; Columbia Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 48536, 96-1 BCA ¶ 27,970; Jay Dee Militarywear, Inc., ASBCA No. 46539, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,720.

¹³ The contractor need not include the amount of any government claims in its calculations. J. Slotnik Co., VABCA No. 3468, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,645.

- (4) Separate claims that total less than \$100,000 each require no certification, even if their combined total exceeds \$100,000. See Engineered Demolition, Inc. v. United States, 60 Fed.Cl. 822 (2204) (holding that appellants claim of \$69,047 and \$38,940 sponsored on behalf of appellant's sub-contractor were separate, having arose out of different factual predicates, each under \$100,000.), Phillips Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 27055, 83-2 BCA ¶ 16,618; B. D. Click Co., ASBCA No. 25609, 81-2 BCA ¶ 15,394.

- (5) The contracting officer cannot consolidate separate claims to create a single claim that exceeds \$100,000. See B. D. Click Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 25609, 81-2 BCA ¶ 15,395. Courts and boards, however, can consolidate separate claims for hearing to promote judicial economy.

- (6) A contractor need not certify a claim that grows to exceed \$100,000 after the contractor submits it to the contracting officer if:
 - (a) The increase was based on information that was not reasonably available at the time of the initial submission; or

 - (b) The claim grew as the result of a regularly accruing charge and the passage of time. See Tecom, Inc. v. United States, 732 F.2d 935 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (concluding that the contractor need not certify a \$11,000 claim that grew to \$72,000 after the government exercised certain options); AAI Corp. v. United States, 22 Cl. Ct. 541 (1991) (refusing to dismiss a claim that was \$0 when submitted, but increased to \$500,000 by the time the suit came before the court); Mulunesh Berhe, ASBCA No. 49681, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,339.

b. Certification Language Requirement. FAR 33.207(c). When required to do so, a contractor must certify that:

- (1) The claim is made in good faith;

- (2) The supporting data are accurate and complete to the best of the contractor's knowledge and belief;
 - (3) The amount requested accurately reflects the contract adjustment for which the contractor believes the government is liable; and
 - (4) The person submitting the claim is duly authorized to certify the claim on the contractor's behalf.¹⁴
- c. Proper Certifying Official. A contractor may certify its claim through ~~any~~ person duly authorized to bind the contractor with respect to the claim." 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(7); FAR 33.207(e). See Metric Constructors, Inc., ASBCA No. 50843, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,088 (concluding that senior project manager was proper certifying official).
- d. No claim vs. Defective Certification. Tribunals treat cases where an attempted certification is ~~—substantially~~" compliant differently from those where the certification is either entirely absent or the language is intentionally or negligently defective.
- (1) No claim.
 - (a) Absence of Certification. No valid claim exists. See FAR 33.201 (~~—Failure to certify shall not be deemed to be a defective certification.~~"); Hamza v. United States, 31 Fed. Cl. 315 (1994) (complete lack of an attempted certification); Eurostyle Inc., ASBCA No. 45934, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,458 (~~—complete absence of any certification is not a mere defect which may be corrected~~”).

¹⁴ Absent extraordinary circumstances, courts and boards will not question the accuracy of the statements in a contractor's certification. D.E.W., Inc., ASBCA No. 37332, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,004. A prime contractor need not agree with all aspects or elements of a subcontractor's claim. In addition, a prime contractor need not be certain of the government's liability, or the amount recoverable. The prime contractor need only believe that the subcontractor has good grounds to support its claim. See Oconto Elec., Inc., ASBCA No. 45856, 94-3 BCA ¶ 26,958 (holding that the prime contractor properly certified its subcontractor's claim, even though the official certifying the claim lacked personal knowledge of the amount claimed); see also Arnold M. Diamond, Inc. v. Dalton, 25 F.3d 1006 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (upholding the contractor's submission of a subcontractor's claim pursuant to a court order).

- (b) Certifications made with intentional, reckless, or negligent disregard of CDA certification requirements are not correctable. See Walashek Industrial & Marine, Inc., ASBCA No. 52166, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,728 (two prongs of certificate omitted or not fairly compliant); Keydata Sys, Inc. v. Department of the Treasury, GSBCA No. 14281-TD, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,330 (denying the contractor's petition for a final decision because it failed to correct substantial certification defects).

- (2) Claim with ~~“Defective”~~ Certification. 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(6). FAR 33.201 defines a defective certification as one ~~“which alters or otherwise deviates from the language in 33.207(c) or which is not executed by a person duly authorized to bind the contractor with respect to the claim.”~~
 - (a) Exact recitation of the language of CDA 41 U.S.C. § 605(c), FAR 33.207(c) is not required—~~“substantial compliance”~~ suffices. See Fischbach & Moore Int'l Corp. v. Christopher, 987 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (substituting the word ~~“understanding”~~ for ~~“knowledge”~~ did not render certificate defective).

 - (b) Technical defects are correctable. Examples include missing certifications when two or more claims are deemed to be a larger claim requiring certification, and certification by the wrong representative of the contractor. See H.R. Rep. No. 102-1006, 102d Cong., 2d Sess. 28, reprinted in 1992 U.S.C.C.A. at 3921, 3937.

- (c) Certifications used for other purposes may be acceptable even though they do not include the language required by the CDA. See James M. Ellett Const. Co., Inc. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (SF 1436 termination proposal not substantially deficient as a CDA certificate); Metric Constructors, Inc., ASBCA No. 50843, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,088. Compare SAE/Americon - Mid-Atlantic, Inc., GSBCA No. 12294, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,890 (holding that the contractor's "certificate of current cost or pricing data" on SF 1411 was susceptible of correction, even though it did not include the first and third statements required for a proper CDA certification), with Scan-Tech Security, L.P. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 326 (2000) (suit dismissed after court equated use of SF 1411 with no certification).
- (d) The CO need not render a final decision if he notifies the contractor in writing of the defect within 60 days after receipt of the claim. 41 U.S.C. § 605 (c)(6).
- (e) Interest on a claim with a defective certification shall be paid from the date the contracting officer initially received the claim. FAR 33.208(c).
- (f) A defect will not deprive a court or board of jurisdiction, but it must be corrected before entry of a court's final judgment or a board's decision. 41 U.S.C. § 605 (c)(6).

D. Demand for a Sum Certain.

1. Where the essence of a dispute is the increased cost of performance, the contractor must demand a sum certain as a matter of right. Compare Essex Electro Eng'rs, Inc. v. United States, 22 Cl. Ct. 757, aff'd, 960 F.2d 1576 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (holding that a cost proposal for possible future work did not seek a sum certain as a matter of right); with J.S. Alberici Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 6179, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,639, recon. denied, ENG BCA No. 6179-R, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,919 (holding that a request for costs associated with ongoing work, but not yet incurred, was a sum certain); McDonnell Douglas Corp., ASBCA No. 46582, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,377 (holding that a sum certain can exist even if the contractor has not yet incurred any costs); Fairchild Indus., ASBCA No. 46197, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,594 (holding that a request based on estimated future costs was a sum certain).

2. A claim states a sum certain if:
 - a. The government can determine the amount of the claim using a simple mathematical formula. Metric Constr. Co. v. United States, 1 Cl. Ct. 383 (1983); Mulunesh Berhe, ASBCA No. 49681, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,339 (simple multiplication of requested monthly rate for lease); Jepco Petroleum, ASBCA No. 40480, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,038 (claim requesting additional \$3 per linear foot of excavation, when multiplied by total of 10,000 feet, produced sum certain).

 - b. Enlarged claim doctrine. Under this doctrine, a BCA or the COFC may exercise jurisdiction over a dispute that involves a sum in excess of that presented to the contracting officer for a final decision if:
 - (1) The increase in the amount of the claim is based on the same set of operative facts previously presented to the contracting officer; and

 - (2) The contractor neither knew nor reasonably should have known, at the time when the claim was presented to the contracting officer, of the factors justifying an increase in the amount of the claim. Johnson Controls World Services, Inc. v. United States, 43 Fed. Cl. 589 (1999). See also Stencel Aero Engineering Corp., ASBCA No. 28654, 84-1 BCA ¶ 16,951 (finding essential character or elements of the certified claim had not been changed).

- E. Supporting Data. Invoices, detailed cost breakdowns, and other supporting financial documentation need not accompany a CDA claim as a jurisdictional prerequisite. H.L. Smith v. Dalton, 49 F.3d 1563 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (contractor’s failure to provide CO with additional information —simply delayed action on its claims”); John T. Jones Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 48303, 96-1 BCA ¶ 27,997 (stating that the contracting officer’s desire for more information did not invalidate the contractor’s claim submission).
- F. Settlement.
1. Agencies should attempt to resolve claims by mutual agreement, if possible. FAR 33.204; FAR 33.210. See Pathman Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 817 F.2d 1573 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (stating that a “major purpose” of the CDA is to “induce resolution of contract disputes with the government by negotiation rather than litigation”).
 2. Only contracting officers or their authorized representatives may normally settle contract claims. See FAR 33.210; see also J.H. Strain & Sons, Inc., ASBCA No. 34432, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,909 (refusing to enforce a settlement agreement that the agency’s attorney entered into without authority). The Department of Justice (DOJ), however, has plenary authority to settle cases pending before the COFC. See Executive Business Media v. Department of Defense, 3 F.3d 759 (4th Cir. 1993).
 3. Contracting officers are authorized, within the limits of their warrants, to decide or resolve all claims arising under or relating to the contract except for:
 - a. A claim or dispute for penalties or forfeitures prescribed by statute or regulation that another Federal agency is specifically authorized to administer, settle, or determine; or
 - b. The settlement, compromise, payment or adjustment of any claim involving fraud.¹⁵ FAR 33.210.

G. Interest.

¹⁵ When a claim is suspected to be fraudulent, the contracting officer shall refer the matter to the agency official responsible for investigating fraud. FAR 33.209. To justify a stay in a Board proceeding, the movant has the burden to show there are substantially similar issues, facts and witnesses in civil and criminal proceedings, and there is a need to protect the criminal litigation which overrides any injury to the parties by staying the civil litigation. Afro-Lecon, Inc. v. United States, 820 F.2d 1198 (Fed. Cir. 1987); T. Iida Contracting, Ltd., ASBCA No. 51865, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,626.

1. Interest on CDA claims is calculated every six months based on a rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to Pub. L. No. 92-41, 85 Stat. 97. 41 U.S.C. § 611; FAR 33.208.
2. Established interest rates can be found at www.treasurydirect.gov.
3. Interest may begin to accrue on costs before the contractor incurs them. See Servidone Constr. Corp. v. United States, 931 F.2d 860 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (stating that 41 U.S.C. § 611 “sets a single, red-letter date for the interest of all amounts found due by a court without regard to when the contractor incurred the costs”); see also Caldera v. J.S. Alberici Constr. Co., 153 F.3d 1381 (Fed Cir. 1998) (holding that 41 U.S.C. § 611 “trumps” conflicting regulations that prohibit claims for future costs).

H. Termination for Convenience (T4C) Settlement Proposals. FAR 49.206.

1. A contractor may submit a settlement proposal for costs associated with the termination of a contract for the convenience of the government. FAR 49.206-1; FAR 49.602-1. See Standard Form (SF) 1435, Settlement Proposal (Inventory Basis); SF 1436, Settlement Proposal (Total Cost Basis); SF 1437, Settlement Proposal for Cost-Reimbursement Type Contracts; SF 1438, Settlement Proposal (Short Form).
2. Courts and boards consider T4C settlement proposals to be “nonroutine” submissions under the CDA. See Ellett, 93 F.3d at 1542 (stating that “it is difficult to conceive of a less routine demand for payment than one which is submitted when the government terminates a contract for its convenience”).
 - a. Courts and boards, however, do not consider T4C settlement proposals to be CDA claims when submitted because contractors normally do not submit them for a contracting officer’s final decision—they submit them to facilitate negotiations. See Ellett Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (T4C settlement proposal was not a claim because the contractor did not submit it to the contracting officer for a final decision); see also Walsky Constr. Co. v. United States, 173 F.3d 1312 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (T4C settlement proposal was not a claim because it had not yet been the subject of negotiations with the government); cf. Medina Constr., Ltd. v. United States, 43 Fed. Cl. 537, 551 (1999) (parties may reach an impasse without entering into negotiations if allegations of fraud prevent the contracting officer from entering into negotiations).

- b. A T4C settlement proposal may “ripen” into a CDA claim once settlement negotiations reach an impasse. See Ellett, 93 F.3d at 1544 (holding that the contractor’s request for a final decision following ten months of “fruitless negotiations” converted its T4C settlement proposal into a claim); Metric Constructors, Inc., ASBCA No. 50843, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,088 (holding that a contractor’s T4C settlement proposal ripened into a claim when the contracting officer issued a unilateral contract modification following the parties’ unsuccessful negotiations); cf. FAR 49.109-7(f) (stating that a contractor may appeal a “settlement by determination” under the Disputes clause unless the contractor failed to submit its T4C settlement proposal in a timely manner).
3. Certification. If a CDA certification is required, the contractor may rely on the standard certification in whichever SF the FAR requires it to submit. See Ellett, 93 F.3d at 1545 (rejecting the government’s argument that proper certification of a T4C settlement proposal is a jurisdictional prerequisite); see also Metric Constructors, Inc., supra. (concluding that the contractor could “correct” the SF 1436 certification to comply with the CDA certification requirements).
4. Interest. The FAR precludes the government from paying interest under a settlement agreement or determination; however, the FAR permits the government to pay interest on a contractor’s successful appeal. FAR 49.112-2(d). Therefore, the government cannot pay interest on a T4C settlement proposal unless it “ripens” into a CDA claim and the contractor successfully appeals to the ASBCA or the COFC. See Ellett, 93 F.3d at 1545 (recognizing the fact that T4C settlement proposals are treated disparately for interest purposes); see also Central Env’tl, Inc., ASBCA 51086, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,912 (concluding that interest did not begin to run until after the parties’ reached an impasse and the contractor requested a contracting officer’s final decision).

I. Statute of Limitations.

1. In 1987, the Federal Circuit concluded that the six-year statute of limitations in the Tucker Act does not apply to CDA appeals. Pathman Constr. Co. v. United States, 817 F.2d 1573 (Fed. Cir. 1987).
2. In 1994, Congress revised the CDA to impose a six-year statute of limitations. Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, Pub. L. No. 103-355, 108 Stat. 3243 (codified at 40 U.S.C. § 605). See FAR 33.206; see also Motorola, Inc. v. West, 125 F.3d 1470 (Fed. Cir. 1997).

- a. For contracts awarded on or after 1 October 1995, a contractor must submit its claim within six years of the date the claim accrues.
- b. This statute of limitations provision does not apply to government claims based on contractor claims involving fraud.

V. GOVERNMENT CLAIMS.

A. Requirement for Final Decision. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a); FAR 52.233-1(d)(1).

1. The government may assert a claim against a contractor; however, the claim must be the subject of a contracting officer's final decision.
2. Some government actions are immediately appealable.
 - a. Termination for Default. A contracting officer's decision to terminate a contract for default is an immediately appealable government claim. Independent Mfg. & Serv. Cos. of Am., Inc., ASBCA No. 47636, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,223. See Malone v. United States, 849 F.2d 1441, 1443 (Fed. Cir. 1988); cf. Educators Assoc., Inc. v. United States, 41 Fed. Cl. 811 (1998) (dismissing the contractor's suit as untimely because the contractor failed to appeal within 12 months of the date it received the final termination decision).
 - b. Withholding Monies. A contracting officer's decision to withhold monies otherwise due the contractor is an immediately appealable government claim. Placeway Constr. Corp. United States, 920 F.2d 903, 906 (Fed. Cir. 1990); Sprint Communications Co., L.P. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 14263, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,249.

- c. Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) Determination. A contracting officer's decision regarding the allowability of costs under the CAS is often an immediately appealable government claim. See Newport News Shipbuilding and Dry Dock Co. v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 613 (1999) (government's demand that the contractor change its accounting for all of its CAS-covered contracts was an appealable final decision); Litton Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 45400, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,895 (holding that the government's determination was an appealable government claim because the government was "seeking, as a matter of right, the adjustment or interpretation of contract terms"); cf. Aydin Corp., ASBCA No. 50301, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,259 (holding that the contracting officer's failure to present a claim arising under CAS was a nonjurisdictional error).
 - d. Miscellaneous Demands. See Bean Horizon-Weeks (JV), ENG BCA No. 6398, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,134 (holding that a post-appeal letter demanding repayment for improper work was an appealable final decision); Outdoor Venture Corp., ASBCA No. 49756, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,490 (holding that the government's demand for warranty work was a claim that the contractor could immediately appeal); Sprint Communications Co. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 13182, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,068. But see Boeing Co., 25 Cl. Ct. 441 (1992) (holding that a post-termination letter demanding the return of unliquidated progress payments was not appealable); Iowa-Illinois Cleaning Co. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12595, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,628 (holding that government deductions for deficient performance are not appealable absent a contracting officer's final decision).
3. As a general rule, the government may not assert a counterclaim that has not been the subject of a contracting officer's final decision.
- B. Contractor Notice. Assertion of a government claim is usually a two-step process. A demand letter gives the contractor notice of the potential claim and an opportunity to respond. If warranted, the final decision follows. See FAR 33.211(a) ("When a claim by or against a contractor cannot be satisfied or settled by mutual agreement and a decision on the claim is necessary"); Instruments & Controls Serv. Co., ASBCA No. 38332, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,237 (dismissing appeal because final decision not preceded by demand); see also Bean Horizon-Weeks (JV), ENG BCA No. 6398, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,134; B.L.I. Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 40857, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,963 (stating that "[w]hen the Government is considering action, the contractor should be given an opportunity to state its position, express its views, or explain, argue against, or contest the proposed action").

- C. Certification. Neither party is required to certify a government claim. 41 U.S.C. §§ 605(a); 605(c)(1). See Placeway Constr. Corp., 920 F.2d at 906; Charles W. Ware, GSBCA No. 10126, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,871. A contractor, however, must certify its request for interest on monies deducted or withheld by the government. General Motors Corp., ASBCA No. 35634, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,149.
- D. Interest. Interest on a government claim begins to run when the contractor receives the government's initial written demand for payment. FAR 52.232-17.
- E. Finality. Once the contracting officer's decision becomes final (i.e., once the appeal period has passed), the contractor cannot challenge the merits of that decision judicially. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a). See Seaboard Lumber Co. v. United States, 903 F.2d 1560, 1562 (Fed. Cir. 1990); L.A. Constr., Inc., 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,291 (holding that the contractor's failure to appeal the final decision in a timely manner deprived the board of jurisdiction, even though both parties testified on the merits during the hearing).

VI. FINAL DECISIONS.

- A. General. The contracting officer must issue a written final decision on all claims. 51 U.S.C. § 605(a); FAR 33.206; FAR 33.211(a). See Tyger Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 36100, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,149. But cf. McDonnell Douglas Corp., ASBCA No. 44637, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,700 (dismissing the contractor's appeal from a government claim for noncompliance with CAS because the procuring contracting officer issued the final decision instead of the cognizant administrative contracting officer as required by the FAR and DFARS).
- B. Time Limits. A contracting officer must issue a final decision on a contractor's claim within certain statutory time limits. 41 U.S.C. § 605(c); FAR 33.211.
 - 1. Claims of \$100,000 or less. The contracting officer must issue a final decision within 60 days.
 - 2. Certified Claims Exceeding \$100,000. The contracting officer must take one of the following actions within 60 days:
 - a. Issue a final decision; or

b. Notify the contractor of a firm date by which the contracting officer will issue a final decision.¹⁶ See Boeing Co. v. United States, 26 Cl. Ct. 257 (1992); Aerojet Gen. Corp., ASBCA No. 48136, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,470 (concluding that the contracting officer failed to provide a firm date where the contracting officer made the timely issuance of a final decision contingent on the contractor's cooperation in providing additional information); Inter-Con Security Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 45749, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,062 (concluding that the contracting officer failed to provide a firm date where the contracting officer merely promised to render a final decision within 60 days of receiving the audit).

3. Uncertified and Defectively Certified Claims Exceeding \$100,000.

a. FAR 33.211(e) The contracting officer has no obligation to issue a final decision on a claim that exceeds \$100,000 if the claim is:

(1) Uncertified; or

(2) Defectively certified.

b. If the claim is defectively certified, the contracting officer must notify the contractor, in writing, within 60 days of the date the contracting officer received the claim of the reason(s) why any attempted certification was defective.

4. Failure to Issue a Final Decision. FAR 33.211(g)

a. If the contracting officer fails to issue a final decision within a reasonable period of time, the contractor can:

(1) Request the tribunal concerned to direct the contracting officer to issue a final decision. 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(4); FAR 33.211(f). See American Industries, ASBCA No. 26930-15, 82-1 BCA ¶ 15,753.

¹⁶ The contracting officer must issue the final decision within a reasonable period. What constitutes a "reasonable" period depends on the size and complexity of the claim, the adequacy of the contractor's supporting data, and other relevant factors. 41 U.S.C. § 605c(3); FAR 33.211(d). See Defense Sys. Co., ASBCA No. 50534, 97-2 BCA ¶ 28,981 (holding that nine months to review a \$72 million claim was reasonable).

(2) Treat the contracting officer's failure to issue a final decision as an appealable final decision (i.e., a ~~deemed denial~~). 41 U.S.C. § 605(c)(5); FAR 33.211(g). See Aerojet Gen. Corp., ASBCA No. 48136, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,470.

b. A BCA, however, cannot direct the contracting officer to issue a more detailed final decision than the contracting officer has already issued. A.D. Roe Co., ASBCA No. 26078, 81-2 BCA ¶ 15,231.

C. Format. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a); FAR 33.211(a)(4).

1. The final decision must be written. Tyger Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 36100, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,149.
2. In addition, the final decision must:
 - a. Describe the claim or dispute;
 - b. Refer to the pertinent or disputed contract terms;
 - c. State the disputed and undisputed facts;
 - d. State the decision and explain the contracting officer's rationale;
 - e. Advise the contractor of its appeal rights; and
 - f. Demand the repayment of any indebtedness to the government.
3. Rights Advisement.
 - a. FAR 33.211(a)(4)(v) specifies that the final decision should include a paragraph substantially as follows:

This is a final decision of the Contracting Officer. You may appeal this decision to the agency board of contract appeals. If you decide to appeal, you must, within 90 days from the date you receive this decision, mail or otherwise furnish written notice to the agency board of contract appeals and provide a copy to the Contracting Officer from whose decision the appeal is taken. The notice shall indicate that an appeal is intended, reference this decision, and identify the contract by number. With regard to appeals to the agency board of contract appeals, you may, solely at your election, proceed under the board's small claim procedure for claims of \$50,000 or less or its accelerated procedure for claims of \$100,000 or less. Instead of appealing to the agency board of contract appeals, you may bring an action directly in the United States Court of Federal Claims (except as provided in the Contract Disputes Act of 1978, 41 U.S.C. 603, regarding Maritime Contracts) within 12 months of the date you receive this decision.

b. Failure to properly advise the contractor of its appeal rights may prevent the ~~“appeals clock”~~ from starting. If the contracting officer's rights advisory is deficient, the contractor must demonstrate that, but for its detrimental reliance upon the faulty advice, its appeal would have been timely. Decker & Co. v. West, 76 F.3d 1573 (Fed. Cir. 1996).

4. Specific findings of fact are not required and, if made, are not binding on the government in any subsequent proceedings. See Wilner v. United States, 24 F.3d 1397 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (concluding that admissions favorable to the contractor do not constitute evidence of government liability).

D. Delivery. 41 U.S.C. § 605(a); FAR 33.211(b).

1. The contracting officer must mail (or otherwise furnish) a copy of the final decision to the contractor. See Images II, Inc., ASBCA No. 47943, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,277 (holding that receipt by the contractor's employee constituted proper notice).
2. The contracting officer should use certified mail, return receipt requested; however, hand delivery and facsimile (FAX) transmission are also acceptable means of delivery.

3. The contracting officer should preserve all evidence of the date the contractor received the contracting officer's final decision. See Omni Abstract, Inc., ENG BCA No. 6254, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,367 (relying on a government attorney's affidavit to determine when the 90-day appeals period started), .
 - a. When hand delivering the final decision, the contracting officer should require the contractor to sign for the document.
 - b. When using a FAX transmission, the contracting officer should confirm receipt and memorialize the confirmation in a written memorandum. See Mid-Eastern Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 51287, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,907 (concluding that the government established a prima facie case by presenting evidence to show that it successfully transmitted the final decision to the contractor's FAX number); see also Public Service Cellular, Inc., ASBCA No. 52489, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,832 (transmission report not sufficient evidence of receipt); Riley & Ephriam Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 408 F.3d 1369 (May 18, 2005)(fax machine printout of all faxes sent which showed appellant's attorney's office received a fax, and contracting officer's statement at trial that she faxed the final decision on the day and time shown on fax print out were not "objective indicia of receipt" as required by the CDA).

E. Independent Act of a Contracting Officer.

1. The final decision must be the contracting officer's personal, independent act. Compare PLB Grain Storage Corp. v. Glickman, 113 F.3d 1257 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (unpub.) (holding that a termination was proper even though a committee of officials directed it); Charitable Bingo Associates d/b/a Mr. Bingo, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 53249, 53470, 05-01 BCA 32,863 (finding the Contracting Officer utilized independent judgment in terminating appellant's contract after the Assistant Secretary of the Army (MR&A) issued a policy memorandum prohibiting contractor-operated bingo programs within the Army MWR programs) with Climatic Rainwear Co. v. United States, 88 F. Supp. 415 (Ct. Cl. 1950) (holding that a termination was improper because the contracting officer's attorney prepared the termination findings without the contracting officer's participation).

2. The contracting officer should seek assistance from engineers, attorneys, auditors, and other advisors. See FAR 1.602-2 (requiring the contracting officer to request and consider the advice of ~~specialists,~~ "as appropriate"); FAR 33.211(a)(2) (requiring the contracting officer to seek assistance from ~~legal~~ and other advisors"); see also Pacific Architects & Eng'rs, Inc. v. United States, 203 Ct. Cl. 499, 517 (1974) (opining that it is unreasonable to preclude the contracting officer from seeking legal advice); Prism Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 44682, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,909 (indicating that the contracting officer is not required to independently investigate the facts of a claim before issuing final decision); Environmental Devices, Inc., ASBCA No. 37430, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,138 (approving the contracting officer's communications with the user agency prior to terminating the contract for default); cf. AR 27-1, para. 15-5a (noting the ~~particular~~ importance" of the contracts attorney's role in advising the contracting officer on the drafting of a final decision).

F. Finality. 41 U.S.C. § 605(b).

1. A final decision is binding and conclusive unless timely appealed.
2. Reconsideration.
 - a. A contracting officer may reconsider, withdraw, or rescind a final decision before the expiration of the appeals period. General Dynamics Corp., ASBCA No. 39866, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,017. Cf. Daniels & Shanklin Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 37102, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,060 (rejecting the contractor's assertion that the contracting officer could not withdraw a final decision granting its claim, and indicating that the contracting officer has an obligation to do so if the final decision is erroneous).
 - b. The contracting officer's rescission of a final decision, however, will not necessarily deprive a BCA of jurisdiction because jurisdiction vests as soon as the contractor files its appeal. See Security Servs., Inc., GSBCA No. 11052, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,704; cf. McDonnell Douglas Astronautics Co., ASBCA No. 36770, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,253 (indicating that the board would sustain a contractor's appeal if the contracting officer withdrew the final decision after the contractor filed its appeal).

- c. A contracting officer may vacate his or her final decision unintentionally by agreeing to meet with the contractor to discuss the matters in dispute. See Sach Sinha and Assocs., ASBCA No. 46916, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,499 (finding that the contracting officer ~~re~~“reconsidered” her final decision after she met with the contractor as a matter of ~~business~~“business courtesy” and requested the contractor to submit its proposed settlement alternatives in writing); Royal Int’l Builders Co., ASBCA No. 42637, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,684 (holding that the contracting officer ~~destroyed~~“destroyed the finality of his initial decision” by agreeing to meet with the contractor, even though the meeting was cancelled and the contracting officer subsequently sent the contractor a letter stating his intent to stand by his original decision).

 - d. To restart the appeal period after reconsidering a final decision, the contracting officer must issue a new final decision. Information Sys. & Networks Corp. v. United States, 17 Cl. Ct. 527 (1989); Sach Sinha and Assocs., ASBCA No. 46916, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,499; Birken Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 36587, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,581.
3. The Fulford Doctrine. A contractor may dispute an underlying default termination as part of a timely appeal from a government demand for excess procurement costs, even though the contractor failed to appeal the underlying default termination in a timely manner. Fulford Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 2143, 6 CCF ¶ 61,815 (May 20, 1955); Deep Joint Venture, GSBCA No. 14511, 02-2 BCA ¶ 31,914 (GSBCA confirms validity of the Fulford doctrine for post-CDA terminations).

VII. APPEALS TO THE ARMED SERVICES BOARD OF CONTRACT APPEALS (ASBCA).

- A. The Right to Appeal. 41 U.S.C. § 606. A contractor may appeal a contracting officer’s final decision to an agency BCA.

- B. The Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA).
 - 1. The ASBCA consists of 25-30 administrative judges who dispose of approximately 800-900 appeals per year.

 - 2. ASBCA judges specialize in contract disputes and come from both the government and private sectors. Each judge has at least five years of experience working in the field of government contract law.

3. The Rules of the Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals appear in Appendix A of the DFARS.
- C. Jurisdiction. 41 U.S.C. § 607(d). The ASBCA has jurisdiction to decide appeals regarding contracts made by:
1. The Department of Defense; or
 2. An agency that has designated the ASBCA to decide the appeal.
- D. Standard of Review. The ASBCA will review the appeal de novo. See 41 U.S.C. § 605(a) (indicating that the contracting officer's specific findings of fact are not binding in any subsequently proceedings); see also Wilner v. United States, 24 F.3d 1397 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (en banc); Precision Specialties, Inc., ASBCA No. 48717, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,054 (final decision retains no presumptive evidentiary weight nor is it binding on the Board).
- E. Perfecting an Appeal.
1. Requirement. A contractor's notice of appeal (NOA) shall be mailed or otherwise furnished to the Board within 90 days from date of receipt of the final decision. A copy shall be furnished to the contracting officer. 41 U.S.C. § 606; ASBCA Rule 1(a). See Cosmic Constr. Co. v. United States, 697 F.2d 1389 (Fed. Cir. 1982) (90 day filing requirement is statutory and cannot be waived by the Board); Rex Sys, Inc., ASBCA No. 50456, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,956 (refusing to dismiss a contractor's appeal simply because the contractor failed to send a copy of the NOA to the contracting officer).
 2. Filing an appeal with the contracting officer can satisfy the Board's notice requirement. See Hellenic Express, ASBCA No. 47129, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,189 (citing Yankee Telecomm. Lab., ASBCA No. 25240, 82-2 BCA ¶ 15,515, for the proposition that —ifing an appeal with the contracting officer is tantamount to filing with the Board"); cf. Brunner Bau GmbH, ASBCA No. 35678, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,315 (holding that notice to the government counsel was a filing).
 3. Methods of filing.

- a. Mail. The written NOA can be sent to the ASBCA or to the contracting officer via the U.S. Postal Service. See Thompson Aerospace, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 51548, 51904, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,232 (NOA mailed to KO timely filed).
- b. Otherwise furnishing, such as through commercial courier service. North Coast Remfg., Inc., ASBCA No. 38599, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,232 (NOA delivered by Federal Express courier service not accorded same status as U.S. mail service and was therefore untimely).

4. Contents. An adequate notice of appeal must:

- a. Be in writing. See Lows Enter., ASBCA No. 51585, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,622 (holding that verbal notice is insufficient).
- b. Express dissatisfaction with the contracting officer's decision;
- c. Manifest an intent to appeal the decision to a higher authority, see e.g., McNamara-Lunz Vans & Warehouse, Inc., ASBCA No. 38057, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,636 (concluding that a letter stating that ~~we~~ "we will appeal your decision through the various avenues open to us" adequately expressed the contractor's intent to appeal); cf. Stewart-Thomas Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 38773, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,481 (stating that the intent to appeal to the board must be unequivocal); Birken Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 37064, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,248 (concluding that an electronic message to the termination contracting officer did not express a clear intent to appeal); and
- d. Be timely. 41 U.S.C. § 606; ASBCA Rule 1(a); Thompson Aerospace, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 51548, 51904, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,232.

(1) A contractor must file an appeal with a BCA within 90 days of the date it received the contracting officer's final decision. 41 U.S.C. § 606.

(2) In computing the time taken to appeal (See ASBCA Rule 33(b)):

- (a) Exclude the day the contractor received the contracting officer's final decision; and

- (b) Count the day the contractor mailed (evidenced by postmark by U.S. Postal Service) the NOA or that the Board received the NOA.
- (c) If the 90th day is a Saturday, Sunday, or legal holiday, the appeals period shall run to the end of the next business day.

e. The NOA should also:

- (1) Identify the contract, the department or agency involved in the dispute, the decision from which the contractor is appealing, and the amount in dispute; and
- (2) Be signed by the contractor taking the appeal or the contractor's duly authorized representative or attorney.

5. The Board liberally construes appeal notices. See Thompson Aerospace, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 51548, 51904, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,232 (Board jurisdiction where timely mailing of NOA to KO, despite Board rejecting its NOA mailing).

F. Regular Appeals.

- 1. Docketing. ASBCA Rule 3. The Recorder assigns a docket number and notifies the parties in writing.
- 2. Rule 4 (R4) File. ASBCA Rule 4.
 - a. The contracting officer must assemble and transmit an appeal file to the ASBCA and the appellant within 30 days of the date the government receives the docketing notice.
 - b. The R4 file should contain the relevant documents (e.g., the final decision, the contract, and the pertinent correspondence).

- c. The appellant may supplement the R4 file within 30 days of the date it receives its copy.¹⁷

3. Complaint. ASBCA Rule 6(a).

- a. The appellant must file a complaint within 30 days of the date it receives the docketing notice. But cf. Northrop Grumman Corp., DOT BCA No. 4041, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,191 (requiring the government to file the complaint on a government claim).

- b. The board does not require a particular format; however, the complaint should set forth:

- (1) Simple, concise, and direct statements of the appellant's claims;
- (2) The basis of each claim; and
- (3) The amount of each claim, if known.

- c. If sufficiently detailed, the board may treat the NOA as the complaint.

4. Answer. ASBCA Rule 6(b).

- a. The government must answer the complaint within 30 days of the date it receives the complaint.

- b. The answer should set forth simple, concise, and direct statements of the government's defenses to each of the appellant's claims, including any affirmative defenses.

- c. The board will enter a general denial on the government's behalf if the government fails to file its answer in a timely manner.

¹⁷ As a practical matter, the ASBCA generally allows either party to supplement the R4 file up to the date of the hearing.

5. Discovery. ASBCA Rules 14-15.
 - a. The parties may begin discovery as soon as the appellant files the complaint.
 - b. The board encourages the parties to engage in voluntary discovery.
 - c. Discovery may include depositions, interrogatories, requests for the production of documents, and requests for admission.
6. Pre-Hearing Conferences. ASBCA Rule 10. The board may hold telephonic pre-hearing conferences to discuss matters that will facilitate the processing and disposition of the appeal.
7. Motions. ASBCA Rule 5.
 - a. Parties must file jurisdictional motions promptly; however, the board may defer its ruling until the hearing.
 - b. Parties may also file appropriate non-jurisdictional motions.
8. Record Submissions. ASBCA Rule 11.
 - a. Either party may waive its right to a hearing and submit its case on the written record.
 - b. The parties may supplement the record with affidavits, depositions, admissions, and stipulations when they choose to submit their case on the written record. See Solar Foam Insulation, ASBCA No. 46921, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,901.
9. Hearings. ASBCA Rules 17-25.
 - a. The board will schedule the hearing and choose the location.
 - b. Hearings are relatively informal; however, the board generally adheres to the Federal Rules of Evidence.

- c. Both parties may offer evidence in the form of testimony and exhibits.
 - d. Witnesses generally testify under oath and are subject to cross-examination.
 - e. The board may subpoena witnesses and documents.
 - f. A court reporter will prepare a verbatim transcript of the proceedings.
10. Briefs. ASBCA Rule 23. The parties may file post-hearing briefs after they receive the transcript and/or the record is closed.
11. Decisions. ASBCA Rule 28.
- a. The ASBCA issues written decisions.
 - b. The presiding judge normally drafts the decision; however, three judges decide the case.
12. Motions for Reconsideration. ASBCA Rule 29.
- a. Either party may file a motion for reconsideration within 30 days of the date it receives the board's decision.
 - b. Motions filed after 30 days are untimely. Bio-temp Scientific, Inc., ASBCA No. 41388, 95-2 BCA ¶ 86,242; Arctic Corner, Inc., ASBCA No. 33347, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,874.
 - c. Absent unusual circumstances, a party may not use a motion for reconsideration to correct errors in its initial presentation. Metric Constructors, Inc., ASBCA No. 46279, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,827.
13. Appeals. [41 U.S.C. §607\(g\)\(1\)](#). Either party may appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC) within 120 days of the date it receives the board's decision; however, the government needs the consent of the U.S. Attorney General. 41 U.S.C. § 607(g)(1)(B).

G. Accelerated Appeals. 41 U.S.C. § 607(f); ASBCA Rule 12.3.

1. If the amount in dispute is \$100,000 or less, the contractor may choose to proceed under the board's accelerated procedures.
2. The board renders its decision, whenever possible, within 180 days from the date it receives the contractor's election; therefore, the board encourages the parties to limit (or waive) pleadings, discovery, and briefs.
3. The presiding judge normally issues the decision with the concurrence of a vice chairman. If these two individuals disagree, the chairman will cast the deciding vote.
 - a. Written decisions normally contain only summary findings of fact and conclusions.
 - b. If the parties agree, the presiding judge may issue an oral decision at the hearing and follow-up with a memorandum to formalize the decision.
4. Either party may appeal to the CAFC within 120 days of the date it receives the decision.

H. Expedited Appeals. 41 U.S.C. § 608; ASBCA Rule 12.

1. If the amount in dispute is \$50,000 or less or where the business (as defined in the Small Business Act and regulations under that Act), \$150,000 or less, the contractor may choose to proceed under the board's expedited procedures.
2. The board renders its decision, whenever possible, within 120 days from the date it receives the contractor's election; therefore, the board uses very streamlined procedures (e.g., accelerated pleadings, extremely limited discovery, etc.).
3. The presiding judge decides the appeal.
 - a. Written decisions contain only summary finds of fact and conclusions.

- b. The presiding judge may issue an oral decision from the bench and follow-up with a memorandum to formalize the decision.
4. Neither party may appeal the decision, and the decision has no precedential value. See Palmer v. Barram, 184 F.3d 1373 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding that a small claims decision is only appealable for fraud in the proceedings).

I. Remedies.

1. The board may grant any relief available to a litigant asserting a contract claim in the COFC. 41 U.S.C. § 607(d).
- a. Money damages is the principal remedy sought.
 - b. The board may issue a declaratory judgment. See Malone v. United States, 849 F.2d 1441 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (validity of T4D).
 - c. The board may award attorney's fees pursuant to the Equal Access to Justice Act (EAJA). 5 U.S.C. § 504. See Hughes Moving & Storage, Inc., ASBCA No. 45346, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,776 (award decision in T4D case); Oneida Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 44194, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,893 (holding that the contractor's rejection of the agency settlement offer, which was more than the amount the board subsequently awarded, did not preclude recovery under the EAJA); cf. Cape Tool & Die, Inc., ASBCA No. 46433, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,465 (finding rates in excess of the \$75 per hour guideline rate reasonable for attorneys in the Washington D.C. area with government contracts expertise). Q.R. Sys. North, Inc., ASBCA No. 39618, 96-1 BCA ¶ 27,943 (rejecting the contractor's attempt to transfer corporate assets so as to fall within the EAJA ceiling).
2. The board need not find a remedy-granting clause to grant relief. See S&W Tire Serv., Inc., GSBCA No. 6376, 82-2 BCA ¶ 16,048 (awarding anticipatory profits).

3. The board may not grant specific performance or injunctive relief. General Elec. Automated Sys. Div., ASBCA No. 36214, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,195. See Western Aviation Maint., Inc. v. General Services Admin., GSBCA No. 14165, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,816 (holding that the 1992 Tucker Act amendments did not waive the government's immunity from specific performance suits).

J. Payment of Judgments. 41 U.S.C. § 612.

1. An agency may access the “Judgment Fund” to pay “[a]ny judgment against the United States on a [CDA] claim.” 41 U.S.C. § 612(a). See 31 U.S.C. § 1304; cf. 28 U.S.C. § 2517.
 - a. The Judgment Fund is only available to pay judgments and monetary awards—it is not available to pay informal settlement agreements. See 41 U.S.C. § 612(a)(b); see also 31 U.S.C. § 1304.
 - b. If an agency lacks sufficient funds to cover an informal settlement agreement, it can “consent” to the entry of a judgment against it. See Bath Irons Works Corp. v. United States, 20 F.3d 1567, 1583 (Fed. Cir. 1994); Casson Constr. Co., GSBCA No. 7276, 84-1 BCA ¶ 17,010 (1983). As a matter of policy, however, it behooves the buying activity to coordinate with its higher headquarters regarding the use of consent decrees since the agency must reimburse the Judgment Fund with current funds.
2. Prior to payment, both parties must certify that the judgment is “final” (i.e., that the parties will pursue no further review). 31 U.S.C. § 1304(a). See Inland Servs. Corp., B-199470, 60 Comp. Gen. 573 (1981).
3. An agency must repay the Judgment Fund from appropriations current at the time of the award or judgment. 41 U.S.C. § 612(c). Bureau of Land Management, B-211229, 63 Comp. Gen. 308 (1984).

K. Appealing an Adverse Decision. 41 U.S.C. § 607(g)(1). Board decisions are final unless one of the parties appeals to the CAFC within 120 days after the date the party receives the board's decision. See Placeway Constr. Corp. v. United States, 713 F.2d 726 (Fed. Cir. 1983).

VIII. ACTIONS BEFORE THE COURT OF FEDERAL CLAIMS (COFC).

- A. The right to file suit. Subsequent to receipt of a contracting officer's final decision, a contractor may bring an action directly on the claim in the COFC. 41 U.S.C. § 609(a)(1).

- B. The Court of Federal Claims (COFC).
 - 1. Over a third of the court's workload concerns contract claims.

 - 2. The President appoints COFC judges for a 15-year term with the advice and consent of the Senate.

 - 3. The President can reappoint a judge after the initial 15-year term expires.

 - 4. The Federal Circuit can remove a judge for incompetency, misconduct, neglect of duty, engaging in the practice of law, or physical or mental disability.

 - 5. The Rules of the United States Court of Federal Claims (RCFC) appear in an appendix to Title 28 of the United States Code.

- C. Jurisdiction.
 - 1. The Tucker Act. 28 U.S.C. § 1491(a)(1). The COFC has jurisdiction to decide claims against the United States based on:
 - a. The Constitution;

 - b. An act of Congress;

 - c. An executive regulation; or

 - d. An express or implied-in-fact contract.

2. The Contract Disputes Act (CDA) of 1978. 41 U.S.C. § 609. The Court has jurisdiction to decide appeals from contracting officers' final decisions.
 3. The Federal Courts Administration Act of 1992, Pub. L. No. 102-572, 106 Stat. 4506 (codified at 28 U.S.C. § 1491(a)(2)). The COFC has jurisdiction to decide nonmonetary claims (e.g., disputes regarding contract terminations, rights in tangible or intangible property, and compliance with cost accounting standards) that arise under section 10(a)(1) of the CDA.
- D. Standard of Review. 41 U.S.C. § 609(a)(3). The COFC will review the case de novo. The COFC will not presume that the contracting officer's findings of fact and conclusions of law are valid. Instead, the COFC will treat the contracting officer's final decision as one more piece of documentary evidence and weigh it with all of the other evidence in the record. Wilner v. United States, 24 F.3d 1397 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (en banc) (overruling previous case law that a contracting officer's final decision constitutes a "strong presumption or an evidentiary admission" of the government's liability).
- E. Perfecting an Appeal.
1. Timeliness. 41 U.S.C. § 609(a); RCFCs 3 and 6.
 - a. A contractor must file its complaint within 12 months of the date it received the contracting officer's final decision. See Janicki Logging Co. v. United States, 124 F.3d 226 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (unpub.); K&S Constr. v. United States, 35 Fed. Cl. 270 (1996); see also White Buffalo Constr., Inc. v. United States, 28 Fed. Cl. 145 (1992) (filing one day after the expiration of the 12 month period rendered it untimely).
 - b. In computing the appeals period, exclude:
 - (1) The day the contractor received the contracting officer's decision; and
 - (2) The last day of the appeals period if that day is:
 - (a) A Saturday, Sunday, or federal holiday; or

(b) A day on which weather or other conditions made the Clerk of Court's office inaccessible.

c. The COFC may deem a late complaint timely if:

- (1) The plaintiff sent the properly addressed complaint by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested;
- (2) The plaintiff deposited the complaint in the mail sufficiently in advance of the due date to permit its timely receipt in the ordinary course of the mail; and
- (3) The plaintiff exercised no control over the complaint from the time of mailing to the time of delivery.

See B. D. Click Co. v. United States, 1 Cl. Ct. 239 (1982) (concluding that the contractor failed to demonstrate the applicability of the exception to the timeliness rules).

d. The Fulford Doctrine. See para. VI.F.3, above.

2. Filing Method. RCFC 3. The contractor must deliver its complaint to the Clerk of Court.

3. Contents. RCFC 8(a); RCFC 9(h).

a. If the complaint sets forth a claim for relief, the complaint must contain:

- (1) A ~~short~~ and plain" statement regarding the COFC's jurisdiction;
- (2) A ~~short~~ and plain" statement showing that the plaintiff is entitled to relief; and
- (3) A demand for a judgment.

b. In addition, the complaint must contain, inter alia:

- (1) A statement regarding any action taken on the claim by Congress, a department or agency of the United States, or another tribunal;
- (2) A clear citation to any statute, regulation, or executive order upon which the claim is founded; and
- (3) A description of any contract upon which the claim is founded.

4. The Election Doctrine. See para. II.B.3, above.

F. Procedures.

1. Process. RCFC 4. The Clerk of Court serves 5 copies of the complaint on the Attorney General (or the Attorney General's designated agent).
2. ~~Call Letter.~~ 28 U.S.C. § 520.
 - a. The Attorney General must send a copy of the complaint to the responsible military department.
 - b. In response, the responsible military department must provide the Attorney General with a ~~written~~ statement of all facts, information, and proofs."
3. Answer. RCFCs 8, 12, and 13. The government must answer the complaint within 60 days of the date it receives the complaint.
4. The court rules regulate discovery and pretrial procedures extensively, and the court may impose monetary sanctions for noncompliance with its discovery orders. See M. A. Mortenson Co. v. United States, 996 F.2d 1177 (Fed. Cir. 1993).
5. Decisions may result from either a motion or a trial. Procedures generally mirror those of trials without juries before federal district courts. The judges make written findings of fact and state conclusions of law.

G. Remedies.

1. The COFC has jurisdiction ~~to~~ afford complete relief on any contract claim brought before the contract is awarded including declaratory judgments, and such equitable and extraordinary relief as it deems proper.” Federal Courts Improvements Act of 1982, Pub. L. No. 97-164, 96 Stat. 40 (codified at 28 U.S.C. § 1491(a)(3)). See Sharman Co., Inc. v. United States, 2 F.3d 1564 (Fed. Cir. 1993).
2. The COFC has no authority to issue injunctive relief or specific performance, except for reformation in aid of a monetary judgment, or rescission instead of monetary damages. See John C. Grimberg Co. v. United States, 702 F.2d 1362 (Fed. Cir. 1983); Rig Masters, Inc. v. United States, 42 Fed. Cl. 369 (1998); Paragon Energy Corp. v. United States, 645 F.2d 966 (Ct. Cl. 1981).
3. The COFC may award EAJA attorneys’ fees. 28 U.S.C. § 2412.

H. Payment of Judgments. See para. VII.J., above.

I. Appealing an Adverse Decision.

1. Unless timely appealed, a final judgment bars any further claim, suit, or demand against the United States arising out of the matters involved in the case or controversy. 28 U.S.C. § 2519.
2. A party must appeal a final judgment to the CAFC within 60 days of the date the party receives the adverse decision. 28 U.S.C. § 2522. See RCFC 72.

IX. APPEALS TO THE COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT (CAFC).

A. National Jurisdiction.

1. The Federal Circuit has national jurisdiction. Dewey Elec. Corp. v. United States, 803 F.2d 650 (Fed. Cir. 1986); Teller Envntl. Sys., Inc. v. United States, 802 F.2d 1385 (Fed. Cir. 1986).
2. The Federal Circuit also exclusive jurisdiction over appeals from an agency BCA and the COFC pursuant to section 8(g)(1) of the CDA. 28 U.S.C. § 1295(a)(3) and (10).

- B. Standard of Review. 41 U.S.C. § 609(b).
 - 1. Jurisdiction. The court views jurisdictional challenges as “pure issues of law,” which it reviews de novo. See Transamerica Ins. Corp. v. United States, 973 F.2d 1572, 1576 (Fed. Cir. 1992).
 - 2. Findings of Fact. Findings of fact are final and conclusive unless they are fraudulent, arbitrary, capricious, made in bad faith, or not supported by substantial evidence. 49 U.S.C. § 609(b). See United States v. General Elec. Corp., 727 F.2d 1567, 1572 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (holding that the court will affirm a board’s decision if there is “~~sub~~ relevant evidence as a reasonable mind might accept as adequate to support a conclusion”); Tecom, Inc. v. United States, 732 F.2d 935, 938 n.4 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (finding that the trier of fact’s credibility determinations are virtually unreviewable).
- C. Frivolous Appeals. The court will assess damages against parties filing frivolous appeals. See Dungaree Realty, Inc. v. United States, 30 F.3d 122 (Fed. Cir. 1994); Wright v. United States, 728 F.2d 1459 (Fed. Cir. 1984).
- D. Supreme Court Review. The U.S. Supreme Court reviews decisions of the Federal Circuit by writ of certiorari.

X. CONTRACT ATTORNEY RESPONSIBILITIES IN THE DISPUTES PROCESS.

- A. Actions upon Receipt of a Claim.
 - 1. Review the claim and check the agency’s facts and theories.
 - 2. Verify that the contractor has properly certified all claims exceeding \$100,000.
 - 3. Advise the contracting officer to consider business judgment factors, as well as legal issues.
- B. Contracting Officer’s Final Decision.

1. Prior to reviewing the final decision, determine whether the claim should be certified. If the claim exceeds \$100,000, ensure that a person authorized to bind the contractor properly certified the claim.
2. Ensure that the subject of the final decision is a nonroutine request for payment, rather than a contractor's invoice or preliminary request for adjustment.
3. Review the final decision for sufficiency of factual and legal reasoning.
4. Ensure that the decision letter properly sets forth the contractor's appeal rights.

C. R4 File.

1. Oversee the preparation of the Rule 4 file. If possible, coordinate with the trial counsel assigned to the appeal as to what documents to include/omit from the Rule 4 file.
2. Put privileged documents in a separate litigation file for transmission to the trial attorney.

D. Discovery.

1. Assist the trial attorney in formulating a discovery plan.
2. Identify knowledgeable government and contractor personnel and conduct preliminary interviews of government witnesses.
3. Draft interrogatories, requests for documents, requests for admissions, and other discovery requests. Prepare draft responses to any discovery requests propounded by the appellant.
4. Assist the trial counsel during depositions (e.g., by identifying key contractor personnel and pertinent documents related to the dispute). Coordinate with the trial counsel regarding the feasibility of conducting one or more depositions.

E. Hearings.

1. Through the trial attorney, coordinate with the Chief Trial Attorney concerning appearing as counsel of record.
 2. To the extent practicable, assist in witness and evidence preparation.
 3. Assist in the preparation and/or review of post-hearing briefs.
- F. Client Expectations. Assist the trial attorney in providing the contracting officer and other interested parties regular status updates regarding the appeal.
- G. Settlement. Work with the contracting officer and the trial attorney regarding the costs and benefits of litigating the claim. Strive for a position that reflects sound business judgment and protects the interests of the government.

XI. CONCLUSION.

ATTACHMENT A

52.233-1 Disputes.

As prescribed in 33.215, insert the following clause:

Disputes (July 2002)

(a) This contract is subject to the Contract Disputes Act of 1978, as amended (41 U.S.C. 601-613).

(b) Except as provided in the Act, all disputes arising under or relating to this contract shall be resolved under this clause.

(c) "Claim," as used in this clause, means a written demand or written assertion by one of the contracting parties seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of contract terms, or other relief arising under or relating to this contract. However, a written demand or written assertion by the Contractor seeking the payment of money exceeding \$100,000 is not a claim under the Act until certified. A voucher, invoice, or other routine request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted is not a claim under the Act. The submission may be converted to a claim under the Act, by complying with the submission and certification requirements of this clause, if it is disputed either as to liability or amount or is not acted upon in a reasonable time.

(d)(1) A claim by the Contractor shall be made in writing and, unless otherwise stated in this contract, submitted within 6 years after accrual of the claim to the Contracting Officer for a written decision. A claim by the Government against the Contractor shall be subject to a written decision by the Contracting Officer.

(2)(i) The Contractor shall provide the certification specified in paragraph (d)(2)(iii) of this clause when submitting any claim exceeding \$100,000.

(ii) The certification requirement does not apply to issues in controversy that have not been submitted as all or part of a claim.

(iii) The certification shall state as follows: "I certify that the claim is made in good faith; that the supporting data are accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief; that the amount requested accurately reflects the contract adjustment for which the Contractor believes the Government is liable; and that I am duly authorized to certify the claim on behalf of the Contractor."

(3) The certification may be executed by any person duly authorized to bind the Contractor with respect to the claim.

(e) For Contractor claims of \$100,000 or less, the Contracting Officer must, if requested in writing by the Contractor, render a decision within 60 days of the request. For Contractor-

certified claims over \$100,000, the Contracting Officer must, within 60 days, decide the claim or notify the Contractor of the date by which the decision will be made.

(f) The Contracting Officer's decision shall be final unless the Contractor appeals or files a suit as provided in the Act.

(g) If the claim by the Contractor is submitted to the Contracting Officer or a claim by the Government is presented to the Contractor, the parties, by mutual consent, may agree to use alternative dispute resolution (ADR). If the Contractor refuses an offer for ADR, the Contractor shall inform the Contracting Officer, in writing, of the Contractor's specific reasons for rejecting the offer.

(h) The Government shall pay interest on the amount found due and unpaid from (1) the date that the Contracting Officer receives the claim (certified, if required); or (2) the date that payment otherwise would be due, if that date is later, until the date of payment. With regard to claims having defective certifications, as defined in FAR 33.201, interest shall be paid from the date that the Contracting Officer initially receives the claim. Simple interest on claims shall be paid at the rate, fixed by the Secretary of the Treasury as provided in the Act, which is applicable to the period during which the Contracting Officer receives the claim and then at the rate applicable for each 6-month period as fixed by the Treasury Secretary during the pendency of the claim.

(i) The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract, pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action arising under the contract, and comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (Dec 1991). As prescribed in 33.215, substitute the following paragraph (i) for paragraph (i) of the basic clause:

(i) The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract, pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action arising under or relating to the contract, and comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer.

Chapter 23

Pricing of Contract Adjustments



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 23

PRICING OF CONTRACT ADJUSTMENTS

| | |
|--|----|
| I. INTRODUCTION. | 1 |
| II. REFERENCES | 1 |
| III. OVERVIEW. | 2 |
| A. Entitlement to More Money. | 2 |
| B. Pricing Formula. | 5 |
| C. Recoverable Costs. | 7 |
| D. Certification Requirements. | 19 |
| IV. MEASUREMENT OF THE ADJUSTMENT..... | 20 |
| A. Costs. | 20 |
| B. Profit and Loss. | 22 |
| V. PROVING THE AMOUNT OF THE ADJUSTMENT..... | 22 |
| A. Burden of Proof. | 22 |
| B. Methods of Proof..... | 23 |
| C. Jury Verdicts..... | 26 |
| VI. SPECIAL ITEMS. | 26 |
| A. Unabsorbed Overhead. | 26 |
| B. Subcontractor Claims. | 29 |
| C. Loss of Efficiency. | 30 |
| D. Impact on Other Work..... | 30 |
| E. Attorneys' Fees..... | 31 |

| | |
|--|----|
| F. Interest | 34 |
| VII. Quantum CASE planning | 37 |
| A. The Philosophy..... | 37 |
| B. The Prerequisites..... | 37 |
| C. The Methodology: DAMS..... | 37 |
| VIII. Applying the Dams Methodology..... | 38 |
| A. Divide the Contractor’s Claim into Component Parts..... | 38 |
| B. Apply Cost/CAS Principles. | 38 |
| C. Make the contractor prove the amount claimed..... | 38 |
| D. See What Really Happened (Seize the Offensive)..... | 38 |
| IX. CONCLUSION..... | 41 |

CHAPTER 23
PRICING OF CONTRACT ADJUSTMENTS

I. INTRODUCTION. Following this block of instruction, students will understand:

- A. The circumstances that entitle a contractor to a contract price adjustment.
- B. The measurement of a price adjustment.
- C. The methods and burden of proving a price adjustment.
- D. The various special items that often comprise a price adjustment.
- E. Quantum Case Planning.

II. REFERENCES

- A. 41 USC §422.
- B. Pricing of Adjustments, Chapter 8, Administration of Government Contracts, 4th Edition, Cibinic, Nash & Nagle, 2006.
- C. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 30, Cost Accounting Standards Administration; FAR 31, Contract Cost Principles and Procedures; FAR 43.2 Change Orders; FAR 52.243-1 to 52.243-7; 48 CFR 9903.202-1 to 5 (FAR Appendix); DFARS 243.205-70.
- D. DFARS 243.205-70 and 252.243-7001 Pricing of Contract Modifications, (Dec 1991); DFARS 243.205-71 and 252.243-7002 Requests for Equitable Adjustment (Mar 1998).
- E. Accounting Guide, Defense Contract Audit Agency Pamphlet No. 7641.90, Information for Contractors, <http://www.dcaa.mil>; OMB Circular A-122; OMB Circular No. A-21 Cost Principles for Education Institutions; OMB Circular No. A-87, Cost Principles for State and Local Governments.

III. OVERVIEW.

- A. Entitlement to More Money. There are three circumstances that entitle contractors to more than the original contract price:
1. Equitable adjustment. An equitable adjustment entitles the contractor to receive certain additional costs of performance **plus a reasonable profit** on those costs. Equitable adjustments are based on contract clauses granting that remedy, including:
 - a. FAR 52.243-1 thru -7, Changes.
 - b. FAR 52.245-1, -2, Government Furnished Property.
 - c. FAR 52.248-1 thru -3, Value Engineering.
 - d. FAR 52.242-15, Stop Work Order.
 - e. FAR 52.236-2, Differing Site Conditions.
 2. Adjustments. An adjustment entitles the contractor to recover certain additional performance costs, but not profit. The rationale for lack of profit is that there is no change in work and/or risk—only the period in which performance occurs. There are two types of adjustments:
 - a. Work stoppage adjustments. These adjustments allow the contractor to recover certain direct and indirect performance costs. Contract clauses providing for such adjustments are:

- (1) FAR 52.242-14, Suspension of Work. See Thomas J. Papathomas, ASBCA No. 51352, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,349; [No specific references to FAR, Part 52.242-14, just full text clause with substantially the same language. Negative treatment of the case has to do with an EAJA issue.] *see also* GASA, Inc. v. U.S., 79 Fed. Cl. 325, 347 (2007) Tom Shaw, Inc., ASBCA No. 28596, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27457 [Decision adhered to on reconsideration.].
 - (2) FAR 52.242-17, Government Delay of Work.
- b. Labor standards adjustments. Adjustments under labor standards clauses include only the increased costs of direct labor (and do not include profit). See FAR 52.222-43, Fair Labor Standards Act and Service Contract Act – Price Adjustments (Multiple Year and Option Contracts); FAR 52.222-44, Fair Labor Standards Act and Service Contract Act – Price Adjustments; All Star/SAB Pacific, J.V., ASBCA No. 50856, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,958; U.S. Contracting, Inc., ASBCA No. 49713, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,232. But see BellSouth Communications Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 45955, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,231 (holding that a price adjustment under FAR 52.222-6, Davis-Bacon Act, did not preclude profit).
3. Damages. The contractor can recover common law breach of contract damages in certain very narrow situations.
 - a. A contractor may not assert a claim for breach of contract damages when there is a remedy-granting contract clause. Information Sys. & Network Corp., ASBCA No. 42659, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,665 (holding that claim for breach of damages barred by convenience termination clause); Hill Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 49820, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,327 (denying a breach claim for lost profits where the underlying changes were within the ambit of the Changes clause).
 - b. Situations where breach damages may be recovered include:
 - (1) Breach of a requirements contract. Bryan D. Highfill, HUDBCA No. 96-C-118-C7, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,316.

- (2) Bad faith termination for convenience. Praecomm, Inc. v. U.S., 78 Fed.Cl. 5, 12 (2007); Torncello v. United States, 231 Ct. Cl. 20, 681 F.2d 756 (1982); *but see* Custom Printing v. U.S., 51 Fed.Cl. 729, 734 (2002) (Questioned the level for standard of review for termination for convenience.).
 - (3) Government's failure to disclose material information. Shawn K. Christensen, dba Island Wide Contracting, AGBCA No. 95-188-R, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,724.
- c. Damages are measured under common law principles (see Section V.E., *infra*), although cost principles may apply. Chevron, USA, Inc. v. U.S., 71 Fed. Cl. 236 (2006); AT&T Tech., Inc. v. United States, 18 Cl. Ct. 315 (1989) (Decision later criticized on other, more specific grounds); Shawn K. Christensen, dba Island Wide Contracting, AGBCA No. 95-188-R, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,724.
- (1) Consequential Damages. The general rule is that consequential damages are not recoverable unless they are foreseeable and caused directly by the government's breach. Prudential Ins. Co. of Am. v. United States, 801 F.2d 1295 (Fed. Cir. 1986); Land Movers Inc. and O.S. Johnson - Dirt Contractor (JV), ENG BCA No. 5656, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,317 (no recovery of lost profits based on loss of bonding capacity; also no recovery related to bankruptcy, emotional distress, loss of business, etc.).

- (2) Compensatory Damages. A contractor whose contract was breached by the government is entitled to be placed in as good a position as it would have been if it had completed performance. U.S. v. Delta Constr. Int'l, Inc., No. 01-1253, 2002 U.S. App. LEXIS ____ (Fed. Cir., Mar. 13, 2002); PHP Healthcare Corp., ASBCA No. 39207, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,647 (the measure of damages for failure to order the minimum quantity is not the contract price; the contractor must prove actual damages). Compensatory damages include a reliance component (costs incurred as a consequence of the breach), and an expectancy component (lost profits). Keith L. Williams, ASBCA No. 46068, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,196.

B. Pricing Formula.

1. General Rule.

- a. The basic adjustment formula is the difference between the reasonable cost to perform the work as originally required, and the reasonable cost to perform the work as changed. See B.R. Servs., Inc., ASBCA Nos. 47673, 48249, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,397 (holding that the contractor must quantify the cost difference—not merely set forth the costs associated with the changed work); Buck Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 45321, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,061.
- b. Pricing adjustments should not alter the basic profit or loss position of the contractor before the change occurred. —An equitable adjustment may not properly be used as an occasion for reducing or increasing the contractor's profit or loss . . . for reasons unrelated to a change.” U.S. ex rel Bettis v. Odebrecht, 393 F.3d 1321 (D.C. Cir. 2005); Pacific Architects and Eng'rs, Inc. v. United States, 203 Ct. Cl. 499, 508 491 F.2d 734, 739 (1974). See also Stewart & Stevenson Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43631, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,252 modified by 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,653 (holding that a contractor is entitled to profit on additional work ordered by the Army even though the original work was bid at a loss); Westphal Gmph & Co., ASBCA No. 39401, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28194 (Reversed, remanded, based on factual issue, not legal premises).

2. Pricing Additional Work. Agencies price additional work based on the reasonable costs actually incurred in performing the new work. CEMS, Inc. v. U.S., 59 Fed. Cl. 168 (2003); Delco Elecs. Corp. v. United States, 17 Cl. Ct. 302 (1989), aff'd, 909 F.2d 1495 (Fed. Cir. 1990); The contractor should segregate and accumulate these costs.

3. Pricing Deleted Work.
 - a. Agencies price deleted work based on the difference between the estimated costs of the original work and the actual costs of performing the work after the change. Knights' Piping, Inc., ASBCA No. 46985, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,026; Anderson/Donald, Inc., ASBCA No. 31213, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,036. But see Condor Reliability Servs, Inc., ASBCA No. 40538, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,254.

 - b. When the government partially terminates a contract for convenience, a contractor is generally entitled to an equitable adjustment on the continuing work for the increased costs borne by that work as a result of a termination. Deval Corp., ASBCA Nos. 47132, 47133, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,182; Cal-Tron Sys., Inc., ASBCA Nos. 49279, 50371 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,986; Wheeler Bros., Inc., ASBCA No. 20465, 79-1 BCA ¶ 13,642.
 - (1) Convenience Termination Settlements. A contractor is not entitled to profit as part of a termination for convenience settlement proposal if the contractor would have incurred a loss had the entire contract been completed. FAR 49.203. The government has the burden of proving that the contractor would have incurred a loss at contract completion. R&B Bewachungs, GmbH, ASBCA No. 42214, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,105. A contractor is not entitled to anticipatory profits as part of a convenience termination settlement proposal. Dairy Sales Corp. v. United States, 593 F.2d 1002 (Ct. Cl. 1979).

4. Responsibility. Where the parties share the fault, they share liability for the added costs. See Essex Electro Eng'rs, Inc., v. Danzig, 224 F.3d 1283 (Fed. Cir. 2000); Dickman Builders, Inc., ASBCA No. 32612, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,989.

C. Recoverable Costs. The cost principles of FAR Part 31 apply to the pricing of contracts, subcontracts, and modifications whenever cost analysis is performed and when the determination, negotiation or allowance of costs is required by a contract clause. FAR 31.000. DoD requires the cost principles to be applied to all fixed price contracts. DFARS 243.205-70.

1. Allowability: When FAR Part 31 applies, contractors may claim only certain costs for adjustment purposes. The concept of allowability is ultimately a question of whether a particular item of cost should be recoverable as a matter of public policy. Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1281 C.A. Fed. (2002).
 - a. A cost is allowable only when the cost complies with **all** the following requirements:
 - (1) Reasonableness. See discussion below.
 - (2) Allocability. See discussion below.
 - (3) Standards promulgated by the CAS Board, if applicable, **or** generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and practices appropriate to the circumstances.
 - (4) Terms of the contract. See discussion below on advance agreements.
 - (5) Any limitations set forth in FAR part 31. See discussion below. FAR 31.201-2(a).
2. Reasonable. To be allowable, a cost must be reasonable. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which a prudent person would incur in the conduct of a competitive business. FAR 31.201-3.

- a. Cost held unreasonable in amount. TRC Mariah Assocs., Inc., ASBCA No. 51811, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,386; Kelly Martinez d/b/a Kelly Martinez Constr. Servs., IBCA Nos. 3140, 3144-3174, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,243, 1997 IBCA LEXIS 12. But see Raytheon STX Corp., GSBCA No. 14296-COM, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,632, 1999 GSBCA LEXIS 252 (holding that salaries paid key employees during a shutdown were reasonable in amount).

- b. Nature of cost held unreasonable. Lockheed-Georgia Co., Div. of Lockheed Corp., ASBCA No. 27660, 90-3 BCA ¶ 22,957 (air travel to the Greenbrier resort for executive physicals unreasonable because competent physicians were available in Atlanta).

- c. No presumption of reasonableness is attached to contractor costs. If an initial review of the facts causes the Contracting Officer to challenge a specific cost, the Contractor bears the burden of showing the cost is reasonable. FAR 31.201-3. Reasonableness depends on a variety of considerations and circumstances, including:
 - (1) Whether it is the type of cost generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the conduct of the contractor's business or the contract performance;
 - (2) Generally accepted sound business practices, arm's length bargaining, and Federal and State laws and regulations;
 - (3) The contractor's responsibilities to the Government, other customers, the owners of the business, employees, and the public at large; and
 - (4) Any significant deviations from the contractor's established practices. FAR 31.201-3(b).

- d. Profit. In determining the reasonableness of profit as part of an equitable adjustment, profit is calculated as:
 - (1) The rate earned on the unchanged work;

- (2) A lower rate based on the reduced risk of equitable adjustments; or

The rate calculated using weighted guidelines. See Doyle Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 44883, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,832.

3. Allocable. To be allowable, a cost must be allocable to the contract.
- a. A cost is allocable if:
- (1) Incurred specifically for the contract (direct cost); **or**
 - (2) The cost benefits both the contract and other work, and is distributed to them in reasonable proportion to the benefits received; **or**
 - (3) Is necessary for the overall operation of the business, although a direct relationship to any particular cost objective cannot be shown. FAR 31.201-4.
- b. Generally, allocability is a subset of allowability. A cost is not allowable if the cost cannot be allocated to a government contract. However, a cost may be allocable to a contract, but be unallowable because it failed another element of allowability – such as reasonableness. Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1280, C.A. Fed. (2002).
- (1) The concept of allocability is addressed to the question of whether a sufficient “~~ness~~” exists between the cost and a government contract. Lockheed Aircraft Corp. v. U.S., 179 Ct. Cl. 545, 375 F.2d 786, 794 (1967); Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1280, C.A. Fed. (2002).
 - (2) –Allocability is an accounting concept involving the relationship between incurred costs and the activities or cost objectives (e.g., contracts) to which those costs are charged. Proper allocation of costs by a contractor is important because it may be necessary for the contractor to allocate costs among several government contracts or between government and non-government activities.” Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1280, C.A. Fed. (2002).

- (3) **Benefit to the government.** For a period of time, under the Caldera case, the courts held that a cost is not allocable to a government contract if there is no reasonable benefit to the government. That principle is no longer good law.
- (a) Currently, ~~the word “benefit”~~ is used in the allocability provisions to describe the nexus required for accounting purposed between the cost and the contract to which it is allocated.”
- (b) The term is not designed to send the government into an ~~amorphous~~ inquiry into whether a particular cost sufficiently benefits the government so that the cost should be recoverable by the government. The question whether a cost should be recoverable as a matter of policy is to be undertaken by applying the specific allowability regulations, which embody the government’s view, as a matter of policy, as to whether the contractor may permissibly change particular costs to the government (if they are otherwise allocable.)” Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1284, C.A. Fed. (2002)(holding that the CAS does not require that a cost directly benefit the government’s interests for the cost to be allocable). Caldera v. Northrop Worldwide Aircraft Servs., Inc., 192 F.3d 962 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding that attorneys fees incurred unsuccessfully defending wrongful termination actions resulted in no benefit to the contract and were not allocable).

- (c) The contractor does not, however, have to demonstrate that the incurrence of the cost benefits the government in order for the cost to be allocable. Rumsfeld v. United Techs Corp., 315 F.3d 1361 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (holding that the concept of ~~“benefit”~~ within the provisions dealing with allocability merely require a nexus for accounting purposes between the cost and the contract to which it is allocated); Info. Sys. & Network Corp., ASBCA No. 42659, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,665; P.J. Dick, Inc., GSBCA No. 12415, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,307 (finding that accounting fees were costs benefiting the contract);

- c. In certain instances (i.e., impact on other work), the contract appeals boards may ignore the principle of allocability. See Clark Concrete Contractors, Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 14340, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,280 (holding that costs incurred on an unrelated project were recoverable because they were ~~“equitable and attributable”~~ by-products of agency design changes).

- 4. Accounting Standards. Costs must be measured in accordance with standards promulgated by the Cost Accounting Standards Board (CASB), if applicable. Otherwise, Contractors can determine costs by using any generally accepted cost accounting principles and practices appropriate to the circumstances. FAR 31.201-2.
 - a. Introduction to Cost Accounting Standards (CAS). CAS are administrative cost rules promulgated by the Cost Accounting Standards Board (CASB), which is an office within the Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP). The regulations are codified at 48 CFR, Chapter 99.

- (1) The CASB is an independent statutorily-established board consisting of five members. 41 U.S.C. § 422 (2000). The Board has exclusive authority to make, promulgate, and amend cost accounting standards and interpretations. The CASB's goal is to achieve uniformity and consistency in the cost accounting practices governing the measurement, assignment, and allocation of costs to contracts with the United States. See http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/procurement_casb/ (last visited May 3, 2010).
 - (2) CAS grew out of criticism of accounting and pricing practices of the defense industry in the 1960s. In turn, Congress called for and GAO confirmed, the feasibility of applying uniform cost accounting standards to all negotiated prime contract and subcontract defense procurements of \$100,000 or more. In 1988, a more permanent and independent CASB was established within the OFPP. See Pub.L.No. 100-679, 102 Stat. 4055 (1988); Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1282-83, C.A.Fed. (2002)(detailing some of the history of the CASB).
- b. If there is any conflict between the CAS and the FAR as to an issue of allocability, the CAS governs. United States v. Boeing Co., 802 F.2d 1390, 1395 (Fed.Cir. 1986); Rice v. Martin Marietta Corp., 13 F.3d 1563, 1565 n.2 (Fed.Cir. 1993).
 - c. CAS does not apply to sealed bid contracts or to any contract with a small business concern. 48 CFR 9903.201-1(b)(FAR Appendix) and FAR 30.000.

- d. CAS is mandatory for contractors and subcontractors in estimating, accumulating, and reporting costs in connection with pricing and administration of, and settlement of disputes concerning, all negotiated prime contract and subcontract procurements with the United States in excess \$700,000¹, **except:**
- (1) Contracts or subcontracts for the acquisition of commercial items.
 - (2) Contracts or subcontracts where the price negotiated is based on prices set by law or regulation.
 - (3) Firm, fixed-price contracts or subcontracts awarded on the basis of adequate price competition without submission of certified cost or pricing data.
 - (4) A contract or subcontract with a value of less than \$ 7,500,000 if, at the time the contract or subcontract is entered into, the segment of the contractor or subcontractor that will perform the work has not been awarded at least one contract or subcontract with a value of more than \$ 7,500,000 that is covered by the cost accounting standards.
 - (5) The term "subcontract" includes a transfer of commercial items between divisions, subsidiaries, or affiliates of a contractor or subcontractor. 41 U.S.C. §422(f)(2)(A-C).
 - (6) Waiver Authority. In certain situations, when CAS is required, it can be waived. 41 U.S.C. §422(f)(5)(A); FAR 30.201-5; DFARS 230.201-5:
 - (a) The head of an executive agency may waive CAS in writing for contracts less than \$ 15,000,000 where the contractor primarily sells commercial items and would not otherwise be subject to CAS.

¹ The statute refers to 10 U.S.C. § 2306a, the Truth in Negotiations Act (TINA) threshold. This threshold adjusts for inflation every five years. See also, Contract Pricing for threshold information.

- (b) The head of an executive agency may waive CAS under exceptional circumstances when necessary to meet the needs of the agency. A written J&A will address certain questions listed in the FAR & DFARS.
- (c) The head of an executive agency may not delegate the authority under subparagraph (A) or (B) to any official in the executive agency below the senior policymaking level in the executive agency.
- (d) A list of all waivers is forwarded to the CASB on an annual basis. 41 USC §422(f)(5)(e).

5. Terms of the Contract. **Advance Agreements.**

- a. The reasonableness, allocability, and allowability of certain costs may be difficult to determine. Contracting officers and contractors should seek advance agreement on the treatment of special or unusual costs. Advance agreements are not required but may be negotiated before or during a contract as long as the costs involved have not been incurred.
- b. A contracting officer may not agree to a treatment of costs inconsistent with FAR Part 31. FAR 31.109.
- c. Advance agreements may be particularly important for:
 - (1) Compensation of personal services;
 - (2) Fully depreciated assets;
 - (3) Precontract costs;
 - (4) Independent research and development and bid and proposal costs;

- (5) Royalties and costs for use of patents;
- (6) Costs of idle facilities and idle capacity
- (7) See FAR 31.109(h) for more examples.

6. **Limitations set forth in FAR 31.205 – Limited allowable costs and unallowable costs.** The government does not pay certain costs, even if they are actually incurred, reasonable, allocable, and properly accounted for. FAR Part 31 sets forth specific costs that are disallowed. Similarly, the parties may specify in the contract that certain costs will not be allowable.

a. The following list of potential **disallowed costs** is non-exclusive:

- (1) Bad debts. FAR 31.205-3.
- (2) Costs related to contingencies are generally unallowable, but some categories are allowable. FAR 31.205-7.
- (3) Contributions or Donations, including cash, property and services, regardless of recipient. FAR 31.205-8.
- (4) Depreciation costs that significantly reduce the book value of a tangible capital asset below its residual value. FAR 31.205-11(b).
- (5) Entertainment costs, including amusement, diversions, social activities, gratuities and tickets to sports events. FAR 31.205-14.
- (6) Specific Lobbying and Political Activities. FAR 31.205-22.

- (7) Excess of costs over income under any other contract. FAR 31.205-23.
- (8) Costs of Alcoholic Beverages. FAR 31.205-51
- (9) Excessive Pass-Through charges by contractors from sub-contractors, that add no or negligible value, are unallowable. If a contractor sub-contracts at least 70 percent of the work, the contracting officer must make a determination that pass-through charges at the time of award are not excessive and add value. FAR 15.408(n)(2) and FAR 52.215-23.

b. What if a cost is not expressly listed in FAR 31.205?

- (1) FAR 31.205 does not cover every element of cost. Failure to include any item of cost does not imply that it is either allowable or unallowable. In that case, the determination of allowability shall be based on the principles and standards in FAR 31 and the treatment of similar or related selected items. FAR 31.204(d).
- (2) There are several cases analyzing allowability based on whether a particular cost is similar or related to selected items in FAR 31.

- (a) Boeing North American, Inc. v. Roche, 298 F.3d 1274, 1285-86, C.A. Fed. (2002). This case involved a claim for the cost of settling a private shareholder lawsuit against 14 directors of a company (later bought by Boeing). The shareholder suit sought damages for the failure of the company directors to establish internal controls that would have prevented the company from committing fraud against the government. The fraud led to subsequent convictions, fines and penalties against the company. The court first held that costs of shareholder suits are not “similar” to costs incurred in connection with criminal convictions or any other disallowed cost in the FAR. Then the court held that such costs were “related” to the convictions with a sufficiently direct relationship to the disallowed costs of the criminal convictions to disallow the cost of defending against the adverse judgment in the shareholder suit.
- (b) Southwest Marine, Inc. v. United States, 535 F.3d 1012 (9th Cir. 2008). The court held that legal costs associated with citizen suits against Southwest Marine under the Clean Water Act were not allowable costs because they were “similar” to costs disallowed in the FAR in False Claims Act proceedings.
- (c) Geren v. Tecom, Inc., 566 F.3d 1037, (C.A.Fed. 2009). The court stated that when an adverse judgment would be unallowable in a private suit, the settlement of such a private suit is “similar” to the FAR provisions concerning private suits under the False Claims Act. The court held that the settlement cost may still be allowable if the contracting officer determines that there was “very little likelihood that the third party plaintiffs would have been successful on the merits.”
- (3) A cost is unallowable if it is associated with the contractor breaching the government contract. See cases below.

- (a) Geren v. Tecom, Inc., 566 F.3d 1037, C.A.Fed. (2009). This case examined the allowability of legal costs associated with Title VII violations. Rather than conduct a “similar or related” analysis (see discussion above), the court held that if an adverse judgment would cause the contractor to breach its contract with the government, the cost is unallowable. In this case, the contract contained a clause stating the contractor would not discriminate based on sex, among other factors. The court found that an adverse judgment in a Title VII suit would breach the contract clause, thus any defense costs and judgment costs would be unallowable. See also NAACP v. Federal Power Commission, 425 U.S. 662, 668, 96 S.Ct. 1806, 48 L.Ed.2d 284 (1976)(holding that the Federal Power Commission had authority to disallow the costs of unlawful discriminatory employment practices as the costs were unreasonable and contrary to public policy).

- (b) Dade Brothers, Inc., v. United States, 163 Ct. Cl. 485, 325 F.2d 239, 240 (1963). This case holds that costs resulting from a breach of a contractual obligation are not allowable costs under the contract. The case dealt with allowability of the legal cost of defending a union suit and the subsequent cost of satisfying the adverse judgment. Specifically, 54 employees sued the contractor for denying them seniority rights. The court found all the costs unallowable because the contract specifically stated the contractor would abide by the union agreement.

D. Certification Requirements. The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (FASA), Pub. L. 103-355, § 2301, 108 Stat. 3243 (1994) amended 10 U.S.C. § 2410, Requests for Equitable Adjustment or Other Relief: Certification.

- 1. In DOD, a request for equitable adjustment that exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold (currently, \$150,000) may not be paid unless a person authorized to certify the request on behalf of the contractor certifies, at the time that the request is submitted, that:

- a. The request is made in good faith, and
- b. The supporting data is accurate and complete to the best of that person's knowledge. 10 U.S.C. § 2410.

IV. MEASUREMENT OF THE ADJUSTMENT.

A. Costs. –Costs” for adjustment formula purposes are the sum of allowable direct and indirect costs, incurred or to be incurred, less any allowable credits, plus cost of money. FAR 31.201-1. If it is an equitable adjustment, one must also calculate the profit on the allowable costs.

1. Direct Costs.

- a. A direct cost is any cost that is identified specifically with a particular contract. Direct costs are not limited to items that are incorporated into the end product as material or labor. All costs identified specifically with a claim are direct costs of that claim. FAR 31.202.
- b. Direct costs generally include direct labor, direct material, subcontracts, and other direct costs.

2. Indirect Costs.

- a. Indirect costs are any costs not directly identified with a single final cost objective, but identified with two or more final cost objectives, or with at least one intermediate cost objective. FAR 31.203. There are two types of indirect costs:
 - (1) Overhead. Allocable to a cost objective based on benefit conferred. Typical overhead costs include the costs of personnel administration, depreciation of plant and equipment, utilities, and management.

- (2) General and administrative (G&A). Not allocable based on benefit, but necessary for overall operation of the business.

FAR 31.201-4(c).

- b. Calculating indirect cost rates. The total indirect costs divided by the total direct costs equals the indirect cost rate. For example, if a contractor has total indirect costs of \$100,000 in an accounting period, and total direct costs of \$1,000,000 in the same period, the indirect cost rate is 10%.
- c. Some agencies limit the recoverable overhead through contract clauses. Reliance Ins. Co. v. United States, 931 F.2d 863 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (court upheld clause which limited recoverable overhead for change orders).

B. Profit and Loss. An equitable adjustment includes a reasonable and customary allowance for profit. United States v. Callahan Walker Constr. Co., 317 U.S. 56 (1942); Rumsfeld v. Applied Companies, Inc., 325 F.3d 1328 (Fed. Cir. 2003). Adjustments under FAR 52.242-14, Suspension of Work and FAR 52.242-17, Government Delay of Work, expressly do not include profit. Profit is calculated as:

1. The rate earned on the unchanged work;
2. A lower rate based on the reduced risk of equitable adjustments; or
3. The rate calculated using weighted guidelines. See Doyle Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 44883, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,832.

V. PROVING THE AMOUNT OF THE ADJUSTMENT.

A. Burden of Proof.

1. The burden is on the party claiming the benefit of the adjustment. Wilner v. United States, 24 F.3d 1397 (Fed. Cir. 1994); Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759, 767 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (moving party ~~bears~~ the burden of proving the amount of loss with sufficient certainty so that the determination of the amount of damages will be more than mere speculation"); B&W Forest Prod., AGBCA Nos. 96-180, 96-198-1, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,354.
2. What must the party prove?
 - a. Entitlement (Liability)—the government did something that changed the contractor's costs, for which the government is legally liable. T.L. James & Co., ENG BCA No. 5328, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,643.

- b. Causation—there must be a causal nexus between the basis for liability and the claimed increase (or decrease) in cost. Hensel Phelps Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 49270, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,531; Stewart & Stevenson Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43631, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,653, modifying 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,252; Oak Adec, Inc. v. United States, 24 Cl. Ct. 502 (1991).

- c. Resultant Injury—that there is an actual injury or increased cost to the moving party. Servidone Constr. Corp. v. United States, 931 F.2d 860 (Fed. Cir. 1991); Cascade Gen., Inc., ASBCA No. 47754, 00-2 BCA ¶ 31,093, 2000 ASBCA LEXIS 138 (holding that a contractor claim was deficient when it failed to substantiate what specific work and/or delays resulted from the defective government specifications).

B. Methods of Proof.

- 1. Actual Cost Method. The actual cost method is the preferred method for proving costs. North Star Alaska Hous. Corp. v. U.S., 76 Fed. Cl. 158 (2007).
 - a. A contractor must prove its costs using the best evidence available under the circumstances. The preferred method is actual cost data. Cen-Vi-Ro of Texas, Inc. v. United States, 210 Ct. Cl. 684, (1976); Deval Corp., ASBCA Nos. 47132, 47133, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,182.

 - b. The contracting officer may also include FAR 52.243-6, Change Order Accounting, in a contract. This clause permits the contracting officer to order the accumulation of actual costs. A contractor must indicate in its proposal, which proposed costs are actual and which are estimates.

- c. Failure to accumulate actual cost data may result in either a substantial reduction or total disallowance of the claimed costs. Delco Elecs. Corp. v. United States, 17 Cl. Ct. 302 (1989), aff'd, 909 F.2d 1495 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (recovery reduced for unexcused failure to segregate); Togaroli Corp., ASBCA No. 32995, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,864 (costs not segregated despite the auditor's repeated recommendation to do so; no recovery beyond final decision); Assurance Co., ASBCA No. 30116, 86-1 BCA ¶ 18,737 (lack of cost data prevented reasonable approximation of damages for jury verdict, therefore, the appellant recovered less than the amount allowed in the final decision).

2. Estimated Cost Method.

- a. Good faith estimates are preferred when actual costs are not available. Lorentz Bruun Co., GSBCA No. 8505, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,719 (estimates of labor hours and rates admissible). Estimates are generally required when negotiating the cost of a change in advance of performing the work. Estimates are an acceptable method of proving costs where they are supported by detailed substantiating data or are reasonably based on verifiable cost experience. J.M.T. Mach. Co., ASBCA No. 23928, 85-1 BCA ¶ 17,820 (1984), aff'd on other grounds, 826 F.2d 1042 (Fed. Cir. 1987).
- b. If the contractor uses detailed estimates based on analyses of qualified personnel, the government will not be able to allege successfully that the contractor used the disfavored total cost method of adjustment pricing. Illinois Constructors Corp., ENG BCA No. 5827, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,470.
- c. Estimates based on Mean's Guide must be disregarded where actual costs are known. Anderson/Donald, Inc., ASBCA No. 31213, 86-3 BCA ¶ 19,036.

3. Total Cost Method.

a. The total cost method is not preferred because it assumes the entire overrun is solely the government's fault. The total cost method calculates the difference between the bid price on the original contract and the actual total cost of performing the contract as changed. Servidone v. United States, 931 F.2d 860 (Fed. Cir. 1991); Raytheon Co. v. White, 305 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2002); Stewart & Stevenson Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43631, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,653, modifying 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,252; Santa Fe Eng'rs, Inc., ASBCA No. 36682, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,281; Concrete Placing Inc. v. United States, 1992 U.S. Ct. Cl. LEXIS 58, 25 Cl. Ct. 369 (1992).

b. To use the total cost method, the contractor must establish four factors:

- (1) The nature of the particular cost is impossible or highly impracticable to determine with a reasonable degree of certainty;
- (2) The contractor's bid was realistic;
- (3) The contractor's actual incurred costs were reasonable; and
- (4) The contractor was not responsible for any of the added costs. Raytheon Co. v. U.S., 305 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2002), WRB Corp. v. United States, 183 Ct. Cl. 409 (1968).

4. Modified total cost method. The court or board of contract appeals allows the contractor to adjust the total cost method to account for other factors, usually because the bid was not realistic or because there were other causes for the extra costs. Olsen v. Espy, 1994 U.S. App. LEXIS 11840, 26 F.3d 141 (Fed. Cir. 1994); River/Road Constr. Inc., ENG BCA No. 6256, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,334; Hardrives, Inc., IBCA No. 2319, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,267; Servidone Constr. Corp., ENG BCA No. 4736, 88-1 BCA ¶ 20,390; Teledyne McCormick-Selph v. United States, 218 Ct. Cl. 513 (1978).

C. Jury Verdicts.

1. Jury verdicts are not a method of proof, but a means of resolving disputed facts. Northrop Grumman Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 20 (2000); Delco Elecs. Corp. v. United States, 17 Cl. Ct. 302 (1989), aff'd, 909 F.2d 1495 (Fed. Cir. 1990); River/Road Constr. Inc., ENG BCA No. 6256, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,334; Cyrus Contracting Inc., IBCA Nos. 3232, 3233, 3895-98, 3897-98, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,755; Paragon Energy Corp., ENG BCA No. 5302, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,959. Before adopting a jury verdict approach, a court must first determine three things:
 - a. That clear proof of injury exists;
 - b. That there is no more reliable method for computing damages. See Azure v. U.S., U.S. App. LEXIS 29365 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (actual costs are preferred; where contractor offers no evidence of justifiable inability to provide actual costs, then it is not entitled to a jury verdict); Service Eng'g Co., ASBCA No. 40274, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,885; and
 - c. That the evidence is sufficient for a fair and reasonable approximation of the damages. Northrop Grumman Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 20 (2000).

VI. SPECIAL ITEMS.

A. Unabsorbed Overhead.

1. Generally. A type of cost associated with certain types of claims is ~~un~~absorbed overhead.” Unabsorbed overhead has been allowed to compensate a contractor for work stoppages, idle facilities, inability to use available manpower, etc., due to government fault. In such delay situations, fixed overhead costs, e.g., depreciation, plant maintenance, cost of heat, light, etc., continue to be incurred at the usual rate, but there is less than the usual direct cost base over which to allocate them. Therm-Air Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 15842, 74-2 BCA ¶ 10,818.

2. Contracts Types. Most unabsorbed overhead cases deal with recovery of additional overhead costs on construction and manufacturing contracts. The qualitative formula adopted in Eichleay Corp., ASBCA No. 5183, 60-2 BCA ¶ 2688, aff'd on recons., 61-1 BCA ¶ 2894, is the exclusive method of calculating unabsorbed overhead for both construction contracts (Wickham Contracting Co. v. Fischer, 12 F.3d 1574 (Fed. Cir. 1994)) and manufacturing contracts (West v. All State Boiler, Inc., 146 F.3d 1368 (Fed. Cir. 1998); Genisco Tech. Corp., ASBCA No. 49664, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,145, mot. for recons. den., 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,324; Libby Corp., ASBCA No. 40765, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,255).
- a. Under this method, calculate the daily overhead rate during the contract period, then multiply the daily rate by the number of days of delay.
- b. To be entitled to unabsorbed overhead recovery under the Eichleay formula, the following three elements must be established:
- (1) A government-caused or government-imposed delay;
 - (2) The contractor was required to be on “standby” during the delay; and
 - (3) While “standing by,” the contractor was unable to take on additional work. Melka Marine, Inc. v. United States, 187 F.3d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 1999); West v. All State Boiler, 146 F.3d 1368 (Fed. Cir. 1998); Satellite Elec. Co. v. Dalton, 105 F.3d 1418 (Fed. Cir. 1997); Altmayer v. Johnson, 79 F.3d 1129 (Fed. Cir. 1995).
- c. If work on the contract continues uninterrupted, albeit in a different order than originally planned, the contractor is not on standby. Further, a definitive delay precludes recovery “because ‘standby’ requires an uncertain delay period where the government can require the contractor to resume full-scale work at any time.” Melka Marine, Inc. v. United States, 187 F.3d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 1999); American Renovation & Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 45 Fed. Cl. 44 (1999).

- d. A contractor's ability to take on additional work focuses upon the contractor's ability to take on replacement work during the indefinite standby period. Replacement work must be similar in size and length to the delayed government project and must occur during the same period. Melka Marine, Inc. v. United States, 187 F.3d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 1999); West v. All-State Boiler, 146 F.3d 1368, 1377 n.2 (Fed. Cir. 1998).
3. Proof Requirements.
 - a. Recovery of unabsorbed overhead is not automatic. The contractor should offer credible proof of increased costs resulting from the government-imposed delay. Beaty Elec. Co., EBCA No. 403-3-88, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,687. But see Sippial Elec. & Constr. Co. v. Widnall, 69 F.3d 555 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (allowing Eichleay recovery with proof of actual damages).
 - b. A contractor must prove only the first two elements of the Eichleay formula. Once the contractor has established that the Government caused the delay and that it had to remain on "standby," it has made a prima facie case that it is entitled to Eichleay damages. The burden of proof then shifts to the government to show that the contractor did not suffer or should not have suffered any loss because it was able to either reduce its overhead or take on other work during the delay. Satellite Elec. Co. v. Dalton, 105 F.3d 1418 (Fed. Cir. 1997); Mech-Con Corp. v. West, 61 F.3d 883 (Fed. Cir. 1995).
 - c. When added work causes a delay in project completion, the additional overhead is absorbed by the additional costs and Eichleay does not apply. Community Heating & Plumbing Co. v. Kelso, 987 F.2d 1575 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (Eichleay recovery denied because overhead was "extended" as opposed to "unabsorbed"); accord C.B.C. Enters., Inc. v. United States, 978 F.2d 669 (Fed. Cir. 1992).
 4. Subcontractor Unabsorbed Overhead. Timely completion by a prime contractor does not preclude a subcontractor's pass-through claim for unabsorbed overhead. E.R. Mitchell Constr. Co. v. Danzig, 175 F.3d 1369 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

5. Multiple Recovery. A contractor may not recover unabsorbed overhead costs under the Eichleay formula where it has already been compensated for the impact of the government's constructive change on performance time and an award under Eichleay would lead to double recovery of overhead. Keno & Sons Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 5837-Q, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,336.
6. Profit. A contractor is not entitled to profit on an unabsorbed overhead claim. ECC Int'l Corp., ASBCA Nos. 45041, 44769, 39044, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,639; Tom Shaw, Inc., ASBCA No. 28596, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,457; FAR 52.242-14, Suspension of Work; FAR 52.242-17, Government Delay of Work.

B. Subcontractor Claims.

1. The government consents generally to be sued only by parties with which it has privity of contract. Erickson Air Crane Co. of Wash. v. United States, 731 F.2d 810, 813 (Fed. Cir. 1984); E.R. Mitchell Constr. Co. v. Danzig, 175 F.3d 1369 (Fed. Cir. 1999).
2. A prime contractor may sue the government on a subcontractor's behalf, in the nature of a pass-through suit, for the extra costs incurred by the subcontractor only if the prime contractor is liable to the subcontractor for such costs. When a prime contractor is permitted to sue on behalf of a subcontractor, the subcontractor's claim merges into that of the prime, because the prime contractor is liable to the subcontractor for the harm caused by the government. Absent proof of prime contractor liability, the government retains its sovereign immunity from pass-through suits. Severin v. United States, 99 Ct. Cl. 435 (1943), cert. denied, 322 U.S. 733 (1944); E.R. Mitchell Constr. Co. v. Danzig, 175 F.3d 1369 (Fed. Cir. 1999).
3. The government may use the Severin doctrine as a defense only when it raises and proves the issue at trial. If the government fails to raise its immunity defense at trial, then the subcontractor claim is treated as if it were the prime's claim and any further concern about the absence of subcontractor privity with the government is extinguished. Severin v. United States, 99 Ct. Cl. 435 (1943), cert. denied, 322 U.S. 733 (1944); E.R. Mitchell Constr. Co. v. Danzig, 175 F.3d 1369 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

- C. Loss of Efficiency. The disruption caused by government changes and/or delays may cause a loss of efficiency to the contractor.
1. Burden of Proof. A contractor may recover for loss of efficiency if it can establish both that a loss of efficiency has resulted in increased costs and that the loss was caused by factors for which the Government was responsible. Luria Bros. & Co. v. United States, 177 Ct. Cl. 676, 369 F.2d 701 (1966). See generally Thomas E. Shea, Proving Productivity Losses in Government Contracts, 18 Pub. Cont. L. J. 414 (March 1989).
 2. Applicable Situations. Loss of efficiency has been recognized as resulting from various conditions causing lower than normal or expected productivity. Situations include: disruption of the contractor's work sequence (Youngdale & Sons Constr. Co. v. United States, 27 Fed. Cl. 516 1993)); working under less favorable weather conditions (Charles G. Williams Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 42592, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,635); the necessity of hiring untrained or less qualified workers (Algernon-Blair, Inc., GSBCA No. 4072, 76-2 BCA ¶ 12,073); and reductions in quantity produced.
- D. Impact on Other Work.
1. General Rule. A contractor is generally prohibited from recovering costs under the contract in which a Government change, suspension, or breach occurred, when the impact costs are incurred on other contracts. Courts and boards usually consider such damages too remote or speculative, and subject to the rule that consequential damages are not recoverable under Government contracts. See General Dynamics Corp. v. United States, 218 Ct. Cl. 40, 585 F.2d 457 (1978); Defense Sys. Co., ASBCA No. 50918, 2000 ASBCA LEXIS 100, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,991 (holding the loss of sales on other contracts was too remote and speculative to be recoverable); Sermor, Inc., ASBCA No. 30576, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,302; Ferguson Mgmt. Co., AGBCA No. 83-207-3, 83-2 BCA ¶ 16,819.
 2. Exceptions. In only exceptional circumstances, especially when the impact costs are definitive in both causation and amount, have contractors recovered for additional expenses incurred in unrelated contracts. See Clark Concrete Contractors, Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 14340, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,280 (allowing recovery of additional costs incurred on an unrelated project as a result of government delays and changes).

E. Attorneys' Fees.

1. Legal Expenses are addressed by two FAR provisions, listed below. Such expenses are commonly an indirect expense in a contractor's G&A expense pool. However, in some situations, legal expenses are specifically incurred for a particular contract and counted as a direct cost. Government Contract Costs & Pricing, Karen Manos, 2nd Edition, 2009.
 - a. FAR 31.205-33 covers professional and consultant service costs.
 - b. FAR 31.205-47 discusses costs related to legal and other proceedings. It defines costs as including, but are not limited to, administrative and clerical expenses; the costs of legal services, whether performed by inhouse or private counsel; the costs of the services of accountants, consultants, or others retained by the contractor to assist it; cost of employees, officers, and directors; and any similar costs incurred before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding which bears a direct relationship to the proceeding. FAR 31.205-47.
2. Costs incurred in connection with any proceeding brought by a Federal, State, local, or foreign government for violation of, or a failure to comply with, law or regulation by the contractor are unallowable if the result is an adverse judgment. This includes costs involved in a final decision to (a) debar or suspend the contractor, (b) rescind or void the contract, or (c) terminate a contract for default for violation or failure to comply with the law. FAR 31.205-47(b).
 - a. Costs incurred in connection with any Qui Tam proceeding brought against the contractor are unallowable if the result is an adverse judgment. FAR 31.205-47(b); See False Claims Act, 31 USC 3730.

3. Costs related to prosecuting and defending claims and appeals against the federal government are unallowable. FAR 31.205-47(f)(1). See Stewart & Stevenson Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 43631, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,252 modified by 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,653 (finding that claimed legal expenses related to counsel's preparation of a certified claim and so are disallowed); Marine Hydraulics Int'l, Inc., ASBCA No. 46116, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,057 (finding that legal costs to prepare a REA were unallowable costs to prepare a claim because the parties were not working together, the contract work had already been performed, and the issues had been in dispute for months); P&M Indus., Inc., ASBCA No. 38759, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,471 (finding that consultant fees for post termination administration costs was an unallowable cost to prepare a claim). This is consistent with the general rule that attorneys' fees are not allowed in suits against the United States absent an express statutory provision allowing recovery. Piggly Wiggly Corp. v. United States, 112 Ct. Cl. 391, 81 F. Supp. 819 (1949).

4. The Equal Access to Justice Act, 5 U.S.C. § 504, authorizes courts and boards to award attorneys fees to qualifying prevailing parties unless the government can show that its position was —substantially justified.” See, e.g., Midwest Holding Corp., ASBCA No. 45222, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,138.

5. Costs incurred incident to contract administration, or in furtherance of the negotiation of the parties' disputes, are allowable. FAR 31.205-33 (consultant and professional costs may be allowable if incurred to prepare a demand for payment that does not meet the CDA definition of a —claim”).
 - a. —There must be a beneficial nexus between effort for which the cost is incurred and performance or administration of the contract.” Appeal of Marine Hydraulics Intern., Inc., 94-3 BCA ¶ 27057 (1994). —Contract administration normally involves the parties . . . working together.” *Id.*

 - b. Example: SAB Constr., Inc. v. U.S., 66 Fed. Cl. 77 (Fed. Dist. 2005) (holding that when the genuine purpose of incurred legal expenses is that of materially furthering a negotiation process, such cost should normally be allowable);

c. Example: Submittal of a proposal in aid of determining how a specification could be met. Prairie Wood Products, AGBCA No. 91-197-1, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,424.

6. Legal fees unrelated to presenting or defending claims against the government are generally allowable. But See the earlier discussion entitled “What if a cost is not expressly listed in FAR 31.205?” for cases where legal costs to defend 3rd party suits have been found to be unallowable.

a. Boeing North Am., Inc. v. United States, 298 F.3d 1274 (Fed. Cir. 2002); Information Sys. & Networks Corp., ASBCA No. 42659, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,665 (holding that legal expenses incurred in lawsuits against third-party vendors were allowable as part of convenience termination settlement); Bos’n Towing and Salvage Co., ASBCA No. 41357, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,864 (holding that costs of professional services, including legal fees, are generally allowable, except where specifically disallowed).

b. 3rd Party Settlement Agreements. When a third party has sued a government contractor and the contractor has settled the lawsuit, the question becomes whether the legal costs associated with the settlement agreement are allowable. The courts and boards conduct a two-step inquiry to determine the allowability of costs associated with such a settlement.

(1) The two-step test is:

(a) If an adverse judgement were reached, would the damages, costs, and attorney’s fees be allowable? (See earlier discussion under the heading “What if costs are expressly discussed in FAR 31?”)

(b) If yes, the cost of the settlement is allowable.

- (c) If no, then the cost of the settlement is disallowed unless the contractor can prove that the private suit has very little likelihood of success on the merits. Geren v. Tecom, Inc., 566 F.3d 1037, 1046 (C.A. Fed., 2009); rehearing and rehearing en banc denied Oct.2, 2009.

- (d) The rationale behind the “very little likelihood of success” test is two-fold. The court noted that the FAR’s policy was to disallow the cost of settling suits that were likely to have been meritorious and therefore disallowed if not settled. The reason is a policy judgment that assumes that suits brought by government entities are in most situations “likely to be meritorious.” However, the same bright line assumption is not appropriate for suits brought by a private party. Geren v. Tecom, Inc., 566 F.3d 1037, 1046 (C.A. Fed., 2009); rehearing and rehearing en banc denied Oct.2, 2009.

F. Interest.

1. Pre-Claim Interest.

- a. Generally. Contractors are not entitled to interest on borrowings, however represented, as part of an equitable adjustment. FAR 31.205-20; Servidone Constr. Corp. v. United States, 931 F.2d 860 (Fed. Cir. 1991); D.E.W. & D.E. Wurzbach, A Joint Venture, ASBCA No. 50796, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,385; Superstaff, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 48062, et al., 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,845; Tomahawk Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 45071, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,312. This is consistent with the general rule that the United States is immune from interest liability absent an express statutory provision allowing recovery. Library of Congress v. Shaw, 478 U.S. 310 (1986).

- b. Lost Opportunity Costs. The damages for the “opportunity cost of money” are unrecoverable as a matter of law. Adventure Group, Inc., ASBCA No. 50188, 97-2 BCA ¶ 29,081; Environmental Tectonics Corp., ASBCA No. 42540, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,902 (not only interest on actual borrowings, but also the economic equivalent thereof, are unallowable); Dravo Corp. v. United States, 219 Ct. Cl. 416, 594 F.2d 842 (1979).

 - c. Cost of Money. Contractors may recover facilities capital cost of money (FCCM) (the cost of capital committed to facilities) as part of an equitable adjustment. FAR 31.205-10. Among the various allowability criteria, a contractor must specifically identify FCCM in its bid or proposal relating to the contract under which the FCCM cost is then claimed. FAR 31.205-10(a)(2). See also McDonnell Douglas Helicopter Co. d/b/a McDonnell Douglas Helicopter Sys., ASBCA No. 50756, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,546.
2. Prompt Payment Act Interest. Under the Prompt Payment Act (31 U.S.C. §§ 3901-3907), the contractor is entitled to interest if the contractor submits a proper voucher and the government fails to make payment within 30 days.

3. Contract Disputes Act Interest.
 - a. Generally. A contractor is entitled to interest on its claim based upon the rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury, as provided by the Contract Disputes Act, 41 U.S.C. § 611.
 - b. Timing. Interest begins to run when the contracting officer receives a properly certified claim. Raytheon Co. v. White, 305 F.3d 1354 (Fed. Cir. 2002), or upon submission of a defectively certified claim that is subsequently certified. Federal Courts Administration Act of 1992, Title IX, Pub. L. No. 102-572, 106 Stat. 4506, 4518. Interest runs regardless of whether the claimed costs have actually been incurred at the date of submission of a claim. Servidone Constr. Co. v. United States, 931 F.2d 860 (Fed. Cir. 1991).
 - c. Convenience Termination Settlements. A termination for convenience settlement proposal (FAR 49.206) is not initially considered a CDA claim, as it is generally submitted for purposes of negotiation. James M. Ellett Constr. Co. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996). Accordingly, a contractor is not entitled to interest on the amount due under a settlement agreement or determination. FAR 49.112-2(d); James M. Ellett Constr. Co. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996). If a termination settlement proposal matures into a CDA claim (once settlement negotiations reach an impasse), then a contractor is entitled to interest.
4. Payment of Interest. When the contracting officer pays a claim, the payment is applied first to accrued interest. Then the payment is applied to the principal amount due. Any unpaid principal continues to accrue interest. Paragon Energy Corp., ENG BCA No. 5302, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,349.

VII. QUANTUM CASE PLANNING

A. The Philosophy.

1. It is necessary to approach pricing of adjustments with a guiding philosophy. To do otherwise renders your litigation efforts half-hearted. The elements of quantum litigation planning are two-fold:
 - a. The fact that a contractor prevails on entitlement is meaningless in your quantum case.
 - b. Your game plan for the contractor's claim is a simple one: First you are going to cut it up, and then you are going to defeat it.

B. The Prerequisites.

1. There exist two essential prerequisites to your efforts.
 - a. You must have a thorough understanding of the law on pricing adjustments.
 - b. Facts are king, and getting all the facts will take hard work.

C. The Methodology: DAMS.

1. Divide the contractor's claim into component parts.
2. Apply Cost/Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) principles.
3. Make the contractor prove the amount claimed.
4. See what really happened.

VIII. APPLYING THE DAMS METHODOLOGY.

- A. Divide the Contractor's Claim into Component Parts.
 - 1. A contractor claim is really a series of smaller claims all added together. Each piece must stand on its own, in terms of being both legally permitted and factually supported.
 - 2. Quantum case litigation requires analyzing each section of the contractor's claim separately. This leads to a more thorough examination and prevents overpayment regardless if the case is settled or litigated.
- B. Apply Cost/CAS Principles. Generally. The government does not pay all the costs actually incurred and/or claimed by a contractor. Applying Cost/CAS principles entails analyzing each part of the total claim for allowability, allocability, reasonableness, and CAS compliance.
- C. Make the contractor prove the amount claimed.
- D. See What Really Happened (Seize the Offensive).
 - 1. A contractor's cost data will tell you what really happened. Accordingly, you must seize the initiative/go on the offensive. This allows you to develop the "real story" of how the contractor incurred extra costs.
 - 2. Determine the true root causes of the contractor's extra costs.
 - a. Was the job as a whole underbid?
 - b. Did the contractor change planned facilities?
 - c. Did the contractor purchase cheap and unworkable component parts?

- d. Did the contractor select subcontractors that were unable to perform?
 - e. Was there reliance upon less competent vendors?
 - f. Were there increases in material costs?
 - g. Did the contractor change components for cost reasons? Did this in turn result in engineering problems? Did prior design work become worthless? Did this in turn cause the need for redesign work, with more time and effort?
 - h. Was there an overall lack of efficient organization?
 - i. Did the contractor waste time recompeting components and vendors?
 - j. What expenses were unrelated to the claimed causation?
 - k. Did the contractor order surplus material (for potential options and possible commercial jobs)?
3. Important Documents. There are many important contractor documents that will assist you in determining what really happened.
- a. As-Bid Bill of Materials (BOM), and Final BOM.
 - b. Production Schedules
 - c. As-Bid Bid Rates (Overhead Rates).
 - d. Actual Overhead Rates.

- e. Expected and Actual Direct Costs—for the specific contract and plant-wide.
 - f. Expected and Actual Labor Amounts—for the specific contract and plant-wide.
 - g. Material Invoices for Major Component Parts.
 - h. CAS Disclosure Statement.
4. The Quantum Case Litigation Team. It is necessary to enlist the support of many individuals in both your defensive and offensive quantum case litigation efforts. These individuals will help you decipher the contractor's accounting documentation, as well as explain relevance in relation to contract performance.
- a. DCAA Auditor.
 - b. Contracting Officer.
 - c. Program Manager/End User.
 - d. Contracting Officer's Representative (COR).
 - e. Project Managers, Site Inspectors, Project Engineers, Quality Assurance Representatives.

IX. CONCLUSION.

- A. The various circumstances that entitle a contractor to a contract price adjustment (equitable adjustments, adjustments, damages) result in different types/amounts of recovery.
- B. The basic measurement of a price adjustment is the difference between the reasonable costs of the original and changed work.
- C. The burden of proving a price adjustment is on the moving party, and the method of proving a price adjustment is to use the best evidence available.
- D. The various special items that often comprise a price adjustment demand special attention.

Chapter 24

Contract Terminations for Convenience



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 24

CONTRACT TERMINATIONS FOR CONVENIENCE

| | | |
|------|--|----|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| A. | References and Definition | 1 |
| B. | Historical Development | 1 |
| II. | THE RIGHT TO TERMINATE FOR CONVENIENCE..... | 2 |
| A. | Termination is for the convenience of the government. | 2 |
| B. | Termination for Convenience Clauses..... | 2 |
| C. | The “Christian Doctrine” | 4 |
| D. | Convenience Terminations Imposed by Law..... | 5 |
| III. | THE DECISION TO TERMINATE FOR CONVENIENCE | 7 |
| A. | Regulatory Guidance | 7 |
| B. | Standard of Review..... | 10 |
| C. | Revocation of a Termination for Convenience | 15 |
| IV. | CONVENIENCE TERMINATION SETTLEMENTS | 15 |
| A. | Procedures. FAR Part 49. | 15 |
| B. | Methods and Basis for Settlement | 16 |
| F. | Limitations on Termination for Convenience Settlements | 21 |
| G. | Special Considerations..... | 23 |
| H. | Commercial Items – Termination for Convenience..... | 24 |
| VI. | FISCAL CONSIDERATIONS | 26 |

CHAPTER 24

CONTRACT TERMINATIONS FOR CONVENIENCE

I. INTRODUCTION

A. References and Definition

1. FAR Part 49
2. Clauses: FAR 52.249-1 through 52.249-7
3. Definition: "Termination for convenience" means the exercise of the Government's right to completely or partially terminate performance of work under a contract when it is in the Government's interest. FAR 2.101.

B. Historical Development

See Krygoski Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 94 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (court traces history of government's right to terminate contracts for convenience).

1. Inherent Authority. The government has always possessed the inherent authority to suspend contracts. United States v. Corliss Steam Engine Co., 91 U.S. 321 (1875) (finding the Navy Department had authority to suspend work under a contract and enter into a breach settlement for partial performance); Krygoski, 94 F.3d at 1540.
2. Terminations for the government's convenience "developed as a tool to avoid enormous procurements upon completion of a war effort." Krygoski, 94 F.3d at 1540. Because public policy counseled against continuing wartime contracts after the end of hostilities, the government, under certain circumstances, terminated contracts and settled with the contractor for partial performance. Id.

3. After WWI, the government terminated contracts in large numbers. New statutory authority provided for the settlement of claims from those terminations. See Dent Act, 40 Stat. 1272 (1919); Contract Settlement Act of 1944, 58 Stat. 649.
4. Historically, a contractor could recover breach of contract damages, which include anticipatory (lost) profits, as a result of a termination based on inherent authority. United States v. Speed, 75 U.S. 77 (1868). Currently, convenience termination clauses preclude the contractor from recovering anticipatory or lost profits when the government in good faith terminates the contract for its convenience.
5. In 1964, the first edition of the Federal Procurement Regulation (FPR) included option termination for convenience clauses. FPR 1-8.700-2. However, by 1967, the FPR required termination for convenience clauses in most contracts. 32 Fed. Reg. 9683 (1967). Accordingly, termination for convenience evolved into a principle of government contracting and the exigencies of war no longer limit the government's ability to terminate.

II. THE RIGHT TO TERMINATE FOR CONVENIENCE

- A. Termination is for the convenience of the government.

When a contractor is performing at a loss, termination may be beneficial to the contractor, but the government has no duty to the contractor to exercise the government's right to terminate for the contractor's benefit. Contact Int'l Corp., ASBCA No. 44636, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,887; Rotair Indus., ASBCA No. 27571, 84-2 BCA ¶ 17,417; John Massman Contracting Co. v. United States, 23 Cl. Ct. 24 (1991) (no duty to terminate when it would be in the contractor's best interest).

- B. Termination for Convenience Clauses

1. The FAR provides various termination for convenience clauses. See FAR 52.249-1 through 52.249-7. The proper clause for a specific contract is dependent upon the type and dollar amount of the contract. See FAR Subpart 49.5.

- a. Contracts for commercial items and simplified acquisitions for other than commercial items include unique convenience termination provisions that, for the most part, are not covered by Subpart 49.5. See 52.212-4 and 52.213-4.
 - b. “Short form” clauses govern fixed-price contracts not to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold (SAT)(generally \$150,000). Settlement is governed by FAR Part 49. See Arrow, Inc., ASBCA No. 41330, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,353 (board denied claim for useful value of special machinery and equipment because service contract properly contained short form termination clause).
 - c. “Long form” clauses govern fixed-price contract exceeding the SAT. These clauses specify contractor obligations and termination settlement provisions.
 - d. Cost reimbursement contract clauses. These clauses cover both convenience and default terminations, and specify detailed termination settlement provisions. See FAR 52.249-6.
2. The clauses give the government a right to terminate a contract, in whole or in part, when in the government's interest.
 3. The clauses also provide the contractor with a monetary remedy.
 - a. The contractor is entitled to:
 - (1) the contract price for completed supplies or services accepted by the government;
 - (2) reasonable costs incurred in the performance of the work terminated,
 - (3) a fair and reasonable profit (**UNLESS** the contractor would have sustained a loss on the contract if the entire contract had been completed); and

- (4) reasonable costs of settlement of the work terminated. See FAR 52.249-2(g).
- b. Exclusive of settlement costs, the contractor's recovery may NOT exceed the total contract price.
- c. The contractor cannot recover anticipated (lost) profits or consequential damages, which would be recoverable under common law breach of contract principles. FAR 49.202(a).
- d. The cost principles of FAR Part 31 in effect on the date of the contract shall govern the claimed costs.

C. The “Christian Doctrine”

1. Rule: A mandatory contract clause that expresses a significant or deeply ingrained strand of public procurement policy is considered to be included in a contract by operation of law. G.L. Christian & Assoc. v. United States, 312 F.2d 418 (Ct. Cl. 1963) (termination for convenience clause read into the contract by operation of law).
2. The Christian doctrine does not turn on whether clause was intentionally or inadvertently omitted, but on whether procurement policies are being avoided or evaded, deliberately or negligently, by lesser officials. S.J. Amoroso Constr. Co. v. United States, 12 F.3d 1072 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (Buy American Act (BAA) clause for construction contract read into contract after it had been stricken and erroneously replaced by the BAA supply clause).
3. The doctrine, however, does not permit the automatic incorporation of every required contract clause. General Engineering & Mach. Works v. O'Keefe, 991 F.2d 775, 779 (Fed. Cir. 1993). Rather, it must be determined whether there is any significant or deeply ingrained public procurement policy supporting incorporation of the clause. Lambrecht & Sons, Inc., ASBCA No. 49515, 97-2 BCA ¶ 20,105.
4. The Christian doctrine applies only to mandatory clauses reflecting significant public procurement policies. Michael Grinberg, DOT BCA No. 1543, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,573 (board refused to incorporate by operation of law a discretionary T4C clause).

5. It has also been applied to incorporate less fundamental or significant mandatory clauses if they were not written to benefit or protect the party seeking the incorporation. General Engineering & Mach. Works v. O'Keefe, 991 F.2d 775, 780 (Fed. Cir. 1993); Chris Berg, Inc. v. United States, 426 F. 2d 314, 317 (Ct. Cl. 1970).
6. The Christian doctrine does not apply when the contract includes an authorized deviation from the standard termination for convenience clause. Montana Refining Co., ASBCA No. 44250, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,656 (ID/IQ contract with a stated minimum quantity included deviation in T4C clause that agency would not be liable for unordered quantities of fuel “unless otherwise stated in the contract”).
7. When a contract lacks a termination clause, an agency can’t limit termination settlement costs by arguing that the Short Form termination clause applies. Empres de Viacao Terceireense, ASBCA No. 49827, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,796 (ASBCA noted that use of the Short Form clause was predicated on a contracting officer’s determination and exercise of discretion, which was lacking in this case).
8. Impact of other termination clauses: Existence of “Termination on Notice” clause in contract modification, did not render T4C clause meaningless. Dart Advantage Warehousing, Inc. v. United States, 52 Fed. Cl. 694 (2002) (clause with such ancient lineage, reflecting deeply ingrained public procurement policy, and applied to contracts with the force and effect of law even when omitted, should not be materially modified or summarily rendered meaningless without good cause).

D. Convenience Terminations Imposed by Law

1. Termination by Conversion
 - a. The termination for default clauses provide that an erroneous default termination converts to a termination for convenience. FAR 52.249-8(g); FAR 52.249-10(c); ALKAI Consultants, LLC, ASBCA 56792, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,493 (converted T4D to T4C based on unanticipated conditions and government failure to cooperate).

- b. However, if the government acted in bad faith while terminating a contract for default, courts and boards will award common law breach damages rather than the usual termination for convenience costs. See Apex Int'l Mgmt. Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 38087, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,842 (finding 20 breaches, ASBCA holds Navy liable for breach damages); Sigal Constr. Corp., CBCA No. 508, May 13, 2010.

2. Constructive Termination for Convenience

- a. A government directive to end performance of work will not be considered a breach but rather a convenience termination if the action could lawfully fall under that clause, even if the government mistakenly thinks a contract invalid, erroneously thinks the contract can be terminated on other grounds, or wrongly calls a directive to stop work a "cancellation." G.C. Casebolt Co. v. United States, 421 F.2d 710 (Ct. Cl. 1970); John Reiner & Co. v. United States, 325 F.2d 438 (Ct. Cl. 1963).
- b. The constructive termination for convenience doctrine is based on the concept that a contracting party who is sued for breach may ordinarily defend on the ground that there existed at the time of the breach a legal excuse for nonperformance, although that party was then ignorant of the fact. College Point Boat Corp. v. United States, 267 U.S. 12 (1925).
- c. However, the government cannot use the constructive termination for convenience theory to retroactively terminate a fully performed contract in an effort to limit its liability for failing to order the contract's minimum amount of goods or services. Ace-Federal Reporting, Inc., v. Barram, 226 F.3d 1329 (Fed. Cir. 2000); Maxima Corp. v. United States, 847 F.2d 1549 (Fed. Cir. 1988); PHP Healthcare Corp., ASBCA No. 39207, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,647.
- d. Further, the government may not require bidders to agree in advance that the government's failure to order the contract's minimum quantity will be treated as a termination for convenience. Southwest Lab. of Okla., Inc., B-251778, May 5, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 368.

- e. Parsons Global Serv. Inc., ASBCA 5673, 2010 WL 5071061 (Dec. 3, 2010) (dismissing subcontractor claims against the government as premature).

3. Deductive Change v. Partial Termination for Convenience

- a. The contracting officer must determine whether deleted work is a deductive change or a partial termination for convenience.
- b. This distinction is important because it determines whether the measure of the contractor's recovery is under the contract's changes clause or the termination for convenience clause.
- c. Generally, the courts and boards will not overturn the contracting officer's determination that the deleted work is a deductive change if the parties consistently treated the deletion as such. Dollar Roofing, ASBCA No. 36461, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,695. But see Griffin Servs., Inc., GSBCA No. 11022, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,181 (board characterized deleted work as a partial termination for convenience, but ordered recovery based on the changes clause).
- d. If the contractor disputes the contracting officer's treatment of the deletion, courts and boards will examine the relative significance of the deleted work.
 - (1) If MAJOR portions of the work are deleted and no additional work is substituted in its place, the termination for convenience clause must be used. Nager Elec. Co. v. United States, 442 F.2d 936 (Ct. Cl. 1971).
 - (2) Courts and boards will treat the deletion of relatively MINOR and segregable items of work as a deductive change. Lionsgate Corp., ENG BCA No. 5425, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,730.

III. THE DECISION TO TERMINATE FOR CONVENIENCE

A. Regulatory Guidance

1. The FAR clauses give the government the right to terminate a contract in whole, or in part, if the contracting officer determines that termination is in the government's interest. See John Massman Contracting Co. v. United States, 23 Cl. Ct. 24 (1991) (no duty to terminate when it would be in the contractor's best interest).
2. The FAR provides **no guidance** on factors that the contracting officer should consider when determining whether termination is "in the government's interest." FAR 49.101(b) and the convenience termination clauses merely provide that contracting officers shall terminate contracts only when it is in the government's interest to do so.
 - a. The right to terminate "comprehends termination in a host of variable and unspecified situations" and is not limited to situations where there is a "decrease in the need for the item purchased." John Reiner & Co. v. United States, 325 F.2d 438 (Ct. Cl. 1963), cert. denied, 377 U.S. 931 (1964).
 - b. A "cardinal change" in the government's requirements is not a prerequisite to a termination for convenience. T&M Distributors, Inc. v. United States, 185 F.3d 1279 (Fed. Cir. 1999).
3. The FAR does provide guidance concerning circumstances in which contracting officers normally **cannot or should not** use a convenience termination.
 - a. A negotiated **no-cost settlement** is appropriate instead of a termination for convenience or default when: (1) the contractor will accept it; (2) government property was not furnished; and (3) there are no outstanding payments due to the contractor, debts due by the contractor to the government, or other contractor obligations. FAR 49.101(b).
 - b. The government normally should not terminate a contract, but should allow it to run to completion, when the price of the undelivered balance of the **contract is less than \$5,000**. FAR 49.101(c).

- c. **CAUTION**—Termination simply to get the item at a **lower price** may amount to **bad faith**. Sigal Constr. Co., CBCA No. 508, May 13, 2010 (quoting Krygoski Constr. Co., 94 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (“A contracting officer may not terminate for convenience in bad faith, for example, simply to acquire a better bargain from another source.”))

4. There is no requirement to give the contractor a hearing before the termination decision. Melvin R. Kessler, PSBCA No. 2820, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,857.

5. Notice of termination
 - a. When terminating a contract for convenience, the contracting officer **must provide notice** to the contractor, the contract administration office, and any known assignee, guarantor, or surety of the contractor. Notice shall be made by certified mail or hand delivery. FAR 49.102.

 - b. For DoD components, **congressional notification** is required for any termination involving a reduction in employment of 100 or more contractor employees. DFARS 249.7001. The agency liaison offices will coordinate timing of the congressional notification and public release of the information with release of the termination notice to the contractor. DFARS PGI 249.7001. Similar reports are required by some DOD agencies for terminations with high-level agency interest or litigation potential. *See e.g.*; AFFARS MP5349.

6. Contractor duties after receipt of notice of termination. FAR 49.104. The contractor is required generally to:
 - a. Stop work immediately and stop placing subcontracts;

 - b. Terminate all subcontracts;

 - c. Immediately advise the TCO of any special circumstances precluding work stoppage;

- d. Perform any continued portion of the contract and submit promptly any request for equitable adjustment to the price;
- e. Protect and preserve property in the contractor's possession, and dispose of termination inventory as directed or authorized by TCO.
- f. Notify TCO in writing concerning any legal proceedings growing out of any subcontract or other commitment related to the terminated portion of the contract;
- g. Settle subcontract proposals; and
- h. Promptly submit own termination settlement proposal.

7. Duties of TCO after notice of termination. FAR 49.105.

- a. Direct the action required of the prime contractor;
- b. Examine the contractor's settlement proposal (and when appropriate, the settlement proposals of subcontractors);
- c. Promptly negotiate settlement agreement (or settle by determination for the elements that cannot be agreed upon, if unable to negotiate a complete settlement).

B. Standard of Review

- 1. The courts and boards recognize the government's broad right to terminate a contract for convenience. It is not the province of the courts to decide de novo whether termination of the contract was the best course of action. Salsbury Indus. v. United States, 905 F.2d 1518 (Fed. Cir. 1990).
- 2. The "Kalvar" test. To find that a termination for convenience in legal effect is a breach of contract, a contractor must prove **bad faith** or **clear abuse of discretion**. This is sometimes referred to as the "Kalvar" test. Kalvar Corp., Inc., v. United States, 543 F.2d 1298 (Ct. Cl. 1976); Salsbury Indus. v. United States, 905 F.2d 1518 (Fed. Cir. 1990).

a. Bad Faith

- (1) Proof of bad faith requires proof tantamount to some **specific intent to injure** the plaintiff, malice, or “designedly oppressive conduct.” Kalvar Corp., Inc., v. United States, 543 F.2d 1298 (Ct. Cl. 1976).
- (2) Courts and boards presume that contracting officers act conscientiously in the discharge of their duties. Krygoski Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 94 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996).
- (3) Overcoming this strong presumption requires “clear and convincing evidence.” Am-Pro Protective Services, Inc. v. United States, 281 F.3d 1234 (Fed. Cir. 2002). This “clear and convincing evidence” standard is a fairly recent articulation of a long-standing precedent holding that to overcome the presumption of good faith, contractors alleging bad faith on the part of the government needed “well-nigh irrefragable proof.”¹
- (4) TLT Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 40501, 93-3 BCA ¶ 25,978 (inept government actions do not constitute bad faith).

¹ The United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit held in Am-Pro Protective Agency, Inc., v. United States, “In fact, for almost 50 years this court and its predecessor have repeated that we are ‘loath to find to the contrary [of good faith], and it takes, and should take, well-nigh irrefragable proof to induce us to do so.’” 281 F.3d 1234, 1239 (quoting Schaefer v. United States, 224 Ct. Cl. 541, 633 F.2d 945, 948-49 (Ct. Cl. 1980)) (also citing Grover v. United States, 200 Ct. Cl. 337, 344 (1973); Kalvar Corp. Inc., v. United States, 543 F.2d 1298, 1302, 211 Ct. Cl. 192 (1976); Torncello v. United States, 231 Ct. Cl. 20, 681 F.2d 756, 770 (Ct. Cl. 1982); T&M Distributions, Inc. v. United States, 185 F.3d 1279, 1285 (Fed. Cir. 1999)).

- (5) McHugh v. DLT Solutions, Inc., 618 F.3d 1375 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (government may T4C even where it contemplated at time of award that it might T4C the contract in the future); Caldwell & Santmyer, Inc., v. Glickman, 55 F.3d 1578, 1583 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (refusing to disallow a termination for convenience in a “situation in which the government contracts in good faith but, at the same time, has knowledge of facts supposedly putting it on notice that, at some future date, it may be appropriate to terminate the contract for convenience”).
- (6) Oregon Woods, Inc. v. United States, 355 Fed. Appx. 403 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (unpublished) (no bad faith where government terminated due to inadequate specifications even though government engineers modified the specs twice before contract award).
- (7) BioFuction, LLC v. United States, 92 Fed. Cl. 167 (2010) (no bad faith where government terminated the contract for convenience after inducing contractor to perform on a related unfunded pilot program because government employee did not have authority to enter into contract).

b. Abuse of Discretion

- (1) A contracting officer’s decision to terminate for convenience cannot be arbitrary or capricious.
- (2) The Court of Claims (predecessor to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit) cited four factors to apply in determining whether a contracting officer’s discretionary decision is arbitrary or capricious. Keco Indus. v. United States, 492 F.2d 1200 (Ct. Cl. 1974). These factors are:
 - (a) Evidence of subjective bad faith on the part of the government official;
 - (b) Lack of a reasonable basis for the decision;

- (c) The amount of discretion given to the government official; *i.e.*, the greater the discretion granted, the more difficult it is to prove that the decision was arbitrary and capricious; and,
 - (d) A proven violation of an applicable statute or regulation (this factor alone may be enough to show that the conduct was arbitrary and capricious).
- (3) Oregon Woods, Inc. v. United States, 355 Fed. Appx. 403 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (unpublished) (government had a rational basis to terminate due to inadequate specifications even though government engineers modified the specs twice before contract award).

3. The Torncello “change in circumstances” test

a. Background.

- (1) In 1982, a plurality of the Court of Claims (predecessor to the Federal Circuit) articulated a different test for the sufficiency of a convenience termination.
- (2) The test was known as the “change in circumstances” test. Torncello v. United States, 681 F.2d 756 (Ct. Cl. 1982) (T4C clause could not be used to avoid paying anticipated profits unless there was some change in circumstances between time of award and termination).
- (3) Critics of the “change in circumstances” test charged that the court should have applied the “Kalvar” test.

(4) The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit subsequently characterized Torncello as a “bad faith” case. Salsbury Indus. v. United States, 905 F.2d. 1518 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (The Torncello decision “stands for the unremarkable proposition that when the government contracts with a party knowing full well that it will not honor the contract, it cannot avoid a breach claim by advertent to the convenience termination clause.”) This rationale had been applied by the ASBCA prior to the Federal Circuit's decision. See Dr. Richard L. Simmons, ASBCA No. 34049, 87-3 BCA ¶ 19,984; Tamp Corp., ASBCA No. 25692, 84-2 BCA ¶ 17,460.

b. Today.

(1) Contractors occasionally still argue the change in circumstances test, though unsuccessfully. See T&M Distributors, Inc. v. United States, 185 F.3d 1279 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

(5) The court has since refused to extend Torncello to situations in which the government contracts in good faith while having knowledge of facts putting it on notice that termination may be appropriate in the future. See Krygoski Construction Company, Inc. v. United States, 94 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996).

4. Effect of Improper Termination

a. The general rule is to place the injured party in as good a position as the one he would have been in had the breaching party fully performed.

b. By terminating in bad faith or arbitrarily and capriciously, the government breaches the contract, permitting the contractor to recover **breach of contract damages**, including anticipatory (lost) profits. See Operational Serv. Corp., ASBCA No. 37059, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,190 (government breached contract by exercising option year of contract while knowing that it would award a commercial activities contract or perform the work in house).

- c. Remote and consequential damages are not recoverable. Travel Centre v. General Services Administration, GSBCA No. 14057, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,521 (board denies contractor claims of lost future net income and value of business closed as result of contract termination). But see Energy Capital Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 382 (2000) (awarding \$8.78 million in lost profits to new venture).

C. Revocation of a Termination for Convenience

1. Reinstatement of the contract. FAR 49.102(d).

- a. A terminated portion of a contract may be reinstated in whole, or in part, if the contracting officer determines in writing that there is a requirement for the terminated items and that the reinstatement is advantageous to the government. To the Administrator, Gen. Servs. Admin., 34 Comp. Gen. 343 (1955).

- b. The contracting officer may not reinstate a contract unilaterally. The written consent of the contractor is required.

2. A termination for default cannot be substituted for a termination for convenience. Roged, Inc., ASBCA No. 20702, 76-2 BCA ¶ 12,018; but see Amwest Surety Ins. Co., ENG BCA No. 6036, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,648 (substitution allowed where government issued “conditional” termination for convenience).

IV. CONVENIENCE TERMINATION SETTLEMENTS

A. Procedures. FAR Part 49.

1. After termination for convenience, the parties must:

- a. Stop the work;
- b. Dispose of termination inventory; and

c. Adjust the contract price.

2. Timing of the Termination Settlement Proposal

a. The contractor must submit its termination proposal within **one year** of notice of the termination for convenience. FAR 49.206-1; 52.249-2(j); The Swanson Group, ASBCA No. 52109, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,164; Do-Well Mach. Shop, Inc. v. United States, 870 F.2d 637 (Fed. Cir. 1989) (“we cannot hold that Congress wanted to prevent parties from agreeing to terms that would further expedite the claim resolution process.”); Industrial Data Link Corp., ASBCA No. 49348, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,634, aff’d 194 F.3d 1337 (Fed. Cir., 1999); Harris Corp., ASBCA No. 37940, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,257.

b. Timely submittal is defined as mailing the proposal within one year after receipt of the termination notice. Voices R Us, Inc., ASBCA No. 51565, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,213 (denying Government’s summary judgment motion for failure to provide evidence that fax notice of termination was sent to and received by contractor); Jo-Bar Mfg. Corp., ASBCA No. 39572, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,756 (finding timely mailing despite lack of government receipt).

c. If a contractor fails to submit its termination settlement proposal within the required time period, or any extension granted by the contracting officer, the contracting officer may then unilaterally determine the amount due the contractor. FAR 49.109-7.

d. Refusal to grant an extension of time to submit a settlement proposal is not a decision that can be appealed. Cedar Constr., ASBCA No. 42178, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,896.

B. Methods and Basis for Settlement

1. Methods of settlement. FAR 49.103.

a. Bilateral negotiations between the contractor and the government.

- b. Unilateral determination of the government. FAR 49.109-7. This method is appropriate only when the contractor fails to submit a proposal or a settlement cannot be reached by agreement.
2. Bases of settlement. The two basis for settlement proposals are the inventory basis (the preferred method), and the total cost basis. FAR 49.206-2.
- a. Inventory basis. FAR 49.206-2(a).
 - (1) This is the preferred method. Propellex Corp. v. Brownlee, 342 F.3d 1335, 1338 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (the preferred way for a contractor to prove increased costs is by submitting actual cost data).
 - (2) Settlement proposal must itemize separately:
 - i. Metals, raw materials, purchased parts, work in process, finished parts, components, dies, jigs, fixtures, and tooling, at purchase or manufacturing cost;
 - ii. Charges such as engineering costs, initial costs, and general administrative costs;
 - iii. Costs of settlements with subcontractors;
 - iv. Settlement expenses; and
 - v. Other proper charges;
 - vi. An allowance for profit or adjustment for loss must be made to complete the gross settlement proposal.
 - b. Total cost basis. FAR 49.206-2(b).

- (1) This approach to calculating damages is disfavored. Tecom, Inc. v. United States, 86 Fed. Cl. 437, 455 (2009) (citing Serrvidone Constr. Corp. v. United States, 931 F.2d 860, 861-62 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (describing method as “a last result” that may be used “in those extraordinary circumstances where no other way to compute damages was feasible”); WRB Corp. v. United States, 183 Ct. Cl. 409, 426 (1968) (explaining this method “has been tolerated only when no other mode was available”)).
- (2) Used only when approved in advance by the TCO and when use of inventory basis is impracticable or will unduly delay settlement, as when production has not commenced and accumulated costs represent planning and preproduction expenses.
- (3) ALKAI Consultants, LLC, ASBCA 56792, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,493 (where costs of additional work could not readily be separated from the cost of the basic contract work, a cost-based approach would be an appropriate measure of the percentage of work performed).

C. Amount of Settlement.

1. Convenience termination settlements are based on:
 - a. Costs incurred in the performance of terminated work, plus
 - b. A fair and reasonable profit on the incurred costs, plus
 - c. Settlement expenses.
 - d. See FAR 31.205-42; Teems, Inc. v. General Services Administration, GSBCA No. 14090, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,357.
2. The contractor has the burden of establishing its proposed settlement amount. FAR 49.109-7(c); American Geometrics Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 37734, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,545.

3. As a general rule, a termination for convenience converts the terminated portion of a fixed-price contract to a cost-reimbursement type of contract, so costs on the settlement proposal are determined under FAR Part 31 Cost Principles and Procedures. See FAR 31.205-42 – Termination Costs (these principles to be used in conjunction with other cost principles in Subpart 31.2), which lists the following categories of costs:
 - a. Common items;
 - b. Costs continuing after termination;
 - c. Initial costs;
 - d. Loss of useful value of special tooling and machinery;
 - e. Rental under unexpired leases;
 - f. Alteration of leased property;
 - g. Settlement expenses; and
 - h. Subcontractor claims.

4. The cost principles must be applied subject to the fairness principle set forth at FAR 49.201(a), which states:
 - a. A settlement should compensate the contractor fairly for the work done and the preparations made for the terminated portions of the contract, including a reasonable allowance for profit. See Ralcon, Inc., ASBCA No. 43176, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,935.
 - b. Fair compensation is a matter of judgment and cannot be measured exactly. In a given case, various methods may be equally appropriate for arriving at fair compensation.

- c. The use of business judgment, as distinguished from strict accounting principles, is the heart of a settlement. See Codex Corp. v. United States, 226 Ct. Cl. 693 (1981) (board decision disallowing pre-contract costs based on strict application of cost principles was remanded for further consideration by the board based on the court's determination that cost principles must be applied "subject to" the fairness concept in FAR 49.201); see also J.W. Cook & Sons, ASBCA No. 39691, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,053 (board definition of "fairness").

- 5. Cost of Termination Inventory. Except for normal spoilage and except to the extent that the government assumed the risk of loss, the contracting officer shall exclude from the amounts due the contractor the fair value of property that is destroyed, lost, stolen, or damaged so as to become undeliverable to the government. FAR 52.249-2(h); see Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (contractor can't recover "simply by pleading ignorance" of fate of materials); Industrial Tectonics Bearings Corp. v. United States, 44 Fed. Cl. 115 (1999) ("fair value" means "fair market value" and not the amount sought by the contractor).

- 6. Common Items
 - a. FAR 31.205-42(a) provides that "[t]he costs of items reasonably usable on the contractor's other work shall not be allowable unless the contractor submits evidence that the items could not be retained at cost without sustaining a loss."

 - b. Courts and boards have applied this provision to more than just materiel costs. Dairy Sales Corp. v. United States, 593 F.2d 1002 (Ct. Cl. 1979) (cost of butter wrapping machine not allowed in a partial termination of a butter packing contract); Hugo Auchter GmbH, ASBCA No. 39642, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,645 (general purpose off-the-shelf computer equipment).

- 7. Subcontract Settlements. FAR 49.108.
 - a. Upon termination of a prime contract, the prime and each subcontractor are responsible for prompt settlement of the settlement proposals of their immediate subcontractors. FAR 49.108-1.

- b. Such subcontractor recovery amounts are allowable as part of the prime's termination for convenience settlement with the government. FAR 31.205-42(h); see Fluor Intercontinental, Inc. v. IAO Worldwide Serv., Inc., 2010 WL 3610449 (N.D. Fla. Sept. 13, 2010) (prime contractor liable to subcontractor for breach although prime contractor's government contract was T4C'd).

- c. The TCO shall examine each subcontract settlement to determine that it was arrived at in good faith, is reasonable in amount, and is allocable to the terminated portion of the contract. FAR 49.108-3(c). A contractor's settlement with a subcontractor must be done at "arm's-length", or it may be disallowed. Bos'n Towing & Salvage Co., ASBCA No. 41357, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,864 (denying claim for costs of terminating charter of tug boats).

D. Settlement Expenses. FAR 31.205-42(g).

- 1. Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for: (1) the preparation and presentation, including supporting data, of settlement claims to the contracting officer; and (2) the termination and settlement of subcontracts.

- 2. Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property acquired or produced for the contract.

- 3. Indirect costs related to salary and wages incurred as settlement expenses in a and b above; normally limited to payroll taxes, fringe benefits, occupancy costs, and immediate supervision costs.

F. Limitations on Termination for Convenience Settlements

- 1. A contractor is not entitled to anticipatory profits or consequential damages. FAR 49.202; Dairy Sales Corp. v. United States, 593 F.2d 1002 (Ct. Cl. 1979); Centennial Leasing Corp., ASBCA No. 49217, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,571

- 2. **Loss Contracts**

- a. A contracting officer may **not allow profit** in settling a termination claim if it appears that the contractor would have incurred a loss had the entire contract been completed. FAR 49.203.
- b. If the contractor would have suffered a loss on the contract in the absence of the termination, the contractor may recover only the same **percentage of costs** incurred as would have been recovered had the contract gone to completion. The rate of loss is applied to costs incurred to determine the cost recovery. FAR 49.203.
- c. The government has the burden of proving that the contractor would have incurred a loss at contract completion. Balimoy Mfg. Co. of Venice, ASBCA Nos. 47140 and 48165, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,017, aff'd, 2000 U.S. App. LEXIS 26702 (Fed. Cir. 2000).
- d. The target price of the fixed items, rather than the ceiling price, is used to compute the loss adjustment ratio for a convenience termination of a contract with both firm fixed price items and fixed price incentive fee line items. Boeing Defense & Space Group, ASBCA No. 51773, 98-2 BCA ¶ 30,069.

2. Overall contract price for fixed-price contracts:

- a. The total settlement **may not exceed the contract price** (less payments made or to be made under the contract) - plus the amount of the settlement expenses. FAR 49.207; FAR 52.249-2; Tom Shaw, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5540, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,742. See also Alta Constr. Co., PSBCA No. 1463, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,824.
- b. Compare Okaw Indus., ASBCA No. 17863, 77-2 BCA ¶12,793 (the contract price of items terminated on an indefinite quantity contract is the price of the ordered quantity, not of the estimated quantity, where the government has ordered the minimum quantity) with Aviation Specialists, Inc., DOT BCA No. 1967, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,534 (the only reasonable measure of the maximum recovery under a requirements contract is the government estimate).

3. Pending claims. Add the cost of valid pending claims for government delay, defective specifications, etc., to the original contract price to establish the “ceiling” of convenience termination recovery. See, e.g., Wolfe Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 5309, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,122.

G. Special Considerations

1. Offsets. The government may withhold a portion of the termination settlement as an offset against other claims. See Applied Companies v. United States, 37 Fed. Cl. 749 (1997) (Army properly withheld \$1.9 million from termination settlement due to overpayments on another contract).
2. Merger. Claims against the government arising out of contract performance are generally merged with the termination for convenience settlement proposal; therefore, it is not necessary to distinguish equitable adjustment costs from normal performance costs unless the contract is in a loss status. Worsham Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 25907, 85-2 BCA ¶ 18,016; Symbion Ozdil Joint Venture, ASBCA 56713, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34,367.
3. Equitable adjustments. In cases of partial terminations a contractor may request an equitable adjustment for the continued portion of the contract. See 52.249-2(l) (requiring proposal to be submitted within 90 days of effective date of termination unless extended in writing by KO); Varo Inc., ASBCA Nos. 47945, 47946, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,484 (affirmative defense of untimeliness waived where not raised until third day of hearing).
4. Mutual fault. If both the government and the contractor are responsible for the causes resulting in termination of a contract, contractors have been denied full recovery of termination costs.
 - a. In Dynalectron Corp. v. United States, 518 F.2d 594 (Ct. Cl. 1975), the court allowed the contractor only one-half of the allowable termination for convenience costs because the contractor was at fault in continuing to incur costs while trying to meet impossible government specifications without notifying the government of its efforts.

- b. In Insul-Glass, Inc., GSBCA No. 8223, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,361, the board denied termination for convenience recovery because of the contractor's deficient administration of the contract. The board noted that under the default clause, if the default is determined to be improper, "the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if a notice of termination for convenience of the government had been issued. We may exercise our equitable powers, however, to fashion, in circumstances where both parties share in the blame for the predicament which engenders an appeal, a remedy which apportions costs fairly."

H. Commercial Items – Termination for Convenience

1. Background. The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act, P.L. 103-355, 108 Stat. 3243 (Oct. 13, 1994), established special requirements for the acquisition of commercial items. Congress intended government acquisitions to more closely resemble those customarily used in the commercial market place. FAR 12.201.
2. FAR 12.403(a) states that the termination for convenience concepts for commercial items different from those in FAR Part 49 for non-commercial items, and that the Part 49 principles do not apply to terminations for convenience of a commercial item, except as guidance to the extent they do not conflict with FAR 52.212-4.
3. Policy. The contracting officer should exercise the government's right to terminate a contract for a commercial item only when such a termination would be in the best interests of the government. FAR 12.403(b).
4. When the contracting officer terminates for convenience a commercial item contract, the contractor shall be paid:
 - a. The percentage of the contract price reflecting the percentage of the work performed prior to the notice of the termination, and
 - b. Any charges the contractor can demonstrate directly resulted from the termination.

5. The contractor may demonstrate such charges using its standard record keeping system and is not required to comply with the cost accounting standards or the contract cost principles in Part 31. The Government does not have any right to audit the contractor's records solely because of the termination for convenience. FAR 12.403(d).
6. Generally, the parties should mutually agree upon the requirements of the termination proposal. The parties must balance the Government's need to obtain sufficient documentation to support payment to the contractor against the goal of having a simple and expeditious settlement. FAR 12.403(d).
7. Recovery on commercial item contracts.
 - a. In Red River Holdings, LLC, ASBCA 56316, 09-2 BCA ¶ 34,304, a charter of a vessel to the government included the commercial item termination for convenience clause. The contractor was not entitled to recover for a termination for convenience under FAR Part 49 cost principles. The phrase in the termination for convenience clause “reasonable charges the Contractor can demonstrate . . . have resulted from the termination” is read to mean settlement expenses, and not items such as preparatory costs.
 - b. For a good analysis of Red River and how the commercial item principles have been applied in other cases, see Seidman, Termination for Convenience of FAR Par 12 Commercial Contracts, Nash & Cibinic Report August 2010 at 117.

V. DISPUTES REGARDING TERMINATION SETTLEMENTS

- A. When does a T4C proposal become a claim? Once the parties reach an “impasse” in settlement negotiations, a request that the contracting officer render a final decision is implicit in the contractor’s settlement proposal.
- B. Once the parties reach an impasse, the proposal becomes a claim under the Contract Disputes Act. James M. Ellet Constr. Co. v. United States, 93 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996); Rex Systems, Inc. v. Cohen, 224 F.3d 1367 (Fed. Cir. 2000) (no impasse entitling contractor to interest despite taking 2 ½ years to settle the termination); MediAx Interactive Technologies, Inc., ASBCA No. 43961, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,318.

VI. FISCAL CONSIDERATIONS

- A. An agency must analyze each contract that it plans to terminate for convenience to determine whether termination for convenience or completion of the contract is less costly or otherwise in the best interests of the government.
- B. An agency must determine whether the convenience termination settlement would be governed by standard FAR convenience termination clause provisions, or by contract specific terms, such as termination ceilings, multi-year contract termination costs, or other specific contractual terms.
- C. **General Rule:** A prior year's funding obligation is extinguished upon termination of a contract, and those funds will **not remain available** to fund a **replacement contract** in a subsequent year where a contracting officer terminates a contract for the convenience of the government. The contracting officer must deobligate all funds in excess of the estimated termination settlement costs. FAR 49.101(f); DOD Financial Management Regulation 7000.14-R, vol. 3, ch. 8, para. 080512.
- D. **Two Exceptions:**
 - a. In response to judicial order.
 - a. Funds originally obligated in one fiscal year for a contract that is later terminated for convenience in response to a **court order** or to a determination by the Government Accountability Office or other competent authority that the award was improper, can remain available in a subsequent fiscal year to fund a replacement contract. Funding of Replacement Contracts, B-232616, 68 Comp. Gen. 158 (1988).

- b. Funds available for obligation for a contract at the time of a GAO protest, agency protest, or court action filed in connection with a solicitation for, proposed award of, or award of such contract, remain available for obligation for 100 days after the date on which the final ruling is made on the protest or other action. A ruling is considered “final” on the date on which the time allowed for filing an appeal or request for reconsideration has expired, or the date on which a decision is rendered on such an appeal or request, whichever is later. 31 U.S.C. § 1558; DFAS-IN 37-1, para. 080608. See also OFFICE OF THE GENERAL COUNSEL, UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT ACCOUNTABILITY OFFICE, Principles of Federal Appropriations Law 5-89 (3d ed. 2004).
- 2. Clearly erroneous award. Funds originally obligated in one FY for a contract that is later terminated for convenience as a result of the contracting officer’s determination that award was clearly erroneous, can remain available in a subsequent FY to fund a replacement contract. Navy, Replacement Contract, B-238548, 70 Comp. Gen. 230 (1991).
- 3. The two exceptions above apply subject to the following conditions:
 - a. The original award was made in good faith;
 - b. The agency has a continuing bona fide need for the goods or services involved;
 - c. The replacement contract is of the same size and scope as the original contract;
 - d. The replacement contract is executed without undue delay after the original contract is terminated for convenience; and
 - e. If the termination for convenience is issued by the contracting officer, the contracting officer’s determination that the award was improper is supported by findings of fact and law.

VII. CONCLUSION

Chapter 25
**Contract Terminations
for Default**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 25

CONTRACT TERMINATIONS FOR DEFAULT

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| | A. Definition..... | 1 |
| | B. Effect of Default Terminations..... | 1 |
| | C. Review of Default Terminations by the Courts and Boards..... | 1 |
| II. | THE RIGHT TO TERMINATE FOR DEFAULT..... | 2 |
| | A. Contractual Rights..... | 2 |
| | B. Common-Law Doctrine..... | 3 |
| III. | GROUNDS FOR TERMINATION..... | 3 |
| | A. Failure to Deliver or Perform on Time..... | 3 |
| | B. Failure to Make Progress so as to Endanger Performance..... | 4 |
| | C. Failure to Perform Any Other Provision of the Contract..... | 5 |
| | D. Other Contract Clauses Providing Independent Basis to Terminate for Default..... | 7 |
| | E. Common Law Ground – Anticipatory Repudiation..... | 7 |
| | F. Common Law Ground – Demand for Assurance..... | 9 |
| | G. Grounds Unknown at Time of Termination..... | 9 |
| IV. | NOTICE REQUIREMENTS..... | 10 |
| | A. Cure Notice..... | 10 |
| | B. Show Cause Notice..... | 13 |
| V. | CONTRACTOR DEFENSES TO A TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT..... | 14 |
| | A. Excusable Delay..... | 14 |
| | B. Waiver..... | 19 |
| VI. | THE DECISION TO TERMINATE FOR DEFAULT..... | 23 |
| | A. Discretionary Act..... | 23 |
| | B. Burden of Proof..... | 23 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| C. | Regulatory Guidance | 25 |
| VII. | RIGHTS AND LIABILITIES ARISING FROM TERMINATIONS FOR DEFAULT | 29 |
| A. | Contractor Liability | 29 |
| B. | The Government’s Liability | 32 |
| VIII. | COMMERCIAL ITEM CONTRACTS: “TERMINATION FOR CAUSE” | 33 |
| A. | Background..... | 33 |
| B. | Applicable Rules for Terminations for Cause | 33 |
| C. | Policy..... | 33 |
| D. | General Requirements.. | 33 |
| IX. | MISCELLANEOUS | 35 |
| A. | Total or partial termination..... | 35 |
| B. | Severable contract requirements..... | 35 |
| C. | Revocation of Acceptance in Order to Terminate..... | 35 |
| D. | Fiscal Considerations..... | 36 |
| E. | Conversion to Termination for Convenience. | 36 |
| F. | T4C Proposals Where T4D Appeal Is Pending..... | 37 |
| X. | CONCLUSION | 37 |

CHAPTER 25

CONTRACT TERMINATIONS FOR DEFAULT

I. INTRODUCTION

- A. Definition. A contractor's unexcused present or prospective failure to perform in accordance with the contract's terms, specifications, or delivery schedule constitutes contractual default under government contracts. See FAR 49.401.

- B. Effect of Default Terminations
 - 1. Judges often describe terminations for default as a "contractual death sentence."

 - 2. Two separate decisions at GAO this year demonstrate that being terminated for default continues to have an on-going negative effect on a contractor beyond the specific contract which was terminated. This is true even when the contractor has appealed and even prevails in challenging the termination.
 - a) Colonial Press Int'l, Inc., B-403632, 2010 CPD ¶ 247 (GAO upheld the exclusion of the defaulted contractor from the competition for the reprocurement contract even through the termination was on appeal.

 - b) Commissioning Solutions Global, LLC, B-403542, 2010 WL DPB ¶ 272 (GAO went out of its way to find that, in evaluating offers for a contract for dry dock repairs, the Coast Guard properly could have considered the T4D of a prior similar contract in assessing past performance even though the record established that the evaluators did not consider the earlier contract; GAO found that the prior T4D could properly be considered even though it was on appeal and a few weeks later the Coast Guard agreed to convert the T4D to a T4C).

- C. Review of Default Terminations by the Courts and Boards
 - 1. Courts and boards hold the government to a high standard when terminating a contract for default because of the adverse impact such an action has on a contractor. Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1987) ("[A] termination for default is a drastic sanction that should be imposed upon a contractor only for good cause and in the presence of solid evidence."); Mega Constr. Co. v. United States, 25 Cl. Ct. 735 (1992).

2. Unfortunately, government officials frequently fail to follow prescribed procedures, rendering default terminations subject to reversal on appeal. Prior to issuing a default termination notice, contracting officers must have a valid basis for the termination, must issue proper notices, must account for the contractor's excusable delay, must act with due diligence, and must make a reasonable determination while exercising independent judgment.
3. Attorneys play a critical role in this process, ensuring that all legal requirements are met and the termination decision receives the care and attention it deserves.
4. Burden of Proof
 - a) It is the government's burden to prove, by a preponderance of the evidence, that the termination for default was proper. Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1987); Walsky Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41541, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,264.
 - b) A contractor's technical default is not determinative of its propriety. The Government must exercise its discretion reasonably to terminate a contract for default. Darwin Constr. Co. v. United States, 811 F.2d 593 (Fed. Cir. 1987).
 - c) Once the government has met its burden of demonstrating the appropriateness of the default, the contractor has the burden of proof that its failure to perform was the result of causes beyond its control and without fault on its part. International Elec. Corp. v. United States, 646 F.2d 496 (Ct. Cl. 1981); Composite Int'l, Inc., ASBCA No. 43359, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,747.

II. THE RIGHT TO TERMINATE FOR DEFAULT

A. Contractual Rights

1. FAR Subpart 49.4
2. The FAR contains various default clauses for use in government contracts that identify the conditions that permit the government to terminate a contract for default.
3. The clauses contain different bases for termination and different notice requirements. For example, the Fixed-Price Supply and Service clause

(FAR 52.249-8) is different from the Fixed-Price Construction clause (FAR 52.249-10).

B. Common-Law Doctrine

1. The standard FAR default clauses provide: “The rights and remedies of the government in this clause are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.” See FAR 52.249-8(h) and FAR 52.249-10(d).
2. Courts commonly cite the above-quoted provision to support termination based on common-law doctrines, such as anticipatory repudiation. Cascade Pac. Int’l v. United States, 773 F.2d 287 (Fed. Cir. 1985); All-State Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 50586, 06-2 BCA ¶ 33,344 (contractor’s failure to diligently perform pending resolution of a dispute, as required by the Disputes clause, is a material breach for which termination is proper under the government’s common law rights reserved in 52.249-10(d)).

III. GROUNDS FOR TERMINATION

A. Failure to Deliver or Perform on Time

1. This ground is sometimes referred to as an “(a)(1)(i)” termination because of the FAR provision setting forth this ground. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(i); 52.249-10(a).
2. Generally, time is of the essence in all government contracts containing fixed dates for delivery or performance. Devito v. United States, 413 F.2d 1147 (Ct. Cl. 1969); Kit Pack Co., ASBCA No. 33135, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,151.
3. When a contract does not specify delivery dates (or those dates have been waived), actual delivery could constitute the “delivery date” for purposes of the T4D clause. Aerometals, Inc., ASBCA No. 53688, 03-2 BCA ¶ 32,295.
4. Compliance with specifications

a) The government is entitled to strict compliance with its specifications. Mega Constr. Co. v. United States, 25 Cl. Ct. 735 (1992); Kurz-Kasch, Inc., ASBCA No. 32486, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,053.

b) Exceptions:

(1) The courts and boards recognize the common-law principles of **substantial compliance** (supply) and **substantial completion** (construction) to protect the contractor where timely performance departs in minor respects from that required by the contract.

(2) **Rule:** If the contractor substantially complies with the contract, the government must give the contractor additional time to correct the defects prior to terminating for default. Al Khudhairi Grp., ASBCA 56131, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,530 (even though 95% complete, the board held that because the termination affected only the uncompleted 5% of the work, the doctrine of substantial completion did not apply); Radiation Technology, Inc. v. United States, 366 F.2d 1003 (Ct. Cl. 1966); FD Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41441, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,983 (contractor not protected under doctrine of substantial completion because it abandoned the work and refused to complete administrative items).

B. Failure to Make Progress so as to Endanger Performance

1. **Supply and Service.** The default clauses for (i) fixed-price supply and service contracts and (ii) cost-reimbursement contracts provide for termination when the contractor fails to make progress so as to endanger performance. This is sometimes referred to as an “(a)(1)(ii)” termination. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(ii); FAR 52.249-6(a).

2. **Construction.** The default clause for fixed-price construction contracts provides for termination when the contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in the contract. FAR 52.249-10(a).

3. **Proof**

a) The government is not required to show that it was impossible for the contractor to complete performance. California Dredging Co., ENG BCA No. 5532, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,475.

- b) Rather, the contracting officer must have a **reasonable belief** that there is no reasonable likelihood that the contractor can perform the entire contract effort within the time remaining for contract performance. Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (upholding the lower court's conversion of the T4D to a T4C where government did not determine whether contractor could complete work within the required time, or determine how long it would take a follow-on contractor to do the work); Edge Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 95 Fed. Cl. 407 (2010) (government must demonstrate that the contracting officer reasonably believed that there was no likelihood that the contractor could perform the entire effort within the remaining time for performance); Pipe Tech, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5959, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,649 (termination improper where 92% of contract performance time remained and procurement contractor fully performed within the time allowed in defaulted contract).
- c) Prior to termination, the contracting officer should analyze progress problems against a specified completion date, adjusted to account for any government-caused delays. Technocratica, ASBCA No. 44134, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,606 (termination for “poor progress” improper).
- d) Factors to consider include, but are not limited to:
 - (1) A comparison of the percentage of work completed and the time remaining before completion is due;
 - (2) The contractor’s failure to meet progress milestones;
 - (3) Problems with subcontractors and suppliers;
 - (4) The contractor’s financial situation; and
 - (5) The contractor’s past performance.
 - (6) See McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. United States, 323 F.3d 1006, 1010 (Fed. Cir. 2003)

C. Failure to Perform Any Other Provision of the Contract

- 1. **Supply and Service.** The default clause in fixed-price supply and service contracts specifically provides this ground for termination. It is

sometimes referred to as an “(a)(1)(iii)” termination.
FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(iii).

2. Construction.

- a) This basis does **not exist** under the construction clauses. See FAR 52.249-10.
- b) BUT . . . the courts and boards may sustain default terminations of construction contracts on this ground by reasoning that the failure to perform the “other provision” renders the contractor unable to perform the work with the diligence required to insure timely completion (see previous ground for termination at FAR 52.249-10(a)). Engineering Technology Consultants, S.A., ASBCA No. 43454, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,586 (“The Government, reasonably we conclude, had no alternative but to stop performance based on ETC’s failure to maintain the proper amount of insurance coverage. Under the circumstances ETC was unable to perform and/or prosecute the work with the diligence required to insure completion within the performance period.”).

3. Courts and boards will not sustain a default termination unless that “other provision” of the contract is a “material” or “significant” requirement. Precision Prods., ASBCA No. 25280, 82-2 BCA ¶ 15,981 (noncompliance with first article manufacture requirements not deemed material under facts); Yonir Technologies, Inc., ASBCA 56736, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34,417.

4. Examples:

- a) Failure to deliver an agree with Cisco permitting contractor to perform required maintenance services on Cisco SMARTnet equipment within 5 days specified in the contract. ZIOS Corp., ASBCA 56626, 10-1 BCA ¶ 24,244 (here, the contracting officer offered ZIOS the opportunity to withdraw from the contract when he became concerned about its ability to perform; ZIOS turned down the offer because it wanted the money).
- b) Failure to employ drivers with valid licenses. Maywood Cab Service, Inc., VACAB No. 1210, 77-2 BCA ¶ 12,751.
- c) Failure to obtain (or provide proof of) liability insurance. A-Greater New Jersey Movers, Inc., ASBCA No. 54745, 06-1

BCA ¶ 33,179; UMM, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5330, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,893 (mowing services contract).

- d) Violation of the Buy American Act. HR Machinists Co., ASBCA No. 38440, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,373.
- e) Failure to comply with statement of work. 4-D and Chizoma, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 49550, 49598, 00-1 BCA ¶ 30,782 (failure to properly videotape sewer line).
- f) Failure to retain records under Payrolls and Basic Records Clause justified default under the Davis-Bacon Act. Kirk Bros. Mech. Contractors, Inc. v. Kelso, 16 F.3d 1173 (Fed. Cir. 1994).
- g) Failure to provide a quality control plan. A-Greater New Jersey Movers, Inc., ASBCA No. 54745, 06-1 BCA ¶ 33,179

D. Other Contract Clauses Providing Independent Basis to Terminate for Default

- 1. Gratuities clause. FAR 52.203-3.
- 2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Proposed Debarment, and Other Responsibility Matters. FAR 52.209-5; see Spread Information Sciences, Inc., ASBCA No. 48438, 96-1 BCA ¶ 27,996.
- 3. Equal Opportunity clause. FAR 52.222-26.
- 4. Bid Guarantee clause. FAR 52.228-1.
- 5. Inspection clause. FAR 52.246-2.

E. Common Law Ground – Anticipatory Repudiation

- 1. Each party to a contract has the common-law right to terminate a contract upon actual or anticipatory repudiation of the contract by the other party. Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 250; Uniform Commercial Code § 210; Dingley v. Oler, 117 U.S. 490 (1886); see also, Franconia Associates, et al., v. United States, 122 S. Ct. 1993 (2002) (discussing the difference between an immediate breach and repudiation in the context of a federal housing loan program).

2. This common-law basis for default applies to all government contracts because contract clauses generally do not address or supersede this principle. Cascade Pac. Int'l v. United States, 773 F.2d 287 (Fed. Cir. 1985).
3. **Requirements** for anticipatory repudiation:
 - a) Anticipatory repudiation must be **express**. United States v. DeKonty Corp., 922 F.2d 826 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (must be absolute refusal, distinctly and unequivocally communicated); Marine Constr. Dredging, Inc., ASBCA No. 38412, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,286 (no repudiation where contractor did not continue performance due to government's failure to issue appropriate instructions).
 - b) Anticipatory repudiation must be **unequivocal** and manifest either a clear intention not to perform or an inability to perform the contract. Ateron Corp., ASBCA No. 46352, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,229 (contractor's statement that continued contract performance is impossible constituted repudiation). Compare Swiss Prods., Inc., ASBCA No. 40031, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,163 (contractor's refusal to perform until government provided advance payments constitutes repudiation), with Engineering Professional Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 39164, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,762 (no repudiation where contractor's statement that "government financing must be provided to assure contract completion" was not precondition to resumed performance).
4. Abandonment is **actual** repudiation. Compare Ortec Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 43467, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,859 (termination proper when work force left site and contractor failed to respond to phone calls), with Western States Mgmt. Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 40212, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,714 (no abandonment when contractor was unable to perform by unreasonable start date established after disestablishment of original start date).
5. Examples.
 - a) Global Constr. Inc. v. Dept. of Veterans Affairs, CBCA 1198, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34,363 (contractor's failure to provide revised schedules and adequate assurances in response to cure notice meant that the contracting officer reasonably believed there was no reasonable possibility that the contractor could complete the work in the time remaining).

- b) Montage, Inc., GAO CAB 2006-2, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,490 (board held that the contractor for installation of generator anticipatorily repudiated the contract by: (i) refusing to provide contractually required staging plan, (ii) refused to proceed with performance even though the contract contained a contract disputes clause, and (iii) relying on Danzig v. AEC Corp., 224 F.3d 1333 (Fed. Cir. 2000), contractor did not provide adequate assurances in response to justified cure notice).

F. Common Law Ground – Demand for Assurance

1. Failure by one party to give adequate assurances that it would complete a contract is a valid basis for a default termination under common-law. Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 251; Uniform Commercial Code § 2-609; Global Constr. Inc. v. Dept. of Veterans Affairs, CBCA 1198, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34,363 (contractor’s failure to provide revised schedules and adequate assurances in response to cure notice meant that the contracting officer reasonably believed there was no reasonable possibility that the contractor could complete the work in the time remaining).
2. This basis for termination applies to government contracts. Danzig v. AEC Corp., 224 F.3d 1333 (Fed. Cir. 2000) (AEC’s letter responses and conduct following the Navy’s cure notice supported T4D); Eng’r Professional Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 39164, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,762; National Union Fire Ins. Co., ASBCA No. 34744, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,266. But see Ranco Constr., Inc. v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11923, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,678 (board questions whether demand for assurance under UCC § 2-609 applies to construction contracts).
3. The government’s “cure notice” may be the equivalent of a demand for assurance. Hannon Elec. Co. v. United States, 31 Fed. Cl. 135 (1994) (contractor’s failure to provide adequate assurance in response to cure notice justified default termination); Fairfield Scientific Corp., ASBCA No. 21151, 78-1 BCA ¶ 13082.

G. Grounds Unknown at Time of Termination

1. When a contractor appeals a final decision terminating a contract for default, the government is not bound by the contracting officer’s reasons for the termination as stated in the termination notice.
2. If a proper ground for the default termination existed at the time of the termination, regardless of whether the contracting officer relied on or was even aware of that basis, the termination is proper. See Glazer

Construction Co. v. United States, 52 Fed. Cl. 513 (2002) (COFC upheld a termination for default based on Davis-Bacon Act violations committed before, but discovered after, the government issued the default termination notice); Kirk Bros. Mech. Contractors, Inc. v. Kelso, 16 F.3d 1173 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (violations of Davis-Bacon Act); Joseph Morton Co. v. United States, 757 F.2d 1273 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (fraud); Quality Granite Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 43846, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,073 (government not required to give notice to contractor when unaware of basis for termination).

IV. NOTICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Cure Notice

1. Definition.
 - a) Notice issued by the government to inform the contractor that the government considers the contractor's failure a condition that is endangering performance of the contract.
 - b) The cure notice specifies a period (typically 10 days) for the contractor to remedy the condition.
 - c) If the condition is not corrected within this period, the cure notice states that the contractor *may* face termination of its contract for default (less definite than a show cause notice – see below).
 - d) Mandatory in some situations.
2. A proper cure notice must inform the contractor in writing:
 - a) That the government intends to terminate the contract for default;
 - b) Of the reasons for the termination; and
 - c) That the contractor has a right to cure the specified deficiencies within the cure period (10 days). FAR 49.607(a).
3. To support a default decision, the cure notice must clearly identify the nature and extent of the performance failure. Lanzen Fabricating, Inc., ASBCA No. 40328, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,079 (show cause notice did not serve as cure notice for purposes of (a)(1)(ii) termination because it didn't specify failures to be cured); Insul-Glass, Inc., GSBCA No. 8223, 89-1

BCA ¶ 21,361 (notice directed contractor to provide acceptable drawings without specifying what the contractor had to do to make the drawings acceptable).

4. The government must give the contractor a minimum of ten days to cure the deficiency. Red Sea Trading Assoc., ASBCA No. 36360, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,567 (the ten day period need not be specifically stated in the notice if a minimum of ten days was actually afforded the contractor).
5. Is a cure notice required?
 - a) Failure to perform on time. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(i).
 - (1) **NO.**
 - (2) Delta Indus., DOT BCA No. 2602, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,318 (government rejected desks that did not meet contract specifications)
 - b) Failure to make progress. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(ii).
 - (1) **YES except construction.**
 - (2) Fixed-price supply or service contracts (FAR 52.249-8); fixed-price research and development contracts (FAR 52.249-9); cost-reimbursement contracts (FAR 52.249-6).
 - (3) Construction. FAR 52.240-10(a). May terminate upon written notice. No cure notice required.
 - c) Failure to perform any other provision of the contract. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1)(iii)
 - (1) **YES except construction.**
 - (2) Fixed-price supply or service contracts (FAR 52.249-8); fixed-price research and development contracts (FAR 52.249-9); cost-reimbursement contracts (FAR 52.249-6).
 - (3) Remember – This is not a ground for T4D in construction contracts.

- d) Other Contract Clauses Providing Independent Basis to T4D
 - (1) **DEPENDS** on the clause.
 - (2) See “K” Servs., ASBCA No. 41791, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,568 (default under FAR 52.209-5 for false certification regarding debarment status of contractor's principal; no cure notice required because false certification cannot be cured)

- e) Anticipatory repudiation.
 - (1) **NO.**
 - (2) Beeston, Inc., ASBCA No. 38969, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,241; Scott Aviation, ASBCA No. 40776, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,123.

- f) Failure to give adequate assurances.
 - (1) **SORT OF.**
 - (2) Generally, do not have to give a “cure notice,” but government does have to provide a “demand for assurances.” A cure notice suffices as a demand for assurances.

- g) Grounds unknown at time of termination
 - (1) **NO.**
 - (2) Quality Granite Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 43846, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,073 (government not required to give notice to contractor when unaware of basis for termination)

- h) Fraud – **NO.**

- i) Construction. FAR 52.249-10.
 - (1) **NO.**

- (2) Professional Services Supplier, Inc. v. United States, 45 Fed. Cl. 808, 810 (2000) (no cure notice required before a fixed price construction contract may be terminated for default).
- (3) Although not required, the government frequently provides the contractor a cure notice prior to terminating these contracts. See Hillebrand Constr. of the Midwest, Inc., ASBCA No. 45853, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,464 (failure to provide submittals); Engineering Technology Consultants, S.A., ASBCA No. 43454, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,586 (concerning contractor's failure to provide proof of insurance).

B. Show Cause Notice

1. Definition.

- a) Notice issued by government to inform the contractor that the government intends to terminate for default unless the contractor “shows cause” why the contract should not be terminated. FAR 49.607.
- b) **Not required.** The default clauses do not require the use of a show cause notice. See FAR 52.249-8 (Supply and Service); FAR 52.249-9 (Research and Development); FAR 52.249-10 (Construction); Alberts Assocs., ASBCA No. 45329, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,480; Sach Sinha and Associates, Inc., ASBCA No. 46916, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,346.
- c) **BUT . . .** if a termination for default appears appropriate, the government **should, if practicable**, notify the contractor in writing of the possibility of the termination. FAR 49.402-3(e)(1). The courts and boards may require a “show cause” notice if its use was practicable. Udis v. United States, 7 Cl. Ct. 379 (1985); Enginetics Corp., ASBCA No. 40834, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,965 (denying government's motion for summary judgment while noting government's failure to issue show cause notice).
- d) If the government issues a show cause notice, it need not give the contractor ten days to respond. Nisei Constr. Co., Inc., ASBCA

Nos. 51464, 51466, 51646, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,448 (six days was sufficient in construction default case).

2. The show cause notice should:
 - a) Call the contractor's attention to its contractual liabilities if the contract is terminated for default.
 - b) Request the contractor to show cause why the contract should not be terminated for default.
 - c) State that the failure of the contractor to present an explanation may be taken as an admission that no valid explanation exists.
 - d) The contracting officer is not required to include every subsequently advanced reason for the termination in the show cause notice because the government is under no obligation to issue the notice. Sach Sinha and Associates, Inc., ASBCA No. 46916, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,346.

3. Why use a show cause notice?
 - a) Courts and boards like to see them
 - b) They shock contractor into compliance
 - c) They inform us of contractor's defenses
 - d) Can help us avoid waiver (see discussion below)

V. CONTRACTOR DEFENSES TO A TERMINATION FOR DEFAULT

A. Excusable Delay

1. The contractor has the burden to prove that its failure to perform was excusable.
2. A contractor's failure to deliver or to perform is excused if:
 - a) The failure is beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the contractor. FAR 52.249-8(c).

- b) Timely performance was actually prevented by the claimed excuse. Sonora Mfg., ASBCA No. 31587, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,444; Beekman Indus., ASBCA No. 30280, 87-3 BCA ¶ 20,118.
 - c) The specific period of delay caused by the event. Conquest Constr., Inc., PSBCA No. 2350, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,605.
 - d) Construction only: The delay arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the contractor. FAR 52.249-10(b); Local Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 37108, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,491; Charles H. Siever, ASBCA No. 24814, 83-1 BCA ¶ 16,242.
 - e) Construction only: The contractor, within 10 days from the beginning of any delay (unless extended by the contracting officer), notifies the contracting officer in writing of the causes of delay. FAR 52.249-10(b).
3. The default clauses specifically identify some causes of excusable delay. These include:
- a) Acts of God (AKA “force majeure”) or of the public enemy. See Nogler Tree Farm, AGBCA No. 81-104-1, 81-2 BCA ¶ 15,315 (eruption of Mount St. Helens volcano); Centennial Leasing v. Gen. Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 12037, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,398 (death of chief operating officer not an act of God); C-Shore International, Inc. v. Dept. of Agriculture, CBCA 1696, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34, 379 (sought to excuse non-performance on hurricanes Katrina and Rita; board agreed that hurricanes are acts of God but the hurricanes occurred *before* the contracts were awarded and contractor had obligation to take into account the effect of the hurricanes before accepting the contractual commitment).
 - b) Acts of the government in either its sovereign or contractual capacity.
 - (1) Sovereign capacity refers to public acts of the government not directed to the contract. Home Entertainment, Inc., ASBCA No. 50791, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,550 (analysis of “sovereign act” relating to expulsion orders in Panama); Woo Lim Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 13887, 70-2 BCA ¶ 8451 (imposition of security restrictions in a hostile area).

- (2) Acts of the government in its contractual capacity are most common and include delays caused by such things as defective specifications, unreasonable government inspections and late delivery of government furnished property. See Marine Constr. Dredging, Inc., ASBCA No. 38412, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,286 (government failed to respond to contractor's request for directions); John Glenn, ASBCA No. 31260, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,054 (government issued faulty performance directions); Jean E. Smith, PSBCA 5360, 6125, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,546 (contractor refused to wear her badge or leave post office; arrested for criminal trespass but later acquitted; board upheld T4D based on contractor's inability to perform the contract after being banned from the postal facilities following arrest because contractor precipitated her own arrest by her own conduct).
- c) Fires. Hawk Mfg. Co., GSBCA No. 4025, 74-2 BCA ¶ 10,764 (lack of facilities rather than a plant fire caused contractor's failure to timely deliver).
- d) Floods. Wayne Constr., ENG BCA No. 4942, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,535 (storm damage to a dike entitled contractor to time extension).
- e) Epidemics and quarantine restrictions. Ace Elecs. Assoc., ASBCA No. 11496, 67-2 BCA ¶ 6456 (denying relief based on allegation that flu epidemic caused a 30% to 40% rate of absenteeism, without showing that it contributed to delay).
- f) Strikes, freight embargoes, and similar work stoppages. Woodington Corp., ASBCA No. 37885, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,579 (delay not excused where steel strike at U.S. Steel had been ongoing for two months prior to contractor's bid, subcontractor ordered steel after strike ended, and other steel manufacturers were not on strike); but see NTC Group, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 53720, 53721, 53722, 04-2 BCA 32,706 (labor conspiracy, akin to a strike was a valid defense to default termination).
- g) Unusually severe weather. Only unusually severe weather, as compared to the past weather in the area for that season, excuses performance. See Aulson Roofing, Inc., ASBCA No. 37677, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,720 (contractor not entitled to day for day delay because some rain delay was to be expected); TCH Indus., AGBCA No. 88-224-1, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,364 (eight inches of snow in northern Idaho in November is neither unusual nor unforeseeable).

- h) Acts of another contractor in performance of a contract for the government (construction contracts). FAR 52.249-10(b)(1); Modern Home Mfg. Corp., ASBCA No. 6523, 66-1 BCA ¶ 5367 (housing contractor entitled to extension because site not prepared in accordance with contract specifications).

- i) Defaults or delays by subcontractors or suppliers:
 - (1) Construction. If the delay of a subcontractor or supplier at any tier arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of both the contractor and the subcontractor or supplier, and the contractor notifies the contracting officer within ten days from the beginning of the delay, it may be excusable. FAR 52.249-10(b).

 - (2) Supply and Services contracts, and cost-reimbursement contracts. FAR 52.249-8(d); FAR 52.249-6(b); FAR 52.249-14(b). The general rule is that if a failure to perform is caused by the default of a subcontractor or supplier at any tier, the default is excusable if:
 - (a) The cause of the default was beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of either the contractor or the subcontractor, See General Injectables & Vaccines, Inc., ASBCA No. 54930, 06-2 BCA ¶ 33,401 (contractor not excused from failure to provide flu vaccine despite worldwide vaccine unavailability because the contractor's supplier—the vaccine manufacturer—caused the unavailability of the vaccine); and

 - (b) The subcontracted supplies or services were not obtainable from other sources in time for the contractor to meet the required delivery schedule. Progressive Tool Corp., ASBCA No. 42809, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,413 (contractor failed to show it made all reasonable attempts to locate an alternate supplier); CM Mach. Prods., ASBCA No. 43348, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,748 (default upheld where plating could have been provided by another subcontractor but prime refused to pay higher price).

4. Additional excuses commonly asserted by contractors include:

- a) Material breach of contract by the government. Todd-Grace, Inc., ASBCA No. 34469, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,742 (breach of implied duty to not interfere with contractor); Bogue Elec. Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 25184, 86-2 BCA ¶ 18,925 (defective government-furnished equipment).

- b) Lack of financial capability. Contractors are responsible for having sufficient financial resources to perform a contract.
 - (1) Generally, this is not an excuse. Local Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 37108, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,491 (contractor had deteriorating financial base unconnected to the contract).

 - (2) If the financial difficulties are caused by wrongful acts of the government, however, the delay may be excused. Nexus Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 31070, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,303 (default converted because government's refusal to release progress payments constituted material breach of contract).

- c) Bankruptcy. Although filing a petition of bankruptcy is not an excuse, it precludes termination. Communications Technology Applications, Inc., ASBCA No. 41573, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,211 (government's right to terminate stayed when bankruptcy filed, not when government notified); See also, Carter Industries, DOTBCA No. 4108, 02-1 BCA 31,738.

- d) Small business. A-Greater New Jersey Movers, Inc., ASBCA No. 54745, 06-1 BCA ¶ 33,179 ("The Board does not accord special treatment in determining whether the burden of proof has been met to a contractor because of its status as a small business"); Kit Pack Co., ASBCA No. 33135, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,151 (no excuse for failure to meet delivery date).

- e) Impossibility or Commercial impracticability. To establish commercial impracticability, the contractor must show it can perform only at excessive and unreasonable cost – simple economic hardship is not sufficient. Montage, Inc., GAO CAB 2006-2, 10-2 BCA ¶34,490 (board held that contractor did not meet the very tough standard for practical impossibility because contractor failed to establish that increased cost made the work commercially senseless); CleanServ Executive Services, Inc., ASBCA No. 47781, 96-1 BCA ¶ 28,027; compare Soletanche Rodio Nicholson (JV), ENG BCA No. 5796, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,472

(performance might take 17 years and cost \$400 million, rather than 2 years and \$16.9 million), with CM Mach. Prods., ASBCA No. 43348, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,748 (no commercial impracticability where costs increased 105%).

5. **Consequence of excusable delay.** If a delay is found to be excusable, the contractor is entitled to additional time and/or money. Batteast Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 35818, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,697. **NOTE:** Constructive acceleration of the delivery date often occurs when the contracting officer, using a threat of termination, directs compliance with the contract delivery or performance date without an extension for the time period attributable to an excusable delay.

B. Waiver

1. Waiver of the right to terminate for default occurs if:
 - a) The government fails to terminate a contract within a reasonable period of time after the default under circumstances indicating forbearance, and
 - b) Detrimental reliance by the contractor on the failure to terminate and continued performance by him under the contract, with the government's knowledge and implied or express consent.
 - c) Devito v. United States, 413 F.2d 1147 (Ct. Cl. 1969); S.T. Research Corp., ASBCA No. 39600, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,838; Motorola Computer Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 26794, 87-3 BCA ¶ 20,032.
2. Waiver generally does **NOT** apply to **construction** contracts.
 - a) Absent government manifestation that a performance date is no longer enforceable, the waiver doctrine generally does not apply to construction contracts. Nisei Constr. Co., Inc., ASBCA Nos. 51464, 51466, 51646, 99-2 BCA ¶ 30,448.
 - b) Construction contracts typically include a payment clause entitling the contractor to payment for work performed subsequent to the specified completion date.
 - c) Construction contracts also typically include a liquidated damage clause that entitles the government to money for late completion.

- d) As a consequence, detrimental reliance usually cannot be found merely from government forbearance and continued contractor performance. Brent L. Sellick, ASBCA No. 21869, 78-2 BCA ¶ 13,510. *But see*, B.V. Construction, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 47766, 49337, 50553, 04-1 BCA 32,604 (the lack of a liquidated damages clause coupled with the government’s apparent complete lack of concern over the completion date, caused the ASBCA to find the government elected to waive the right to terminate the contract).
- e) This past year, in AmeriscoSolutions, Inc., ASBCA 56811, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,606, the board reaffirmed the rule that, barring unusual circumstances, the government cannot waive the delivery date in a construction contract. It distinguished several construction cases in recent years that found waivers. Those cases involved very long delays between the passing of the delivery date and the termination during which the government gave no indication that the date would be enforced. In Amerisco, the Corps of Engineers frequently reminded the contractor that it was in default even while permitting it to work to a new proposed schedule before terminating the contract 84 days after the stated delivery date passed. Board was not troubled by the absence of a liquidated damages provisions.

3. Acceptance of late delivery of an installment does NOT waive timely delivery of future installments.

- a) If a contract requires multiple deliveries, each successive increment represents a severable obligation to deliver on the contract delivery date.
- b) Thus, the government may accept late delivery of one or more installments without waiving the delivery date for future installments. Electro-Methods, Inc., ASBCA No. 50215, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,230; Allstate Leisure Prods., Inc., ASBCA No. 40532, 94-3 BCA ¶ 26,992.

4. Forbearance = Reasonable Time Period

- a) Definition. Period of time during which the Government investigates the reasons for the contractor’s failure to meet the contract requirements.
- b) General Rule. The government may “forbear” for a reasonable period after the default occurs before taking some action.

Reasonableness depends on the specific facts of each case. American AquaSource, Inc., ASBCA 56677, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,557 (although government waited 49 days after delivery to terminate, board found the time for terminating is extended when the contractor has abandoned performance or where its situation is such as to render performance unlikely); Progressive Tool Corp., ASBCA No. 42809, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,413 (although forbearance for 42 days after show cause notice was “somewhat long,” T4D sustained because government did not encourage contractor to continue working and contractor did not perform substantial work during that period).

- c) Government actions inconsistent with forbearance may waive a delivery date. Applied Cos., ASBCA No. 43210, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,837 (government waived delivery date for First Article Test Report by seeking information, making progress payments, directing the contractor to rerun tests, and incorporating engineering change proposals into the contract after the delivery date); Kitco, Inc., ASBCA No. 38184, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,190 (no clear delivery schedule established after partial termination for convenience resulted in waiver of right to terminate for default based on untimely deliveries); Beta Engineering, Inc., ASBCA Nos. 53570, 53571, 02-2 BCA ¶ 31,879 (after contractor missed a First Article Test delivery deadline, the government left itself without an enforceable schedule by failing to terminate, encouraging continued performance, and leaving contractor “in limbo” about a new delivery schedule).
- d) Contracting officers should use show cause notices to avoid waiver arguments. Show cause notice is inconsistent with waiver. See Charles H. Siever Co., ASBCA No. 24814, 83-1 BCA ¶ 16,242 (using timely show cause notice preserved right to terminate despite four month forbearance period).

5. Detrimental Reliance

- a) The contractor must show detrimental reliance on the government’s inaction before the government will be deemed to have waived the delivery schedule. Ordnance Parts Eng’g Co., ASBCA No. 44327, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,690 (no detrimental reliance where contractor repudiated contract).
- b) Where the contractor customarily continued performance after a missed delivery date, a board has found no inducement by the

government. Electro-Methods, Inc., ASBCA No. 50215, 99-1 BCA ¶ 30,230.

- c) American AquaSource, Inc., ASBCA 56677, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,557 (nominal surveying fees that the contractor incurred between the delivery date and the termination were not sufficient to show substantial reliance by the contractor on the government's 49-day delay in terminating).

6. Reestablishing the Delivery Schedule

- a) If government waived, what do we do? The government should reestablish a delivery schedule if it believes it waived the original schedule. FAR 49.402-3(c). Proper reestablishment of a delivery schedule also reestablishes the government's right to terminate for default.
- b) A delivery schedule can be reestablished either bilaterally or unilaterally. Sermor, Inc., ASBCA No. 30576, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,302 (formal modification not required, but new delivery date must be reasonable and specific).

(1) **Bilateral.** A new delivery date established bilaterally is presumed to be reasonable. Trans World Optics, Inc., ASBCA No. 35976, 89-3 BCA ¶ 21,895; Sermor, Inc., supra (by agreeing to new delivery schedule, contractor waives excusable delay); Tampa Brass Aluminum Corp., ASBCA No. 41314, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,865 (termination proper because unreasonable schedule was proposed by the contractor); but see S.T. Research Corp., ASBCA No. 39600, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,838 (schedule proposed within 24 hours of contracting officer's demand, by contractor having technical problems, was not reasonable)

(2) **Unilateral.** A new delivery date the government unilaterally establishes must in fact be reasonable in light of the contractor's abilities in order to be enforceable. Rowe, Inc., GSBCA No. 14211, 01-2 BCA 31,630 (The board made an "objective determination" from "the standpoint of the performance capabilities of the contractor at the time the notice [was] given" and found the new delivery date was reasonable); McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. United States, 50 Fed. Cl. 311 (2001) (reestablished schedule was reasonable); Oklahoma Aerotronics, Inc.,

ASBCA No. 25605, 87-2 BCA ¶ 19,917 (unilateral date for first article delivery unreasonable).

- c) A cure notice, by itself, does not reestablish a waived delivery schedule. Lanzen Fabricating, ASBCA No. 40328, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,079.

VI. THE DECISION TO TERMINATE FOR DEFAULT

A. Discretionary Act

- (1) The standard FAR clauses generally grant the government the authority to terminate, which shall be exercised only after review by contracting and technical personnel, and by counsel, to ensure propriety of the proposed action. FAR 49.402-3 (a).
- (2) Contracting officers must exercise discretion. The default clauses do not **compel** termination; rather, they **permit** termination for default if such action is appropriate in the business judgment of the responsible government officials. Schlesinger v. United States, 182 Ct. Cl. 571, 390 F.2d 702 (1968) (Navy improperly terminated a contract because of pressure from a Congressional committee, rather than its own assessment of the government's and contractor's interests).

1.

B. Burden of Proof

- 1. The Government has the burden of establishing the propriety of a default termination. Lisbon Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 828 F.2d 759 (Fed. Cir. 1987).
- 2. A finding of technical default is not determinative on the issue of the propriety of a default termination. Walsky Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41541, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,698.
- 3. Courts and boards review the KO's actions according to the circumstances as they existed at the time of the default. Local Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 37108, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,491.

4. Once the Government establishes that the contractor was in default, the contractor bears the burden of proving that the termination was an abuse of discretion or done in bad faith.
5. Contractors may challenge the default termination decision on the basis that the terminating official abused his discretion or acted in bad faith. Marshall Associated Contractors, Inc., & Columbia Excavating, Inc., (J.V.), IBCA Nos. 1091, 3433, 3434, 3435, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31248 (abuse of discretion to terminate for default a contract with defective specifications, when the procurement contractor received relaxed treatment); Darwin Constr. Co. v. United States, 811 F.2d 593 (Fed. Cir. 1987).

a. Abuse of Discretion.

- (1) Abuse of discretion (also referred to as “arbitrary and capricious” conduct) may be ascertained by looking at the following factors:
 - (i) Subjective bad faith on the part of the Government;
 - (ii) No reasonable basis for the decision;
 - (iii) The degree of discretion entrusted to the deciding official;
 - (iv) Violation of an applicable statute or regulation. United States Fidelity & Guaranty Co. v. U.S., 676 F.2d 622 (Ct. Cl. 1982); Quality Environment Systems, Inc., ASBCA No. 22178, 87-3 BCA ¶ 20,060.
- (2) The contractor bears the burden of showing an abuse of discretion. Walsky Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41541, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,264, aff’d on recon., 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,698 (lieutenant colonel’s directive to the contracting officer “tainted the termination”); see also Libertatia Assoc., Inc. v. United States, 46 Fed. Cl. 702 (2000) (once default is established, burden shifts to contractor to show its failure to perform is excusable).
- (3) Recent examples of abuse of discretion: Ryste & Ricas, Inc., ASBCA No. 51841, 02-2 BCA ¶ 31,883 and Bison

b) Bad Faith

- (1) There is a strong presumption that government officials act conscientiously in the discharge of their duties. Krygoski Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States, 94 F.3d 1537 (Fed. Cir. 1996).
- (2) Contractors asserting that government officials acted in “bad faith” must meet a higher standard of proof. The courts and boards require “clear and convincing evidence”¹ of “malice” or “designedly oppressive conduct” tantamount to some specific intent to injure the plaintiff, to overcome the presumption that public officials act in good faith in the exercise of their powers and responsibilities. See Am-Pro Protective Agency, Inc., v. United States, 281 F.3d 1234 (Fed. Cir. 2002); Kalvar Corp. v. United States, 543 F.2d 1298 (Ct. Cl. 1976); Apex Int’l Mgmt. Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 38087, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,842, aff’d on recon., 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,852 (Navy officials acted in bad faith by “declaring war” against the contractor; contractor entitled to breach damages); Marine Constr. Dredging, Inc., ASBCA No. 38412, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,286 (although government’s administration of the contract was “seriously flawed,” no bad faith).

C. Regulatory Guidance

¹ This “clear and convincing” or “highly probable” (formerly described as “well-nigh irrefragable”) standard was recently articulated by the Federal Circuit in Am-Pro Protective Agency, Inc., v. United States, 281 F.3d 1234, 1243 (Fed. Cir. 2002). For years, contractors alleging bad faith by the government needed “well-nigh irrefragable proof” to overcome the strong presumption that government officials acted in good faith. “In fact, for almost 50 years this court and its predecessor have repeated that we are ‘loath to find to the contrary [of good faith], and it takes, and should take, well-nigh irrefragable proof to induce us to do so.’” Id. at 1239 (quoting Schaefer v. United States, 224 Ct. Cl. 541, 633 F.2d 945, 948-49 (Ct. Cl. 1980)) (also citing Grover v. United States, 200 Ct. Cl. 337, 344 (1973); Kalvar Corp. Inc., v. United States, 543 F.2d 1298, 1302, 211 Ct. Cl. 192 (1976); Torncello v. United States, 231 Ct. Cl. 20, 681 F.2d 756, 770 (Ct. Cl. 1982); T&M Distribs., Inc. v. United States, 185 F.3d 1279, 1285 (Fed. Cir. 1999)).

The FAR provides detailed procedures which the contracting officer should follow to terminate a contract.

1. Contracting officers should consider **alternatives** to termination. FAR 49.402-4. The following, among others, are available in lieu of termination for default when in the Government's interest:
 - a) Permit the contractor, the surety, or the guarantor, to continue performance under a revised schedule;
 - b) Permit the contractor to continue performance by means of a subcontract or other business arrangement;
 - c) If the requirement no longer exists and the contractor is not liable to the government for damages, execute a no-cost termination.
 - d) ZIOS Corp., ASBCA 56626, 10-1 BCA ¶ 24,244 (the contracting officer T4D'd the contract after offering ZIOS the opportunity to withdraw from the contract; ZIOS turned down the offer because it wanted the money); Yonir Tech., Inc., ASBCA 56736, 10-1 BCA ¶ 34,417 (contracting officer T4D'd the contract after contractor rejected 3 separate offers to cancel the order at no cost).
2. The FAR provides detailed procedures for terminating a contract for default. FAR 49.402-3. When a default termination is being considered, the government shall decide which termination action to take only after review by contracting and technical personnel, and by counsel, to ensure the propriety of the proposed action. Failure to conduct such a review, while risky, will not automatically overturn a default decision. National Med. Staffing, Inc., ASBCA No. 40391, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,837 (contracting officer acted within her discretion despite her failure to consult with technical personnel and counsel prior to termination).
3. FAR 49.402-3(f) states that the contracting officer shall consider the following factors in determining whether to terminate a contract for default:
 - a) The terms of the contract and applicable laws and regulations.
 - b) The specific failure of the contractor and the excuses for the failure.
 - c) The availability of the supplies or services from other sources.

- d) The urgency of the need for the supplies or services and the period of time required to obtain them from other sources, as compared with the time delivery could be obtained from the delinquent contractor.
 - e) The degree of essentiality of the contractor in the Government acquisition program and the effect of a termination for default upon the contractor's capability as a supplier under other contracts.
 - f) The effect of a termination for default on the ability of the contractor to liquidate guaranteed loans, progress payments, or advance payments.
 - g) Any other pertinent facts and circumstances.
4. The contracting officer must explain the decision to terminate a contract for default in a memorandum for the contract file. FAR 49.402-5. The memorandum should recount the factors at FAR 49.402-3(f).
 5. Failure of the contracting officer to consider factors at FAR 49.402-3(f) may result in a defective termination. See DCX, Inc., 79 F.3d 132 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (although contracting officer's failure to consider one or more FAR 49.402-3(f) factors does not automatically require conversion to termination for convenience, such failure may aid the court or board in determining whether the contracting officer abused his discretion); Phoenix Petroleum Company, ASBCA No. 42763, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,284 (failure to analyze FAR factors does not entitle contractor to relief; factors are not a prerequisite to a valid termination).
 6. Failure to consider all information available prior to issuing a termination notice could be an abuse of discretion. Jamco Constructors, Inc., VABCA No. 3271, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,405, aff'd on recon., 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,792 (contracting officer abused discretion by failing to reconcile contradictory information and "blindly" accepting technical representative's estimates for completion of the contract by another contractor).
 7. Before terminating a contractor for default, the contracting officer should comply with the pertinent notice requirements (cure notice or show cause notice). FAR 49.402-3(c)(d)(e). Additional notice to the following third parties may be required:
 - a) Surety. If a notice to terminate for default appears imminent, the contracting officer shall provide a written notice to the surety. If

the contractor is subsequently terminated, the contracting officer shall send a copy of the notice to the surety. FAR 49.402-3(e)(2).

- b) Small Business Administration. When the contractor is a small business, send a copy of any required notices to the contracting office's small business specialist and the Small Business Regional Office nearest the contractor. FAR 49.402-3(e)(4).

8. The Default Termination Notice.

- a) Contents of the termination notice. FAR 49.102; FAR 49.402-3(g). The written notice must clearly state:
 - (1) The contract number and date;
 - (2) The acts or omissions constituting the default;
 - (3) That the contractor's right to proceed further under the contract (or a specified portion of the contract) is terminated;
 - (4) That the supplies or services terminated may be purchased against the contractor's account, and that the contractor will be held liable for any excess costs;
 - (5) If the contracting officer has determined that the failure to perform is not excusable, that the notice of termination constitutes such decision, and that the contractor has the right to appeal such decision under the Disputes clause;
 - (6) That the Government reserves all rights and remedies provided by law or under the contract, in addition to charging excess costs; and
 - (7) That the notice constitutes a decision that the contractor is in default as specified and that the contractor has the right to appeal under the Disputes clause. FAR 49.402-3(g).
 - (8) FAR 49.102(a) provides that the notice shall also include any special instructions and the steps the contractor should take to minimize the impact on personnel (including reduction in work force notice of FAR 49.601-2(g)).

- b) A default termination is a final decision that can be appealed. Malone v. United States, 849 F.2d 1441 (Fed. Cir. 1988).
 - (1) The termination notification must give notice to the contractor of right to appeal the default termination. Failure to properly advise the contractor of its appeal rights may prevent the “appeals clock” from starting if the contractor can show detrimental reliance. Decker & Co. v. West, 76 F.3d 1573 (Fed. Cir. 1996).
 - (2) When mailed, the notice shall be sent by certified mail, return receipt requested. When hand delivered, a written acknowledgement shall be obtained from the contractor. FAR 49.102(a). A default termination notice is effective when delivered to the contractor. Fred Schwartz, ASBCA No. 20724, 76-1 BCA ¶ 11,916.
- 9. Reporting to the Office of the Undersecretary of Defense. As of 23 Jul 08, no later than 10 calendar days after issuing any notice of termination for default (or cause), the contracting officer must report the termination through agency channels to the Director, Defense Procurement, Acquisition Policy and Strategic Sourcing. The report includes all relevant information regarding the termination. Another report must be submitted if the status of the termination changes, for example, from a termination for default to a termination for convenience. DFARS PGI 249.470.
- 10. Any termination involving a reduction in employment of 100 or more contractor employees specifically requires congressional notification, cleared through agency liaison offices before release. DFARS 249.7001; DFARS PGI 249.7001. Similar reports are required by some DOD agencies for terminations with high-level agency interest or litigation potential. *See e.g.*; AFFARS MP5349.

VII. RIGHTS AND LIABILITIES ARISING FROM TERMINATIONS FOR DEFAULT

A. Contractor Liability

- 1. Rule. Upon termination of a contract, the contractor is liable to the government for any **excess costs** incurred in acquiring supplies or services similar to those terminated for default (see FAR 49.402-6) and for any other damages, whether or not repurchase is effected (see FAR 49.402-7). FAR 49.402-2(e).

2. Excess Reprourement Costs

- a) Under fixed-price supply and service contracts, the government can acquire supplies or services similar to those terminated and the contractor will be liable for any excess costs of those supplies or services. FAR 49.402-6; FAR 52.249-8(b); Ed Grimes, GSBCA No. 7652, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,528.
- b) The government must show that its assessment was proper by establishing the following:
 - (1) The reprocured supplies or services are the same as or similar to those involved in the termination. International Foods Retort Co., ASBCA No. 34954, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,994.
 - (2) The government actually incurred excess costs. Sequal, Inc., ASBCA No. 30838, 88-1 BCA ¶ 20,382; and
 - (3) The government acted reasonably to minimize the excess costs resulting from the default. Daubert Chem. Co., ASBCA No. 46752, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,741 (government acted reasonably where it reprocured quickly, obtained seven bids, and awarded to lowest bidder).
- c) Mitigation of damages. The government has an affirmative duty to mitigate damages on repurchase. Ronald L. Collier, ASBCA No. 26972, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,328; Kessler Chem., Inc., ASBCA No. 25293, 81-1 BCA ¶ 14,949.
 - (1) If the repurchase is for a quantity of goods in excess of the quantity that was terminated for default, the contracting officer may not charge the defaulting contractor for excess costs beyond the undelivered quantity terminated for default. FAR 49.402-6(a).
 - (2) If a repurchase is for a quantity not in excess of the quantity that was terminated, the government shall repurchase at as reasonable a price as practicable. FAR 49.402-6(b). The KO may use any terms and acquisition method deemed appropriate for the repurchase. 52.249-8(b). See Al Bosgraaf Son's, ASBCA No. 45526, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,913 (reprocurement by modification of another contract inadequate to mitigate costs); International Technology

Corp., B-250377.5, Aug. 18, 1993, 93-2 CPD ¶ 102 (may award a repurchase contract to the next-low offeror on the original solicitation when there is a short time span between the original competition and default).

- (3) The government is not required to invite bids on repurchase solicitations from a defaulted contractor. Montage Inc., B-277923.2, Dec. 29, 1997, 97-2 CPD ¶ 176.
- d) When the repurchase is defective, the defaulting contractor may be relieved of liability for excess costs. Ross McDonald Contracting, GmbH, ASBCA No. 38154, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,316 (government failed to mitigate damages when exercising option on repurchase contract); Astra Prods. Co. of Tampa, ASBCA No. 24474, 82-1 BCA ¶ 15,497.
- e) The Fulford Doctrine. A contractor may dispute an underlying default termination as part of a timely appeal from a government demand for excess repurchase costs, even though the contractor failed to appeal the underlying default termination in a timely manner. Fulford Mfg. Co., ASBCA No. 2143, 6 CCF ¶ 61,815 (May 20, 1955); Deep Joint Venture, GSBCA No. 14511, 02-2 BCA ¶ 31,914 (GSBCA confirms validity of the Fulford doctrine for post-CDA terminations); D. Moody & Co. v. United States, 5 Cl. Ct. 70 (1984); Kellner Equip., Inc., ASBCA No. 26006, 82-2 BCA ¶ 16,077.

3. Liquidated Damages.

- a) Liquidated damages serve as a contractually agreed upon substitute for actual damages caused by late delivery or late completion of work. The government may recover both liquidated damages and an assessment of excess costs (either for repurchase or for completion of the work) from a contractor upon terminating a contract for default. FAR 49.402-7.
- b) The common law rule that liquidated damages will not be enforced if they constitute a penalty applies to government acquisitions. Southwest Eng'g Co. v. United States, 341 F.2d 998 (8th Cir. 1965).
- c) A liquidated damages clause will be enforced as reasonable where, at the inception of the contract, the damages are based on a reasonable forecast of possible damages in the event of failure of

performance. American Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 5728, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,009.

- d) If a contract does not have a liquidated damages clause or if the liquidated damages provision of a contract is unenforceable because it is punitive, the government may recover actual damages to the extent that they are proved. FAR 52.249-10.

4. Common Law Damages

- a) The government may also recover common law damages, which may be in lieu of or in addition to excess costs assessed under the default termination clause. FAR 52.249-8(h); Cascade Pac. Int'l v. United States, 773 F.2d 287 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (government awarded common law damages after failing to prove excess procurement costs); Hideca Trading, Inc., ASBCA No. 24161, 87-3 BCA ¶ 20,040 (despite failure to procure, government entitled to damages at the difference between the contract price and the market price for oil for the period 60 to 90 days after the default termination).

- b) The government has the burden of proving that the damages are foreseeable, direct, material, or the proximate result of the contractor's breach of contract. ERG Consultants, Inc., VABCA No. 3223, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,905 (damages must be foreseeable); Gibson Forestry, AGBCA No. 87-325-1, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,874.

- 5. Unliquidated advance and progress payments. The government is entitled to repayment by the contractor of advance and progress payments, if any, attributable to the undelivered work. Smith Aircraft Co., ASBCA No. 39316, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,475.

B. The Government's Liability

- 1. Bottom Line – Upon termination for default, government only pays for **value it actually received**. Supply contractor possesses biggest risk because not compensated for work-in-progress.
- 2. Supply – Government is liable only for the contract price for completed **supplies delivered** and accepted. FAR 52.249-8(f).
- 3. Service or Construction – Government is liable only for the **reasonable value of work done** before termination, whether or not the services or

construction have been contractually accepted by the government. Sphinx Int'l, Inc., ASBCA No. 38784, 90-3 BCA ¶ 22,952.

4. Cost-reimbursement contracts – Government is generally liable for all of the reasonable, allowable, and allocable costs incurred by the contractor, whether or not accepted by the government, plus a percentage of the contract fee. The fee is somewhat limited, however, as the amount of the contract fee payable to the contractor is based on the work accepted by the government, rather than on the amount of work done by the contractor. FAR 52.249-6.
5. The government may also require the contractor to transfer title and deliver to the government its manufacturing materials, for which the government will pay the reasonable value. FAR 52.249-8(e); FAR 52.249-10(a).

VIII. COMMERCIAL ITEM CONTRACTS: “TERMINATION FOR CAUSE”

- A. Background. The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act, P.L. 103-355, 108 Stat. 3243 (Oct. 13, 1994), established special requirements for the acquisition of commercial items. Congress intended government acquisitions to more closely resemble those customarily used in the commercial market place. FAR 12.201.
- B. Applicable Rules for Terminations for Cause
 1. For commercial items: use clause FAR 52.212-4.
 2. The government can terminate a contract for a commercial item for cause. FAR 52.212-4.
 3. FAR 52.212-4 contains concepts that are different from “traditional” termination rules contained in FAR Part 49. Consequently, the requirements of FAR Part 49 do not apply when terminating contracts for commercial items. Contracting officers, however, may continue to follow Part 49 as guidance to the extent that Part 49 does not conflict with FAR 12.403 and FAR 52.212-4. FAR 12.403(a).
- C. Policy. The contracting officer should exercise the government’s right to terminate a contract for a commercial item only when such a termination would be in the best interests of the government. Further, the contracting officer should consult counsel prior to terminating for cause. FAR 12.403(b).
- D. General Requirements. FAR 12.403; FAR 52.212-4.

1. Grounds. Under the rules, a contractor may be terminated for cause “in the event of any default by the Contractor, or if the Contractor fails to comply with any contract terms or conditions, or fails to provide the government, upon request, with adequate assurances of future performance.” FAR 52.212-4(m).
2. Excusable Delay. Contractors are required to notify contracting officers as soon as reasonably possible after the commencement of excusable delay. FAR 52.212-4(f). In most situations, this requirement should eliminate the need for a show cause notice prior to terminating a contract. FAR 12.403(c).
3. Rights and Remedies:
 - a) The government’s rights and remedies after a termination for cause shall include all the remedies available to any buyer in the commercial market place. The government’s preferred remedy will be to acquire similar items from another contractor and to charge the defaulted contractor with any excess procurement costs together with any incidental or consequential damages incurred because of the termination. FAR 12.403(c)(2).
 - b) In the event of a termination for cause, the Government shall not be liable for supplies or services not accepted. FAR 52.212-4(m).
 - c) If a Board determines that the government improperly terminated for cause, such termination will be deemed a termination for convenience. FAR 52.212-4(m).
4. Procedure to terminate for cause.
 - a) The CO shall send the contractor written notification. FAR 12.403(c)(3).
 - b) Reporting to the Office of the Undersecretary of Defense. As of 23 Jul 08, no later than 10 calendar days after issuing any notice of termination for cause (or default), the contracting officer must report the termination through agency channels to the Director, Defense Procurement, Acquisition Policy and Strategic Sourcing. The report includes all relevant information regarding the termination. Another report must be submitted if the status of the termination changes, for example, from a termination for default to a termination for convenience. DFARS PGI 249.470.

- c) Any termination involving a reduction in employment of 100 or more contractor employees specifically requires congressional notification, cleared through agency liaison offices before release. DFARS 249.7001; DFARS PGI 249.7001. Similar reports are required by some DOD agencies for terminations with high-level agency interest or litigation potential. *See e.g.*; AFFARS MP5349.

IX. MISCELLANEOUS

A. Total or partial termination.

A default termination may be total or partial. FAR 52.249-8(a)(1); Balimoy Mfg. Co. of Venice v. United States, 2000 U.S. App. LEXIS 26702 (Fed. Cir 2000).

B. Severable contract requirements.

Where a contract includes severable undertakings, default on one effort may not justify termination of the entire contract. T.C. Sarah C. Bell, ENG BCA No. 5872, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,076.

C. Revocation of Acceptance in Order to Terminate.

1. In some circumstances, the government can revoke its acceptance of performance in order to terminate.
2. American Renovation & Construction Co., ASBCA 53723, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,487 (upheld revocation of work that occurred 25 months previously where government inspector reasonably relied on the contractor's assurance that there were no defects remaining in the work since all visible defects had been corrected); Chilstead Building Co., ASBCA No. 49548, 00-2 BCA ¶31,097 (roofing contractor's representation that it was proceeding in accordance with the drawings followed shortly thereafter by installation of deviant trusses was a gross mistake amounting to fraud despite the government inspector's failure to measure or inspect); Z.A.N. Co., ASBCA 25488, 86-1 BCA ¶ 18,612 (delivery of improperly marked watches was a gross mistake amounting to fraud despite the fact that government representatives may not have acted "with a maximum of circumspection"); Massman Constr. Co., ENG BCA 3443, 81-2 BCA ¶ 15,212 (contractor's failure to use prequalified weld joints (among other things) was a gross mistake amounting to fraud despite the fact that the government's inspection was "inexcusably bad"); Jo-Bar Mfg. Corp., ASBCA 17774, 73-2 BCA ¶ 10, 311 (contractor's determination that aircraft bolts did not have to be heat treated and failure to treat them,

coupled with misrepresentation to the government inspector that it had been advised heat treatment was not required was a gross mistake amounting to fraud despite possible lack of in-process inspection by government).

3. However, acceptance must be revoked within a reasonable time after the mistake is discovered or could have been discovered with ordinary diligence. American Renovation & Construction Co., ASBCA 53723, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,487; Bar Ray Prod., Inc. v. United States, 162 Ct. Cl, 836 (1963).
4. No precise formula exists to determine the reasonableness of the delay. American Renovation & Construction Co., ASBCA 53723, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34,487. The determination must be made on a case-by-case basis. Id.
5. However, the government's efforts to determine conclusively that the work was defective or to work with the contractor to solve the problem will be taken into consideration in determining the reasonableness of the delay. Perkin-Elmer Corp. v. United States, 47 Fed. Cl. 672, 674-75 (2000) (revocation of acceptance more than six years after learning of the defect was unreasonable); Chilstead Building Co., ASBCA No. 49548, 00-2 BCA ¶31,097 (seven-month delay between discovery of the defects and revocation of acceptance for the A/E to investigate the cause of the defect was reasonable); Ordnance Parts & Eng'r Co., ASBCA 40293, 90-3 BCA ¶ 23,141 (one-year delay between the CO's request for tests and revocation of acceptance where tests took less than two weeks was not "remotely prompt action"); Jung Ah Industrial Co., ASBCA 22632, 79-1 BCA ¶ 13,643, aff'd on recon., 79-2 BCA ¶ 13,916 (10-month delay to test wall paneling to determine if it had been "incombustible treated" was reasonable).

D. Fiscal Considerations.

Funds that have been obligated but have not been disbursed at the time of termination for default and funds recovered as excess costs on a defaulted contract remain available for a replacement contract awarded in a subsequent fiscal year. Funding of Replacement Contracts, B-198074, July 15, 1981, 81-2 CPD ¶ 33; Bureau of Prisons-Disposition of Funds Paid in Settlement of Breach of Contract Action, B-210160, Sep. 28, 1983, 84-1 CPD ¶ 91.

E. Conversion to Termination for Convenience.

All FAR default clauses provide that an erroneous default termination will be converted to a termination for convenience. FAR 52.249-8(g); FAR 52.249-

10(c); FAR 52.249-6(b). But see Apex Int'l Mgmt. Servs., Inc., ASBCA No. 38087, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,842 (board refuses to limit recovery to termination for convenience costs where government officials acted in bad faith; contractor entitled to breach damages).

F. T4C Proposals Where T4D Appeal Is Pending

1. A contractor, prior to the default being overturned, can submit a termination for convenience settlement proposal to the contracting officer. The proposals will be treated as Contract Disputes Act claims. McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. United States, 37 Fed. Cl. 285 (1997); Balimoy Mfg. Co. of Venice, ASBCA No. 49,730, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,605.
2. The demand for termination for convenience costs from the contracting officer who terminated the contract for default demonstrates the “impasse” required to convert a proposal into a claim.
3. An appeal of a convenience settlement proposal will be dismissed without prejudice to reinstatement if the appeal of a default termination is pending. Poly Design, Inc., ASBCA No. 50862, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,458.

X. CONCLUSION

Chapter 26
**Alternative
Dispute Resolution**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 26

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| | A. Objectives..... | 1 |
| | B. References:..... | 1 |
| | C. Statutory Background of the Contract Disputes Act. | 1 |
| | D. Statutory Background of the Administrative Dispute Resolution Act. (ADRA)..... | 2 |
| | E. Amending ADRA..... | 2 |
| | F. Federal Acquisition Regulation..... | 3 |
| | G. DOD Policy and Implementation..... | 4 |
| II. | DISPUTE RESOLUTION CONTINUUM..... | 5 |
| | A. Range..... | 5 |
| | B. Dispute Avoidance. | 5 |
| | C. Unassisted Negotiations. | 7 |
| | D. ADR Procedures..... | 8 |
| III. | TIME PERIODS FOR USING ADR..... | 13 |
| | A. Before Protest or Appeal. | 13 |
| | B. After Protest or Appeal..... | 13 |
| IV. | APPROPRIATENESS OF ADR..... | 14 |
| | A. When is it appropriate to use ADR?..... | 14 |
| | B. When is it inappropriate to use ADR?..... | 14 |
| V. | STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS AND LIMITATIONS. | 15 |
| | A. Voluntariness..... | 15 |
| | B. Limitations Applicable to Using Arbitration..... | 16 |
| | C. Judicial Review Prohibited..... | 17 |
| VI. | CONCLUSION..... | 18 |

Chapter 26

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION (ADR)

I. INTRODUCTION.

A. Objectives.

Following this block of instruction, the student should understand the purpose and application of alternative methods of resolving disputes in the contract law arena (e.g., protests and CDA claims) as required by the Administrative Dispute Resolution Act (ADRA), the Contract Disputes Act (CDA), and the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR).

B. References:

1. The Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (CDA), as amended, 41 U.S.C. § 607(e).
2. The Administrative Dispute Resolution Act (ADRA), Pub. L. No. 104-320, 110 Stat 3870, 5 U.S.C. §§ 571-584.
3. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 33.214, Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR).
4. DOD Directive 5145.5, Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR), April 22, 1996 (See Appendix 1).

C. Statutory Background of the Contract Disputes Act.

The Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (CDA) is the earliest statutory authority for the use of informal, expedited dispute resolution methods in contract disputes. The CDA requires the Boards of Contract Appeals (BCA) to “provide to the fullest extent practicable, informal, expeditious, and inexpensive resolution of disputes.” 41 U.S.C. § 607(e).

1. The CDA was designed to encourage the resolution of contract disputes by negotiation prior to the onset of formal litigation. S. Rep. No. 95-1118.
2. The CDA favors negotiation between the contractor and the agency at the claim stage, before litigation begins. At this stage the agency is typically represented by the contracting officer, who makes the initial

decision on a contractor's claim. If the dispute cannot be resolved between the contractor and the contracting officer, the CDA requires the contracting officer to issue a final decision. The contractor can then appeal this final decision to either a Board of Contract Appeals or the Court of Federal Claims. 41 U.S.C. § 605; FAR 33.206 and 33.211.

3. Following enactment of the CDA, it became clear that Congress' goal of providing an inexpensive method for contractors to pursue appeals had not been realized. The court-like rules of practice and procedure followed by the Boards, combined with the complex nature of many contract claims, resulted in appeals as time-consuming as litigation in federal court.

D. Statutory Background of the Administrative Dispute Resolution Act. (ADRA).

Congress passed the first ADRA in 1990, in response to increasingly crowded dockets and escalating litigation costs. In the 1990 statute, Congress found that "administrative proceedings had become increasingly formal, costly, and lengthy resulting in unnecessary expenditures of time and in a decreased likelihood of achieving consensual resolution of disputes." ADRA of 1990, Pub. L. No. 101-552, § 2(2), 104 Stat. 2738 (1990).

1. Congress decided that ADR, used successfully in the private sector, would work in the public sector and would "lead to more creative, efficient and sensible outcomes." ADRA, Pub. L. No. 101-552, § 2(3) and (4), 104 Stat. 2738 (1990).
2. The 1990 ADRA explicitly authorized federal agencies to use ADR to resolve administrative disputes, including contract disputes. ADRA, Pub. L. No. 101-552, § 4(a), 104 Stat. 2738 (1990).
3. Under the 1990 ADRA, ADR was defined as any procedure used, in lieu of adjudication, to resolve issues in controversy, including settlement negotiations, conciliation, facilitation, mediation, factfinding, minitrials, and arbitration, or any combination of these techniques. ADRA, Pub. L. No. 101-552, § 4(b), 104 Stat. 2738 (1990). The ADRA of 1990 expired by its own terms on 1 October 1995.

E. Amending ADRA. On October 19, 1996, Congress enacted the Administrative Dispute Resolution Act of 1996, Pub. L. No. 104-320, 110 Stat 3870, amending 5 U.S.C. §§ 571-584 (see also Federal Acquisition Circular 97-09, 63 Fed. Reg. 58,586 (Final Rules) (1998), amending the FAR to implement the ADRA)). The 1996 Act:

1. Permanently authorized the ADRA;
 2. Redefines ADR as any procedure used to resolve issues in controversy, including, but not limited to, conciliation, facilitation, mediation, factfinding, minitrials, arbitration, and use of ombuds, or any combination of these techniques;
 3. Requires each agency to adopt an ADR policy, to designate a senior official as the agency “dispute resolution specialist” to implement the ADR policy, and to train agency personnel in negotiation and ADR techniques, including mediation and facilitation;
 4. Authorizes federal agencies to promulgate policies permitting the use of binding arbitration in dispute resolution on a case-by-case basis, if authorized by the agency head after consultation with the Attorney General;
 5. Extends confidentiality protection to certain “dispute resolution communications” made during the course and for the purpose of dispute resolution proceedings, and exempts such communications disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act;
 6. Authorizes an exception to full and open competition for the purpose of contracting with a “neutral person” for the resolution of any existing or anticipated litigation or dispute; and
 7. Requires the President to designate an agency or establish an interagency committee to facilitate and encourage the use of ADR. By Presidential Memorandum dated 1 May 1998, the Interagency Alternative Dispute Resolution Working Group was established. See <http://www.adr.gov>.
- F. Federal Acquisition Regulation. It is now the government’s express policy to attempt to resolve all contract disputes at the contracting officer level. Agencies are encouraged to use ADR procedures to the “maximum extent practicable.” FAR 33.204.
1. FAR 33.214(a) identifies four essential elements for the use of ADR techniques:
 - a) Existence of an issue in controversy;

- b) Voluntary election by both parties to participate in the ADR process;
- c) Agreement to ADR and terms to be used in lieu of formal litigation; and
- d) Participation in the process by officials of both parties who have authority to resolve the issue in controversy.

- 2. If the contracting officer rejects a contractor's request for ADR, the contracting officer must provide the contractor a written explanation citing one or more of the conditions in 5 U.S.C. 572(b) or other specific reasons that ADR is inappropriate. FAR 33.214. Additionally, when a contractor rejects an agency ADR request, the contractor must inform the agency in writing of the contractor's specific reasons for rejecting the request. FAR 33.214.

G. DOD Policy and Implementation. Each DOD component shall use ADR techniques “whenever possible” and shall establish ADR policies and programs. DOD Dir. 5145.5.

- 1. Army. The Army established a centralized ADR Program Office in the Office of the General Counsel in 2008, pursuant to the Secretary of the Army’s 22 Jun 07 ADR policy memorandum. This policy urges Army personnel to use ADR in appropriate cases to resolve disputes as early as feasible, by the fastest and least expensive method possible, and at the lowest possible organizational level. Personnel involved in dispute resolution must receive adequate ADR training, and must consider ADR in every case. The policy designates the Principal Deputy General Counsel as the Army Dispute Resolution Specialist and directs the hiring of personnel to assist in implementing the Army ADR policy. Previously, ADR in the Army was implemented primarily through subordinate commands and components, for example, the Contract and Fiscal Law Division of the U.S. Army Legal Services Agency (for contract claims and bid protests), Army Materiel Command (workplace and bid protests), the Army Corps of Engineers (contract claims, environmental and workplace disputes), and the Army EEO Complaints Program (discrimination claims). These subordinate commands and components continue to have primary operational control over ADR with respect to disputes within their areas of responsibility, but certain aspects of the ADR program, such as policy and guidance, standards, training programs, and ADR support, are within OGC’s area of responsibility. In Army contract disputes, there is guidance available for trial practitioners on the use of ADR, written several years ago by the Chief Trial Attorney. Entitled

“ADR Policies and Procedures Guide for Trial Attorneys,” it is referenced in the 1999 “Electronic Guide to Federal Procurement ADR,” a product of the Interagency ADR Working Group Steering Committee, and can be found at <http://www.adr.gov/adr%20guide/UntitledFrameset-22.html>, under Part VI, Federal ADR Resources, Agency ADR Profiles. See Army ADR website *available at* <http://www.hqda.army.mil/ogc/homepage.htm>.

2. Air Force. The Air Force institutionalized its use of ADR in contract disputes by issuance of a comprehensive policy on dispute resolution entitled “ADR First.” The policy states that ADR will be the first-choice method of resolving contract disputes if traditional negotiations fail, unless ADR would be inappropriate as judged by the statutory (ADRA) criteria. The ADR First policy represents an affirmative determination to avoid the disruption and high cost of litigation. ADR: Air Force Launches New ADR Initiative; Drafts Legislation to Fund ADR Settlements, Fed. Cont. Daily (BNA) (Apr. 28, 1999); see also Air Force Policy Directive 51-12 (Jan. 9, 2003) and AFFARS 5333.090 (2004). See Air Force ADR website *available at* <http://www.adr.af.mil>.
3. Navy. The first Department of Navy ADR policy was issued in 1987, stating “every reasonable step must be taken to resolve disputes prior to litigation.” Memorandum, Assistant Secretary of the Navy (Shipbuilding and Logistics), subject: Alternative Dispute Resolution (1987). The current Navy policy states ADR shall be used to the “maximum extent practicable” with the goal of resolving disputes at the earliest stage feasible, by the fastest and quickest means possible, and at the lowest possible organizational level. SECNAVINST 5800.13A (Dec. 22, 2005). See Navy ADR website *available at* <http://adr.navy.mil>.

II. DISPUTE RESOLUTION CONTINUUM.

A. Range.

Alternative dispute resolution techniques exist within a dispute resolution continuum, ranging from dispute avoidance to litigation. The purpose of any ADR method is to settle the dispute without resorting to costly and time-consuming litigation before the courts and boards.

B. Dispute Avoidance.

1. Mechanisms or processes to promote early identification and resolution of potential issues in controversy, before they become disputes. Examples of dispute avoidance processes are partnering, and issue escalation (also known as an "issue ladder") procedures.
2. Partnering.
 - a) A process by which the contracting parties form a relationship of teamwork, cooperation, and good faith performance. It is a long-term commitment between two or more parties for the purpose of achieving mutually beneficial goals.
 - b) Partnering fosters communication and agreement on common goals and methods of performance. Examples of common goals are:
 - (1) The use of ADR and elimination of litigation;
 - (2) Timely project completion;
 - (3) High quality work;
 - (4) Safe workplace;
 - (5) Cost control;
 - (6) Value engineering;
 - (7) Reasonable profit.
 - c) Partnering is NOT:
 - (1) Mandatory. It is not a contractual requirement and does not give either party legal rights. The parties must voluntarily agree to the process, because it is a commitment to an on-going relationship.
 - (2) A "Cure-All." Reasonable differences will still occur, but one of the benefits of partnering is that it ensures the differences are honest and in good faith.

- d) Implementing Partnering. Although voluntary, partnering is typically implemented through formal, specific methods that the parties agree upon. Partnering is labor-intensive, and is therefore best used on more complex projects.
 - (1) Requires commitment of top management officials of all parties.
 - (2) Parties need to establish clear lines of communication and responsibility, and agree to ADR methods for resolving legitimate disagreements.
 - (3) In the Army, both the Army Corps of Engineers and Army Materiel Command have used partnering as a dispute avoidance technique in contracts; for the Corps of Engineers, partnering is also used as a tool to foster collaboration in water projects under Corps supervision. Several very informative publications discussing the Corps' use of partnering are available for download at the Corps Institute for Water Resources' online ADR library at <http://www.iwr.usace.army.mil/inside/products/pub/pubsearchS.cfm?series=ADR>.

3. Issue Escalation.

- a) A process of whereby issues that could produce disputes are first referred to a team made up of all parties to the contract or project for resolution.
- b) If the issue is not resolved at the first level of review, it is automatically elevated to a higher level of review, usually consisting of the superiors of those in the lower level, for decision.
- c) There can be several levels of review up the chain, but the incentive is to avoid higher level review by resolving the issue at the lowest possible level.

C. Unassisted Negotiations.

- 1. In traditional unassisted negotiation, the parties attempt to reach a settlement without involvement of outside parties.

2. Elements of Successful Negotiation:
 - a) Parties identify issues upon which they differ.
 - b) Parties disclose their respective needs and interests.
 - c) Parties identify possible settlement options.
 - d) Parties negotiate terms and conditions of agreement.
3. Goal: Each party should be in a better position than if they had not negotiated.

D. ADR Procedures.

Defined broadly to include any procedure or combination of procedures that “may include, but are not limited to, conciliation, facilitation, mediation, fact-finding, mini-trials, arbitration, and use of ombudsmen,” ADR techniques rely upon participation by a third-party neutral. See ADRA of 1996, 5 U.S.C. §§ 571-584 and FAR 33.201. Typically ADR types fall within one of three general categories:

1. Process Assistance/Assisted Negotiations:
 - a) **Mediation.** Mediation is helpful when the parties are not making progress negotiating between themselves. Mediation is simply negotiation with the assistance of a third party neutral who is an expert in helping people negotiate but has no decision-making authority. See “Alternative Dispute Resolution – Edition III,” Briefing Papers No. 03-5, p. 1 (April 2003). See Donald Arnava, *Alternative Dispute Resolution for Government Contracts* 7 (2004).
 - (1) The mediator should be neutral, impartial, acceptable to both parties, and should not have any decision-making power.
 - (2) A professional mediator will normally approach a dispute with a formal strategy, consisting of a method of analysis, an opening statement, recognized stages of mediation, such as ex parte caucuses, and a variety of mediation tools for breaking impasses and bringing about a resolution.

- (3) Mediators (as well as arbitrators and other neutrals) may be retained without full and open competition. FAR 6.302-3(a)(2)(iii) and (b)(3). Moreover, third-party neutral functions (like mediating and arbitrating) in ADR methods are not inherently governmental functions for which agencies may not contract. See FAR 7.503(c)(2).
- (4) Most mediations in contract disputes are "evaluative," i.e., the mediator is a subject matter expert who is expected to offer an opinion on the litigation risk for each party if the matter goes to trial. However, the mediator has no power to decide the issue nor to impose a settlement.
- (5) At the ASBCA, the process known as the "settlement judge technique" is most similar to evaluative mediation. This is a flexible procedure that allows the parties to make case presentations to each other in the presence of an ASBCA judge, who then facilitates settlement negotiations. "Alternative Dispute Resolution at the ASBCA," Briefing Papers No. 00-7, p. 7 (June 2000). See, ASBCA Notice Regarding Alternative Methods of Dispute Resolution, available at <http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca>.

b) **Mini-Trials.** The term "mini-trial" is a misnomer, as it is NOT a shortened judicial proceeding. In a mini-trial, the parties present either their whole case, or specific issues, to a panel consisting of the neutral and the principals of each party in an abbreviated hearing. An advantage of the mini-trial is it forces the parties to focus on a dispute and settle it early. See, ASBCA Notice Regarding Alternative Methods of Dispute Resolution, available at <http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca>. See Donald Arnava, *Alternative Dispute Resolution for Government Contracts* 7 and 127 (2004).

- (1) Mini-trials have been used by the Army Corps of Engineers in several cases. The first was the Tennessee Tombigbee Construction, Inc. case in 1985. In that case, Professor Ralph Nash served as the neutral advisor, and a \$17.25 million settlement was worked out between the government and the contractor. See 44 *Federal Contracts Reporter* (BNA) 502 (1985).

- (2) In a mini-trial, the attorneys engage in a brief discovery process and then present their case to a specially-constituted panel. The panel consists of party principals and the neutral advisor if desired.
 - (a) Each party selects a principal to represent it on the panel. The principal should have sufficient authority permitting unilateral decisions regarding the dispute and should not have been personally or closely involved in the dispute.
 - (b) The parties should jointly select the neutral advisor, and share expenses. The neutral advisor should possess negotiation and legal skills, and if the issues are highly technical, a technical expert is desirable.
 - (c) The neutral advisor may perform a number of functions, including answering questions from the principals, questioning witnesses and counsel to clarify facts and legal theories, acting as a mediator and facilitator during negotiations, and generally presiding over the mini-trial to keep the parties on schedule.
- (3) After hearing the case, the principals try to negotiate a settlement, with the neutral's assistance if the principals desire it. If the neutral is an ASBCA judge, they may discuss the likely outcome if the case were to go to court or the board (outcome prediction - see below).

2. Outcome Prediction.

- a) **Non-Binding Arbitration.** This form of arbitration aids the parties in making their own settlement. It is best used when senior managers do not have time to sit through a mini-trial and when disputes are highly technical. See Donald Arnava, *Alternative Dispute Resolution for Government Contracts* 23 and 127 (2004).
 - (1) Normally an informal presentation of the case, done by counsel with client input.

- (2) Evidence is presented by document, deposition, and affidavit.
- (3) Few live witnesses.
- (4) The arbitrator's decision or opinion, sometimes called an award, serves to further settlement discussions. The parties get an idea of how the case may be decided by a court or board.
- (5) The arbitrator may also evolve into the role of a mediator after a decision is issued.

b) **Outcome Prediction Conference (GAO).** For bid protests at GAO, parties frequently utilize an "outcome prediction" conference, in which a GAO staff attorney advises the parties as to the perceived merits of the protest in light of the case facts and prior GAO decisions. See Tyecom, Inc. B-287321.3; B-287321.4, April 29, 2002. See also Bid Protests at GAO: A Descriptive Guide available at <http://www.gao.gov/decisions/bidpro/bidpro.htm>. See Donald Arnavas, *Alternative Dispute Resolution for Government Contracts* 127 (2004).

3. Adjudication.

a) **Binding Arbitration.** Binding arbitration is the ADR technique that most closely resembles traditional, formal litigation. "Alternative Dispute Resolution – Edition III," Briefing Papers No. 03-5, p. 2 (April 2003). This form of arbitration results in an award, enforceable in courts.

- (1) Binding Arbitration in DOD.¹ Pursuant to the ADRA of 1996,² federal agencies may use binding arbitration, but only after the head of the agency issues appropriate

¹ Binding arbitration is a voluntary dispute resolution process where the parties select a neutral decision-maker to hear the dispute and resolve it by rendering a final and binding award, with only limited rights to appeal. Unlike traditional litigation, arbitration provides for simplified procedural rules, and flexibility in the choice of the decision-maker. See DONALD ARNAVAS, *ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION FOR GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS* 23-24 (2004).

² See ADRA, 5 U.S.C. § 575(c).

guidance, in consultation with the Attorney General. The Navy is the first (and, so far, only) DOD agency that has issued guidance authorizing the use of binding arbitration in FAR contracts.³ To date, only 8 federal agencies have issued guidelines for use of binding arbitration.

- (2) There is normally a formal presentation of the case, much like a trial, though strict rules of evidence may not be followed.
- (3) Evidence is presented by document, deposition, affidavit, and live witnesses, with full cross-examination.
- (4) Arbitration panels consist of one to three arbitrators, who serve to control the proceeding, but do not take an active role in the case presentation.
- (5) Private conversations between the parties and the arbitrators are forbidden. This is much different than mediation, during which private conversations between a party and the mediator are not uncommon.
- (6) The arbitrator has full responsibility for rendering justice under the facts and law.
- (7) The arbitrator's award is binding, so the arbitrator must be more careful about controlling the parties' case presentation and the reliability of the evidence presented.

- b) **Summary Trial with Binding Decision (ASBCA).** In practice before the ASBCA, a summary trial results in a binding decision. The parties try the case informally before a board judge on an expedited, abbreviated basis. There is no right to appeal a decision resulting from this process. "Alternative Dispute Resolution at the ASBCA," Briefing Papers No. 00-7, p. 5 (June 2000). See, ASBCA Notice Regarding Alternative Methods of Dispute Resolution available at <http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca>. See also the Air Force ADR Reference Book, section 4.3.2 available at <http://www.adr.af.mil/acquisition/index.html>. See Donald

³ See Navy Instruction 5800.15 (5 Mar. 2007). This instruction may be accessed at <http://www.adr.navy.mil>.

III. TIME PERIODS FOR USING ADR.

A. Before Protest or Appeal.

1. Protests. The FAR has long provided authority for agencies to hear protests. FAR 33.103 implements Executive Order 12979 and requires agencies to:
 - a) Emphasize that the parties shall use their best efforts to resolve the matter with the contracting officer prior to filing a protest (FAR 33.103(b));
 - b) Provide for inexpensive, informal, procedurally simple, and expeditious resolution of protests, using ADR techniques where appropriate (FAR 33.103(c));
 - c) Allow for review of the protest at “a level above the contracting officer” either initially or as an internal appeal (FAR 33.103(d)(4)) and,
 - d) Withhold award or suspend performance if the protest is received within 10 days of award or 5 days after debriefing. FAR 33.103(f)(1)-(3). But an agency protest will not extend the period within which to obtain a stay at GAO, although the agency may voluntarily stay performance. FAR 33.103(f)(4).
2. Appeals. The ADRA provides clear and unambiguous government authority for contracting officers to voluntarily use any form of ADR during the period before an appeal is filed. 5 U.S.C. § 572(a); FAR 33.214(c).

B. After Protest or Appeal.

1. The GAO Bid Protest Regulations now provide that GAO, on its own or upon request, may use flexible alternative procedures to resolve a protest, including ADR procedures. 5 C.F.R. 21.10. See also Bid Protests at GAO: A Descriptive Guide *available at* <http://www.gao.gov/decisions/bidpro/bidpro.htm>. As noted earlier, parties frequently utilize an “outcome prediction” conference. See Tyecom, Inc. B-287321.3; B-287321.4, April 29, 2002.

2. With respect to contractor claims, once an appeal is filed, jurisdiction passes to the BCA. When an appeal is filed, the Board gives notice suggesting the parties pursue the possibility of using ADR, including mediation, mini-trials, and summary hearings with binding decisions. The ASBCA has made aggressive use of ADR services in contract appeals disputes. See, ASBCA Notice Regarding Alternative Methods of Dispute Resolution *available at* <http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca>. See also, “Alternative Dispute Resolution at the ASBCA,” Briefing Papers No. 00-7 (June 2000).
3. Parties who file appeals with the Court of Federal Claims (COFC) will also be informed of voluntary ADR methods available through the court. In 2007 the Chief Judge of COFC issued General Order No. 44, establishing the ADR Automatic Referral Program, in which all cases (except for bid protests) assigned to a presiding judge are automatically and simultaneously referred to an ADR judge for ADR consideration and participation by the parties. General Order No. 44, together with the implementing procedures and a sample confidentiality agreement, are available for download at the COFC web site. See http://www.uscfc.uscourts.gov/sites/default/files/ADR_Procedures.pdf

IV. APPROPRIATENESS OF ADR.

A. When is it appropriate to use ADR?

Agencies “may use a dispute resolution proceeding for the resolution of an issue in controversy that relates to an administrative program, if the parties agree to such proceeding.” 5 U.S.C. § 572(a). Also, government attorneys are to “make reasonable attempts to resolve a dispute expeditiously and properly before proceeding to trial.” Exec. Order No. 12988, § 1(c).

Generally, ADR is appropriate for a case when:

1. Unassisted negotiations have failed to resolve the dispute and have reached an impasse;
2. Neither party is looking for binding precedent;
3. The parties wish to preserve a continuing relationship;
4. Confidentiality is important to either or both sides.

B. When is it inappropriate to use ADR? An agency must consider not using ADR when:

1. A definitive or authoritative resolution of the matter is required for precedential value, and an ADR proceeding is not likely to be accepted generally as an authoritative precedent. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(1);
2. The matter involves or may bear upon significant questions of Government policy that require additional procedures before a final resolution may be made, and an ADR proceeding would not likely serve to develop a recommended policy for the agency. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(2);
3. Maintaining established policies is of special importance, so that variations among individual decisions are not increased and an ADR proceeding would not likely reach consistent results among individual decisions. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(3);
4. The matter significantly affects persons or organizations who are not parties to the proceeding. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(4);
5. A full public record of the proceeding is important, and an ADR proceeding cannot provide such a record. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(5); or,
6. The agency must maintain continuing jurisdiction over the matter with authority to alter the disposition of the matter in light of changed circumstance, and an ADR proceeding would interfere with the agency's ability to fulfill that requirement. 5 U.S.C. § 572(b)(6).

[Note: The ADRA, 5 U.S.C. § 572(b), only requires that an agency consider not using ADR if any of the six statutory factors are present; if sufficient countervailing factors exist, an agency may use ADR even if any of the six factors applies.]

In addition to the statutory factors militating against ADR, there may be other reasons why ADR would be inappropriate for a particular dispute (e.g., a claim with a significant counterclaim of fraud). Any reason for considering ADR to be inappropriate should be articulable; in some cases, the reason(s) for refusing ADR must be put in writing. See, e.g., FAR 33.214(b) (rejection of an offer or request for ADR must state the reason(s) for rejection in writing).

V. STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS AND LIMITATIONS.

A. Voluntariness.

ADR methods authorized by the ADRA are voluntary, and supplement rather than limit other available agency dispute resolution techniques. 5 U.S.C. § 572(c).

B. Limitations Applicable to Using Arbitration.

1. Arbitration may be used by the consent of the parties either before or after a controversy arises. The arbitration agreement shall be:
 - a) in writing,
 - b) submitted to the arbitrator,
 - c) specify a maximum award and any other conditions limiting the possible outcomes. 5 U.S.C. § 575(c)(1) and (2).
2. The Government representative agreeing to arbitration must have express authority to bind the Government. 5 U.S.C. § 575(b).
3. Before using binding arbitration, the agency head, after consulting with the Attorney General, must issue guidance on the appropriate use of binding arbitration. 5 U.S.C. § 575(c); see also DFARS Case 97-D304. Recall that the Navy issued guidance on the appropriate use of binding arbitration in March 2007.⁴ Neither the Army nor the Air Force has issued such guidance.
4. An agency may not require any person to consent to arbitration as a condition of entering into a contract or obtaining a benefit. 5 U.S.C. § 575(a)(3).
5. If a contractor rejects an agency request to use ADR, the contractor must notify the agency in writing of the reasons. FAR 33.214(b).
6. Once the parties reach a written arbitration agreement, however, the agreement is enforceable in Federal District Court. 5 U.S.C. § 576; 9 U.S.C. § 4.
7. An arbitration award does not become final until 30 days after it is served on all parties. The agency may extend this 30-day period for another 30 days by serving notice on all other parties. 5 U.S.C. § 580(b)(2).

⁴ See Navy Instruction 5800.15, *supra* note 3. As of the date of this outline revision (Jun2010), the Navy has yet to utilize binding arbitration under these guidelines to resolve a contract dispute.

8. A final award is binding on the parties, including the United States, and an action to enforce an award cannot be dismissed on sovereign immunity grounds. 5 U.S.C. § 580(c).
 - a) This provision, enacted as part of the 1996 ADRA, put to rest for the time being a long-standing dispute as to whether an agency can submit to binding arbitration.
 - b) DOJ's Historical Policy. The Justice Department had long opined that the Appointments Clause of Article II provides the exclusive means by which the United States may appoint its officers. DOJ's opinion was that only officers could bind the United States to an action or payment. Because arbitrators are virtually never appointed as officers under the Appointments clause, the government was not allowed to participate in binding arbitration.
 - c) DOJ's Present Position. However, DOJ has now opined that there is no constitutional bar against the government participating in binding arbitration if:
 - (1) the arbitration agreement preserves Article III review of constitutional issues; and
 - (2) the agreement permits Article III review of arbitrators' determinations for fraud, misconduct, or misrepresentation. DOJ also points out that the arbitration agreement should describe the scope and nature of the remedy that may be imposed and that care should be taken to ensure that statutory authority exists to effect the potential remedy.
 - d) Judicial Interpretation. The Court of Federal Claims has found DOJ's memorandum persuasive and agreed that no constitutional impediment precludes an agency from submitting to binding arbitration. *Tenaska Washington Partners II v. United States*, 34 Fed. Cl. 434 (1995).

C. Judicial Review Prohibited.

Generally, an agency's decision to use or not use ADR is within the agency's discretion, and shall not be subject to judicial review. 5 U.S.C. § 581(b)(1).

1. However, arbitration awards are subject to judicial review under 9 U.S.C. § 10(b).

2. Section 10(b) authorizes district courts to vacate an arbitration award upon application of any party where the arbitrator was either partial, corrupt, or both.

VI. CONCLUSION.



Department of Defense DIRECTIVE

NUMBER 5145.5

April 22, 1996

GC, DoD

SUBJECT: Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR)

- References:
- (a) Executive Order 12988, "Civil Justice Reform," February 5, 1996
 - (b) Report of the National Performance Review, "Creating A Government That Works Better & Costs Less," September 7, 1993
 - (c) Chapter 71 of title 5, United States Code, "The Federal Service Labor-Management Relations Statute"
 - (d) Executive Order 12871, "Labor-Management Partnerships," October 3, 1993

1. PURPOSE

This Directive establishes policy to implement references (a) and (b); assigns responsibilities; creates the ADR Coordinating Committee; and establishes a framework for encouraging the expanded use of ADR within the Department of Defense. Establishment of ADR procedures for Federal employees represented by unions under reference (c) shall be subject to the requirements of references (c) and (d).

2. APPLICABILITY AND SCOPE

This Directive:

2.1. Applies to the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD), the Military Departments, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, the Defense Agencies, and the DoD Field Activities (hereafter referred to collectively as "the DoD Components").

2.2. Does not create any rights or reservations and may not be relied on by any person, organization, or other entity to allege a denial of any rights or reservations.

3. DEFINITIONS

3.1. Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR). Any procedure that parties agree to use, instead of a formal adjudication, to resolve issues in controversy, including, but not limited to, settlement negotiations, conciliation, facilitation, mediation, fact-finding, minitrials, and arbitration, or any combination thereof.

3.2. Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR) Coordinating Committee. A group consisting of representatives of DoD Components assisting with the coordination of Component ADR program implementation and the exchange of information on ADR among DoD Components.

4. POLICY

The DoD ADR policy is that:

4.1. Each DoD Component shall establish and implement ADR policies and programs. Each Component shall make use of existing government ADR resources to avoid unnecessary expenditure of time and money.

4.2. All DoD Components shall use ADR techniques as an alternative to litigation or formal administrative proceedings whenever appropriate. Every dispute, regardless of subject matter, is a potential candidate for ADR.

4.3. Each DoD Component shall review its existing approaches to dispute resolution, and, where feasible, foster increased use of ADR techniques. Components shall identify and eliminate unnecessary barriers to the use of ADR.

5. RESPONSIBILITIES

5.1. The General Counsel of the Department of Defense:

5.1.1. Shall monitor the Department of Defense's ADR effort and shall chair the ADR Coordinating Committee, which shall consist of the dispute resolution specialists or designees of:

5.1.1.1. Department of the Army.

5.1.1.2. Department of the Navy.

5.1.1.3. Department of the Air Force.

5.1.1.4. Defense Agencies and DoD Field Activities selected by the General Counsel of the Department of Defense (GC, DoD) or designee.

5.1.2. May select for membership on the ADR Coordinating Committee:

5.1.2.1. The chairs of any working groups the ADR Coordinating Committee creates.

5.1.2.2. Other DoD officials with ADR-related responsibilities.

5.1.3. Shall ensure that the ADR Coordinating Committee shall:

5.1.3.1. Facilitate the sharing of ADR information among the DoD Components, including assembling and publicizing DoD ADR information.

5.1.3.2. Assist the DoD Components in the design and implementation of ADR programs.

5.1.3.3. Establish DoD-wide working groups and take other steps to coordinate and facilitate ADR programs.

5.1.3.4. Request information from DoD Components to evaluate the progress of ADR activities within the Department of Defense.

5.1.3.5. Provide reports to the Secretary of Defense on the use of ADR within the Department of Defense as determined necessary.

5.1.4. Shall ensure that the Defense Office of Hearings and Appeals shall:

5.1.4.1. Provide administrative support for the activities of the ADR Coordinating Committee.

5.1.4.2. Work under the supervision of the GC, DoD, and OSD dispute resolution specialist to implement this Directive.

5.2. The Head of each DoD Component shall:

5.2.1. Ensure implementation of E.O. 12988 and the ADR provisions in the National Performance Review (references (a) and (b)).

5.2.2. Provide representatives and information to the ADR Coordinating Committee and working groups as requested.

5.2.3. Provide copies of implementing procedures to the GC, DoD, or designee.

5.2.4. Appoint a dispute resolution specialist and provide training for the specialist and selected Component personnel.

5.2.5. Provide sufficient resources to fulfill the responsibilities enumerated herein.

6. EFFECTIVE DATE AND IMPLEMENTATION

This Directive is effective immediately. Forward one copy of implementing documents to the General Counsel of the Department of Defense within 120 days.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "John P. White", is written over a horizontal line.

John P. White
Deputy Secretary of Defense

Chapter 27
**Government Information
Practices (GIP)**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 27

GOVERNMENT INFORMATION PRACTICES (GIP)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| I. | REFERENCES..... | 1 |
| II. | AGENCY RECORDS – POSSESSION AND CONTROL | 1 |
| III. | EXEMPTION 1 -- CLASSIFIED INFORMATION | 2 |
| IV. | EXEMPTION 2 -- INTERNAL PERSONNEL RULES AND PRACTICES..... | 2 |
| V. | EXEMPTION 3 -- DISCLOSURE PROHIBITED BY ANOTHER STATUTE .. | 3 |
| VI. | EXEMPTION 4 -- TRADE SECRETS, COMMERCIAL OR FINANCIAL INFORMATION OBTAINED FROM A PERSON, AND PRIVILEGED OR CONFIDENTIAL | 3 |
| VII. | EXEMPTION 5 -- INTER OR INTRA-AGENCY DOCUMENTS ROUTINELY PRIVILEGED IN CIVIL DISCOVERY | 7 |
| VIII. | EXEMPTION 6 -- PERSONAL PRIVACY | 8 |
| IX. | EXEMPTION 7(A) – RECORDS COMPILED FOR LAW ENFORCEMENT PURPOSES, THE DISCLOSURE OF WHICH COULD REASONABLY BE EXPECTED TO INTERFERE WITH ENFORCEMENT PROCEEDINGS. | 8 |
| X. | EXEMPTION 7(F) -- RECORDS COMPILED FOR LAW ENFORCEMENT PURPOSES, THE DISCLOSURE OF WHICH COULD REASONABLY BE EXPECTED TO ENDANGER THE LIFE OR PHYSICAL SAFETY OF ANY INDIVIDUAL..... | 8 |
| XI. | CONCLUSION | 8 |
| | ATTACHMENT A -- 10 U.S.C. § 2305..... | 9 |
| | ATTACHMENT B -- 41 U.S.C. § 253B | 9 |
| | ATTACHMENT C..... | 10 |

CHAPTER 27

GOVERNMENT INFORMATION PRACTICES (GIP)

I. REFERENCES

- A. Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. § 552, as amended.
- B. DOD Freedom of Information Act Program, 32 C.F.R. Part 286, Sept. 1998, change 1, 4/11/2006, available at http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=ecfr&tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title32/32cfr286_main_02.tpl
- C. Department of the Army Freedom of Information Act Program Final Rule, 32 C.F.R. § 518 (2006), available at <https://www.rmda.army.mil/foia/docs/foia-32CFRPart518.pdf>
- D. U.S. Department of Justice, Freedom of Information Act Guide (2009 Ed.), available at http://www.justice.gov/oip/foia_guide09.htm
- E. U.S. Department of Justice, "Treatment of Unit Prices Under Exemption 4," FOIA Post, available at <http://www.justice.gov/oip/foiapost/2005foiapost17.htm>

II. AGENCY RECORDS – POSSESSION AND CONTROL

- A. Records prepared by contractor, but possessed and paid for by agency are agency records. *Hercules, Inc. v. Marsh*, 839 F.2d 1027 (4th Cir. 1988) (reverse FOIA) (Radford Army Ammunition Plant Telephone Directory).
- B. Records possessed exclusively by a contractor ruled not agency records because not subject to agency "possession and control." *Rush Franklin Publ'g, Inc. v. NASA*, No. 90-CV-285 (E.D.N.Y. Apr. 13, 1993). But see *Burka v. HHS*, 87 F.3d 508 (D.C. Cir. 1996) (finding tapes created and possessed by contractor to be agency records based on extensive supervision and control exercised by the agency, which evidenced "constructive control").
- C. "Agency record" now defined to include any record "that is maintained for an agency by an entity under Government contract, for the purposes of record management." Sec. 9, OPEN Government Act of 2007, Public Law 110-175, codified at 5 U.S.C. § 552(f)(2)(B). *Amer. Small Bus. League v. SBA*, 623 F.3d 1052 (9th Cir 2010).

- D. Electronic database provided by contractor under specific license limiting dissemination held not an agency record because agency lacks control. *Tax Analysts v. United States Dep't of Justice*, 913 F. Supp. 599 (D.D.C. 1996), *aff'd*, 107 F.3d 923 (D.C. Cir.) (table cite), cert. denied, 118 S. Ct. 336 (1997).
- E. Records created by agency employees exclusively for own convenience held personal rather than agency records. *Hamrick v. Dep't of the Navy*, No. 90-283, 1992 WL 739887 (D.D.C. Aug. 28, 1992) (steno pads containing contracting officer's handwritten memory joggers created "without being directed to do so by the Agency for her own personal reasons and maintained . . . for her own convenience"), appeal dismissed, No. 92-5376 (D.C. Cir. Aug. 4, 1995).

III. EXEMPTION 1 -- CLASSIFIED INFORMATION

- A. Details of procurement of armored limousines for President held properly classified. *U.S. News & World Report v. Dep't of the Treasury*, No. 84-2303 (D.D.C. Mar. 26, 1986).
- B. In rare cases mere existence of targeted procurement may be classified. *Phillippi v. CIA*, 546 F.2d 1009 (D.C. Cir. 1976) (approving CIA's refusal to confirm or deny whether it had procurement records concerning Glomar Explorer submarine-retrieval ship).

IV. EXEMPTION 2 -- INTERNAL PERSONNEL RULES AND PRACTICES

- A. Formerly protected internal matters the disclosure of which would risk circumvention of an agency statute, regulation, or security procedure, such as
 - 1. Audit guidelines protected where "disclosure would reveal Department of Defense rationale and strategy" and would "create a significant risk that this information would be used by interested parties to frustrate ongoing or future audits." *Knight v. DOD*, No. 87-480 (D.D.C. Feb. 11, 1988).
 - 2. Names of companies providing contractor security services in Iraq held to be compiled for primarily internal purposes and that their disclosure would risk circumvention of the law and the military's efforts to establish stability for its reconstruction efforts. *L.A. Times Commc'ns, LLC v. Dep't of the Army*, 442 F. Supp. 2d 880 (C.D. Cal. 2006).

- B. The Supreme Court has held that the exemption’s coverage is limited to “personnel matters.” *Milner v. Department of the Navy*, 131 S. Ct. 1259 (2011).

V. EXEMPTION 3 -- DISCLOSURE PROHIBITED BY ANOTHER STATUTE

- A. DOD FY Authorization Act provisions prohibiting release of unsuccessful or unincorporated contract proposals, 10 U.S.C. § 2305(g) and 41 U.S.C. § 253b(m), qualify. *Hombostel v. Dep’t of the Interior*, 305 F. Supp. 2d 21 (D.D.C. 2003); cf. *Center for Public Integrity v. Dep’t of Energy*, 191 F. Supp. 2d 187 (D.D.C. 2002) (implying 41 U.S.C. § 253b(m)(1) qualifies as an Exemption 3 statute, but applies only to unsuccessful bidders seeking to sell, not purchase, goods or services).
- B. Trade Secrets Act, 18 U.S.C. § 1905, does not qualify because it prohibits only those disclosures “not authorized by law.” *CNA v. Fin. Corp. v. Donovan*, 830 F.2d 1132 (D.C. 1987).
- C. Procurement Integrity Act, 41 U.S.C. § 423, does not qualify because it prohibits only those disclosures “other than as provided by law” and “does not . . . limit the applicability of any . . . remedies established under any other law or regulation.” Cf. *Pikes Peak Family Housing, LLC v. United States*, 40 Fed. Cl. 673 (1998) (provision does not prohibit disclosure in civil discovery because that is “provided by law”). But see *Legal & Safety Employer Research, Inc. v. United States Dep’t of the Army*, No. 00-1748 (E.D. Cal. May 7, 2001) (stating in dicta, without analyzing either of the two above-quoted provisions, that provision qualifies as an Exemption 3 statute).

VI. EXEMPTION 4 -- TRADE SECRETS, COMMERCIAL OR FINANCIAL INFORMATION OBTAINED FROM A PERSON, AND PRIVILEGED OR CONFIDENTIAL

- A. “Trade secret” given narrow definition in FOIA context; limited to “a secret, commercially valuable plan, formula, process, or device that is used for the making, preparing, compounding, or processing of trade commodities and that can be said to be the end product of either innovation or substantial effort.” *Public Citizen Health Research Group v. FDA*, 704 F.2d 1280 (D.C. Cir. 1983). See, e.g., *Pacific Sky Supply, Inc. v. Department of the Air Force*, No. 86-2044, 1987 WL 25456 (D.D.C. Nov. 20, 1987) (design drawings of airplane fuel pumps developed by private company and used by Air Force are trade secrets).

- B. “Confidential” test under *National Parks & Conservation Ass’n v. Morton*, 498 F.2d 765 (D.C. Cir. 1974).
1. “Impair the Government’s ability to obtain necessary information in the future.” For only case so holding in procurement context, see *Orion Research, Inc. v. EPA*, 615 F.2d 551 (1st Cir. 1980) (finding impairment for technical proposals because release “would induce potential bidders to submit proposals that do not include novel ideas”). But see *McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. NASA*, 981 F. Supp. 12 (D.D.C. 1997) (no impairment because “[g]overnment contracting involves millions of dollars and it is unlikely that release of this information will cause [agency] difficulty in obtaining future bids”), rev’d on other grounds, 180 F.3d 303 (D.C. Cir. 1999); *Racal-Milgo Gov’t Sys. v. SBA*, 559 F. Supp. 4 (D.D.C. 1981) (“It is unlikely that companies will stop competing for Government contracts if the prices contracted for are disclosed.”).
 2. “Cause substantial harm to the competitive position of the person from whom the information was obtained.”
 - a) For examples of cases finding competitive harm, see *Gulf & Western Indus. v. United States*, 615 F.2d 527 (D.C. Cir. 1979) (actual costs, break even calculations, profits and profit rates); *National Parks*, supra (detailed financial information including company’s assets, liability and net worth); *RMS Indus. v. DOD*, No. C-92-1545 (N.D. Cal. Nov. 24, 1992) (technical and commercial data, names of consultants and subcontractors, performance cost and equipment information); see also *Gilmore v. United States Dep’t of Energy*, 4 F. Supp. 2d 912 (N.D. Cal. 1998) (software which had been licensed to third parties for as much as \$200,000.00). But see *Federal Funding Accountability and Responsibility Act of 2006*, Public Law 109-282 (Sept. 26, 2006) (requiring OMB to post on its Web site identities of all subcontractors on contracts over \$25,000).
 - b) For examples of cases finding no competitive harm, see *United Techs. v. DOD*, 601 F.3d 557 (D.C. Cir. 2010) (“calling attention to unfavorable agency evaluations . . . does not amount to ‘an affirmative use of proprietary information by competitors’”; “mere embarrassment in the marketplace or reputational injury” does not qualify); *GC Micro Corp. v. DLA*, 33 F.3d 1109 (9th Cir. 1994) (“percentage and dollar amount of work contracted out to SDB’s on each defense contract” is “made up of too many fluctuating variables”); *Pacific Architects & Eng’rs v. United States Dep’t of State*,

906 F.2d 1345 (9th Cir. 1990) (reverse FOIA) (unit prices); Hercules, Inc. v. Marsh, 839 F.2d 1027 (4th Cir. 1988) (simply no competition for Radford Army Ammunition Plant contract); The Boeing Co. v. U.S. Dep't of the Air Force, 616 F. 2d 40 (D.D.C. 2009) (reverse FOIA) (no competitive harm will be caused by disclosure of 4 prior years of unit prices because agency showed that labor rates -- the key "unknown" factor" "rose and fell from year to year" at uneven rates).

- C. "Confidential" test modified by Critical Mass Energy Project v. NRC, 975 F.2d 871 (D.C. Cir. 1992) (en banc).
1. For "required" submissions, apply National Parks.
 2. For "voluntary" submissions, determine whether information is "of a kind that would customarily not be released to the public by the person from whom it was obtained."
 3. Threshold determination as to whether information submission is "required."
 - a) Does agency possess legal authority to require information submission: statute, executive order, regulation, or "less formal mandate"?
 - b) Has agency exercised such authority?
 - c) Whether submitter's participation in agency program was voluntary is not the test.
 4. DOD and Department of Justice position is that information submitted pursuant to FAR, invitation for bid, or request for proposal is a "required" submission.
 5. For a sample of the variety of Critical Mass case law in the procurement context, see Frazee v. United States Forest Serv., 97 F.3d 367 (9th Cir. 1996) ("proposed operating plan" submitted in response to solicitation for offers not "voluntarily" submitted under Critical Mass) (dicta); McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. NASA, 981 F. Supp 12 (D.D.C. 1997) (contractor line item prices not "voluntarily" submitted under Critical Mass), reversed on other grounds, 180 F.3d 303 (D.C. Cir. 1999); see also Cortez III Serv. Corp. v. NASA, 921 F. Supp. 8 (D.D.C. 1996) (negotiated G&A rate ceilings, not required in solicitation but merely requested by contracting officer held

“voluntarily submitted under Critical Mass), appeal dismissed voluntarily, No. 96-5163 (D.C. Cir. July 3, 1996).

- D. Determining whether business information is exempt: Notice to submitter; Executive Order 12,600, July 23, 1987; 32 C.F.R. § 286.23(h) (DOD FOIA Regulation); importance of developing administrative record to support decision to release information.
1. Reverse-FOIA suit.
 2. Review of agency action under Administrative Procedure Act limited to administrative record. See, e.g., *Acumenics Research & Technology v. Dept. of Justice*, 843 F.2d 800 (4th Cir. 1988). For an example of proposed disclosure being held arbitrary and capricious based on an insufficient agency record, see *McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. NASA*, No. 91-3134 (D.D.C. Jan. 24, 1993) (bench order).
 3. Does Trade Secrets Act, 18 U.S.C. § 1905, limit the agency’s ability to disclose business information under the FOIA as a matter of discretion?
 - a) Trade Secrets Act applies broadly to virtually all business information and prohibits agency disclosures except as “authorized by law.”
 - b) FOIA provides “authorization” to disclose business information only if nonexempt. *CNA Fin. Corp. v. Donovan*, 830 F.2d 1132 (D.C. Cir. 1987) (Trade Secrets Act and Exemption 4 held to be coextensive).
 4. The issue of unit prices.
 - a) Compare *Canadian Commercial Corp. v. Dep’t of the Air Force*, 514 F.3d 37 (D.C. Cir. 2008) (unit prices protected), *McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. Dep’t of the Air Force*, 375 F.3d 1182 (D.C. Cir. 2004) (two unit price categories protected, one disclosed), and *McDonnell Douglas Corp. v. NASA*, 180 F.3d 303 (D.C. Cir. 1999), (unit prices protected), with *Pacific Architects & Eng’rs, Inc. v. Dep’t of State*, 906 F.2d 1345 (9th Cir. 1990) (unit prices disclosed), and *Acumenics Research and Technology v. Dep’t of Justice*, 843 F.2d 800 (4th Cir. 1988) (same).
 - b) Tactical issues.

- (1) “[R]easonable” period of time to respond -- 32 C.F.R. § 286.23(h) (30 calendar days under DOD regulation); 32 C.F.R. 518.16(l) (14 calendar days under Army regulation).
 - (2) “[C]ummulative opportunities to submit justifications and to refute agency decisions” not required. *McDonnell Douglas v. NASA*, 895 F. Supp. 319 (D.D.C. 1995), vacated as moot, No. 95-5288 (D.C. Cir. Apr. 1, 1996).
 - (3) Stipulate only to entry of TRO, not to preliminary injunction. Cf. *Clearbrook, L.L.C. v. Ovall*, No. 06-0629, 2006 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 81244 (S.D. Ala. Nov. 3, 2006), dismissed with prejudice per stipulation (S.D. Ala. Nov. 22, 2006).
- c) See Department of Justice guidance on “Treatment of Unit Prices After *McDonnell Douglas v. Air Force*” at <http://www.justice.gov/oip/foiapost/2005foiapost17.htm>

VII. EXEMPTION 5 -- INTER OR INTRA-AGENCY DOCUMENTS ROUTINELY PRIVILEGED IN CIVIL DISCOVERY

- A. Deliberative process privilege.
 1. Records must be predecisional and deliberative. See, e.g., *Jowett, Inc. v. Dep’t of the Navy*, 729 F. Supp. 871 (D.D.C. 1989) (protecting audit reports prepared by entity lacking final decisionmaking authority); see also *SMS Data Prods. Group, Inc. v. U.S. Dep’t of the Air Force*, No. 88-481, 1989 WL 201031 (D.D.C. Mar. 31, 1989) (holding technical scores and technical ranking of competing contract bidders predecisional and deliberative).
 2. Note, however, that 48 C.F.R. § 15.506 (2010) now requires debriefing of offerors to include certain information that would otherwise be protected by the deliberative privilege.
- B. Attorney-client privilege. *Mead Data Cent., Inc. v. Dep’t of the Air Force*, 566 F.2d 242 (D.C. Cir. 1977).
- C. Agency commercial information. *Morrison-Knudsen Co. v. Dep’t of the Army*, 595 F. Supp. 325 (D.D.C. 1984) (agency’s background documents used

to calculate its bid in “contracting out” procedure), aff’d 762 F.2d 138 (D.C. Cir. 1985) (table cite); *Hack v. Dep’t of Energy*, 538 F. Supp. 1098 (D.D.C. 1992) (inter-agency cost estimates prepared for the use of the agency in evaluating construction proposals submitted by private contractors).

VIII. EXEMPTION 6 -- PERSONAL PRIVACY

- A. Resumes of proposed professional staff to be utilized by government contractor protected. *Professional Review Org. v. HHS*, 607 F. Supp. 423 (D.D.C. 1985).
- B. Identities of contractor’s employees required to be submitted under Davis-Bacon Act protected, but nonidentifying information required to be disclosed. *Sheet Metal Workers Int’l Ass’n, Local Union No. 19 v. VA*, 135 F. 3d 891 (3d Cir. 1998) (citing identical holdings by 2d, 9th, 10th, and D.C. Circuit Courts of Appeals).

IX. EXEMPTION 7(A) -- RECORDS COMPILED FOR LAW ENFORCEMENT PURPOSES, THE DISCLOSURE OF WHICH COULD REASONABLY BE EXPECTED TO INTERFERE WITH ENFORCEMENT PROCEEDINGS.

John Doe Agency v. John Doe Corp., 493 U.S. 146 (1989) (protecting periodic audits which were subsequently “recompiled” into a pending criminal investigation).

X. EXEMPTION 7(F) -- RECORDS COMPILED FOR LAW ENFORCEMENT PURPOSES, THE DISCLOSURE OF WHICH COULD REASONABLY BE EXPECTED TO ENDANGER THE LIFE OR PHYSICAL SAFETY OF ANY INDIVIDUAL.

L.A. Times Commc’ns, LLC v. Dep’t of the Army, 442 F. Supp. 2d 880 (C.D. Cal. 2006) (protecting names of companies providing security services in Iraq which, together with other information insurgents have, could enable them to organize attacks on vulnerable companies or the projects they protect).

XI. CONCLUSION

ATTACHMENT A -- 10 U.S.C. § 2305

Armed Services Acquisitions -- Section 2305 of Title 10, United States Code, is amended by adding the following new subsection:

- “(g) PROHIBITION ON RELEASE OF CONTRACTOR PROPOSALS –
- (1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), a proposal in the possession or control of an agency named in section 2303 of this title may not be made available to any person under section 552 of Title 5.
 - (2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any proposal that is set forth or incorporated by reference in a contract entered into between the Department and the contractor that submitted the proposal.
 - (3) In this subsection, the term ‘proposal’ means any proposal, including a technical, management, or cost proposal, submitted by a contractor in response to the requirements of a solicitation for a competitive proposal.”

ATTACHMENT B -- 41 U.S.C. § 253B

Civilian Agency Acquisitions. Section 303B of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 (41 U.S.C. § 253b) is amended by adding the following new subsection:

- “(m) PROHIBITION ON RELEASE OF CONTRACTOR PROPOSALS –
- (1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), a proposal in the possession or control of an executive agency may not be made available to any person under section 552 of Title 5.
 - (2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any proposal that is set forth or incorporated by reference in a contract entered into between the agency and the contractor that submitted the proposal.
 - (3) In this subsection, the term ‘proposal’ means any proposal, including a technical, management, or cost proposal, submitted by a contractor in response to the requirements of a solicitation for a competitive proposal.”

ATTACHMENT C

SAMPLE LETTER TO CONTRACTOR UPON RECEIPT OF A FOIA REQUEST

The Army has received the attached Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for Contract # XX-XXXX for the [e.g., on site maintenance of Government Owned ADPE Equipment]. I am attaching a copy of that contract. Our review of the contract reveals that certain data in the contract may be protected under Exemption 4 of the FOIA, 5 U.S.C. § 552(b)(4).

Under this exemption the Army may refuse to disclose trade secrets and commercial or financial information obtained from a source outside the Government and which is privileged or confidential. Commercial or financial information is considered confidential if its disclosure is likely to cause substantial competitive harm to the source of the information.

In order for the Army to make a determination to protect any or all information in the contract under Exemption 4, we must have a detailed justification of all reasons you believe the information requested should not be released under Exemption 4 of the FOIA. We believe that you are a good position to explain the commercial sensitivity of the privileged or confidential information in your contract.

If you believe that disclosure of any information in the contract would be likely to cause substantial competitive harm to your company's present or future competitive position, please provide this office with a specific description of the type and degree of how that harm would occur to each such item of information. Due to the response time limits imposed on the Government in these cases, we require that you provide your final response to this office by _____ [14/30 calendar days from the date of this letter]. If we have not heard from you by that date we will assume that your company has no objection to disclosure of the contract in its entirety.

We will carefully consider any justification you provide us and will endeavor to protect your proprietary data to the extent permitted under law. Should we disagree with your position regarding any or all of the information requested and determine that it must be released, we will provide you with advance notice of our decision so that you may take whatever steps you consider appropriate to protect your interests.

Chapter 28
Procurement Fraud



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 28

PROCUREMENT FRAUD

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| II. | IDENTIFYING FRAUD. | 2 |
| | A. Fraud Before Contract Award: | 2 |
| | B. Fraud After Contract Award:..... | 6 |
| III. | REPORTING FRAUD. | 7 |
| | A. <i>Stop Everything Upon Uncovering Fraud</i> | 7 |
| | B. Government Reporting | 7 |
| | C. Contractor “Mandatory Disclosure” Reporting..... | 9 |
| IV. | COMBATTING FRAUD: COORDINATING THE FOUR REMEDIES. | 11 |
| | A. The Four Government Remedies..... | 11 |
| | B. The Government Fraud Fighters | 11 |
| | C. DOJ Fraud Policy.. .. | 12 |
| | D. DOD Fraud Policy..... | 12 |
| | E. Service Policies: | 12 |
| V. | CRIMINAL REMEDIES. | 13 |
| | A. Conspiracy to Defraud, 18 U.S.C. §286 (with claims) and 18 U.S.C. §371 (in general). | 13 |
| | B. Criminal False Claims, 18 U.S.C. §287. | 13 |
| | C. False Statements. 18 U.S.C. §1001. | 14 |
| | D. Mail Fraud and Wire Fraud, 18 U.S.C. §§1341-1343. | 14 |
| | E. Major Fraud Act, 18 U.S.C. §1031. | 15 |
| | F. Bid Rigging, 15 U.S.C. §1..... | 16 |
| | G. Title 10 (UCMJ) Violations..... | 16 |
| VI. | CIVIL REMEDIES..... | 16 |

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----------|
| A. | The Civil False Claims Act. 31 U.S.C. §3729-3733 (1988)..... | 16 |
| B. | Liability Under the False Claims Act. | 17 |
| C. | Damages. | 18 |
| D. | Civil Penalties..... | 19 |
| E. | The “Qui Tam” Provisions of the Civil False Claims Act.. | 20 |
| VII. | ADMINISTRATIVE REMEDIES. | 21 |
| A. | Debarment and Suspension Basics. 10 U.S.C. §2393; FAR Subpart 9.4..... | 21 |
| B. | Debarment. Causes for debarment. FAR 9.406-2. DFARS 209.406-2. | 22 |
| C. | Suspension. Causes for suspension. FAR 9.407-2. | 24 |
| D. | Effect of Debarment or Suspension. FAR 9.405; DFARS 209.405..... | 25 |
| E. | Period of Debarment. FAR 9.406-4. | 26 |
| F. | Period of Suspension. FAR 9.407-4..... | 27 |
| VIII. | CONTRACT REMEDIES. | 27 |
| A. | Historical Right. | 27 |
| B. | Contracting Officer Authority. | 28 |
| C. | Denial of Claims..... | 29 |
| D. | Counterclaims Under the CDA | 30 |
| E. | Default Terminations Based on Fraud..... | 30 |
| F. | Voiding Contracts Pursuant to FAR 3.7..... | 31 |
| G. | Suspending Payments Upon a Finding of Fraud, FAR 32.006. | 32 |
| H. | Voiding Contracts Pursuant to the Gratuities Clause, FAR 52.203-3..... | 32 |
| IX. | BOARDS OF CONTRACT APPEAL’S TREATMENT OF FRAUD..... | 33 |
| A. | Jurisdiction. | 33 |
| B. | Dismissals, Suspensions and Stays..... | 33 |
| C. | Fraud as an Affirmative Defense..... | 34 |

X. CONCLUSION. 34

CHAPTER 28

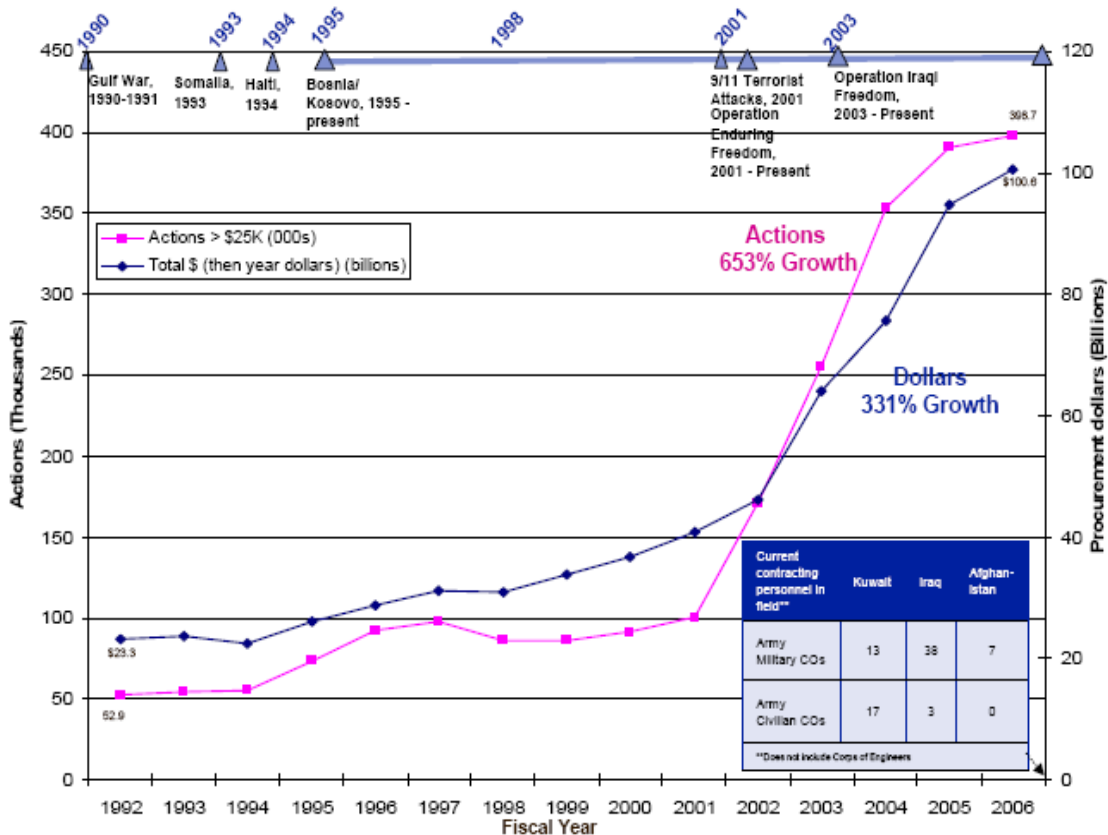
PROCUREMENT FRAUD

I. INTRODUCTION.

- A. “At this critical time when our national defense, homeland security, and other government resources are most precious, criminals who cheat the government must be identified, stopped and punished. *The sheer size of procurement operations may embolden some criminals.* It is imperative that we take action to deter and prosecute unscrupulous government contractors whose theft of critically needed resources threatens America’s safety and defense, as well as government employees who abuse the public trust to assist these contractors and enrich themselves.” Combating Procurement Fraud: A National Initiative to Increase Prevention and Prosecution of Fraud in the Federal Procurement Process, Dept of Justice White Paper, Oct. 10, 2006, available at <http://www.usdoj.gov/criminal/npftf/pr/speeches/2006/oct/10-10-06npftfinitiative.pdf>.
- B. “The United States does not stand on the same footing as an individual in a suit to annul a deed or lease obtained from him by fraud. . . . The financial element in the transaction is not the sole or principle thing involved. This suit was brought to vindicate the policy of the Government. . . . The petitioners stand as wrongdoers, and no equity arises in their favor to prevent granting the relief sought by the United States.” Pan Am. Petroleum and Transp. v. United States, 273 U.S. 456, 509 (1927).
- C. Fraud is defined as “[a]n intentional perversion of truth for the purpose of inducing another in reliance upon it to part with some valuable thing belonging to him or to surrender a legal right. A false representation of a matter of fact, whether by words or by conduct, by false or misleading allegations, or by concealment of that which should have been disclosed, which deceives and is intended to deceive another so that he shall act upon it to his legal injury.” Black’s Law Dictionary.
- D. Since 1990, there has been a substantial increase in the number, size, and complexity of government procurements.¹ During the same time period, there has been a sharp decrease in the government’s acquisition workforce (in the

¹ Urgent Reform Required: Army Expeditionary Contracting, Report of the Commission on Army Acquisition and Program Management in Expeditionary Operations, 31 (October 31, 2007) [hereinafter, The Gansler Commission Report].

Army, from 10,000 to 5,500).² The predictable result has been a decrease in procurement oversight, which has led to increased instances of procurement fraud.



Source: Contract Data – Federal Procurement Data System

*The chart above reproduced from The Gansler Commission Report.³

E. The term “Procurement Fraud” encompasses a variety of actions by perpetrators to pervert the truth in regards to federal procurements, in order to attain something of value. Therefore, when speaking of different instances of procurement fraud you are more likely to hear the crimes referred to as a specific type of fraud rather than the more generic “procurement fraud.”

II. IDENTIFYING FRAUD.

A. Fraud Before Contract Award: These types of fraud may occur prior to contract award. More than one type of fraud, however, may be present in one

² *Id.*

³ *Id.*

case, and at any time within the same acquisition. This is not an all-inclusive list.⁴

1. Bribery, Public Corruption, and Conflicts of Interest:

- a) The breach of an employee's duty of loyalty. See, e.g., United States v. Carter, 217 U.S. 286 (1910); United States v. Brewster, 408 U.S. 501 (1972). In these types of fraud, government employees collude with one or more contractors to effectuate the fraud. The breach of the government employee's duty of confidentiality may occur as a result of a direct *quid pro quo* bribe, or an indirect conflict of interest.
- b) Possible indicators of Bribery, Public Corruption, and Conflicts of Interest include:
 - (1) Unjustified favorable treatment to a contractor.
 - (2) Acceptance of low quality goods, nonconformance to contract specifications, and/or unjustifiably late delivery of goods or services.
 - (3) An unusually high volume of purchases from the same contractor or set of contractors.
 - (4) Procurement officials fail to file financial disclosure forms (this may occur when a procurement official remains directly involved in a procurement in which he/she has a substantial financial stake in).
 - (5) Procurement official has family members who are employed by contractors which were awarded a government contract.
 - (6) Purchasing unnecessary or inappropriate goods or services.

2. Bid-Rigging:

⁴ See AR 27-40, Chapter 8 (For additional possible indicators of fraud, the Army's Indicators of Fraud are laid out in AR-27-40, figure 8-1); see also Handbook on Fraud Indicators for Contractor Auditors, available at <http://www.dodig.mil/PUBS/igdh7600.pdf>; see also further guidance on fraud indicators in procurement on DODIG website at <http://www.dodig.mil/Inspections/APO/fraud/Index.htm>.

- a) Occurs when contractors attempt to manipulate the procurement system to circumvent the competition between contractors that would result in the lowest overall cost to the government for the respective acquisition. The absence of competition deprives the government of its most reliable measure of what the price should have been. Under the Sherman Act “[e]very contract, combination in the form of trust or otherwise, or conspiracy, in restraint of trade of commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, is declared to be illegal.” The measure of damages is “the difference between what the government actually paid on the fraudulent claim and what it would have paid had there been fair, open and competitive bidding.” United States v. Killough, 848 F.2d 1523, 1532 (11th Cir. 1988); see also Brown v. United States, 524 F.2d 693, 706 (1975); United States v. Porat, 17 F.3d 660 (3rd Cir. 1993).
- b) Possible indicators of Bid Rigging include:
- (1) The winning bid price seems to be much higher than the independent government estimate (IGE) or industry averages.
 - (2) There is a pattern of winning bidders.
 - (3) The losing bidder(s) typically become the subcontractor of the winning bidder.
 - (4) The solicitations and/or specifications are written in an overly restrictive way (ie., only one contractor could possibly provide the desired product).

3. Defective Pricing:

- a) The Truth in Negotiations Act (“TINA”), 10 U.S.C. § 2306a, together with its implementing regulations, 48 C.F.R. § 15.8 et seq. (“Price Negotiation”), requires contractors in certain negotiated procurements to disclose and certify that disclosed details concerning expected costs (“cost or pricing data” or “other than cost or pricing data”) are accurate, current and complete (see Cost and Pricing Chapter, Contract Attorneys Course Deskbook available at [TJAGLCS Publications](#), [TJAGLCS Webpage](#)). Defective Pricing arises when those certified details of expected costs are inaccurate or incomplete.

A perceived or actual violation of TINA may serve as the predicate for a fraud investigation and civil or criminal prosecution by the Government. United States v. Broderson, 67 F. 3d 452 (2d Cir. 1995).

b) Possible indicators of Defective Pricing include:

- (1) Unrealistic cost estimates.
- (2) Incomplete cost estimates.

4. Fraudulent Sole Sourcing:

a) Occurs when procurement officials collude with a contractor to unjustifiably direct a contract to a contractor without “full and open” competition (and at a higher price than the government would have paid if the requirement was properly competed). FAR Subpart 6.2 (Full and Open After Exclusion of Sources) and FAR Subpart 6.3 (Other Than Full and Open Competition) provide the limited situations in which contracts may be awarded without full and open competition.

b) Possible indicators of Fraudulent Sole Sourcing include:

- (1) Specifications so tailored that it appears as if only one contractor could satisfy the requirement.
- (2) The required J&A (Justification and Approval) to approve the sole source acquisition is vague and/or incomplete.
- (3) The required J&A (Justification and Approval) to approve the sole source acquisition is just below a threshold that would require the J&A to be approved by a higher-level procurement official. The J&A for a sole source acquisition whose price is \$650,000 or less, for example, requires the approval of the KO, while those higher than \$650,000 require the approval of the Competition Advocate, the head of the procuring activity, or the senior procurement executive of the agency. *See FAR 6.304.*

- (4) Previously, the requirement being sole-sourced was successfully procured with full and open competition.
- (5) One purchase is unjustifiably split into multiple purchases simply to avoid competition (ie., using simplified acquisition procedures).

B. Fraud After Contract Award: These types of fraud may occur after the contract award. This is not an all-inclusive list.

1. Product Substitution/Defective Product/Defective Testing:

- a) Product substitution is “delivery to the government of a product that does not meet the contract requirements.” Nash, Schooner, O’Brien-DeBakey, Edwards, The Government Contracts Reference Book, 3rd Edition; The George Washington University, 2007. These terms generally refer to situations where contractors deliver to the Government goods that do not conform to contract requirements without informing the Government. United States v. Hoffman, 62 F. 3d 1418 (6th Cir. 1995).
- b) Defective Products and Defective Testing cases are a subset of Product Substitution that occur as a result of the failure of a contractor to perform contractually required tests, or its failure to perform such testing in the manner required by the contract. Often, government officials (KOs, CORs) do not identify defective products at the time of acceptance due to high volumes of goods or services.
- c) Possible indicators of product substitution include:
 - (1) Delivery of look-alike goods made from non-specification materials.
 - (2) Non-testing or defective testing of materials as required by the contract specifications.
 - (3) Goods that appear to be used when the government contract specify that new goods should be delivered.
 - (4) Missing source documentation.

- (5) Source information on the shipping materials containing the product and/or the actual products identification information consistently removed.

2. False Invoices.

- a) May occur when the contractor submits false invoices and/or claims requesting government payment of goods and/or services that were not delivered to the government. Shaw v. AAA Engineering & Drafting, Inc., 213 F.3d 545 (10th Cir. 2000) (Monthly invoices submitted when the contractor was knowingly not complying with contract terms can be the basis of False Claims Act liability. A claimant can premise a claim on a “false implied certification of contractual compliance.”) False invoices may also occur when a contractor delivers goods but the invoices are inflated (e.g., inflated cost invoices in a cost-reimbursement contract).
- b) Possible indicators of False Invoices include:
 - (1) Copied or inappropriately altered supporting documentation (ie, white-outs).
 - (2) Payment invoice exceeds contract amount.
 - (3) Invoiced goods cannot be located.
 - (4) Missing or copied receiving documents.

III. REPORTING FRAUD.

- A. Stop Everything Upon Uncovering Fraud: Upon uncovering substantial indications of procurement fraud, STOP EVERYTHING related to that procurement until the allegations of fraud are properly investigated and resolved. Of note, 41 U.S.C. §[605\(a\)](#), as implemented by FAR 33.210(b), prohibits any contracting officer or agency head from settling, paying, compromising or otherwise adjusting any claim involving fraud.
- B. Government Reporting: Upon receiving or uncovering substantial indications of procurement fraud, the Procurement Fraud Advisor (PFA), usually a contracts attorney in the respective installation or deployed Area Of Responsibility (AOR), will need to report the suspected fraud to the appropriate authorities. Prior to submitting any official reports, the PFA

should first consult with the Procurement Fraud Branch (PFB) at the Contracts and Fiscal Law Division, USALSA. After consulting with the PFB, the PFA should take the following actions:

1. Report the matter promptly to their supporting Army Criminal Investigation Command (USACIDC) element.
2. Submit a “Procurement Flash Report” to PFB. The flash report should contain the following information:
 - a) Name and address of contractor;
 - b) Known subsidiaries of parent firms;
 - c) Contracts involved in potential fraud;
 - d) Nature of the potential fraud;
 - e) Summary of the pertinent facts; and
 - f) Possible damages.
3. FAR Subsection 9.406-3. Submit an investigative-referral report.
4. Remedies Plan. Prepare a comprehensive remedies plan. The remedies plan should include the following:
 - a) Summary of allegations;
 - b) Statement of adverse impact on DOD mission;
 - c) Statement of impact upon combat readiness and safety of DA personnel; and
 - d) Consideration of each criminal, civil, contractual, and administrative remedy available.
5. Litigation Report. Consult PFB to determine if a litigation report is necessary.

- C. Contractor “Mandatory Disclosure” Reporting: The FAR *requires* contractors to disclose “credible evidence” of criminal and/or civil fraud. Prior to 2008, there was a *voluntary* reporting regime.
1. Contractor Disclosure to Avoid Suspension or Debarment (FAR 3.1003(a)(2) and (3)): This requirement applies to all contractors and subcontractors, in all current and future government contracts *and remains a cause of action* for suspension and/or debarment until 3 years after final payment on a contract.
 - a) FAR 3.1003(a)(2): A contractor may be suspended and/or debarred if a “principal”⁵ of the contractor knowingly fails to timely disclose to the Government (in connection with the award, performance, or closeout of a Government contract, *performed by the contractor or one of their subcontractors*) credible evidence of:
 - (1) a violation of federal criminal law involving fraud, conflict of interest, bribery, or gratuity violations of Title 18, US Code; or
 - (2) a violation of the Civil False Claims Act (31 USC 3729-3733).
 - b) Violations of FAR 3.1003(a)(2) remain a cause for suspension and/or debarment for three (3) years *after* the final payment on a contract.
 - c) FAR 3.1003(a)(3): A contractor may be suspended and/or debarred if a principal of the contractor knowingly fails to timely disclose to the Government (in connection with the award, performance, or closeout of a Government contract, *performed by the contractor or one of their subcontractors*) credible evidence of significant overpayments of a contract.
 2. Contractor Disclosure Required for All Contractors by Contract Clause (FAR 52.203-13(b)(3)):⁶ This requirement applies to all contractors and subcontractors, in all current and future government contracts. The contractor shall timely disclose, in writing, to the agency Inspector

⁵ FAR 2.101, Definitions (“Principal” means an officer, director, owner, partner, or a person having primary management or supervisory responsibilities within a business entity).

⁶ FAR 52.203-13(b)(2) also requires all contractors to have a written code of business ethics and conduct, and to make a copy of the code available to each employee engaged in the performance of the government contract.

General (with a CC to the KO), credible evidence that a principal, employee, agent, or subcontractor has committed:

- a) a violation of federal criminal law involving fraud, conflict of interest, bribery, or gratuity violations of Title 18, US Code; or
- b) a violation of the Civil False Claims Act (31 USC 3729-3733).

3. Contractor Disclosure Required by the Business Ethics Awareness and Compliance Program's Internal Control System (FAR 52.203-13(c)). FAR 52.203-13 shall be inserted in all contracts that exceed \$5,000,000 and the period of performance is 120 days or more.⁷

- a) FAR 52.203-13(b) requires the contractor to:
 - (1) within 30 days of contract award, have a written business code of ethics; and
 - (2) make available this code of ethics to each employee engaged in the performance of the contract.
- b) FAR 52.203-13(c) requires contractors, who are not recognized small businesses pursuant to an award, or who are not performing a contract for the acquisition of a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101, to within 90 days of award, establish:
 - (1) an ongoing Business Ethics Awareness and Compliance Program that periodically trains the contractor's principals, employees, and if appropriate, its agents and subcontractors, on the standards and procedures of the contractor's business ethics awareness and compliance program; and
 - (2) an Internal Control System that facilitates the timely discovery of improper conduct related to the contractor's Government contracts, ensures the corrective measures are promptly instituted and carried out. Among other minimum requirements, the Internal Control System must provide for the timely disclosure, in writing, to the agency Inspector General (with a CC to the respective KO), whenever the contractor has

⁷ FAR 52.203-13(d) requires that contractors incorporate the provisions of FAR 52.203-13 in all subcontracts that have a value of more than \$5 million and a period of performance of more than 120 days.

“credible evidence” that a principal, employee, agent, or a subcontractor has committed:

- (a) a violation of federal criminal law involving fraud, conflict of interest, bribery, or gratuity violations of Title 18, US Code; or
- (b) a violation of the Civil False Claims Act (31 USC 3729-3733).
- c) May 2011 amendment to FAR 42.302, Contract Administration Functions, requires contract administrators to ensure that contractors are complying with the requirements of FAR 52.203-13.

IV. COMBATTING FRAUD: COORDINATING THE FOUR REMEDIES.

- A. The Four Government Remedies. There are four general types of remedies available to the government in response to fraud. These four types of remedies are: criminal remedies, civil remedies, administrative remedies and contract remedies. Prior to taking any action in response to fraud, the government must determine what their response strategy will be, because action in one remedy type may limit action in other remedy types. The DOJ will be the lead agency when the government pursues criminal and civil remedies, while the affected agency will be the lead when pursuing administrative and contract remedies.
- B. The Government Fraud Fighters:
 - 1. DOD Inspector General. Inspector General Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95-452, as amended by Pub. L. No. 97-252; [DOD Dir 5106.1](#). Inspector General of Department of Defense (Apr. 13, 2006).
 - 2. Military Criminal Investigative Organizations. (CID, NCIS, DCIS)
 - 3. Department of Justice. DOD Dir. [55250.7](#), Implementation of the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) Between the Departments of Justice (DOJ) and Defense Relating to the Investigation and Prosecution of Certain Crimes (Jun. 18, 2007).
 - 4. PFB of the Contract and Fiscal Law Division,(Formerly the Procurement Fraud Division (PFD)), United States Army Legal

Services Agency. AR 27-40, Litigation, Ch. 8. Procurement Fraud Advisors (PFA) (subordinate commands) - ensure that commanders and contracting officers pursue, in a timely manner, all applicable criminal, civil, contractual, and administrative remedies.

- C. DOJ Fraud Policy. *DOJ policy requires the coordination of parallel criminal, civil, and administrative proceedings* so as to maximize the government's ability to obtain favorable results in cases involving procurement fraud. See [U.S. Dep't of Justice, U.S. Atty's Man. ch. 1-12.000](#) (Coordination of Parallel Criminal, Civil, and Administrative Proceedings) June 1998.

- D. DOD Fraud Policy. *DOD policy requires the coordinated use of criminal, civil, administrative, and contractual remedies* in suspected cases involving procurement fraud. See U.S. Dept of Defense, Instr. 7070.5., Coordination of Remedies for Fraud and Corruption Related to Procurement Activities (4 June 2008). This policy is further explained in individual service regulations.
 - 1. DOD policy requires each department to establish a centralized organization to monitor all significant fraud and corruption cases.
 - 2. Definition of a "significant" case.
 - a) All fraud cases involving an alleged loss of \$500,000 or more.
 - b) All corruption cases that involve bribery, gratuities, or conflicts of interest.
 - c) All investigations into defective products, non-conforming products, or product substitution in which a serious hazard to health, safety, or operational readiness is indicated (regardless of loss value).
 - 3. Each centralized organization monitors all significant cases to ensure that all proper and effective criminal, civil, administrative, and contractual remedies are considered and pursued in a timely manner.
 - 4. Product Substitution/Defective Product cases receive special attention.
 - 5. DOD Voluntary Disclosure Program. DOD IG Pamphlet IGDPH 5505.50, Voluntary Disclosure Program—A Description of the Process (April. 1990).

- E. Service Policies:

1. Army Policy: Found in [U.S. Dep't of Army Reg. 27-40](#), Litigation, 19 Sept. 1994 (under revision).
2. [U.S. Dep't of Air Force, Inst. 51-1101](#), The Air Force Procurement Fraud Remedies Program, 21 Oct. 2003 (under revision);
3. Navy Policy: Found in [SECNAVINST. 5430.92B](#), Assignment of Responsibilities to Counteract Fraud, Waste, and Related Improprieties within the Department of the Navy, (30 Dec. 2005).

V. CRIMINAL REMEDIES.

- A. Conspiracy to Defraud, 18 U.S.C. §286 (with claims) and 18 U.S.C. §371 (in general). The general elements of a conspiracy under either statute include:
 1. Knowing agreement by two or more persons which has as its object the commission of a criminal offense, or to defraud the United States; [United States v. Upton](#), 91 F.3rd 677 (5th Cir. 1996);
 2. Intentional and actual participation in the conspiracy; and
 3. Performance by one or more of the conspirators of an overt act in furtherance of the unlawful goal. [United States v. Falcone](#), 311 U.S. 205, 210-211 (1940); [United States v. Richmond](#), 700 U.S. 1183, 1190 (8th Cir. 1983).
- B. Criminal False Claims, 18 U.S.C. §287.
 1. The elements required for a conviction under Section 287 include:
 - a) Proof of a claim for money or property, which is false, fictitious, or fraudulent and material.
 - b) Made or presented against a department or agency of the United States; and
 - c) Submitted with a specific intent to violate the law or with a consciousness of wrongdoing, i.e., the person must know at the time that the claim is false, fictitious, or fraudulent. See generally [United States v. Slocum](#), 708 F.2d 587, 596 (11th Cir. 1983) (citing [United States v. Computer Sciences Corp.](#), 511 F. Supp. 1125, 1134 (E.D. Va. 1981), rev'd on other grounds, 689

F.2d 1181 (4th Cir. 1981)) (false indemnity claims made to USDA).

2. It is of no significance to a prosecution under section 287 that the claim was not paid. United States v. Coachman, 727 F.2d 1293, 1302 (D.C. Cir.), cert. denied, 419 U.S. 1047 (1984).

C. False Statements. 18 U.S.C. §1001.

1. The elements include proof that:

- a) The defendant made a statement or submitted a false entry. “Statement” has been interpreted to include oral and unsworn statements. United States v. Massey, 550 F.2d 300 (5th Cir.), on remand, 437 F. Supp. 843 (M.D. Fla. 1977).
- b) The statement was false.
- c) The statement concerned a matter within the jurisdiction of a federal department or agency.
- d) The government also must prove that a statement was “material.” The test of materiality is whether the natural and probable tendency of the statement would be to affect or influence governmental action. United States v. Lichenstein, 610 F.2d 1272, 1278 (5th Cir. 1980); United States v. Randazzo, 80 F. 3d 623, 630 (1st Cir. 1996); United States ex. Rel. Berge v. Board of Trustees University of Alabama, 104 F.3d 1453 (4th Cir. 1997).
- e) Intent.
 - (1) The required intent has been defined as “the intent to deprive someone of something by means of deceit.” United States v. Lichenstein, 610 F.2d 1272, 1277 (5th Cir. 1980).
 - (2) A false statement must be knowingly made and willfully submitted. United States v. Guzman, 781 F.2d 428, (5th Cir. 1986).

D. Mail Fraud and Wire Fraud, 18 U.S.C. §§1341-1343.

1. The essence of the mail fraud and wire fraud statutes is the use of mails or wire communications to execute a scheme to defraud the United States. Both statutes are broadly worded to prohibit the use of the mails or interstate telecommunications systems to further such schemes.
 2. The elements of the two offenses are similar. Because the elements are similar, the cases interpreting the more recent wire fraud statute rely on the precedents interpreting mail fraud. See, e.g., United States v. Cusino, 694 F.2d 185 (9th Cir. 1982), cert. denied, 461 U.S. 932 (1983); United States v. Merlinger, 16 F. 3rd 670 (6th Cir. 1994). They include:
 - a) Formation of a scheme and artifice to defraud.
 - b) Use of either the mails or interstate wire transmissions in furtherance of the scheme. See United States v. Pinar, 630 F.2d 1270, 1280 (8th Cir. 1980) (mail fraud); United States v. Wise, 553 F.2d 1173 (8th Cir. 1977) (wire fraud).
- E. Major Fraud Act, 18 U.S.C. §1031.
1. The Act created a new criminal offense of “major fraud” against the United States. It is designed to deter major defense contractors from committing procurement fraud by imposing stiffer penalties and significantly higher fines.
 2. Maximum Punishments: ten years confinement; fines are determined on a sliding scale based on certain aggravating factors. Basic Offense: \$1,000,000 per count. Government loss or contractor gain of \$500,000 or more: \$5,000,000. Conscious or reckless risk of serious personal injury: \$5,000,000. Multiple counts: \$10,000,000 per prosecution.
 3. Elements:
 - a) Knowingly engaging in any scheme with intent to defraud the U.S. or to obtain money by false or fraudulent pretenses;
 - b) On a U.S. contract; and
 - c) Valued at \$1,000,000 or more. United States v. Brooks, 111 F.3d 365 (4th Cir. 1997). But see United States v. Nadi, 996

F.2d 548 (2nd Cir. 1993); United States v. Sain, 141 F.3d 463 (Fed. Cir. 1998).

F. Bid Rigging, 15 U.S.C. §1

1. Every contract, combination in the form of trust or otherwise, or conspiracy, in restraint of trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, is hereby declared to be illegal.
2. Maximum Penalty. Fine not exceeding \$ 100,000,000 if a corporation, or, if any other person, \$ 1,000,000, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 years, or by both said punishments, in the discretion of the court.
3. Elements.
 - a) Agreement;
 - b) Not to Bid, or
 - c) To Submit a Sham Bid, or
 - d) To Allocate Bids;
 - e) Between two or more independent, horizontal entities;
 - f) Affecting interstate or foreign commerce

G. Title 10 (UCMJ) Violations. Besides Article 132 – Frauds Against the U.S., there are various specific criminal charges that could apply to Servicemembers involved in fraud, including (but not limited to): Article 92 - Failure to Obey Order or Regulation, Article 98 - Noncompliance with Procedural Rules, Article 107 – False Official Statements, Article 121 – Larceny and Wrongful Appropriation, Article 133 – Conduct Unbecoming an Officer and a Gentleman. If all else fails, the command can charge one of the enumerated Article 134 articles or fashion their own punitive article related to fraud.

VI. CIVIL REMEDIES.

A. The Civil False Claims Act. 31 U.S.C. §3729-3733 (1988).

1. Background.

2. 1986 Amendments.
 3. The primary litigation weapon for combating fraud is the Civil False Claims Act.
- B. Liability Under the False Claims Act.
1. In General. 31 U.S.C. §3729(a) imposes liability on any person (defined comprehensively to include corporations, companies, associations, partnerships . . . as well as individuals) who:
 - a) Knowingly presents, or causes to be presented, to an officer or employee of the United States government or a member of the Armed Forces of the United States, a false or fraudulent claim for payment or approval. United States v. Krizek, 111 F.3d 934 (D.C. 1997).
 - b) Knowingly makes, uses, or causes to be made or used, a false record or statement to conceal, avoid, or decrease an obligation to pay or transmit money or property to the United States.
 - c) Conspires to defraud the government by having a false or fraudulent claim allowed or paid.
 2. Source of funds used to pay. The funds at issue need not be the United States' own money from Congressional appropriations and drawn from the Treasury. Rather, it is enough if the money belongs to the United States. United States ex rel. DRC, Inc. v. Custer Battles, LLC, et. al., E.D. Va. No1:04cv199 (8 July 2005) (dismissing motion to dismiss qui tam suit and holding that False Claims Act applies to work in Iraq paid by the Coalition Provisional Authority but not to funds from the Development Fund for Iraq).
 3. *Allison Engine: Civil FCA Liability Requires intent to defraud the Government.*
 - a) a. Facts: In *Allison Engine*,⁸ the Allison Engine Company was a subcontractor to a Navy prime shipyard contractor for a contract to build destroyers. Allison Engine was subcontracted to build the destroyer generators. Allison Engine knowingly submitted false Certificates of Conformance (CoCs) to the prime asserting that the generators met all the required contract

⁸ *Allison Engine, et al. v. United States, ex rel. Sanders*, 553 U.S. 662 (2008).

specifications, even though they knew that the generators did not meet the required contract specifications. Allison Engine also submitted payment requests (claims) for the generators. The shipyards subsequently submitted payment claims to the KO with the fraudulent CoCs (unknown to the prime) provided by Allison Engine. The government only introduced the fraudulent claims and CoCs submitted by Allison Engine to the primes, but no evidence of the subsequent claims submitted to the government, or evidence of Allison Engine's intent to defraud the government (as opposed to an intent to defraud the primes).⁹

- b) Supreme Court Holding: The Court held that “it is insufficient for a plaintiff asserting a §3729(a)(2) claim to show merely that “[t]he false statement’s use . . . result[ed] in obtaining or getting payment or approval of the claim,” 471 F. 3d 610, 621 (CA6 2006) or that “government money was used to pay the false or fraudulent claim,” *id.*, at 622. Instead, a plaintiff asserting a §3729(a)(2) claim must prove that the defendant intended that the false record or statement be material to the Government’s decision to pay or approve the false claim. Similarly, a plaintiff asserting a claim under §3729(a)(3) must show that the conspirators agreed to make use of the false record or statement to achieve this end.”¹⁰ Therefore, the government must prove that a subcontractor intends to defraud the government when they submit false claims to a prime contractor, even though the claim will ultimately be paid for with government funds.

C. Damages.

1. Treble Damages are the substantive measure of liability. 31 U.S.C. §3729 (a); United States v. Peters, 110 F.3d 66 (8th Cir. 1997). Voluntary disclosures of the violation prior to the investigation, preclude the imposition of treble damages.
2. Different Scenarios.

⁹ United States ex rel. Sanders v. Allison Engine Co., 471 F.3d 610, 614 fn. 3 (6th Cir. 2006) (“Counsel for relators [the government] admitted at the hearing on the Rule 50(a) motion, ‘[W]e haven’t shown you Bath’s invoices to the United States, and we’re not going to show you those because they are totally irrelevant under the False Claims Act’”).

¹⁰ Allison Engine, et al. v. United States, ex rel. Sanders, 553 U.S. 662 (2008).

- a) Defective Products.
- b) Defective Testing.
- c) Bid-Rigging.
- d) Bribery and Public Corruption.

D. Civil Penalties.

1. A civil penalty of between \$5,500 and \$11,000 is authorized per false claim. 31 U.S.C. §3729. The amounts stated in the False Claims Act, 31 U.S.C. section 3729, are \$5,000 and \$10,000; however, under the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996 (Pub. L. No. 104-134, §31001, 110 Stat. 1321-373 (1996), federal agencies are required to review and adjust statutory civil penalties for inflation every four years. Consequently, the Department of Justice has adjusted penalties under the False Claims Act to range not less than \$5,500 and not more than \$11,000 per violation. 28 C.F.R. § 85.3(a)(9)(2000).
2. Imposition is “automatic and mandatory for each false claim.” S. Rep No. 345 at 8-10. See also United States v. Hughes, 585 F.2d 284, 286 (7th Cir. 1978) (“[t]his forfeiture provision is mandatory; it leaves the trial court without discretion to alter the statutory amount.”)
3. There is no requirement for the United States to prove that it suffered any damages. Fleming v. United States, 336 F.2d 475, 480 (10th Cir. 1964), cert. denied, 380 U.S. 907 (1965). The government also does not have to show that it made any payments pursuant to false claims. United States v. American Precision Products Corp., 115 F. Supp. 823 (D.N.J. 1953).
4. United States v. Halper, 490 U.S. 435 (1989): Defendant faced aggregated penalties of \$130,000 for fraud, which had damaged the government in the amount of \$585. The court disallowed the full \$130,000 penalties, holding that a civil sanction, in application, may be so divorced from any remedial goal as to constitute punishment under some circumstances. The scope of the holding is a narrow one, addressed to “the rare case . . . where a fixed-penalty provision subjects a small-gauge offender to a sanction overwhelmingly disproportionate to the damages he has caused.” See United States v. Hatfield, 108 F.3d 67 (4th Cir. 1997).

- E. The “Qui Tam” Provisions of the Civil False Claims Act. “Qui tam pro domino rege quam pro se ipso in hac parte sequitur.” (“Who as well for the King as for himself sues in this matter.”) These provisions allow a private individual to sue contractors who defraud the government in civil court on behalf of the government.
1. The Civil False Claims Act authorizes an individual, acting as a private attorney general, to bring suit in the name of the United States. 31 U.S.C. §3730. The statute gives the Government 60 days to decide whether to join the action. The Government may ask for an extension of the 60 days. If the Government joins the action, the Government conducts the action. If the Government decides not to join the suit, the individual (known as the “qui tam relator” conducts the action.
 2. As an inducement to be a whistleblower, the statute provides that relators are entitled to portions of any judgment against the defendant. 31 U.S.C. § 3730(d).
 - a) If the government joins and conducts the suit, the relator is entitled to between 15 and 25 percent of judgment, depending on the relator’s contribution to the success of the suit.
 - b) If the Government declines to join and the relator conducts the suit, the relator is entitled to between 25 and 30 percent of the judgment, at the discretion of the court.
 3. Limitations on Relators. 31 U.S.C. § 3730(e)(4) significantly limits a person’s ability to become a qui tam relator by providing that no court will have jurisdiction over an action “based on the public disclosure of allegations or transactions in a criminal, civil, or administrative hearing, in a congressional, administrative, or Government Accountability Office report, hearing, audit or investigation, or from the news media” unless the person bringing the action is an “original source” of the information. The statute defines “original source” as an individual who has direct and independent knowledge of the information on which the allegations are based and has voluntarily provided the information to the Government before filing an action based on the information.
 4. Qui Tam Litigation is a Growth Industry.

5. There have been various Qui Tam developments since the 1986 Qui Tam amendments.¹¹

VII. ADMINISTRATIVE REMEDIES.

- A. Debarment and Suspension Basics. 10 U.S.C. §2393; FAR Subpart 9.4.
 1. Suspension. Action taken by a suspending official to disqualify a contractor temporarily from Government contracting.
 2. Debarment. Action taken by a debarring official to exclude a contractor from Government contracting for a specified period.
 3. Government policy is to solicit offers from, award contracts to, and consent to subcontracts with responsible contractors only.
 4. Debarment and suspension are discretionary administrative actions to effectuate this policy and shall not be used for punishment. FAR 9.103(a); FAR 9.402; United States v. Glymp, 96 F.3d 722, 724 (4th Cir. 1996).
 5. Debarring and suspending officials. DFARS 209.403. Any person may refer a matter to the agency debarring official. However, the absence of a referral will not preclude the debarring official from

¹¹ See *Hughes Aircraft Company v. United States ex rel. Schumer*, 520 U.S. 939 (1997) (The first United States Supreme Court case to address the qui tam provisions since the 1986 Amendments); see also *Bly-Magee v. California*, 236 F.3d 1014 (9th Cir. 2001) (FCA claim viable without proof of government injury; state employees liable for acts beyond official duties); see also *Searcy v. Philips Electronics North America Corp.*, 117 F.3d 154 (5th Cir. 1997) (Federal Circuits split on government's unlimited right to veto qui tam settlements); but see *Killingsworth v. Northrop Corp.*, 25 F.3d 715 (9th Cir. 1994); see also *United States ex rel. Doyle v. Health Possibilities, P.S.C.*, 207 F.3d 335 (6th Cir. 2000); see also *United States, ex rel. Dhawan v. New York City Health & Hosp. Corp.*, 2000 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 15,677 (S.D.N.Y. Oct. 27, 2000) (Prior state court litigation resulted in public disclosure of FCA allegations); see also *United States, ex rel. Summit v. Michael Baker Corp.*, 40 F. Supp. 2d 772 (E.D. Va. 1999) (the court held that a qui tam relator may settle his retaliation claim under the FCA); see also *United States, ex rel. Stevens v. Vermont Agency of Natural Resources*, 120 S.Ct. 1858 (2000) (A private individual may not bring suit in federal court on behalf of the United States against a state or state agency under the False Claims Act); see also *Galvan v. Federal Prison Indus., Inc.*, 199 F.3d 461 (D.C. Cir. 1999) (Sovereign immunity bars qui tam suit against government corporation); see also *Cook County v. United States ex rel. Chandler*, 123 S. Ct. 1239 2003 (2003) (a municipality is a "person" subject to suit under the FCA); see also *United States, ex rel. Riley v. St. Luke's Episcopal Hospital*, 196 F.3d 514 (5th Cir. 1999), rev'd and remanded en banc, 252 F.3d 749 (5th Cir. 2001) (qui tam does not violate the "Take Care" and separation of powers provisions of the Constitution); see also *United States, ex rel. Thornton v. Science Applications Int'l Corp.*, 207 F.3d 769 (5th Cir. 2000) (the value of administrative claims released by a contractor pursuant to a FCA settlement with the government are part of the settlement "proceeds" that the government must share with the relator); see also *United States ex rel. Holmes v. Consumer Insurance Group*, 318 F.3d 1199 (10 Cir. 2003) (en blanc) (federal employee could be a qui tam plaintiff).

initiating the debarment or suspension process or from making a final decision. 64 Fed. Reg. 62984 (Nov. 18, 1999).

6. Debarments can be narrowly tailored to individuals, portions of a company, or to specific products that were the subject of the misconduct. FAR 9.406-1(b).

B. Debarment. Causes for debarment. FAR 9.406-2. DFARS 209.406-2.

1. Debarring official may debar a contractor for a **CONVICTION OF** or **CIVIL JUDGMENT** for:

- a) commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with (i) obtaining, (ii) attempting to obtain, or (iii) performing a public contract or subcontract;
- b) violation of federal or state antitrust statutes relating to the submission of offers;
- c) commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
- d) commission of any other offense indicating a lack of business integrity or business honesty that seriously and directly affects the present responsibility of a government contractor or subcontractor;
- e) criminal conviction for affixing "Made in America" labels to non-American good; or
- f) unfair trade practices.

2. Debarring official may debar a contractor, based upon a **PREPONDERANCE OF THE EVIDENCE** for:

- a) Violation of the terms of a government contract or subcontract so serious as to justify debarment, such as;
 - (1) Willful failure to perform in accordance with the terms of one or more contracts.

- (2) A history of failure to perform, or unsatisfactory performance of, one or more contracts.
- (3) Violation of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988, Pub. L. No. 100-690, 102 Stat. 4181.
- (4) Intentionally affixing a label bearing a “Made in America” inscription (or any inscription having the same meaning) to a product sold in or shipped to the United States or its outlying areas, when the product was not made in the United States or its outlying areas (see Section 202 of the Defense Production Act (Pub. L. 102-558)).
- (5) Commission of an unfair trade practice as defined in [9.403](#) (see Section 201 of the Defense Production Act (Pub. L. 102-558)).
- (6) Delinquent Federal taxes in an amount that exceeds \$3,000.
- (7) Knowing failure by a principal, until 3 years after final payment on any Government contract awarded to the contractor, to timely disclose to the Government, in connection with the award, performance, or closeout of the contract or a subcontract there under, credible evidence of—
 - (a) Violation of Federal criminal law involving fraud, conflict of interest, bribery, or gratuity violations found in Title 18 of the United States Code;
 - (b) Violation of the civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. 3729-3733); or
 - (c) Significant overpayment(s) on the contract, other than overpayments resulting from contract financing payments as defined in [32.001](#).
- (8) A contractor, based on a determination by the Secretary of Homeland Security or the Attorney General of the United States, that the contractor is not in compliance with Immigration and Nationality Act employment

provisions (see Executive Order 12989, as amended by Executive Order 13286). Such determination is not reviewable in the debarment proceedings.

(9) Any other cause of so serious or compelling a nature that it affects the present responsibility of a government contractor or subcontractor.

b) “Preponderance” means proof by information that, compared with that opposing it, leads to the conclusion that the fact at issue is more probably true than not. FAR 9.403. See Imco, Inc. v. United States, 33 Fed. Cl. 312 (1995).

C. Suspension. Causes for suspension. FAR 9.407-2.

1. Upon ADEQUATE EVIDENCE of:

- a) commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with (i) obtaining, (ii) attempting to obtain, or (iii) performing a public contract or subcontract;
- b) violation of federal or state antitrust statutes relating to the submission of offers;
- c) commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
- d) violation of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988, Pub. L. No. 100-690, 102 Stat. 4181;
- e) intentionally affixing a “Made in America” label to non-American made goods (see section 202 of the Defense Production Act (Pub. L. 102-558));
- f) commission of an unfair trade practice as defined in [9.403](#) (see section 201 of the Defense Production Act (Pub. L. 102-558));
- g) delinquent Federal taxes in an amount that exceeds \$3,000. See the criteria at [9.406-2\(b\)\(1\)\(v\)](#) for determination of when taxes are delinquent;

- h) knowing failure by a principal, until 3 years after final payment on any Government contract awarded to the contractor, to timely disclose to the Government, in connection with the award, performance, or closeout of the contract or a subcontract there under, credible evidence of—
 - (1) Violation of Federal criminal law involving fraud, conflict of interest, bribery, or gratuity violations found in Title 18 of the United States Code;
 - (2) Violation of the civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. 3729-3733); or
 - (3) Significant overpayment(s) on the contract, other than overpayments resulting from contract financing payments as defined in [32.001](#); or
- i) Commission of any other offense indicating a lack of business integrity or business honesty that seriously and directly affects the present responsibility of a government contractor or subcontractor.

- 2. “Adequate evidence” means information sufficient to support the reasonable belief that a particular act or omission has occurred. FAR 9.403.
- 3. Indictment for any of the causes in paragraph a above constitutes “adequate evidence” for suspension. FAR 9.407-2.
- 4. “Adequate evidence” may include allegations in a civil complaint filed by another federal agency. See SDA, Inc., B-253355, Aug. 24, 1993, 93-2 CPD ¶ 132.
- 5. Upon adequate evidence, contractor may also be suspended for any other cause of so serious or compelling a nature that it affects the present responsibility of a government contractor or subcontractor. FAR 9.407-2.

D. Effect of Debarment or Suspension. FAR 9.405; DFARS 209.405.

- 1. As a result of § 2455 of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, Pub. L. No. 103-355, 108 Stat. 3243 (1994), **FAR 9.401** provides for government-wide effect of the debarment, proposed

debarment, suspension, or any other exclusion of an entity from procurement OR nonprocurement activities.

2. Contractors proposed for debarment, suspended, or debarred may not receive government contracts, and agencies may not solicit offers from, award contracts to, or consent to subcontracts with these contractors, unless acquiring agency's head or designee determines that there is a compelling reason for such action.FAR 9.405(a).
3. The general rule is that absent a contrary determination by the ordering activity, debarment has no effect on the *continued performance* of contracts or subcontracts in existence at the time of the proposed or actual suspension or debarment. FAR 9.405-1. However, under DFARS 209.405-1, unless an agency head makes a compelling needs determination, DOD entities may not place orders exceeding guaranteed minimums under indefinite delivery contracts, nor may they place orders against Federal Supply Schedule contracts.
4. Bids received from any listed contractor are opened, entered on abstract of bids, and rejected unless there is a compelling reason for an exception.
5. Proposals, quotations, or offers from listed contractors shall not be evaluated, included in the competitive range, or discussions held unless there is a compelling reason for an exception.

E. Period of Debarment. FAR 9.406-4.

1. Commensurate with the seriousness of the cause(s). Generally, debarment should not exceed three years except that debarment for violations of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988, Pub. L. No. 100-690, 102 Stat. 1481, may be for five years. FAR 23.506.
2. Administrative record must include relevant findings as to the appropriateness of the length of the debarment. Coccia v. Defense Logistics Agency, C.A. No. 89-6544, 1990 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 6079, (E.D. Pa. May 15, 1990). (Upholding 15-year debarment of former government employee convicted of taking bribes and kickbacks from contractors in exchange for contracts.)
3. The period of the proposed debarment, or any prior suspension, is considered in determining period of debarment.

4. Debarment period may be extended, but not solely on the original basis. If extension is necessary, normal procedures apply.
 5. Period may be reduced (new evidence, reversal of conviction or judgment, elimination of causes, bona fide change in management).
 6. Inconsistent treatment of corporate officials justifies overturning debarment decision. Kisser v. Kemp, 786 F. Supp. 38 (D.D.C. 1992).
- F. Period of Suspension. FAR 9.407-4.
1. Suspension is temporary, pending completion of investigation or any ensuing legal proceedings.
 2. If legal proceedings are not initiated within 12 months after the date of the suspension notice, terminate the suspension unless an Assistant Attorney General requests extension.
 3. Extension upon request by an Assistant Attorney General shall not exceed 6 months.
 4. Suspension may not exceed 18 months unless legal proceedings are initiated within that period.

VIII. CONTRACT REMEDIES.

- A. Historical Right.
1. Under common law, where a party to a contract committed an act of fraud affecting a material element of the contract, the fraudulent act constituted a breach on the part of the party committing the act. The innocent party could then, at its election, insist on continuation of contract performance, or void the contract. Once voided, the voiding party would be liable under equity to the other party for any benefit received. Stoffela v. Nugent, 217 U.S. 499 (1910); Diamond Coal Co. v. Payne, 271 F. 362, 366 (App. D.C. 1921) (“equity refuses to give to the innocent party more than he is entitled to”).
 2. Since the U. S. government was often viewed as acting in a “commercial capacity” when it engaged in commercial transactions, the rules of common law and equity applied to resolution of disputes. As such, if the government sought to rescind a contract, it was obligated to restore the contractor to the position it would be in, but-

for the breach. Cooke v. United States, 91 U.S. 389, 398 (1875) (“If [the government] comes down from its position of sovereignty, and enters the domain of commerce, it submits itself to the same laws that govern individuals there.”); Hollerbach v. United States, 233 U.S. 165 (1914); United States v. Fuller Co., 296 F. 178 (1923).

3. The Supreme Court rejected the general rule that the government should be treated like any other party to a contract when fraud occurred. Pan American Petroleum and Transport Co., v. United States, 273 U.S. 456 (1927).
4. Courts and boards have developed an implied or common-law right to terminate or cancel a contract in order to effectuate the public policy of protecting the government in instances of procurement fraud. See United States v. Mississippi Valley Generating Co., 364 U.S. 520, reh’g denied 365 U.S. 855 (1961); Four-Phase Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 26794, 86-2 BCA ¶ 18,924.
5. A contractor that engages in fraud in dealing with the government commits a material breach, which justifies terminating the entire contract for default. Joseph Morton Co., Inc. v. United States, 3 Cl. Ct. 120 (1983), aff’d 757 F.2d 1273 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

B. Contracting Officer Authority.

1. Actions Clearly Exceeding KO Authority. The Contract Disputes Act, 41 U.S.C. §[605\(a\)](#), as implemented by FAR 33.210, prohibits any contracting officer or agency head from settling, paying, compromising or otherwise adjusting any claim involving fraud.
2. Actions Clearly Within KO Authority.
 - a) Refusing Payment. It is the plain duty of administrative, accounting, and auditing officials of the government to refuse approval and to prevent payment of public monies under any agreement on behalf of the United States as to which there is a reasonable suspicion of irregularity, collusion, or fraud, thus reserving the matter for scrutiny in the courts when the facts may be judicially determined upon sworn testimony and competent evidence and a forfeiture declared or other appropriate action taken. To the Secretary of the Army, B-154766, 44 Comp. Gen. 111 (1964).

- b) Suspend Progress Payments. 10 U.S.C. §2307 (e)(2); Brown v. United States, 207 Ct. Cl. 768, 524 F.2d 693 (1975); Fidelity Construction, DOT CAB No. 1113, 80-2 BCA ¶ 14,819.
- c) Withhold Payment.
 - (1) When a debarment/suspension report recommends debarment or suspension based on fraud or criminal conduct involving a current contract, all funds becoming due on that contract shall be withheld unless directed otherwise by the Head of the Contracting Activity (HCA) or the Commander, U.S. Army Legal Services Agency. AFARS 9.406-3.
 - (2) Labor standards statutes provide for withholding for labor standards violations. WHA – 41 U.S.C. §36; DBA – 40 U.S.C. § 276a-2; SCA – 41 U.S.C. §353(a).
 - (3) Specific contract provisions may provide for withholding (e.g., service contract deductions for deficiencies in performance).
 - (4) Terminate Negotiations. FAR 49.106 (terminate settlement discussions regarding a terminated contract upon suspicion of fraud); K&R Eng'g Co., Inc., v. United States, 222 Ct. Cl. 340, 616 F.2d 469 (1980).
 - (5) Determine Contractor to be Nonresponsible. FAR Subpart 9.4.

C. Denial of Claims.

- 1. Section 605(a) of the CDA prohibits an agency head from settling, compromising or otherwise adjusting any claim involving fraud. 41 U.S.C.S § 605(a). This limitation is reflected in FAR 33.210, which states that the authority of a contracting officer to decide or resolve a claim does not extend to the “settlement, compromise, payment, or adjustment of any claim involving fraud.” Subpart 33.209 of the FAR further provides that contracting officers must refer all cases involving suspected fraud to the agency official responsible for investigating fraud.
- 2. As a practical matter, the term “denial” is a misnomer in that the contracting officer is precluded from making a final decision on a

contractor's claim where fraud is suspected. As such, denial of a claim consists simply of doing nothing with the claim while other courses of action are pursued.

3. Denial of a claim should be viewed as simply the first of possibly many steps in the resolution of a fraudulent claim.

D. Counterclaims Under the CDA

1. Per 41 U.S.C. §604: “[i]f a contractor is unable to support any part of his claim and it is determined that such inability is attributable to misrepresentation of fact or fraud on the part of the contractor, he shall be liable to the Government for an amount equal to such unsupported part of the claim in addition to all costs to the Government attributable to the cost of reviewing said part of his claim.”
2. Until recently, this provision of the CDA has been applied in only a small number of cases. This may in part be due to the deterrent effect of this statute. See United States ex. ral. Wilson v. North American Const., 101 F. Supp.2d 500, 533 (S.D. Tex 2000) (district court unwilling to enforce this provision of the CDA because there were “very few cases applying 41 U.S.C. 604”). See also UMC Elecs. v. United States, 249 F.3d 1337 (Fed. Cir. 2001); Larry D. Barnes, Inc. (d/b/a TRI-AD Constructors) v. United States, 45 Fed. Appx. 907 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (provision successfully applied by CAFC).
3. It is not possible to enforce this section of the CDA in litigation before the boards because of the language at 41 U.S.C. Section 605 (a), which states: “[t]he authority of this subsection shall not extend to a claim or dispute for penalties or forfeitures prescribed by statute or regulation which another Federal agency is specifically authorized to administer, settle or determine.” The boards have generally interpreted this language as meaning only Department of Justice (DOJ) has the authority to initiated a claim under this provision. This is because (in the eyes of the boards) only DOJ has the authority to administer or settle disputes involving fraud under the current statutory scheme. See TDC Management, DOT BCA 1802, 90-1 BCA ¶ 22,627.

E. Default Terminations Based on Fraud.

1. Where a contractor challenges the propriety of a default termination before a court or board, the government is not precluded under the CDA from introducing evidence of fraud discovered after the default

termination, and using that evidence to support the termination in the subsequent litigation.

2. Some grounds for default termination.
 - a) Submission of falsified test reports. Michael C. Avino, Inc., ASBCA No. 317542, 89-3 BCA ¶ 22,156.
 - b) Submission of forged performance and payment bonds. Dry Roof Corp., ASBCA No. 29061, 88-3 BCA ¶ 21,096.
 - c) Submission of falsified progress payment requests. Charles W. Daff, Trustee in Bankruptcy for Triad Microsystems, Inc. v. United States, 31 Fed. Cl. 682 (1994).

F. Voiding Contracts Pursuant to FAR 3.7

1. Subpart 3.7 of the FAR establishes a detailed mechanism for voiding and rescinding contracts where there has been either a final conviction for illegal conduct in relation to a government contract, or an agency head determination of misconduct by a preponderance of the evidence.
2. Authority to void a contract pursuant to Subpart 3.7 of the FAR is derived from:
 - a) 18 U.S.C. §218;
 - b) Executive Order 12448, 50 Fed. Reg. 23,157 (May 31, 1985); and,
 - c) Subsection 27(e)(3) of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. § 423).
3. Under this FAR provision, a federal agency shall consider rescinding a contract upon receiving information that a contractor has engaged in illegal conduct concerning the formation of a contract, or there has been a final conviction for any violation of 18 U.S.C. §201 -224.
4. The decision authority for this provision is the agency head, which for DOD has been delegated to the Under Secretary of Defense (Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics).
5. No recorded cases of this provision of the FAR being applied.

G. Suspending Payments Upon a Finding of Fraud, FAR 32.006.

1. FAR 32.006 allows an agency head to reduce or suspend payments to a contractor when the agency head determines there is “substantial evidence that the contractor’s request for advance, partial, or progress payments is based on fraud.”
2. The authority of the agency head under this provision may be delegated down to Level IV of the Executive Schedule, which for the Department of the Army is the Assistant Secretary of the Army for Acquisition, Logistics, and Technology (ASA (ALT)).
3. This provision of the FAR is a potentially powerful tool in that the government can stay payment of a claim without the danger of a board treating the claim as a deemed denial, thus forcing the government into a board proceeding before the government’s case can be developed.
4. Only one recorded board decision involving this provision of the FAR. TRS Research, ASBCA No. 51712, 2001-1 BCA ¶ 31,149 (contracting officer suspended payment on invoices pending completion of an investigation involving fraud allegation, but failed to seek written permission from the agency head to take such action; ASBCA found the government in breach of the contract and sustained the appeal).

H. Voiding Contracts Pursuant to the Gratuities Clause, FAR 52.203-3.

1. Allows DOD to unilaterally void contracts upon an agency head finding that contract is tainted by an improper gratuity. Decision authority for the Department of the Army has been delegated to the ASA (ALT).
2. Authority stems from 10 U.S.C. § 2207, which requires the clause in all DOD contracts (except personal service contracts).
3. Considerable due process protections for the contractor.
4. Exemplary damages of between three to ten times the amount of the gratuity.
5. Procedures used very effectively in response to a fraudulent bidding scheme centered out of the Fuerth Regional Contracting Office, Fuerth, Germany. See Schuepferling GmbH & Co., ASBCA No. 45564, 98-1 BCA ¶ 29,659; ASBCA No. 45565, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,739;

ASBCA No. 45567, 98-2 BCA ¶ 29,828; Erwin Pfister General-Bauunternehmen, ASBCA Nos. 43980, 43981, 45569, 45570, 2001-2 BCA ¶ 31,431; Schneider Haustechnik GmbH, ASBCA Nos. 43969, 45568, 2001 BCA ¶ 31,264.

IX. BOARDS OF CONTRACT APPEAL'S TREATMENT OF FRAUD.

A. Jurisdiction.

1. Theoretically, the boards are without jurisdiction to decide appeals tainted by fraud.
 - a) Under the CDA, “[e]ach agency board shall have jurisdiction to decide any appeal from a decision of a contracting officer (1) relative to a contract made by its agency, and (2) relative to a contract made by any other agency when such agency or the Administrator has designated the agency board to decide the appeal.” 41 U.S.C. §607 (d).
 - b) Because the CDA precludes contracting officers from issuing final decisions where fraud is suspected, and the boards only have jurisdiction over cases that can be decided by a contracting officer, the boards are effectively barred from adjudicating appeals involving fraud. See 41 U.S.C. §605 (a).
 - c) As a practical matter, the boards exercise a form a de facto jurisdiction in that a decision concerning a motion to dismiss an appeal for fraud will have a dispositive effect on the case.

B. Dismissals, Suspensions and Stays.

1. Government must demonstrate that the possibility of fraud exists or that the alleged fraud adversely affects the Board's ability to ascertain the facts. Triax Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 33899, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,830.
2. Mere allegations of fraud are not sufficient. General Constr. and Dev. Co., ASBCA No. 36138, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,874. Four-Phase Systems, Inc., ASBCA No. 27487, 84-1 BCA ¶ 17,122.
3. Boards generally refuse to suspend proceedings except under the following limited circumstances:

- a) When an action has been commenced in a court of competent jurisdiction, by the handing down of an indictment or by filing of a civil action complaint, so that issues directly relevant to the claim before the board are placed before that court;
- b) When the Department of Justice or other authorized investigatory authority requests a suspension to avoid a conflict with an ongoing criminal investigation;
- c) When the government can demonstrate that there is a real possibility that fraud exists which is of such a nature as to effectively preclude the board from ascertaining the facts and circumstances surrounding a claim; and
- d) When an appellant so requests to avoid compromising his rights in regard to an actual or potential proceeding. See Fidelity Constr., 80-2 BCA ¶ 14,819 at 73,142.

C. Fraud as an Affirmative Defense.

- 1. Most often, the government elects to treat fraud as a jurisdictional bar, and pursues the issue in a motion to dismiss.
- 2. When fraud is cited as an affirmative defense, the boards generally treat the issue consistent with cases where it is presented as a jurisdictional bar. See ORC, Inc. ASBCA No. 49693, 97-1 BCA ¶ 28,750.

X. CONCLUSION.

Chapter 29

Construction Contracting



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 29

CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTING

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| II. | REFERENCES..... | 1 |
| III. | CONCEPTS..... | 3 |
| | A. Definitions..... | 3 |
| | B. Fiscal Distinctions..... | 4 |
| | C. Contracting Procedures..... | 5 |
| IV. | METHODS OF ACQUIRING CONSTRUCTION..... | 6 |
| | A. Sealed Bidding..... | 6 |
| | B. Negotiated Procedures..... | 6 |
| | C. Design-Build Contracting..... | 7 |
| | D. Construction as “Acquisition of Commercial Items”..... | 10 |
| V. | CONTRACT TYPES..... | 10 |
| | A. Firm Fixed-Price (FFP) Contracts. FAR 36.207..... | 10 |
| | B. Fixed-Price Contracts with Economic Price Adjustment Clauses (FP w/EPA)..... | 11 |
| | C. Cost-Reimbursement Contracts..... | 11 |
| | D. Incentive and Other “Fee” Contracts..... | 12 |
| | E. Indefinite Delivery / Indefinite Quantity Contracts..... | 12 |
| | F. Job Order Contracting..... | 12 |
| | G. Simplified Acquisition of Base Engineer Requirements (SABER) Program, AFFARS Appendix DD..... | 13 |
| VI. | PRE-BID COMMUNICATIONS..... | 14 |
| | A. Presolicitation Notices..... | 14 |
| | B. Government-wide Point of Entry (GPE)..... | 16 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| VII. SOLICITATION..... | 16 |
| A. Forms..... | 16 |
| B. Supplemental Documents..... | 16 |
| C. Statutory Limitations..... | 16 |
| D. Site Familiarization Clauses..... | 18 |
| E. Bid Guarantees..... | 19 |
| F. Pre-Bid Conferences..... | 22 |
| G. Bid/Proposal Preparation Time..... | 22 |
| VIII. AWARD..... | 22 |
| A. Responsiveness Issues..... | 22 |
| B. Responsibility Issues..... | 23 |
| C. Price Evaluation..... | 25 |
| IX. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION..... | 26 |
| A. Preconstruction Orientation..... | 26 |
| B. Performance and Payment Bonds..... | 26 |
| C. Differing Site Conditions (DSC). FAR 52.236-2..... | 29 |
| D. Variations in Estimated Quantity..... | 32 |
| E. Suspension of Work..... | 33 |
| F. Permits and Responsibilities..... | 35 |
| G. Specifications and Drawings..... | 36 |
| H. Liquidated Damages (LDs)..... | 37 |
| I. Use/Possession Prior to Completion..... | 38 |
| X. CONCLUSION..... | 39 |
| ATTACHMENT - DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS (DSC)..... | 40 |

CHAPTER 29

CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTING

I. INTRODUCTION. Following this block of instruction, students should:

- A. Understand the unique clauses and procedures used in construction contracting.
- B. Understand how to analyze common legal issues that arise in construction contracting.

II. REFERENCES.

- A. Federal Regulations.
 - 1. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) Part 36.
 - 2. Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (DFARS) Part 236.
 - 3. Army Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (AFARS) Part 5136.
 - 4. Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (AFFARS) Part 5336.
 - 5. Navy Marine Corps Acquisition Regulation Supplement (NMCARS) Part 5236.
- B. Army Regulations (AR).
 - 1. AR 420-1, Army Facilities Management (2 November 2007) [hereinafter AR 420-1].
 - 2. AR 415-32, Engineer Troop Unit Construction in Connection with Training Activities (15 April 1998) [hereinafter AR 415-32].

3. DA Pam 420-11, Project Definition and Work Classification (7 October 1994) [hereinafter DA Pam 420-11].
- C. Air Force Policy Directives (AFPD) and Air Force Instructions (AFI).
1. AFPD 32-90, Real Property Management (10 September 1993) [hereinafter AFPD 32-90].
 2. AFI 32-1021, Planning and Programming Military Construction (MILCON) Projects (24 January 2003) [hereinafter AFI 32-1021].
 3. AFI 32-1032, Planning and Programming Appropriated Funded Maintenance, Repair, and Construction Projects (15 October 2003) [hereinafter AFI 32-1032].
 4. AFI 32-6001, Family Housing Management (21 August 2006) [hereinafter AFI 32-6001].
 5. AFI 32-6002, Family Housing Planning, Programming, Design, and Construction (27 May 1997) [hereinafter AFI 32-6002].
 6. AFI 65-601, vol. 1, Budget Guidance and Procedures (3 March 2005) [hereinafter AFI 65-601].
- D. Navy Regulation. OPNAVINST 11010.20G, Facilities Projects Manual (14 October 2005) [hereinafter OPNAVINST 11010.20G].
- E. Richard J. Bednar, John Cibinic, Jr., Ralph C. Nash, Jr., et al., Construction Contracting, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 1991.
- F. Adrian L. Bastianelli, Andrew D. Ness, Federal Government Construction Contracts, published by the American Bar Association Forum on the Construction Industry, 2003.

III. CONCEPTS.

A. Definitions.

1. Construction.

- a) **Statutory Definition.** 10 U.S.C. § 2801(a). The term “military construction” includes “any construction, development, conversion, or extension of any kind carried out with respect to a military installation, whether to satisfy temporary or permanent requirements.”¹
- b) **Regulatory Definitions.**
 - (1) **FAR 2.101.** The term “construction” refers to the construction, alteration, or repair of buildings, structures, or other real property.
 - (a) Construction includes dredging, excavating, and painting.
 - (b) “Buildings, structures, or other real property” includes improvements of all types, such as bridges, streets, sewers, power lines, docks, etc.
 - (c) Construction does not include work performed on vessels, aircraft, or other items of personal property.

¹ The term “military installation” means “a base, camp, post, station, yard, center, or other activity under the jurisdiction of the Secretary of a military department or, in the case of an activity in a foreign country, under the operational control of the Secretary of a military department or the Secretary of Defense, without regard to the duration of operational control.” 10 U.S.C. § 2801(c)(2).

- (2) Service Regulations. See, e.g., AR 420-1, paragraph 4-17 and Glossary, sec. II; AR 415-32, Glossary, sec. II; AFI 32-1021, paras. 3.2. and 4.2; AFI 32-1032, para. 5.1.1; AFI 65-601, vol. 1, atch 1; OPNAVINST 11010.20G, ch. 6, para. 6.1.1. The term “construction” includes:
- (a) The erection, installation, or assembly of a new facility; ²
 - (b) The addition, expansion, extension, alteration, conversion, or replacement of an existing facility;
 - (c) The relocation of a facility from one site to another;
 - (d) Installed equipment (e.g., built-in furniture, cabinets, shelving, venetian blinds, screens, elevators, telephones, fire alarms, heating and air conditioning equipment, waste disposals, dishwashers, and theater seats); and
 - (e) Related site preparation, excavation, filling, landscaping, and other land improvements.

2. Military Construction Project. 10 U.S.C. § 2801(b). The term “military construction project” includes “all military construction work . . . necessary to produce a complete and usable facility or a complete and usable improvement to an existing facility”

B. Fiscal Distinctions.

² The term “facility” means “a building, structure, or other improvement to real property.” 10 U.S.C. § 2801(c)(1).

1. As a general rule, the government funds construction projects costing not more than \$750,000 with Operation and Maintenance (O&M) funds; projects costing more than \$750,000, but not more than \$2 million, with Unspecified Minor Military Construction (UMMC) funds; and projects costing more than \$2 million with Military Construction (MILCON) funds. 10 U.S.C. §§ 2802, 2805. See Construction Funding chapter in CONTRACT & FISCAL L. DEP'T, THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL, U.S. ARMY, FISCAL LAW COURSE DESKBOOK (current Edition), available on the Judge Advocate General's Legal Center and School Web Page in the "TJAGLCS Publications" library (<https://www.jagcnet.army.mil/8525736A005BC8F9>).
2. For fiscal law purposes, "construction" does not include repair or maintenance. Therefore, the government may fund repair and maintenance projects with O&M funds, regardless of the cost. AR 420-1, Glossary, sec. II; AFI 32-1032, para. 1.3.2; OPNAVINST 11010.20G, paras. 3.1.1 and 4.1.1.
3. The government must award construction contracts in accordance with FAR Part 36, DFARS Part 236, and any applicable service supplement, regardless of the funding source.

C. Contracting Procedures.

1. As with most procurements, the government must take certain steps to procure construction properly.
2. These steps normally include:
 - a) Deciding which acquisition method to use;
 - b) Deciding which contract type to use;
 - c) Deciding what, if any, pre-bid communications are required (or otherwise warranted);
 - d) Deciding what information and which clauses to place in the solicitation;

- e) Deciding which contractor should receive the award; and
 - f) Administering the contract.
3. An Independent Government Estimate, or IGE, is necessary if the proposed contract, or any proposed modification to a construction contract, exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold (SAT), currently \$100,000. The Contracting Officer may require an IGE for contracts less than the SAT. The IGE is not normally disclosed to offerors. FAR 36.203. IGEs will be marked “For Official Use Only,” or “FOUO.” DFARS 236.203.

IV. METHODS OF ACQUIRING CONSTRUCTION.

A. Sealed Bidding. FAR 6.401; FAR 36.103. Contracting officers must use sealed bidding procedures to acquire construction if:

- 1. Time permits;
- 2. Award will be made on the basis of price and price-related factors;
- 3. Discussions are not necessary; and
- 4. There is a reasonable expectation of receiving more than one bid.

B. Negotiated Procedures. FAR 6.401; FAR 36.103.

- 1. Contracting officers should use negotiated procedures to acquire construction if:
 - a) Time does not permit the use of seal bidding procedures;
 - b) Award will not be made on the basis of price and price-related factors;

- c) Discussions are necessary, **or**
- d) There is not a reasonable expectation of receiving more than one bid. See Michael C. Avino, Inc., B-250689, Feb. 17, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 148; see also Pardee Constr. Co., B-256414, June 13, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 372.

- 2. Contracting officers may use negotiated procedures to acquire construction outside the United States, its possessions, or Puerto Rico, even if sealed bidding is otherwise required. FAR 36.103(a).
- 3. Contracting officers must use negotiated procedures to acquire architect-engineer services. FAR 36.103(b).

C. Design-Build Contracting. 10 U.S.C. § 305a; 41 U.S.C. § 253m; FAR Subpart 36.3.

- 1. Background. In the past, a contracting officer could not award a contract to build a project to the firm that designed the project unless the agency head or the agency head's delegee approved. FAR 36.209. See Lawlor Corp., B-241945.2, Mar. 28, 1991, 70 Comp. Gen. 375, 91-1 CPD ¶ 335. In 1995, however, Congress established new, two-phase design-build selection procedures that allow the same firm to design and build a project. National Defense Authorization Act of 1996, Pub. L. No. 104-106, 110 Stat. 186 (1995).
- 2. Definitions. FAR 36.102.
 - a) "Design" is the process of defining the construction requirement, producing the technical specifications and drawings, and preparing the construction cost estimate.
 - b) "Design-bid-build" is the traditional method of construction contracting in which design and construction are sequential and contracted for separately, with two contracts and two contractors.

- c) “Design-build” is the new method of construction contracting in which design and construction are combined in a single contract with a single contractor.
- d) “Two-phase design-build” is a “design-build” method of construction contracting in which the government selects a limited number of offerors in Phase One to submit detailed proposals in Phase Two.

3. Policy. FAR 36.104. See FAR 36.301(b).

- a) A contracting officer may use either design-bid-build or design-build procedures to acquire construction.
- b) Unless a contracting officer decides to use design-bid-build (or another authorized acquisition procedure), the contracting officer must use two-phase design-build procedures to acquire construction if:
 - (1) The contracting officer anticipates receiving three or more offers;
 - (2) Offerors must perform a substantial amount of design work (and incur substantial expenses) before they can develop their price proposals; and
 - (3) The contracting officer has considered the factors set forth in FAR 36.301(b)(2), including:
 - (a) The extent to which the agency has adequately defined its project requirements;
 - (b) The time constraints for delivery;
 - (c) The capability and experience of potential offerors;

- (d) The suitability of the project for two-phase design-build procedures;
- (e) The capability of the agency to manage the two-phase selection process;
- (f) Other criteria established by the head of the contracting activity (HCA).

4. Procedures. FAR 36.303.

- a) The agency may issue one solicitation covering both phases, or two solicitations in sequence.
- b) Phase One. FAR 36.303-1.
 - (1) The agency evaluates Phase One proposals to determine which offerors the agency will ask to submit Phase Two proposals.
 - (2) The Phase One solicitation must include:
 - (a) The scope of work;
 - (b) The Phase One evaluation factors (e.g., technical approach, technical qualifications, etc.);
 - (c) The Phase Two evaluation factors; and
 - (d) A statement regarding the maximum number of offerors the government intends to include in the competitive range.³

³ This number should not exceed 5 unless the contracting officer determines that including more than five offerors in the competitive range is in the government's best interests. FAR 36.303-1(a)(4).

- c) Phase Two. FAR 36.303-2. The contracting officer awards one contract using competitive negotiation procedures.

D. Construction as “Acquisition of Commercial Items,” FAR Part 12.

- 1. On 3 July 2003, the Administrator of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP) issued a memorandum stating that FAR Part 12, Acquisition of Commercial Items, "should rarely, if ever be used for new construction acquisitions or non-routine alteration and repair services." Rather, “in accordance with long-standing practice, agencies should apply the policies of FAR Part 36 to these acquisitions.” See Memorandum, Administrator of Office of Federal Procurement Policy, to Agency Senior Procurement Executives, Subject: Applicability of FAR Part 12 to Construction Acquisitions (July 3, 2003).
- 2. The memorandum stated that Part 12 acquisitions are generally well suited for certain types of construction activities “that lack the level of variability found in new construction and complex alteration and repair,” such as routine painting or carpeting, simple hanging of drywall, everyday electrical or plumbing work, and similar noncomplex services.”

V. CONTRACT TYPES.

A. Firm Fixed-Price (FFP) Contracts. FAR 36.207.

- 1. Agencies normally award FFP contracts for construction.
- 2. The contracting officer may require pricing on a lump-sum, unit price, or combination basis.
 - a) With lump sum pricing, the agency pays a lump sum for:
 - (1) The total project; or
 - (2) Defined portions of the project.

- b) With unit pricing, the agency pays a unit price for a specified quantity of work units.
- c) Agencies must use lump-sum pricing unless:
 - (1) The contract involves large quantities of work such as grading, paving, building outside utilities, or site preparation;
 - (2) The agency cannot estimate the quantities of work adequately;
 - (3) The estimated quantities of work may change significantly during construction; or
 - (4) Offerors would have to expend spend a lot of time/money to develop adequate estimates.

B. Fixed-Price Contracts with Economic Price Adjustment Clauses (FP w/EPA). FAR 36.207(c). Agencies may use this type of contract if:

- 1. The use of an EPA clause is customary for the type of work the agency is acquiring;
- 2. A significant number of offerors would not bid unless the agency included an EPA clause in the contract; or
- 3. Offerors would include unwarranted contingencies in their prices unless the agency included an EPA clause in the contract.

C. Cost-Reimbursement Contracts. See Military Construction Appropriations Act, 2002, Pub. L. No. 107-64, § 101, 115 Stat. 474 (2001); DFARS 236.271; DFARS 216.306(c); AFARS 5136.271; AFFARS 5336.271; NAPS 5236.271. The Assistant Secretary of Defense (Production and Logistics) (ASD(P&D)) must approve the award of a cost-plus-fixed-fee contract for construction if:

- 1. The activity uses military construction appropriations;

2. Performance will occur in the United States (Alaska excluded); and
 3. The acquiring activity expects the contract to exceed \$25,000.
- D. Incentive and Other “Fee” Contracts. FAR 36.208. Activities cannot use incentive, cost-plus-fixed-fee, or other fee contracts at the same work site with firm fixed-price contracts without the approval of the HCA.
- E. Indefinite Delivery / Indefinite Quantity Contracts. FAR 16.504. Tyler Const. Group v. United States, 83 Fed. Cl. 94 (2008), aff’d 570 F.3d 1329 (Fed. Cir. 2009). The Federal Circuit held that using an ID/IQ contract to procure construction projects was not specifically prohibited by statute or regulation; thus, it was a permissible innovation under FAR § 1.102(d). Generally, ID/IQ contracts are used to procure services and supplies, but the Federal Circuit affirmed the Army Corps’ of Engineer’s “innovative” approach to use ID/IQ contracts to procure large-scale construction projects.
- F. Job Order Contracting. AFARS Subpart 5117.90. See Schnorr-Stafford Constr., Inc., B-227323, Aug. 12, 1987, 87-2 CPD ¶ 153; Salmon & Assoc., B-227079, Aug. 12, 1987, 87-2 CPD ¶ 152.
1. A job order contract (JOC) is an indefinite-delivery, indefinite-quantity contract used to acquire real property maintenance/repair and minor construction at the installation level.
 2. The government develops task specifications and a unit price book. The contractor then multiplies the government’s unit price by its own coefficient (e.g., profit + overhead) to arrive at its bid/proposal price.
 3. After contract award, the parties enter into bilateral task orders for individual projects based on the tasks and prices specified in the JOC.⁴
 4. JOC Limitations.

⁴ Each task order becomes a fixed-price, lump sum contract. AFARS 5117.9003-1(e).

- a) The government should not use a JOC for projects with an estimated value less than \$2,000, or greater than \$750,000. AFARS 5117.9000(a).
- b) The government cannot use a JOC to acquire installation facilities engineering support services (e.g., custodial or ground maintenance services). AFARS 5117.9002(b).
- c) The government cannot use a JOC to acquire architect-engineer services. AFARS 5117.9002(b).
- d) An IGE is required for orders of \$100,000 or more. AFARS 5117.9004-3(c).
- e) The government should not use a JOC to acquire work:
 - (1) Normally set aside for small and disadvantaged businesses;
 - (2) Traditionally covered by requirements contracts (e.g., painting, roofing, etc.);
 - (3) Covered by contracts awarded under the Commercial Activities Program; or
 - (4) The government can effectively and economically accomplish in-house.

AFARS 5117.9003-3(a).

- G. Simplified Acquisition of Base Engineer Requirements (SABER) Program, AFFARS Appendix DD.
 - 1. Similar in scope and nature to the Army's JOC program, SABER is an ID/IQ contract vehicle to expedite the execution of non-complex minor construction and maintenance & repair projects. AFFARS DD-102 and 103(a).

2. The process of using the SABER is similar to the JOC. An established Unit Price Book and coefficients are combined to price each specific project. AFFARS DD-102.
3. SABER Limitations.
 - a) SABER should not be used to replace a traditional construction program, or for large, complex construction projects. SABER should also not be used for projects that are traditionally single skill/materials projects that are more appropriate for competitively bid contracts or single trade ID/IQs. AFFARS DD-104(a).
 - b) Saber shall not be used to acquire architect-engineering (A-E) services. AFFARS DD-104(b).
 - c) Individual SABER delivery orders shall not exceed \$500,000 unless waived by the installation commander. AFFARS DD-104(c).
 - d) SABER may not be used to perform non-personal services subject to the Service Contract Act. AFFARS DD-104(e).

VI. PRE-BID COMMUNICATIONS.

- A. Presolicitation Notices. FAR 36.213-2; FAR 36.701(a); FAR 53.301-1417, Standard Form (SF) 1417, Presolicitation Notice (Construction Contract).
 1. The contracting officer must send presolicitation notices to prospective bidders if the proposed contract is expected to equal or exceed \$100,000.
 2. Contents. FAR 36.213-2(b). Among other things, presolicitation notices must:

- a) Describe the magnitude of the project;⁵
- b) State the location of the proposed work;
- c) Include relevant dates (e.g., the proposed bid opening date and the proposed contract completion date);
- d) State where contractors can inspect the contract plans without charge;⁶
- e) Specify a date by which bidders should submit requests for the solicitation;
- f) State whether the government intends to restrict award to small businesses; and
- g) Specify the amount the government intends to charge for solicitation documents, if any.

3. Distribution. FAR 36.211.

- a) The contracting officer should send presolicitation notices to:

⁵ The contracting officer cannot disclose the government cost estimate; however, the contracting officer can state the magnitude of the project in terms of physical characteristics and estimated price range. FAR 36.204; DFARS 236.204. The Estimated price ranges are as follows:

- (a) Less than \$25,000.
- (b) Between \$25,000 and \$100,000.
- (c) Between \$100,000 and \$250,000.
- (d) Between \$250,000 and \$500,000.
- (e) Between \$500,000 and \$1,000,000.
- (f) Between \$1,000,000 and \$5,000,000.
- (g) Between \$5,000,000 and \$10,000,000.
- (h) More than \$10,000,000.

FAR 36.204 -- Disclosure of the Magnitude of Construction Projects. The DFARS provides ranges between \$10,000,000 and 500,000,000. (the additional ranges are: \$10M - \$25M, \$25M - \$100 M, \$100M - \$250M, and \$250M - \$500M.) DFARS 236.204.

⁶ Beginning on 17 August 2000, the Contracting Officer may provide contract drawings and specifications solely in electronic format. DFARS 252.236-70001.

- (1) Contractors on the bidders list; and
 - (2) Organizations that maintain display rooms for such information.
- b) The contracting officer determines the geographical range of distribution.
- B. Government-wide Point of Entry (GPE). FAR 36.213, FAR 5.003. The contracting officer must also post the presolicitation notice in the GPE.

VII. SOLICITATION.

- A. Forms. FAR 36.701; FAR 53.301-1442, SF 1442, Solicitation, Offer, and Award (Construction, Alteration, or Repair); DFARS 236.701.
1. The contracting officer uses a SF 1442 in lieu of a SF 33.
 2. If a bidder fails to return this form with its offer, the offer is nonresponsive. See C.J.M. Contractors, Inc., B-250493.2, Nov. 24, 1992, 92-2 CPD ¶ 376.
- B. Supplemental Documents. The contracting officer may provide drawings, specifications, and maps in either hard-copy or completely in electronic format. DFARS 236.570 and 252.236-7001.
- C. Statutory Limitations. FAR 36.205; DFARS 252.236-7006.

1. The solicitation must include any statutory cost limitations.⁷ See K.C. Brandon Constr., B-245934, Feb. 3, 1992, 92-1 CPD ¶ 139; see also DFARS 252.236-7006(b), Cost Limitation (Jan 1997) (“[a] offeror which does not state separate prices for the items identified in the Schedule as subject to a cost limitation may be considered nonresponsive”).

2. The government must normally reject any offer that:
 - a) Exceeds the applicable statutory limitations;⁸ or
 - b) Is only within the statutory limitations because it is materially unbalanced.

See William G. Tadlock Constr., B-252580, June 29, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 502; H. Angelo & Co., B-249412, Nov. 13, 1992, 92-2 CPD ¶ 344.

3. Some statutory limitations are waivable. See 10 U.S.C. § 2853; see also TECOM, Inc., B-240421, Nov. 9, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 386.

⁷ FAR 36.205 -- Statutory Cost Limitations.

- (a) Contracts for construction shall not be awarded at a cost to the Government --
 - (1) In excess of statutory cost limitations, unless applicable limitations can be and are waived in writing for the particular contract; or
 - (2) Which, with allowances for Government-imposed contingencies and overhead, exceeds the statutory authorization.
- (b) Solicitations containing one or more items subject to statutory cost limitations shall state --
 - (1) The applicable cost limitation for each affected item in a separate schedule;
 - (2) That an offer which does not contain separately-priced schedules will not be considered; and
 - (3) That the price on each schedule shall include an approximate apportionment of all estimated direct costs, allocable indirect costs, and profit.
- (c) The Government shall reject an offer if its prices exceed applicable statutory limitations, unless laws or agency procedures provide pertinent exemptions. However, if it is in the Government's interest, the contracting officer may include a provision in the solicitation which permits the award of separate contracts for individual items whose prices are within or subject to applicable statutory limitations.
- (d) The Government shall also reject an offer if its prices are within statutory limitations only because it is materially unbalanced. An offer is unbalanced if its prices are significantly less than cost for some work, and overstated for other work.

⁸ The contracting officer may award separate contracts for individual items whose prices are within the applicable statutory limitations if: (1) the contracting officer included a provision that permits such awards in the solicitation; and (2) such awards are in the government's interest. FAR 36.205(c); FAR 52.214-19.

D. Site Familiarization Clauses.

1. Site Investigation and Conditions Affecting the Work. FAR 36.210; FAR 36.503; FAR 52.236-3.
 - a) By submitting a bid, a contractor acknowledges that it has investigated the job site and the conditions affecting the proposed work.
 - b) Among other things, a contractor is supposed to investigate:
 - (1) Conditions bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials;
 - (2) The availability of labor, water, electric power, and roads;
 - (3) Uncertainties of weather, river stages, tides, and similar physical conditions at the site;
 - (4) The conformation and condition of the ground;
 - (5) The character of needed equipment and facilities;
 - (6) The character, quality, and quantity of discoverable surface and subsurface materials and/or obstacles;
 - c) A contractor need not hire its own geologists or conduct extensive engineering efforts to verify conditions that it can reasonably infer from the solicitation or a site visit. See Michael-Mark Ltd., IBCA No. 2697, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,453.

See Aulson Roofing, Inc., ASBCA No. 37677, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,720; Fred Burgos Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 41395, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,706.

- d) A contractor must perform at the contract price if the contractor could have discovered a condition by a reasonable site investigation. H.B. Mac, Inc. v. United States, 153 F.3d 1338, 1346 (Fed. Cir. 1998) (“It is well settled that a contractor is charged with knowledge of the conditions that a pre-bid site visit would have revealed.”); see also Conner Brothers Const. Co., Inc. v United States, 65 Fed. Cl. 657, 673 (2005) (“A contractor who fails to perform an adequate site investigation bears the risk of any condition that it could have discovered if the investigation had been reasonable.”) Weeks Dredging & Contracting, Inc. v. United States, 13 Cl. Ct. 193 (1987); Avisco, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5802, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,172; Signal Contracting, Inc., ASBCA No. 44963, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,877; cf. I.M.I., Inc., B-233863, Jan. 11, 1989, 89-1 CPD ¶ 30.
- e) The government is not normally bound by the contractor’s interpretation of government data and representations not included in the solicitation. See Eagle Contracting, Inc., AGBCA No. 88-225-1, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,018.

2. Physical Data. FAR 36.504; FAR 52.236-4.

- a) The contracting officer may provide physical data for the convenience of the contractor.
- b) The government is not responsible for a contractor’s erroneous interpretations or conclusions. But see United Contractors v. United States, 177 Ct. Cl. 151, 368 F.2d 585 (Ct. Cl. 1966).

3. Changes After Bid Closing Date. The government is normally responsible for increased performance costs caused by changes at a site after the date of bid submission, even if offerors agree to extend the bid acceptance period. See Valley Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 6007, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,171.

E. Bid Guarantees. FAR 28.101; FAR 52.228-1; FAR 53.301-24, SF 24, Bid Bond.

- 1. A bid guarantee ensures that a bidder will:
 - a) Not withdraw its bid during the bid acceptance period; and

- b) Execute a written contract and furnish other required bonds at the time of contract award.

2. Requirement. FAR 28.101-1.

- a) The contracting officer must normally require a bid guarantee whenever the solicitation requires performance and payment bonds. Performance and payment bonds are required by the Miller Act, 40 U.S.C. 270a-270f) for construction contracts exceeding \$150,000, except as authorized by law. FAR 28.102-1. (See Section IX.B, below.)
- b) Contracting Officers may still require bid guarantees in construction contracts less than \$150,000. See, Lawson's Enterprises, Inc. Comp. Gen., B-286708, Jan. 31, 2001, 2001 CPD ¶ 36.
- c) The chief of the contracting office, however, may waive the requirement to provide a bid guarantee if the chief of the contracting office determines that it not in the government's best interest to require a bid guarantee (e.g., for overseas construction, emergency acquisitions, and sole-source contracts).

3. Form.

- a) The bid guarantee must be in the form required by the solicitation. See HR Gen. Maint. Corp. B-260404, May 16, 1995, 95-1 CPD ¶ 247; Concord Analysis, Inc., B-239730, Dec. 4, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 452. But see Mid-South Metals, Inc., B-257056, Aug. 23, 1994, 94-2 CPD ¶ 78.
- b) The FAR permits offerors to use surety bonds, postal money orders, certified checks, cashier's checks, irrevocable letters of credit, U.S. bonds, and/or cash. FAR 52.228-1. See Treasury Dep't Cir. 570 (listing acceptable commercial sureties).

- c) If a bidder uses an individual surety, the surety must provide a security interest in acceptable assets equal to the penal sum of the bond. FAR 28.203. See Paradise Const. Co., Comp. Gen. Dec. B-289144, 2001 CPD ¶ 192.
 - (1) The adequacy of an individual surety's offering is a matter of responsibility, not responsiveness. See Gene Quigley, Jr., B-241565, Feb. 19, 1991, 70 Comp. Gen. 273, 91-1 CPD ¶ 182. But see Harrison Realty Corp., B-254461.2, 93-2 CPD ¶ 345.
 - (2) A bidder may not be its own individual surety. See Astor V. Bolden, B-257038, Apr. 26, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 288.
- 4. Penal Amount. FAR 28.101-2 (b). The bid bond must equal 20% of the bid, but not exceed \$3,000,000. But see FAR 28.101-4(c).
- 5. The contracting officer may not accept a bid accompanied by an apparently unenforceable guarantee. Conservatek Indus., Inc., B-254927, Jan. 26, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 42; MKB Constructors, Inc., B-255098, Jan. 10, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 10; Arlington Constr., Inc., B-252535, July 9, 1993, 93-2 CPD ¶ 10; Cherokee Enter., Inc., B-252948, June 3, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 429; Hugo Key & Son, Inc., B-245227, Aug. 22, 1991, 91-2 CPD ¶ 189; Techno Eng'g & Constr., B-243932, July 23, 1991, 91-2 CPD ¶ 87; Maytal Constr. Corp., B-241501, Dec. 10, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 476; Bird Constr., B-240002, Sept. 19, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 234.
- 6. Noncompliance with Bid Guarantee Requirements. FAR 28.101-4.
 - a) Noncompliance with bid guarantee requirements normally renders a bid nonresponsive. See Alarm Control Co., B-246010, Nov. 18, 1991, 91-2 CPD ¶ 472.
 - b) The contracting officer, however, may waive the requirement to submit a bid guarantee under nine circumstances. FAR 28.101-4(c). See Rufus Murray Commercial Roofing Sys., B-258761, Feb. 14, 1995, 95-1 CPD ¶ 83; Apex Servs., Inc., B-255118, Feb. 9, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 95.

- F. Pre-Bid Conferences. FAR 14.207. Contracting officers may hold pre-bid conferences when necessary to brief bidders and explain complex specifications and requirements; however, client control is critical. See Cessna Aircraft Co., ASBCA No. 48118, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,560.
- G. Bid/Proposal Preparation Time. FAR 36.213-3. The contracting officer must give bidders ample time to conduct site visits, obtain subcontractor bids, examine data, and prepare estimates. See Raymond Int'l of Del., Inc., ASBCA No. 13121, 70-1 BCA ¶ 8,341.

VIII. AWARD.

- A. Responsiveness Issues.
 - 1. A bid is nonresponsive if it exceeds a statutory dollar limitation. FAR 36.205(c); DFARS 252.236-7006. See Ward Constr. Co., B-240064, July 30, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 87; Wynn Constr. Co., B-220649, Feb. 21, 1986, 86-1 CPD ¶ 184.
 - 2. A bid is nonresponsive if the bidder fails to comply with the bid guarantee requirements. FAR 28.101-4(a). See Maytal Constr. Corp., B-241501, Dec. 10, 1990, 90-2 CPD ¶ 476. But see FAR 28.101-4(c) (listing the nine circumstances under which the contracting officer may waive the requirement to submit a bid guarantee).
 - 3. A bid is nonresponsive if the bidder offers a shorter bid acceptance period than the solicitation requires. See SF 1442, Block 13D.
 - 4. A bid is nonresponsive if the bidder fails to acknowledge a material amendment. See Dutra Constr. Co., B-241202, Jan. 31, 1991, 91-1 CPD ¶ 97; see also MG Mako, Inc., B-404758, April 28, 2011, 2011 CPD ¶ 88 (affirming the agency's rejection of a proposal in response to an RFP for failing to acknowledge a material amendment).
 - 5. A bid is nonresponsive if the bidder fails to acknowledge a Davis-Bacon wage rate amendment unless the offeror is bound by a wage rate equal to or greater than the new rate. See Tri-Tech Int'l, Inc., B-246701, Mar. 23, 1992, 92-1 CPD ¶ 304; Fast Elec. Contractors, Inc., B-223823, Dec. 2, 1986, 86-2 CPD ¶ 627.

6. A bid is nonresponsive if the bidder equivocates on the requirement to obtain permits and licenses. See Bishop Contractors, Inc., B-246526, Dec. 17, 1991, 91-2 CPD ¶ 555.
7. A bid is nonresponsive if it is materially unbalanced. FAR 36.205(d); FAR 52.214-19.
 - a. The government may reject a bid if the bid prices are materially unbalanced between line items, or between subline items.
 - b. A bid is materially unbalanced when:
 - (1) The bid is based on prices that are significantly less than cost for some work, and significantly greater than cost for other work and there is reasonable doubt that the bid will result in the lowest overall cost to the government; or
 - (2) The bid is so unbalanced that it is tantamount to allowing the contractor to recover money in advance of performing the work.

B. Responsibility Issues.

1. Prequalification of Sources. DFARS 236.272. The contracting officer may establish a list of contractors that are qualified to perform a specific contract and limit competition to those contractors.
 - a) The HCA must: (1) determine that the project is so urgent or complex that prequalification is necessary; and (2) approve the prequalification procedures.
 - b) If the contracting officer finds a small business unqualified for responsibility reasons, the contracting officer must refer the matter to the Small Business Administration (SBA) for a preliminary recommendation.

- c) If the SBA determines that the small business is responsible, the contracting officer must allow it to submit a proposal.
2. Performance Evaluation Reports. FAR 36.201; FAR 42.1502; FAR 53.301-1420, SF 1420, Performance Evaluation, Construction Contracts; DFARS 236.201; AFARS 5136.201; DD Form 2626, Performance Evaluation (Construction).
- a) Contracting activities must prepare performance evaluation reports for:
 - (1) Construction contracts valued at \$650,000 or more;⁹ and
 - (2) Default terminated construction contracts regardless of contract value.
- FAR 42.1502(e).
- b) Upon their completion, contracting activities must send performance evaluation reports to: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Portland District, ATTN: CENWP-CT-I, P.O. Box 2946, Portland, OR 97208-2946. Available on-line at: <http://www.nwp.usace.army.mil/ct/i/>. You may also reach this data through: www.usace.army.mil.
 - c) Contracting officers may use performance evaluation reports as part of their preaward survey.¹⁰
3. Small Businesses. FAR 19.602. Before a contracting officer can reject a small business as nonresponsible, the contracting officer must refer the matter to the SBA for a Certificate of Competency (COC).

⁹ In the Army, contracting activities must prepare performance evaluation reports for each order placed under a JOC of \$550,000 or more. AFARS 36.201(a)(1).

¹⁰ Within DOD, the contracting officer must use performance evaluation reports if the agency expects the proposed contract to exceed \$1.5 million. DFARS 236.201; PGI 236.201

4. Performance of Work by Contractor. FAR 36.501; FAR 52.236-1.
 - a) To assure adequate interest in and supervision of all work involved in larger projects, the contractor shall be required to perform a significant part of the contract work with its own forces. The Contracting Officer has discretion to determine the appropriate amount for the specific project, but it is ordinarily not less than 12 percent.
 - b) FAR clause 52.236-1 (Performance of Work by the Contractor) shall be inserted in solicitations and contracts when the fixed-price construction contract is expected to exceed \$1.5 million.
 - c) FAR clause 52.236-1 (Performance of Work by the Contractor) does not apply to small business or 8(a) set-asides. FAR 36.501(b). But see FAR clause 52.219-14.
 - d) Whether a contractor intends to perform the contractually required percentage of work with its own forces is normally a matter of responsibility, not responsiveness. See *Luther Constr. Co.*, B-241719, Jan. 28, 1991, 91-1 CPD ¶ 76. But see *Blount, Inc. v. United States*, 22 Cl. Ct. 221 (1990); *C. Iber & Sons, Inc.*, B-247920.2, Aug. 12, 1992, 92-2 CPD ¶ 99.

C. Price Evaluation.

1. The contracting officer must evaluate additive items properly. DFARS 236.303-70; DFARS 252.236-7007.
2. The contracting officer must award the contract to the bidder who submits the low bid for the base project and the additive items which, in order of priority, provide the most features within the applicable funding constraints.
3. The contracting officer must select the low bidder based on the funding available at the time of bid opening. See *Huntington Constr., Inc.*, B-230604, June 30, 1988, 67 Comp. Gen. 499, 88-1 CPD ¶ 619; *Applicators Inc.*, B-270162, Feb. 1, 1996, 96-1 CPD ¶ 32.

IX. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION.

- A. Preconstruction Orientation. FAR 36.212. See FAR 52.236-26; see also FAR 22.406-1; DFARS 222.406-1.
1. The contracting officer must inform successful offerors of significant matters of interest (e.g., statutory matters, subcontracting plan requirements, contract administration matters, etc.).
 2. The contracting officer may issue an explanatory preconstruction letter or hold a preconstruction conference.
- B. Performance and Payment Bonds.
1. Requirements. 40 U.S.C. §§ 270a-270f; FAR 28.102-1.
 - a) Contracts Over \$150,000. FAR 28.102-1(a); FAR 28.102-3(a); FAR 52.228-15. The contractor must provide performance and payment bonds before it can begin work. See TLC Servs., Inc., B-254972.2, Mar. 30, 1994, 94-1 CPD ¶ 235.
 - b) Contracts Between \$30,000 and \$150,000. FAR 28.102-1(b); FAR 28.102-3(b); FAR 52.228-13.
 - (1) The contracting officer must select two or more of the following payment protections:
 - (a) Payment bonds;
 - (b) Irrevocable letters of credit;¹¹
 - (c) Tripartite escrow agreements; or

¹¹ The contracting officer is supposed to give “particular consideration” to including irrevocable letters of credit as one of the selected payment protections. FAR 28.102-1(b).

- (d) Certificates of deposit.
 - (2) The contractor must submit one of the selected payment protections before it can begin work.
- 2. Performance Bonds. FAR 28.102-2(a); FAR 52.228-15; FAR 53.301-25, SF 25, Performance Bond.
 - a) Performance bonds protect the government.
 - b) The penal amount of the bond is normally 100% of the original contract price.
 - (1) The contracting officer may reduce the penal amount if the contracting officer determines that a lesser amount adequately protects the government.
 - (2) The contracting officer may require additional protection if the contract price increases.
- 3. Payment Bonds. FAR 28.102-2(b); FAR 52.228-15; FAR 53.301-25-A, SF 25-A, Payment Bond.
 - a) Payment bonds protect subcontractors and suppliers.
 - b) The penal amount must equal 100% of the original contract price unless the contracting officer determines, in writing, that requiring a payment bond in that amount is impractical.
 - (1) If the contracting officer determines that requiring a payment bond in an amount equal to 100% of the original contract price is impractical, the contracting officer must set the penal amount of the bond.
 - (2) The amount of the payment bond may never be less than the amount of the performance bond.

See Construction Industry Payment Protection Act of 1999, Pub. L. No. 106-49, 113 Stat. 231.

4. Noncompliance with Bond Requirements. Failure to provide acceptable bonds justifies terminating the contract for default. FAR 52.228-1. See Pacific Sunset Builders, Inc., ASBCA No. 39312, 93-3 BCA ¶ 25,923; see also Airport Indus. Park, Inc. v. United States, 59 Fed.Cl. 332, 334-35 (2004) (“[F]ailure to furnish adequate bonding [as] required by a government ... contract is a material breach that justifies termination for default.”).

5. Withholding Contract Payments. FAR 28.106-7.
 - a) During Contract Performance. The contracting officer should not withhold payments. FAR 28.106-7(a). But see Balboa Ins. Co. v. United States, 775 F.2d 1158 (Fed. Cir. 1985); National Surety Corp., 31 Fed. Cl. 565 (1994); Johnson v. All-State Const., 329 F.3d 848 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (Government was entitled to withhold progress payments pursuant to its common-law right to set-off pending liquidated damages).

 - b) After Contract Completion. The contracting officer must withhold final payment if the surety provides written notice regarding the contractor’s failure to pay its subcontractors or suppliers.
 - (1) The surety must agree to hold the government harmless.

 - (2) The contracting officer may release final payment if:
 - (a) The parties reach an agreement; or

 - (b) A court determines the parties’ rights.

 - c) Labor Violations. See generally FAR Part 22.

6. Waiver Provisions. 10 U.S.C. §§ 270a(b) and 270e; FAR 28.102-1(a).

- a) The contracting officer may waive the requirement to provide performance and payment bonds if:
 - (1) The contractor performs the work in a foreign country and the contracting officer determines that it is impracticable to require the contractor to provide the bonds; or
 - (2) The Miller Act (or another statute) authorizes the waiver.
- b) The Service Secretaries may waive the requirement to provide performance and payment bonds for cost-type contracts.

C. Differing Site Conditions (DSC). FAR 52.236-2.

- 1. This clause allows for an equitable adjustment if the contractor provides prompt, written notice of a differing site condition.
- 2. There are two types of differing site conditions. See Renda Marine, Inc. v. United States, 509 F.3d 1372, 1376 (Fed. Cir. 2007); Consolidated Constr., Inc., GSBCA No. 8871, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,811.
 - a) Type I Differing Site Conditions. To recover for a Type I condition, the contractor must prove that:
 - (1) The contract either implicitly or explicitly indicated a particular site condition. See Franklin Pavkov Constr. Co., HUD BCA No. 93-C-C13, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,078; Glagola Constr. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 45579, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,179; Konoike Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 36342, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,440; cf. Jack L. Olsen, Inc., AGBCA No. 87-345-1, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,767.
 - (2) The contractor reasonably interpreted and relied on the contract indications. See Nova Group, Inc., ASBCA No. 55408, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34533 (finding that it was reasonable for the contractor to rely upon the boring logs and geotechnical reports to prepare its bid and that the contractor reasonably interpreted the logs and reports as

indicating weak subsurface conditions); R.D. Brown Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 43973, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,368.

- (3) The contractor encountered latent or subsurface conditions that differed materially from those indicated in the contract. See *Winter v. Cath-dr/Balti Joint Venture*, 497 F.3d 1339 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (upholding a Type I differing site condition claim recovery for encountered roofing materials that differed materially from those anticipated); see also *Meredith Constr. Co.*, ASBCA No. 40839, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,399; *Caesar Constr., Inc.*, ASBCA No. 41059, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,639.
- (4) The claimed costs were attributable solely to the differing site condition. See *P.J. Dick, Inc.*, GSBCA No. 12036, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,073.

b) Type II Differing Site Conditions. To recover for a Type II condition, the contractor must prove that:

- (1) The conditions encountered were unusual physical conditions that were unknown at the time of contract award. See *Walser v. United States*, 23 Cl. Ct. 591 (1991); *Gulf Coast Trailing Co.*, ENG BCA No. 5795, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,921; *Soletanche Rodio Nicholson (JV)*, ENG BCA No. 5796, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,472.
- (2) The conditions differed materially from those ordinarily encountered. See *Green Constr. Co.*, ASBCA No. 46157, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,572; *Virginia Beach Air Conditioning Corp.*, ASBCA No. 42538, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,432; *Parker Excavating, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 54637, 06-01 BCA ¶ 33217 (“A Type II differing site condition requires proof of the recognized and usual physical conditions at the work site, proof of the actual physical conditions, proof that the conditions differed from the known and the usual, and proof that the different conditions caused an increase in contract performance.”)

3. The DSC clause only covers conditions existing at the time of contract award. Acts of nature occurring after contract award are not differing site conditions. See *Arundel Corp. v. United States*, 96 Ct. Cl. 77, 354 F.2d

252 (1942); Meredith Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 40839, 93-1 BCA ¶ 25,399; PK Contractors, Inc., ENG BCA No. 4901, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,583. But see Valley Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 6007, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,171; but see Kilgallon Constr. Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 51601, 01-2 BCA ¶ 31,621 (“It [plaintiff] must also prove that interaction of the rain with the pre-existing and unknown site condition produced unforeseeable consequences, i.e., in this case, that unknown soils exhibited behavior or properties when saturated that were not reasonably anticipated.”).

4. The contractor may not recover if the contractor could have discovered the condition during a reasonable site investigation. See O.K. Johnson Elec. Co., VABCA No. 3464, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,505; cf. Urban General Contractors, Inc., ASBCA No. 49653, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,516; Indelsea, S.A., ENG BCA No. PCC-117, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,633; Steele Contractors, Inc., ENG BCA No. 6043, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,653; Operational Serv. Corp., ASBCA No. 37059, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,190; Sagebrush Consultants, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,159 (IBCA), and American Constr., 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,202.
5. The contractor cannot create its own differing site condition. See Geo-Con, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5749, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,359.
6. The contractor must prove its damages. See H.V. Allen Co., ASBCA No. 40645, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,393; see also Praught Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 39670, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,896.
7. The contractor must promptly notify the government. See Engineering Tech. Consultants, S.A., ASBCA No. 43376, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,100.
 - a) Untimely notification may bar a differing site condition claim if the late notice prejudices the government. See Moon Constr. Co. v. General Servs. Admin., GSBCA No. 11766, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,017; see also Hemphill Contracting Co., ENG BCA No. 5698, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,491; Meisel Rohrbau, ASBCA No. 35566, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,434; Holloway Constr., Holloway Sand & Gravel Co., ENG BCA No. 4805, 89-2 BCA ¶ 21,713.
 - b) If the government’s defense to a differing site condition claim is made more difficult—but not impossible—by the late notice, courts and boards will normally waive the notice requirement and

place a heavier burden of persuasion on the contractor. See Glagola Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 45579, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,179.

- c) When the government is on notice of differing site conditions, but takes no exception to the contractor's notice or its corrective actions, the government must pay the contractor's increased costs. See Potomac Marine & Aviation, Inc., ASBCA No. 42417, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,865; Parker Excavating, Inc., ASBCA No. 54637, 06-01 BCA ¶ 33217 ("The written notice requirements are not construed hypertechnically to deny legitimate contractor claims when the government was otherwise aware of the operative facts.")
- d) Lack of notice of a differing site condition will not bar a contractor's recovery when the government breaches its duty to cooperate by failing to designate an inspector to whom the contractor may give notice during scheduled weekend work. See Hudson Contracting, Inc., ASBCA No. 41023, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,466.

8. No DSC claim if the contract does not contain the DSC clause. See Marine Industries Northwest, Inc., ASBCA No. 51942, 01-1 BCA ¶ 31,201 (board rejected a Type II DSC claims solely on the basis that there was no DSC clause in the contract. Without the DSC clause, the contractor bears complete risk for any differing conditions encountered); see also Stewartsville Postal Properties, LLC, PSBCA No. 6309, 10-2 BCA ¶ 34559 ("The lease did not include a differing site conditions or changes clause that could result in recovery were Appellant able to prove the required underlying factual conditions.").

9. Final payment bars an unreserved differing site condition claim. FAR 52.236-2(d).

D. Variations in Estimated Quantity. FAR 52.211-18.

1. A fixed-price contract may include estimated quantities for unit-priced items of work.

2. If the actual quantity of a unit-priced item varies more than 15% above or below the estimated quantity, the contracting officer must equitably adjust the contract based on “any increase or decrease in costs due solely to the variation.” See Clement-Mtarri Cos., ASBCA No. 38170, 92-3 BCA ¶ 25,192, aff’d sub nom., Shannon v. Clement-Mtarri Cos., No. 93-1268, 12 FPD ¶ 114 (Fed. Cir. 1993); cf. Westland Mechanical, Inc., ASBCA No. 48844, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,419.

3. Whether a party may demand repricing of work that falls outside the 15% range, or whether the original contract unit price controls, is now settled. Adjustments are based on the difference between the unit cost of the original work, and the unit cost of the work outside the allowable variation range. Foley Co. v. United States, 11 F.3d 1092 (Fed. Cir. 1993). But see TECOM, Inc., ASBCA No. 44122, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,483.

4. The contractor may request a performance period extension if the variation in the estimated quantity causes an increase in the performance period.

E. Suspension of Work. FAR 52.242-14.

1. The contracting officer may suspend, interrupt, or delay work for the convenience of the government. See Valquest Contracting, Inc., ASBCA No. 32454, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,381.

2. A government delay is compensable if:
 - a) It is unreasonable. See Southwest Constr. Corp., ENG BCA No. 5286, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,120; C&C Plumbing & Heating, ASBCA No. 44270, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,063; Kimmins Contracting Corp., ASBCA No. 46390, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,869; F.G. Haggerty Plumbing Co., VABCA No. 4482, 95-2 BCA ¶ 27,671.

 - b) The contracting officer orders it. See Mergentime Corp., ENG BCA No. 5765, 92-2 BCA ¶ 25,007; Durocher Dock & Dredge, Inc., ENG BCA No. 5768, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,145. But see Fruehauf Corp. v. United States, 218 Ct. Cl. 456, 587 F.2d 486 (1978); Asphalt Roads & Materials Co., ASBCA No. 43625, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,544; Henderson, Inc., DOT BCA No. 2423, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,728; Lane Constr. Corp., ENG BCA No. 5834, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,358.

- c) The contractor has not caused the suspension by its (or its subcontractor's) negligence or failure to perform. See *Hvac Constr. Co., Inc. v. United States*, 28 Fed. Cl. 690 (1993).
 - d) The cost of performance increases. See *Missile Sys., Inc.*, ASBCA No. 46079, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,091; *Frazier-Fleming Co.*, ASBCA No. 34537, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,378.
3. The contractor may be entitled to delay costs (even if it finishes work on time) if it proves that it planned to finish the work early, but was delayed by the government. See *Oneida Constr., Inc.*, ASBCA No. 44194, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,237; *Labco Constr., Inc.*, AGBCA No. 90-115-1, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,910.
 4. The contractor may not recover delay costs where the government provides greater access to a work site for a portion of the performance period, without binding the government to increased access for the duration of the entire contract, and the government then restricts access to the original contract requirements. *Atherton Construction, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 48527, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,968. (In a family housing renovation contract, the government provided access to more than the contractually required 14 dwelling units for a period of 48 days. Unilateral action by the government, no recovery allowed.)
 5. A contractor may be entitled to a performance period extension even if the delay is reasonable. A contractor also may raise government delay as a defense to a default termination or an assessment of liquidated damages. See *Farr Bros., Inc.*, ASBCA No. 42658, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,991.
 6. If both the contractor and the government contribute to a delay and the causes of the delay are so intertwined that the periods and costs of delay cannot be apportioned clearly, neither party can recover for the delay. See *Wilner v. United States*, 994 F.2d 783, 786 (Fed. Cir. 1993); cf. *G. Bliudzius Contractors*, ASBCA No. 42366, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,074.
 7. Profit is not recoverable and final payment bars unreserved suspension claims.
 8. Constructive Suspensions.

- a) A constructive suspension of work may arise if:
 - (1) The government fails to issue a notice to proceed within a reasonable time after contract award. See Marine Constr. & Dredging, Inc., ASBCA No. 38412, 95-1 BCA ¶ 27,286.
 - (2) The government fails to provide timely guidance following a reasonable request for direction. See Tayag Bros. Enters., Inc., ASBCA No. 42097, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,962.
- b) A contractor may not recover delay costs for more than 20 days unless the contractor notifies the government of the delay. FAR 52.242-14. This rule, however, is subject to a prejudice test.

F. Permits and Responsibilities. FAR 52.236-7.

- 1. A contractor must obtain applicable permits and licenses (and comply with applicable laws and regulations) at no additional cost to the government. See GEM Eng'g Co., DOT BCA No. 2574, 94-3 BCA ¶ 27,202; C'n R Indus. of Jacksonville, Inc., ASBCA No. 42209, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,970; Holk Dev., Inc., ASBCA No. 40137, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,852. But see Hills Materials v. Rice, 982 F.2d 514 (Fed. Cir. 1992); Hemphill Contracting Co., ENG BCA No. 5698, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,491.
- 2. Burden on contractor is continuing and applies to requirements arising after contract award. See Shirley Const. Co., ASBCA No. 42954, 92-1 BCA ¶ 24,563 (“It is well established that the Permits and Responsibilities clause requires contractors to comply with laws and regulations issued subsequent to award without additional compensation unless there is another clause in the contract that limits the clause to laws and regulations in effect at the time of award.”).
- 3. Normally, licensing is a question of responsibility, not responsiveness. See Restec Contractors, Inc., B-245862, Feb. 6, 1992, 92-1 CPD ¶ 154; Chem-Spray-South, Inc., B-400928.2, June 25, 2009, 2009 CPD ¶ 144; Computer Support Sys., Inc., B-239034, Aug. 2, 1990, 69 Comp. Gen. 645, 90-2 CPD ¶ 94. But see Bishop Contractors, Inc., B-246526, Dec. 17, 1991, 91-2 CPD ¶ 555.

4. A contractor assumes the risk of loss or damage to its equipment.¹² In addition, a contractor is responsible for injuries to third persons. See Potashnick Constr., Inc., ENG BCA No. 5551, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,985; Aulson Roofing, Inc., ASBCA No. 37677, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,720.
5. A contractor is responsible for work in progress until the government accepts it. See Labco Constr., Inc., ASBCA No. 44945, 93-3 BCA ¶ 26,027; Tyler Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 39365, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,646; D.J. Barclay & Co., ASBCA No. 28908, 88-2 BCA ¶ 20,741. But see Fraser Eng'g Co., VABCA No. 3265, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,223; Joseph Beck & Assocs., ASBCA No. 31126, 88-1 BCA ¶ 20,428.

G. Specifications and Drawings. FAR 52.236-21; DFARS 252.236-7001.

1. The omission or misdescription of details of work that are necessary to carry out the intent of the contract drawings and specifications (or are customarily performed) does not relieve a contractor from its obligation to perform the omitted or misdescribed details of work. A contractor must perform as if the drawings and specifications describe the details fully and correctly. See Wood & Co. v. Dep't of Treasury, GSBCA No. 12452-TD, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,365; Single Ply Sys., Inc., ASBCA No. 42168, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,032.
2. The contractor must review all drawings before beginning work, and the contractor is responsible for any errors that a reasonable review would have detected. M.A. Mortenson Co., ASBCA 50,383, 00-2 BCA ¶ 30,936, (denying Mortenson's claim based on omissions in construction drawings), But see Wick Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 35378, 89-1 BCA ¶ 21,239.

¹² The contractor may bear similar responsibilities under a Government Furnished Property clause. FAR 52.245-4. See Technical Servs. K.H. Nehlsen GmbH, ASBCA No. 43869, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,377.

3. If the specifications contain provisions that conflict with the contract drawings, the specifications govern. The parties may rely on this order of precedence regardless of whether an ambiguity is patent. See Hensel Phelps Constr. Co., 886 F.2d 1296 (Fed. Cir. 1989); Shemya Constructors, ASBCA No. 45251, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,346; Rohr, Inc., ASBCA No. 44193, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,871. But see J.S. Alberici Constr. Co v. General Servs. Admin, GSBCA No. 12386, 94-2 BCA ¶ 26,776. Contracts that contain specifications for alternative CLINs are not conflicting. Fort Myer Construction Corporation v. U.S., Fed. Cir. 2000 (unpub. 24 Jan 2000).
4. The government cannot shift the responsibility for defective design specifications to a contractor through the use of a disclaimer. White v. Edsall Const. Co., Inc., 296 F.3d 1081 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (contractor is not obligated to “ferret out” hidden ambiguities and errors in the Government’s specifications and designs.)

H. Liquidated Damages (LDs). FAR 11.502; FAR 36.206; FAR 52.211-12, DFARS Subpart 211.5.

1. The government may assess LDs if:
 - a) The parties intended to provide for LDs;
 - b) Anticipated damages attributable to untimely performance were uncertain or difficult to quantify at the time of award; and
 - c) The LDs bear a reasonable relationship to anticipated government losses resulting from delayed completion.

See K-Con Bldg. Systems, Inc. v. United States, 97 Fed. Cl. 41 (2011) (Contractor failed to establish that the liquidated damages rate of \$551 per day was an unreasonable forecast of the damages that the Government would sustain in the event of contractor’s breach of contract for the design and construction of prefabricated metal building, and therefore, contracted-for liquidated damages clause was enforceable); see also D.E.W., Inc., ASBCA No. 38392, 92-2 BCA ¶ 24,840; Brooks Lumber Co., ASBCA No. 40743, 91-2 BCA ¶ 23,984; JEM Dev. Corp., ASBCA No. 42645, 91-3 BCA ¶ 24,428; Dave’s Excavation, ASBCA No. 35956, 88-3 BCA ¶ 20,911; P&D Contractors, Inc. v. United States, 25 Cl. Ct. 237 (1992).

2. If the damage forecast was reasonable, the government may assess LDs even if it did not incur any actual damages. See Cegers v. United States, 7 Cl. Ct. 615 (1985); American Constr. Co., ENG BCA No. 5728, 91-2 BCA ¶ 24,009. But see Atlantic Maint. Co., ASBCA No. 40454, 96-2 BCA ¶ 28,323. Using a rate from an agency manual that is part of its procurement regulations is presumed reasonable. See Fred A. Arnold, Inc. v. United States, 18 Cl. Ct. 1 (1989), aff'd in part, 979 F.2d 217 (Fed. Cir. 1992); JEM Dev. Corp., ASBCA No. 45912, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,407.
3. The government may not assess LDs if a project is substantially complete. See Hill Constr. Corp., ASBCA No. 43615, 93-3 BCA ¶ 25,973; Wilton Corp., ASBCA No. 39876, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,897.
4. The government may not assess LDs if it is partly responsible for the completion delay. See H.G. Reynolds Co., Inc., ASBCA No. 42351, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,797.
5. A contractor may be excused from LDs if it shows that the delay was: (a) excusable or beyond its control; and (b) without the fault or negligence of it or its subcontractors. See Potomac Marine & Aviation, Inc., ASBCA No. 42417, 93-2 BCA ¶ 25,865; K-Con Bldg. Systems, Inc. v. United States, 97 Fed. Cl. 41, 56 (2011) (“A contractor seeking the remission of liquidated damages on account of excusable delay bears the burden of proving ‘the extent of the excusable delay to which it is entitled.’”) quoting Sauer Inc. v. Danzig, 224 F.3d 1340, 1345 (Fed. Cir. 2000).
6. Contracting officers must ensure that project completion dates are reasonable to avoid having contractors “pad” their bids to protect against LDs.
7. Another contract clause that sets an alternate rate of compensation for standby time may be enforceable, even if it is quite high, if it serves a different purpose in the contract than a liquidated damages clause. See Stapp Towing Co., ASBCA No. 41584, 94-1 BCA ¶ 26,465.

I. Use/Possession Prior to Completion. FAR 52.236-11.

1. The government may take possession of a construction project prior to its completion (beneficial occupancy).
2. Possession does not necessarily constitute acceptance. See Tyler Constr. Co., ASBCA No. 39365, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,646. The contractor must complete a project as required by the contract, including all “punch list” items. See Toombs & Co., ASBCA No. 34590, 91-1 BCA ¶ 23,403.
3. The contractor is not responsible for any loss or damage that the government causes. See Fraser Eng’g Co., *supra*.
4. The contractor may be due an equitable adjustment if possession by the government causes a delay.

X. CONCLUSION.

ATTACHMENT - DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS (DSC)

What a Contractor Must Show to Recover for DSCs.

| TYPE I | TYPE II |
|---|--|
| Contract documents either implicitly or explicitly indicate a particular site condition. | Conditions encountered were unusual physical conditions that were not known about at time of contract award. |
| Contractor reasonably interpreted and relied upon the contract indications. | Conditions differed materially from those ordinarily encountered. |
| Contractor encountered latent/subsurface conditions that differed materially from the conditions indicated in the contract and were reasonably unforeseeable. | |
| Contractor incurred increased costs that were solely attributable to the DSC. | Contractor incurred increased costs that were solely attributable to the DSC. |
| <u>Note:</u> 1. If the government made no representations and provided no information, contractor cannot recover. 2. If the contractor discovers the differing conditions prior to bid opening, reliance is unreasonable. | <u>Examples:</u> unexpected soil conditions, old dump at site, buried hazardous materials |

NOTES:

1. DSC clause only covers conditions existing at the time of award. Acts of nature occurring after award are not DSCs.
2. A contractor may not recover if the contractor could have discovered the condition during a reasonable site investigation.
3. Recovery for DSC is not available if the contract does not contain the DSC clause.

Chapter 30
Contingency &
Deployment Contracting



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 30

CONTINGENCY AND DEPLOYMENT CONTRACTING

| | |
|--|-----------|
| I. REFERENCES..... | 1 |
| II. INTRODUCTION..... | 2 |
| A. GENERAL..... | 2 |
| B. LEGAL SUPPORT TO OPERATIONS..... | 3 |
| C. APPLICABLE LAW DURING A DEPLOYMENT..... | 4 |
| III. DEPLOYMENT CONTRACTING AUTHORITY, PLANNING, PERSONNEL, AND ORGANIZATION. 7 | |
| A. CONTRACT VERSUS COMMAND AUTHORITY..... | 7 |
| B. PLANNING..... | 8 |
| C. DEPLOYMENT CONTRACTING PERSONNEL..... | 11 |
| D. SOURCES OF CONTRACTED SUPPORT IN A CONTINGENCY OPERATION..... | 16 |
| E. THEATER CONTRACTING SUPPORT ORGANIZATIONAL OPTIONS..... | 20 |
| IV. REQUIREMENTS GENERATION, APPROVAL, AND CONTRACTING PROCESS..... | 23 |
| A. GENERAL..... | 23 |
| B. REQUIREMENTS APPROVAL PROCESS..... | 25 |
| C. THEATER BUSINESS CLEARANCE (TBC) / CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION DELEGATION (CAD)..... | 28 |
| V. CONTRACTING DURING A DEPLOYMENT..... | 29 |
| A. GENERAL..... | 29 |
| B. COMPETITION REQUIREMENTS..... | 29 |
| C. METHODS OF ACQUISITION – SEALED BIDDING..... | 33 |
| D. METHODS OF ACQUISITION – NEGOTIATIONS..... | 34 |
| E. SIMPLIFIED ACQUISITION PROCEDURES..... | 35 |
| F. USE OF EXISTING CONTRACTS TO SATISFY REQUIREMENTS..... | 44 |
| G. ALTERNATIVE METHODS FOR FULFILLING REQUIREMENTS..... | 44 |
| H. LEASES OF REAL PROPERTY..... | 46 |
| VI. POLICING THE CONTRACTING BATTLEFIELD..... | 46 |
| A. RATIFICATION OF CONTRACTS EXECUTED BY UNAUTHORIZED GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL..... | 46 |
| B. EXTRAORDINARY CONTRACTUAL ACTIONS..... | 48 |
| C. QUANTUM MERUIT..... | 48 |
| D. CONTRACT DISPUTES ACT (CDA) CLAIMS..... | 49 |
| VII. CONCLUSION..... | 49 |

CHAPTER 30

CONTINGENCY AND DEPLOYMENT CONTRACTING

I. REFERENCES.

- A. GENERAL SERVS. ADMIN. ET AL., FEDERAL ACQUISITION REG. (Jan. 2011) [hereinafter FAR]; U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, DEFENSE FEDERAL ACQUISITION REG. SUPP. (Jan. 2011) [hereinafter DFARS]; service supplements.
- B. JOINT CHIEFS OF STAFF, JOINT PUB. 4-0, JOINT LOGISTICS (18 Jul. 2008) [hereinafter JP 4-0].
- C. JOINT CHIEFS OF STAFF, JOINT PUB. 4-10, OPERATIONAL CONTRACT SUPPORT (17 Oct. 2008) [hereinafter JP 4-10].
- D. UNDER SECRETARY OF DEFENSE, ACQUISITION, TECHNOLOGY, AND LOGISTICS, DEFENSE PROCUREMENT AND ACQUISITION POLICY, CONTINGENCY CONTRACTING, DEFENSE CONTINGENCY CONTRACTING HANDBOOK: ESSENTIAL TOOLS, INFORMATION, AND TRAINING TO MEET CONTINGENCY CONTRACTING NEEDS FOR THE 21ST CENTURY A JOINT HANDBOOK FOR THE 21ST CENTURY (June 2010).
- E. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 715-9, CONTRACTORS ACCOMPANYING THE FORCE (29 Oct. 1999) [hereinafter AR 715-9].
- F. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 700-137, LOGISTICS CIVIL AUGMENTATION PROGRAM (LOGCAP) (16 Dec. 1985) [hereinafter AR 700-37].
- G. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, FIELD MANUAL 1-04 (FORMERLY 27-100), LEGAL SUPPORT TO THE OPERATIONAL ARMY (Apr. 2009) [hereinafter FM 1-04].
- H. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, FIELD MANUAL 3-100.21, CONTRACTORS ON THE BATTLEFIELD (Jan. 2003) [hereinafter FM 3-100.21].

- I. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, FIELD MANUAL 4-92 (FORMERLY 100-10-2), CONTRACTING SUPPORT BRIGADE (Feb. 2010) [hereinafter FM 4-92].
- J. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, FIELD MANUAL 1-06 (FORMERLY 14-100), FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT OPERATIONS (Sept. 2006) [hereinafter FM 1-06].
- K. Army Sustainment Command (ASC), Contractor on the Battlefield Resource Library, *available at* <http://www.aschq.army.mil/home/BattlefieldResourceLibrary.aspx> (containing links to contingency contractor personnel related materials and websites).
- L. Assistant Sec'y of the Army (Acquisition, Logistics and Tech.), Contingency Contracting and Contractor on the Battlefield Library, *available at* <https://www.alt.army.mil/portal/page/portal/oasaalt/SAAL-ZP-Contingency-Contracting> (containing links to materials relevant to contingency contracting; deployments; contingency contractor personnel; suggested contracting clauses; contingency contracting articles; etc.).
- M. CENTCOM Contracting Command (C3) Training and Policy Webpage, *located at* <http://c3-training.net/> (containing training materials, checklists, policy documents, acquisition instructions, and contract clauses).

II. INTRODUCTION.

- A. Operations Enduring Freedom (OEF) and Iraqi Freedom (OIF) re-emphasized the role of contingency contracting as a force multiplier for deployed forces. FM 3-100.21 provides:

Whether it bridges gaps prior to the arrival of military support resources, when host-nation support is not available or augments existing support capabilities, contractor support is an additional option for supporting operations. When considering contractor support, it should be understood that **it is more than just logistics; it spans the spectrum of combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) functions.** Contracted support often includes traditional goods and services support, but may include interpreter, communications, infrastructure, and other non-logistic-related support. It also has applicability to the full range of Army operations, to include offense,

defense, stability, and support within all types of military actions from small-scale contingencies to major theater of wars.

In the initial stages of an operation, supplies and services provided by local contractors improve response time and free strategic airlift and sealift for other priorities. Contractor support drawn from in-theater resources can augment existing support capabilities to provide a new source for critically needed supplies and services, thereby reducing dependence on the continental United States (CONUS) based support system. When military force caps are imposed on an operation, contractor support can give the commander the flexibility of increasing his combat power by substituting combat units for military support units. This force-multiplier effect permits the combatant commander to have sufficient support in the theater, while strengthening the joint force's fighting capability. At the conclusion of operations, contractors can also facilitate early redeployment of military personnel.

Id. paras. 1-2 to 1-3.

B. Doctrine covering legal support to operations provides that the Staff Judge Advocates –contract law responsibilities include furnishing legal advice and assistance to procurement officials during all phases of the contracting process.” FM 1-04, para. 5-40. Specifically, JAs are to provide –legal advice to the command concerning battlefield acquisition, contingency contracting, use of logistics civil augmentation program, acquisition and cross-servicing agreements . . . and overseas real estate and construction.” *Id.*

1. Legal Counsel participate fully in the acquisition process, make themselves continuously available to their clients, involve themselves early in the contracting process, communicate closely with procurement officials and contract lawyers in the technical supervision chain, and provide legal and business advice as part of the contract management team. *Id.* para. 5-41; *see also* AFARS 5101.602-2(c) (describing contracting officers' use of legal counsel).
2. Judge Advocates should take the lead in advocating expeditionary contracting preparation. FM 1-04, para. G-8.

3. To provide contract law support in operations, JAs with contract law experience or training should be assigned to division and corps level main and tactical command posts, TSC headquarters, theater army headquarters, and each joint and multinational headquarters. Depending on mission requirements, command structure, and the dollar value and/or complexity of contracting actions, contract law support may be required at various command levels including brigade or battalion. *Id.* paras. 5-41 to 5-42.
4. Judge Advocates may be assigned as Command Judge Advocate or Deputy Command Judge Advocate for a Contract Support Brigade (CSB). These JAs serve as the primary legal advisors to CSB commanders, staff, and contracting officials on the full spectrum of legal and policy issues affecting the CSBs peacetime and operational missions. FM 4-92, para. 1-13. Judge Advocates at sustainment brigades, theater sustainment brigades, and expeditionary sustainment brigades perform similar functions. FM 1-04, para. 5-42. Judge Advocates assigned to these and other contracting organizations should have contract law training. *Id.*
5. After action reports (AAR) from Iraq and Afghanistan consistently indicate that JAs throughout both theaters, regardless of the position to which they are assigned (including brigade judge advocates), daily practiced fiscal law. These same AARs indicated that while most JAs encountered contract law issues less frequently, they needed an understanding of basic contract law principles to intelligibly conduct fiscal law analyses. For JAs assigned to contracting or logistics heavy units, knowledge of contract law was a prerequisite to their daily duties.

C. Applicable Law During a Deployment. Contracting during a deployment involves two main bodies of law: international law, and U.S. contract and fiscal law. FM 1-04, para. 5-39. Attorneys must understand the authorities and limitations imposed by these two bodies of law.

1. International Law.

- a. The Law of War – Combat. The Law of War applies during combat operations and imposes limitations, for example, on the use of prisoners of war (PW) for labor.
- b. The Law of War – Occupation. The Law of War also applies during occupation, and may also be followed as a guide when no other body of law clearly applies, such as in Somalia in Operation Restore Hope.
- c. International Agreements. A variety of international agreements, such as treaties and status of forces agreements (SOFA) may apply. These agreements can have substantial impact on contingency contracting by, for example, limiting the ability of foreign corporations from operating inside the local nation, placing limits and tariffs on imports, and governing the criminal and taxation jurisdiction over contractors and their personnel.
 - (1) Example: The Agreement Between the United States of America and the Republic of Iraq on the Withdrawal of United States Forces from Iraq and the Organization of Their Activities During Their Temporary Presence in Iraq (Nov. 17, 2008).
 - (2) Article 12—Jurisdiction; Article 15—Import and Export; Article 16—Taxes; Article 17—Licenses and Permits.
 - (3) Article 10, Contracting Procedures, provides that the U.S. may enter into contracts IAW U.S. law, that the U.S. shall contract with Iraqi suppliers when ~~their~~ bids are competitive and constitute best value,” that U.S. forces shall respect Iraqi law when contracting with Iraqi contractors, and that the U.S. shall provide ~~Iraqi~~ authorities with the names of Iraqi suppliers and contractors, and the amounts of the relevant contracts.” *Id.*

2. U.S. Contract and Fiscal Law.

- a. Armed Services Procurement Act of 1947, as amended. 10 U.S.C. §§2301-31.
- b. FAR and agency supplements. FAR Part 25 and DFARS Part 225 govern foreign acquisitions. FAR Part 18 provides a listing of the various FAR provisions allowing expedient and relaxed procedures that may be useful in a contingency situation.
- c. Fiscal Law. Title 31, U.S. Code; Department of Defense (DOD) Financial Management Regulation FMR (DOD FMR); DFAS-IN 37-1; DFAS Manual 37-100-XX (XX=current fiscal year (FY)). For a more in-depth discussion of fiscal law principles, *see generally* CONTRACT & FISCAL LAW DEP'T, THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL, U.S. ARMY, FISCAL LAW DESKBOOK (updated frequently and available online at www.jagcnet.army.mil).
- d. Executive Orders and Declarations.
- e. Contingency Funding and Contract Authorizations. Generally, ordinary fiscal and acquisition rules apply during contingency operations. There is no blanket ~~—wartime~~ or ~~—contingency~~ exception to these rules. The fact that an operation is ongoing, however, may:
 - (1) Make the use of existing authorities easier to justify. For example, the operational situation in a contingency operation will likely give rise to circumstances making it easier to develop a justification and approval to support the use of the unusual and compelling urgency exception to full and open competition located at FAR Section 6.302-2. *See also* FAR Part 18 (listing the various FAR provisions allowing expedient and relaxed procedures that may be useful in a contingency situation).

(2) Appropriation and authorization acts may contain temporary, extraordinary fiscal and contract authorities specific to a particular operation. Operations in Iraq and Afghanistan contain numerous examples of these extraordinary authorities, from the expenditure of Commander Emergency Response Funds (CERP) through the Iraq / Afghanistan First program.

f. Permanent Extraordinary Contract Authority. During a national emergency declared by Congress or the President and for six months after the termination thereof, the President and his delegates may initiate or amend contracts notwithstanding any other provision of law whenever it is deemed necessary to facilitate the national defense. Pub. L. No. 85-804, codified at 50 U.S.C. §§1431-1435; Executive Order 10789 (14 Nov. 1958); FAR Part 50; DFARS Part 250. These powers are broad, but the statute and implementing regulations contain a number of limitations. For example, these powers do not allow waiving the requirement for full and open competition, and the authority to obligate funds in excess of \$65,000 may not be delegated lower than the Secretariat level. This authority is rarely used. Additionally, despite this grant of authority, Congress still must provide the money to pay for obligations.

III. DEPLOYMENT CONTRACTING AUTHORITY, PLANNING, PERSONNEL, AND ORGANIZATION.

A. Contract Versus Command Authority.

1. Command Authority. Prescribed by 10 U.S.C. § 164. Includes the authority to perform functions involving organizing and employing commands and forces, assigning tasks and designating objectives, and giving authoritative direction over all aspects of an operation. In a contingency operation, command authority runs from the President thru the Secretary of Defense to the Geographic Combatant Commanders (GCC) and ultimately joint force commanders. Command authority does NOT include the ability to make binding contracts for the U.S. Government. FM 4-92, para. 1-20; *see also* JP 4-10, para. III-2.
 2. Contract Authority. Premised on the U.S. Constitution, statute, and regulatory authority (FAR, DFAR, Service supplements). Contracting authority in the operational area flows from the President, then to the Secretary of Defense, through the Service/Agency Head, to the Head of Contracting Activity (HCA), then to the Senior Contracting Official (SCO) or Principal Assistant Responsible for Contracting (PARC), and finally to the contracting officer. Only the contracting officer, by virtue of their contracting warrant, has the authority to obligate the U.S. Government on contractual matters. Any binding contract attempt made by anyone other than a contracting officer will result in an unauthorized commitment. FAR 1.6; JP 4-10, para. III-2; FM 4-92, para. 1-20.
- B. Planning. The type of organization to which a JA is assigned will dictate the degree to which they must become involved in planning for contract support. At a minimum, however, JAs should be familiar with how Joint and Army doctrine incorporate planning for contract and contractor personnel support through the Contract Support Integration Plan and Contractor Management Plan.
1. Contract Support Integration Plan (CSIP).

- a. In all operations where there will be a significant use of contracted support, the supported GCC and their subordinate commanders and staffs must ensure that this support is properly addressed in the appropriate OPLAN/OPORD. JP 4-10, para. III-8.b. To achieve this integration, a CSIP must be developed by logistics staff contracting personnel, assisted by the lead Service contracting element (if a lead Service is designated). *Id.* Annex W to the GCC OPLAN/OPORD contains the CSIP. *Id.*
 - b. The CSIP is a planning mechanism to ensure effective and efficient contract support to a particular operation. The CSIP development process is intended to ensure the operational commander and supporting contracting personnel conduct advanced planning, preparation, and coordination to support deployed forces, and that the contract support integration and contractor management related guidance and procedures are identified and included in the overall plan. FM 4-92, para. 2-4.
 - c. At a minimum, the CSIP must include: theater support contracting organization responsibilities; boards and/or center information; operational specific contracting policies and procedures to include Service civil augmentation program/external contract, multi-national, and host-nation support coordination guidance; and, contract administration services delegations. Other elements may include but are not limited to the identification of major requiring activities and information on commercial support capabilities to satisfy requirements. JP 4-10, figure III-3.
 - d. Each Service component should also publish its own CSIP seeking integration and unity of effort with the supported GCC's CSIP. JP 4-10, III-8.b. For the Army, the CSIP is located in Tab G, Appendix 1, of Annex F, Sustainment. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, FIELD MANUAL 5-0, THE OPERATIONS PROCESS tble E-2 (Mar. 2010).
2. Contractor Management Plan (CMP).

- a. The CMP is related to, but not the same as, the CSIP. While the CSIP is focused on how we will acquire and manage contracted support, the CMP is focused on government obligations under contracts to provide support to contractor personnel. JP 4-10, para. IV-3.b.
- b. Contractor management is accomplished through a myriad of different requiring activities, contracting officer representatives, supported units, contracting organizations, and contractor company management personnel. JP 4-10, para. IV-1.b. Therefore, the GCC and subordinate joint forces commander must establish clear, enforceable, and well understood theater entrance, accountability, force protection, and general contractor management and procedures early in the planning stages of any military contingency. JP 4-10, para. IV-1.b(1). To accomplish this task, the GCC should publish a CMP. JP 4-10, para. IV-3.b(1).
- c. The CMP should specify operational specific contractor personnel and equipment requirements in order for the Joint Forces Commander, Service components, theater support contracting command, special operations forces, external support contracts, and Defense Logistics Agency to incorporate these into applicable contracts. JP 4-10, para. IV-3.b(1). These requirements may include, but are not limited to: restrictions imposed by applicable international and host-nation support agreements; contractor related deployment, theater reception, accountability, and strength reporting; operations security plans and restrictions; force protection; personnel recovery; contractor personnel services support; medical support, and redeployment requirements. *Id.*
- d. The Joint Forces Command and Service components should prepare supporting CMPs that support support the GCC's CMP but provide more specific details. JP 4-10, para. IV-3.b(1); FM 4-92, paras. 2-13 to 2-14.

- e. For more detailed information on contingency contractor personnel, *see* CONTRACT & FISCAL LAW DEP'T, THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL, U.S. ARMY, CONTRACT LAW DESKBOOK chpt 31, Contingency Contractor Personnel (updated frequently and available online at www.jagcnet.army.mil).
 - 3. In a developed theater, JAs should familiarize themselves with theater business clearance procedures, theater specific contract clauses and policies, contract and acquisition review boards, as well as resource management policies and standard operating procedures, such as the Money as a Weapons System—Iraq (MAAWS—I) and Money as a Weapons System—Afghanistan (MAAWS-A). AARs from Iraq and Afghanistan indicate that familiarity with these latter two resources are foundational to anyone who will be providing fiscal or contract law advice in theater.
- C. Deployment Contracting Personnel. Contracting authority runs from the Secretary of Defense to the Heads of Contracting Activities (HCA). The HCA appoints a Senior Contracting Official (SCO) or Principal Assistant Responsible for Contracting (PARC). The HCA and SCO/PARC warrant contracting officers (KO) at various levels and with varying levels of authority. AFARS 5101.603-1. The chief of a contracting office, a KO, may appoint field ordering officers (FOOs) to conduct relatively low dollar value purchases. FOOs are authorized to obligate the government to pay for goods or services in accordance with their appointment letters, but FOOs do not normally handle money. Finance Soldiers and Soldiers or Department of Defense (DOD) civilians, known as Class A agents or paying agents, handle money and pay merchants for purchases made by the FOOs.
- 1. Head of Contracting Activity (HCA). A Flag Officer or equivalent senior executive service (SES) civilian who has overall responsibility for managing a contracting activity. JP 4-10, para. I-2.c(1); FM 4-92, para. 1-4; FAR 2.101.
 - a. The HCA serves as the approving authority for contracting as stipulated in regulatory contracting guidance.

- b. DOD Contracting Activities are listed in the DFARS, and include, among others, Headquarters, U.S. Army Contracting Command, U.S. Army Sustainment Command, U.S. Army Expeditionary Contracting Command, U.S. Army Mission and Installation Contracting Command, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, U.S. Transportation Command, U.S. Special Operations Command, and the Joint Contracting Command – Iraq / Afghanistan (JCC-I/A) (redesignated CENTCOM Contracting Command (C3)). The head of each contracting activity is a HCA. DFARS 202.101; AFARS 5101.601(1).
 - c. See generally AFARS 5101.601 for a discussion on the responsibilities of HCAs.
2. Senior Contract Official (SCO) (AKA Principal Assistant Responsible for Contracting (PARC)). The SCO is a lead service or joint command designated contracting official who has direct managerial responsibility over theater support contracting.
- a. There may be multiple SCOs in the same operational area based on mission or regional focus. For example, at one time in Operation Iraqi Freedom (OIF), there were two SCOs (known as PARCs), one for support to forces and one for reconstruction support. JP 4-10, para. I-2c(2). Presently, C3 has one SCO or PARC for Iraq and one SCO or PARC for Afghanistan.
 - b. In the Army, SCOs are known as PARCs. AFARS 5101.601; *cf.* JP 4-10, para. I-2c(2).
 - (1) HCAs appoint PARCs.
 - (2) The PARC serves as the senior Army contracting advisor responsible for planning and managing all Army contracting functions which the FAR, DFARS, PGI, AFARS, and other directives does not require the HCA to perform personally (except when the HCA elects to exercise selected authorities). AFARS 5101.601(5).

- (3) Example—The Commander of the Army Expeditionary Contracting Command is a HCA. The HCA normally appoints each Contracting Support Brigade Commander a PARC. FM 4-92, para. 1-4.
3. Contracting Officer (KO). The government official (military officer, enlisted, or civilian) with the legal authority to enter into, administer, and/or terminate contracts. JP 4-10, para. I-2c(3); *see also* FAR 1.602.
- a. Appointed in writing through a warrant (Standard Form 1402) by the HCA or SCO/PARC. JP 4-10, para. I-2c(3).
- b. Only duly warranted contracting officers are authorized to obligate the U.S. Government, legally binding it to make payments against a contract. *Id.*
- c. Three main types of contracting officers: procuring contracting officers (PCOs), administrative contracting officers (ACOs), and terminating contracting officers. *Id.* PCOs enter into contracts. ACOs administer contracts. TCOs settle terminated contracts. A single contracting officer may be responsible for duties in any or all of these areas. FAR 2.101 (definition of “contracting officer”).

4. Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). CORs operate as the KO's eyes and ears regarding contract performance, and provide the key link between the command and the KO regarding the command's needs. CORs are organic members of the unit and are assigned to be a COR as an additional duty. CORs are necessary because KOs are normally not located at the site of contract performance. In many cases, contracts will already be in place before the unit deploys, and the KO for the contract is in CONUS or at geographically remote Regional Contracting Center. Commanders must consider whether to request that the KO appoint at least one COR for each contract affecting the unit. The COR can only be appointed by the KO. CORs do NOT exercise any contract authority and are used for communication regarding contract performance. Any issues with the contractor must still be resolved by the KO. *See* DFARS 201.602-2; JP 4-10, para. I-2c(3).
 - a. A properly trained COR shall be designated in writing prior to contract award. AFARS 5101.602-2(i)(A).
 - b. HQDA EXORD 048-10: Pre-Deployment Training for Contracting Officer's Representative and Commander's Emergency Response Program (CERP) Personnel, dated 5 Dec. 2009. Requires brigades, brigade equivalents, and smaller units deploying in support of OEF or OIF:
 - (1) Determine the number of CORs needed to meet theater contracting requirements no later than (NLT) 180 days before the latest arrival date (LAD). Verify COR requirements with the CENTCOM Contracting Command, servicing Regional Contracting Center within the deployed area of responsibility, and with the Defense Contract Management Agency representatives administering the Logistics Civil Augmentation Program (LOGCAP) contract and other support contracts in the unit's deployed location.

- (2) If unable to determine specific COR requirements during the Pre-Deployment Site Survey or from other pre-deployment communications, each deploying brigade must train 80 COR candidates. Separate battalions must train 25 COR candidates, and separate companies must train 15 COR candidates.
 - (3) NLT 90 days before the LAD, ensure COR candidates complete online training courses developed by the U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command.
 - (4) CORs must receive supplemental training from the contracting officer that appoints them as a COR.
- c. For more detailed information on COR responsibilities, *see* CENTER FOR ARMY LESSONS LEARNED, HANDBOOK 08-47, DEPLOYED COR (Sep. 2008); *see also* DFARS 201.602-2(2); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0008, Designation of Contracting Officer's Representative (21 Mar. 2011) (setting forth appointment requirements for CORs).
5. Field Ordering Officer (FOO).
- a. Service member or DOD civilian appointed in writing and trained by a contracting officer. AFARS 5101.602-2-90; 5101.603-1; 5101.603-1-90; 5101.603-1-90(b). FOOs are not warranted contracting officers and their FOO duties are considered an extra or collateral duty. JP 4-10, para. I-2c(5).
 - b. FOOs are usually not part of the contracting element, but are a part of the forward units.

- c. FOOs may be authorized to make purchases over the counter with SF44s up to the micro-purchase threshold, place orders against certain indefinite delivery contracts established by KOs, make calls under Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPAs) established by KOs, and make purchases using imprest funds. AFARS 5101.602-2-90. FOOs may also be government purchase card holders. AFARS 5113.2. FOOs are subject to limitations in their appointment letters, procurement statutes and regulations, and fiscal law. Contracting authority may be limited by dollar amount, subject matter, purpose, time, etc. Typical limitations are restrictions on the types of items that may be purchased and on per purchase dollar amounts. A sample appointment letter is found at AFARS 5153.9002.
 - d. AFARS 5101.602-2-90 contains guidance on the appointment, training, surveillance, and termination of FOOs. Additionally, contracting activities publish additional FOO guidance applicable to FOOs appointed under the authority of the contracting activity. For an example, *see* <http://c3-training.net/> as well as MAAWS-I and MAAWS-A.
6. Paying Agents. Finance specialists, and Soldiers and DOD civilians appointed and trained by Finance, hold money. When FOOs or KOs make purchases using SF44s, the merchant can present the form to the paying agent for payment. Alternatively, and most likely a necessity in an immature theater, the paying agent will accompany the FOO or KO. Once the FOO/KO completes the transactions, the paying agent will pay the merchant. Predeployment coordination with finance to determine who the paying agents are and where they will be located will aid the deployed contracting process. Paying agents may not be FOOs. For detailed guidance on paying agents, *see* FM 1-06, app. D; *see also* DOD FMR, vol. 5, para. 020604 (discussing the appointment and responsibilities of paying agents). For Iraq and Afghanistan specific guidance on paying agents, *see* the MAAWS-I and MAAWS-A respectively.

D. Sources of Contracted Support in a Contingency Operation.

1. General. Three different sources of contract support generally are used in support of contingency operations: Theater Support Contracts, Systems Support Contracts, and External Support Contracts.
 2. Theater Support Contracts. Contracts awarded by contracting officers in the operational area serving under the direct contracting authority of the Service component, special operations forces command, or designated joint HCA for the designated contingency operation. JP 4-10, p. vii, para. III-6. These contracts are commonly referred to as contingency contracts. *Id.* For example, theater support contracts in Iraq and Afghanistan include contracts awarded by the CENTCOM Contracting Command or any of its Regional Contracting Centers or Offices.
 3. Systems Support Contracts. Contracts awarded by Service acquisition program management offices that provide technical support, maintenance and, in some cases, repair parts for selected military weapon and support systems. Systems support contracts are routinely put in place to provide support to newly fielded weapons systems, including aircraft, land combat vehicles, and automated command and control systems. These contracts are often awarded long before and unrelated to specific operation. JP 4-10, p. vii, para. III-4 and app. A. Only the contracting activity that issued the contract has the authority to modify or terminate the contract.
 4. External Support Contracts. Contracts awarded from contracting organizations whose contracting authority does not derive directly from the theater support contracting HCA or from system support contracting authorities. External support contracts provide a variety of logistic and other noncombat related services and supply support. JP 4-10, p. vii, para. III-5.
- a. Types of Support.

- (1) Logistic support includes base operating support, transportation, port and terminal services, warehousing and other supply support functions, facilities construction and management, prime power, and material maintenance. JP4-10, para. III-5a and figure III-2.
 - (2) Non-logistic support may include communication services, interpreters, commercial computers and information management, and subject to congressional as well as DOD policy limitations, interrogation and physical security service support. *Id.*
- b. External support contracting authority does not come as a direct result of the contingency operation. Generally, these contracts are issued during peacetime for use during contingencies by the Service Components. Contracting authority, and therefore the ability to modify contracts, remains with the Service Component. For example, requirements for the Army's Logistics Civil Augmentation Program (LOGCAP) contract are managed by the Army Sustainment Command and the contracts are awarded and managed by the Army Contracting Command, both of which fall under the Army Materiel Command. Only AMC has the authority to change the LOGCAP contract. JP 4-10, para. III-5(b).
 - c. Major External Support Contracts include each Service's civil augmentation program (CAP) contracts (LOGCAP for the Army, the Air Force Contract Augmentation Program (AFCAP), and the U.S. Navy Global Contingency Construction Contract (GCCC) and Global Contingency Service Contract (GCSC)); fuel contracts awarded by the Defense Energy Support Center; construction contracts awarded by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and Air Force Center for Engineering and Environmental Excellence; and translator contracts awarded by the Army Intelligence and Security Command. JP 4-10, para. III-5(a).

d. Civil Augmentation Program (CAP) Contracts. Provide the supported GCC and subordinate Joint Forces Commander an alternative source for meeting logistic services and general engineering shortfalls when military, host-nation support, multinational, and theater support contract sources are not available or adequate to meet the force's needs. Because these contracts are generally more expensive than theater support contracts, every effort should be made to transition to theater support contracts as soon as possible. JP 4-10, para. III-5 and app. B.

(1) Service CAP similarities. JP 4-10, app. B.

- i. Augment organic military capabilities.
- ii. Long term (four to nine years depending on the program) competitively awarded contracts.
- iii. Use, or can opt to use, cost-plus award fee ID/IQ task orders.
- iv. Potentially compete for the same general commercial support base.

(2) Service CAP differences. JP 4-10, app. B.

- i. Authorized expenditure limit and planning and management capabilities.
- ii. Support focus:

- (i) LOGCAP focuses on general logistic support and minor construction support. The program utilizes separate support (planning and program support) and performance (task order execution) contracts.
- (ii) AFCAP focuses on both construction and general logistic support and can be used for supply support.
- (iii) The Navy GCCC focuses exclusively on construction.
- (iv) The Navy GSCS focuses on facilities support.

E. Theater Contracting Support Organizational Options.

1. General. There is no single preferred contracting organizational option for theater support contracting organizations; the specific organization option is determined by the Geographic Combatant Commander (GCC) in coordination with the subordinate Joint Force Command and Service Components. JP 4-10, para. III-7a. In general, however, there are three main organizational options: service component support to own forces, lead Service, and joint theater support contracting command. *Id.* Within the Army, outside of the theater contracting organization options discussed herein, corps, divisions, and brigades do not have any organic contracting officers or authority (beyond FOOs, Government Purchase Cardholders, and so forth). FM 4-92, para. 1-1.
2. Service Component Support to Own Forces.

- a. During smaller scale operations with an expected short duration, the GCC may allow the Service component commanders to retain control of their own theater support contracting authority and organizations. This organizational option is also applicable to operations where the bulk of individual Service component units will be operating in distinctly different areas of the joint operations area thus limiting potential competition for the same vendor. JP 4-10, para. III-7b.
 - b. Army. The Army established the Expeditionary Contracting Command to provide theater support contracting in support of deployed Army forces worldwide and garrison contracting support for Outside the Continental United States Army installations. The ECC Commander is a HCA. The commanders of each of six regionally focused contracting support brigades (CSB) are PARCs or SCOs. FM 4-92, paras. 1-1 to 1-4. In turn, each brigade has a number of contingency contracting battalions, contingency contracting teams, and senior contingency contracting teams. *Id.* para. 1-5. CSB units are deployed as necessary to meet mission contracting requirements. *Id.* paras. 1-22 to 1-23. Specifically, the CSB may be organized to provide Service component support to Army forces. *Id.* para. 1-24.
3. Lead Service Responsible for Theater Support Contracting.
 - a. GCCs may designate a specific Service component responsible to provide consolidated theater contracting support. JP 4-10, para. III-7c.
 - b. Most appropriate for major, long-term operations where the supported GCC and supported joint force commander desire to ensure that there is a consolidated contracting effort within the operational area, but without the need to stand-up an entirely new joint contracting command. JP 4-10, para. III-7c(1).

- c. The lead service often has command and control of designated other Service component theater contracting organizations and also has its staff augmented by other Services' contingency contracting personnel. JP 4-10, para. III-7c(1).
 - d. Within the Army, the CSB may be designated as the lead Service contracting organization (with or without command and control of other Service contracting elements). FM 4-92, para. 1-24.
4. Joint Theater Support Contracting Command.
- a. Established by GCC. The joint theater support contracting command is a joint, functional command that has a specified level of command and control authority over designated Service component theater support contracting organizations and personnel within a designated support area. JP 4-10, para. III-7d. For Iraq and Afghanistan, the CENTCOM Contracting Command (C3) has been established and organized as a Joint Theater Support Contracting Command.
 - b. Since GCCs do not have their own contracting authority, the joint theater support contracting command's HCA authority flows from one of the Service component's to the operational area. In this option, the joint theater support contracting command headquarters should be established by a Joint Manning Document (JMD). *Id.* For example, C3 falls beneath the Army. DFARS 202.101.
 - c. Within the Army, the CSB may serve as the building block for the formation of a joint theater support contracting command. FM 4-92, para. 1-24.
5. There is no formally approved, established model for lead Service theater support or the joint theater support contracting command organization options. JP 4-10, app. G, however, provides a general model or organization framework for each type of organization, to include a discussion of legal support to these organizations. Significantly, each of these organizational options will likely include the following subordinate activities:

- a. Regional Contracting Centers (RCC). Typically consists of 10-25 warranted contracting officers, enlisted members, and/or DOD civilians often aligned with major land force (division, corps, Marine expeditionary force) headquarters or Air Force wings. JP 4-10, app. G, paras. 2.g, 3.k(1).
- b. Regional Contracting Offices (RCO). Organization under the command and control of an RCO head composed of 2 thru 8 warranted contracting officers, enlisted members, and/or DOD civilians. Typically provide area support to specific forward operating bases and or designated areas within the joint operating area. JP 4-10, app. G, paras. 2.h and 3.k(2).
- c. Specialty Contracts Division. May be used to provide contracting support for common, joint operations area-wide services or supplies OR to perform complex contracting actions that exceed the RCC and RCO capabilities. JP 4-10, app. G, paras. 2.h and 3.k(3).

IV. REQUIREMENTS GENERATION, APPROVAL, AND CONTRACTING PROCESS

- A. General. Once a requirement for goods or services is identified and approved by a requiring activity, resource management, finance operations, and contracting personnel must work in concert to actually acquire and pay for the good or service. Together, these three are known as the “Fiscal Triad.” FM 1-06, at vii; FM 4-92, para. 2-17, FM 1-04, app. G.
 - 1. Requiring Activity. Units are requiring activities, regardless of their organizational level. For example, whether a company or a corps requires fuel or base support services, each is a requiring activity. The unit is responsible for developing the requirement, to include clearly defining the requirement and conducting basic market research. JP 4-10, app. G. Unit commanders and staff identify, develop, validate, prioritize, and approve requirements. FM 1-06, at vii.

- a. Requiring activities are responsible for developing “acquisition ready” requirements. In coordination with the supporting contracting activity (e.g., RCC or RCO), the requiring activity must be able to describe what is needed to fulfill the minimum acceptable standard for the government. This information allows the contracting activity to create a solicitation against which commercial vendors can bid a proposal and successfully deliver in accordance with the terms of the contract to satisfy a government requirement. FM 4-92, para. 2-18; *see also* JP 4-10, app. G.
 - b. Specifically, the requiring activity, in coordination with the supporting contracting office, must conduct basic market research, develop an independent government estimate, develop a performance work statement or statement of work, and obtain certified funding from the requiring activity’s resource manager. FM 4-92, para. 2-18; *see also* JP 4-10, app. G. Judge Advocates conducting fiscal and contract reviews must carefully review each of these documents. For example, requirements which superficially appear to be services and therefore properly funded with operations and maintenance appropriations may in fact include requirements for construction or the procurement of investment items that may require the use of a different appropriation.
2. Resource Management (RM).
 - a. Serve as the commander’s representative to lead the requirement validation, prioritization, and approval effort.
 - b. Certifies the availability of funds by executing a purchase, request, and commitment (PR&C) and ensures the use of the funds is legal and proper. As the keeper of the commander’s checkbook, the RM does not create requirements and has no acquisition authority. FM 1-04, app. G; FM 1-06, at vii, ch. 1, sec. II; FM 4-92, para. 2-17.
 3. Contracting Officers.

- a. The only government officials (military officer, enlisted, or civilian) with the legal authority to enter into, administer, and/or terminate contracts. JP 4-10, para. I-2c(3); *see also* FAR 1.602.
 - b. Upon receipt of certified funding and properly developed requirement, contracts on behalf of the U.S. Government to obtain the good or service. FM 1-04, app. G; FM 1-06, at vii; FM 4-92, para. 2-17
 - c. Responsible for appointing and training field ordering officers.
4. Finance Operations.
- a. As the government's banker, finance is the only triad element with funds disbursement authority. Once a contract has been awarded, finance operations provide vendor payment through cash, check, government purchase card, and electronic funds transfer. FM 1-04, app. G; FM 1-06, at vii, ch. 1, sec. I; FM 4-92, para. 2-17.
 - b. Funds and clears paying agents.

B. Requirements Approval Process.

- 1. Ensures the appropriate functional staffs coordinate on, prioritize, approve, and certify funding for the "acquisition ready requirements" package before it is forwarded to the appropriate contracting activity. FM 4-92, para. 2-19. These staff reviews can include, but are not limited to:
 - (1) Legal
 - (2) Supply/logistics/property book.
 - (3) Engineer

- (4) Medical
- (5) Signal (information technology and communication)
- (6) Resource Management
- (7) Other as needed/required by the circumstances.

b. In major operations, common user logistics (CUL) are coordinated by the GCC and subordinate Joint Forces Commander among the functional staffs through the use of three important contracting related review boards: The Combatant Commander Logistic Procurement Support Board (CLPSB), the Acquisition Review Board (ARB) or Joint Acquisition Review Board (JARB), and the Joint Contracting Support Board (JCSB). JP 4-10, para. III-3; *see also* FM 4-92, para. 2-19.

- (1) CLPSB. Ensures that contracting and other related logistics efforts are properly coordinated across the entire AOR. JP 4-10, para. III-3.b. Focuses on general policies and AOR-wide issues related to contracting support at the GCC level, to include:
 - i. Identifying contracting and related issues that may require Joint Staff Office of Primary Responsibility, J-4, and/or Office of the Secretary of Defense action;
 - ii. Establishing AOR-wide contracting and contractor management policies and procedures; and
 - iii. Determining theater support contracting organization structure. JP 4-10, para. III-3.b and figure III-1.
- (2) JARB. JP 4-10, para. III-3.c.

- i. Utilized to coordinate and control the requirements generation and prioritization of joint common user logistics (CUL) supplies and services that are needed in support of the operational mission.
- ii. Normally chaired by the Joint Forces Commander or Deputy Commander with participation by the functional staff (to include JAs) as well as theater, external, and system support contracting members.
- iii. Main role is to make specific approval and prioritization recommendations for all GCC directed, subordinated Joint Forces Commander controlled, high-value and/or high visibility CUL requirements and to include recommendations on the proper source of support for these requirements.
- iv. Theater support and external support contracting members' role is to inform the other JARB members which contracting mechanisms are readily available for a particular acquisition.
- v. For an example, *see* Money as a Weapons System—Iraq (MAAWS-I) and Money as a Weapons System—Afghanistan (MAAWS-A). Both issuances contain detailed guidance on the JARB (and related, subordinate, and superior ARBs) and the requirements approval process. Judge Advocates deploying to Iraq and Afghanistan, regardless of organizational level, must familiarize themselves with the policy contained in these documents in advance of deploying to theater.
- vi. Once a requirement is validated and approved by the JARB, the resource manager certifies funding and the packet is provided to a contracting activity.

(3) JCSB. JP 4-10, para. III-3.d and figure III-1.

- i. Focuses on how contracting will procure support in the Joint Operations Area.
- ii. Reviews contract support requirements forwarded by the JARB and makes recommendations on which specific contracting organizations/venues (e.g., theater v. external) are best suited to fulfill the requirement.
- iii. Establishes theater support contracting procedures.
- iv. Chaired by SCO/PARC or subordinate J-4 acquisition officer.

C. Theater Business Clearance (TBC) / Contract Administration Delegation (CAD).

- 1. During operations, the need may arise to ensure that all contracts performed in the joint operating area are visible, contain certain minimum clauses and requirements, and are being effectively administered.
- 2. To enable this uniformity of effort in Iraq and Afghanistan, the Deputy Under Secretary of Defense, Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics and the Director of Defense Procurement and Acquisition Policy issued a series of memoranda directing JCC-I/A (now CENTCOM Contracting Command (C3)) to develop TBC procedures, to include procedures on contract administration delegation. Headquarters, Joint Contracting Command – Iraq / Afghanistan, subj.: Theater Business Clearance (TBC) Authority, Procedures, and Requirements for Iraq and Afghanistan, *available at* <http://www2.centcom.mil/sites/contracts/Pages/Default.aspx>, *also available at* www.jcci-training.net.
- 3. CENTCOM Contracting Command uses the TBC review process to ensure that contracting officers outside C3 (e.g., external and system support contracting officers) insert mandatory language and clauses in contracts. *Id.* As an example, such clauses include:

- a. C3 952.225-0001, Arming Requirements and Procedures for Personal Security Services Contractors and Requests for Personal Protection.
 - b. C3 952.225-0005, Monthly Contractor Census Reporting
 - c. C3 952.225-0009, Medical Screening and Vaccination Requirements for Third Country Nationals and Locally Hired Employees Operating in the CENTCOM Area of Responsibility.
 - d. DFARS 252.225-7040, Contractor Personnel Authorized to Accompany U.S. Forces Deployed Outside the U.S., and DFARS Class Deviation 2007-O0010, Contractor Personnel in the U.S. Central Command Area of Responsibility.
4. The TBC review process also addresses whether in-theater contract administration will be delegated to Defense Contract Management Agency-I/A or whether administration will be re-delegated to the procuring contracting officer. *Id.*

V. CONTRACTING DURING A DEPLOYMENT.

- A. General. This section discusses various methods used to acquire supplies and services. It begins with a general discussion of seeking competition, and discusses specific alternatives to acquiring supplies and services pursuant to a new contract to meet the needs of a deploying force.
- B. Competition Requirements. The Competition in Contracting Act (CICA), 10 U.S.C. § 2304, requires the government to seek competition for its requirements. *See also* FAR Part 6 and Far 2.101. In general, the government must seek full and open competition by providing all responsible sources an opportunity to compete. No automatic exception is available for contracting operations during deployments.

1. For contracts awarded and performed within CONUS, the statutory requirement of full and open competition for purchases over the simplified acquisition threshold creates a 45-day minimum procurement administrative lead time (PALT), which results from a requirement to publish notice of the proposed acquisition 15 days before issuance of the solicitation (by synopsis of the contract action in the Government-wide Point of Entry (GPE)) at FedBizOpps.gov, followed by a requirement to provide a minimum of 30 days for offerors to submit bids or proposals. Three additional time periods extend the minimum 45-day PALT: 1) time needed for the unit to define the requirement and push it through the requirement generation and approval process; 2) time needed for the contracting office to prepare the solicitation, evaluate offers and award the contract; and 3) time needed after contract award for delivery of supplies or performance of services.

2. There are seven statutory exceptions that permit contracting without full and open competition, which are set forth in 10 U.S.C. § 2304(c) and FAR Subpart 6.3:
 - a. Only one responsible source and no other supplies or services will satisfy agency requirements. FAR 6.302-1. The contracting officer may award a contract without full and open competition if the required supplies or services can only be provided by one or a limited number of sources. For example, it may be necessary to award to a particular source where that source has exclusive control of necessary raw materials or patent rights. FAR 6.302-1 provides additional examples of circumstances where use of this exception may be appropriate. This exception allows the KO to limit the competition to those sources that can meet the Government's need.

- b. Unusual and compelling urgency. FAR 6.302-2. This exception applies where the need for the supplies or services is of such an unusual or compelling urgency that delay in awarding the contract would result in serious injury to the government. Use of this exception enables the contracting officer to limit the procurement to the only firm(s) he reasonably believes can properly satisfy the requirement in the limited time available.¹ Because of the urgency, the contracting officer is permitted to award the contract even before the written “Justification and Approval” (see paragraph 3 below) is completed. Similarly, the urgency requiring use of this exception can allow the contracting officer to dispense with the 15-day publication requirement. FAR 5.202(a)(2).
- c. Industrial mobilization, engineering, developmental, or research capability; or expert services for litigation. FAR 6.302-3. This exception is used primarily when it is necessary to keep vital facilities or suppliers in business, to prevent insufficient availability of critical supplies or employee skills in the event of a national emergency.
- d. International agreement. FAR 6.302-4. This exception is used where supplies or services will be used in another country, and the terms of a SOFA or other international agreement or treaty with that country specify or limit the sources. This exception also applies when the acquisition is for a foreign country who will reimburse the acquisition costs (e.g., pursuant to a foreign military sales agreement) directs that the product be obtained from a particular source.

¹ This exception can be particularly applicable to meet urgent critical needs relating to human safety and which affects military operations. For example, it was used to procure sandbags in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom (Total Industrial & Packaging Corporation, B-295434, 2005 U.S. Comp. Gen. Proc. Dec. ¶ 38 (Feb. 22, 2005)) and to procure automatic fire suppression systems for U.S. Marine Corps’s light armored vehicles (Meggitt Safety Systems, Inc., B-297378, B-297378.2, 2006 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 27 (Jan. 12, 2006)). However, this exception cannot be used where the urgency was created by the agency’s lack of advanced planning. 10 U.S.C. § 2304(f)(5); *see, e.g.*, WorldWide Language Resources, Inc.; SOS International Ltd., B-296984; B-296984.2; B-296984.3; B-296984.4; B-296993; B-296993.2; B-296993.3; B-296993.4., 2005 U.S. Comp. Gen. Proc. Dec. ¶ 206 (Nov. 14, 2005) (protest of December, 2004 award of sole-source contract for bilingual-bicultural advisor/subject matter experts in support of Multinational Forces-Iraq sustained where the urgency – the immediate need for the services prior to the January 2005 elections in Iraq – was the direct result of unreasonable actions and acquisition planning by the government 2-3 months earlier).

- e. Authorized or required by statute. FAR 6.302-5. Full and open competition is not required if a statute expressly authorizes or requires the agency to procure the supplies or services from a specified source, or if the need is for a brand name commercial item for authorized resale.
 - f. National security. FAR 6.302-6. This exception applies if disclosure of the government's needs would compromise national security. Mere classification of specifications generally is not sufficient to restrict the competition, but it may require potential contractors to possess or qualify for appropriate security clearances. FAR 6.302-6.
 - g. Public interest. FAR 6.302-7. Full and open competition is not required if the agency head determines that it is not in the public interest for the particular acquisition. Though broadly written, this exception is rarely used because only the head of the agency can invoke it – it requires a written determination by the Secretary of Defense. DFARS 206.302-7.
3. Use of any of these exceptions to full and open competition requires a “Justification and Approval” (J&A). FAR 6.303. For the contents and format of a J&A, refer to AFARS 5106.303, 5153.9004, and 5153.9005. The approving authority is responsible for the J&A, but attorney involvement and assistance is critical to successful defense of the decision to avoid full and open competition. Limiting competition in any way invites protests of the procurement which may interrupt the procurement process. Approval levels for justifications, as listed in FAR 6.304:
- a. Actions under \$650,000: the contracting officer.
 - b. Actions from \$650,000 to \$12.5 million: the competition advocate designated pursuant to FAR 6.501.
 - c. Actions from \$12.5 million to \$62.5 million (or \$85.5 million for DOD, NASA, and the Coast Guard): the HCA or designee.

- d. Actions above \$62.5 million (or above \$85.5 million for DOD, NASA, and the Coast Guard): the agency acquisition executive. For the Army, this is the Assistant Secretary of the Army for Acquisition, Logistics, and Technology (ASA(ALT)).
 4. Contract actions awarded and performed outside the United States, its possessions, and Puerto Rico, for which only local sources will be solicited, generally are exempt from compliance with the requirement to synopsize the acquisition in the GPE. These actions therefore may be accomplished with less than the normal minimum 45-day PALT, but they are not exempt from the requirement for competition. *See FAR 5.202(a)(12); see also FAR 14.202-1(a)* (thirty-day bid preparation period only required if procurement is synopsized). Thus, during a deployment, contracts may be awarded with full and open competition within an overseas theater faster than within CONUS, thus avoiding the need for a J&A for other than full and open competition for many procurements executed in rapid fashion. Obtain full and open competition under these circumstances by posting notices on procurement bulletin boards, soliciting potential offerors on an appropriate bidders list, advertising in local newspapers, and telephoning potential sources identified in local telephone directories. *See, FAR 5.101(a)(2) & (b) and AFARS Manual No. 2, para.4-3.e.*
 5. Temporary Exceptions. During contingency operations, Congress may authorize temporary exceptions to normal contacting and competition rules through authorization acts or annual or supplemental appropriations acts. Examples in Iraq and Afghanistan include the Commander's Emergency Response Program, Iraq/Afghan First Program, and the SC-CASA Program (allowing preferences and set-asides for certain acquisitions from vendors in certain countries along major supply routes to Afghanistan).
- C. Methods of Acquisition – Sealed Bidding. Award is based only on price and price-related factors, and is made to the lowest, responsive, responsible bidder. *See FAR Part 14.*

1. Sealed bidding procedures must be used if the four conditions enumerated in the Competition in Contracting Act exist. 10 U.S.C. § 2304(a)(2)(A); FAR 6.401; *see also*, Racal Filter Technologies, Inc., B-240579, Dec. 4, 1990, 70 Comp. Gen. 127, 90-2 CPD ¶ 453. These four conditions, commonly known as the “~~Racal~~ factors,” are:
 - a. Time permits the solicitation, submission, and evaluation of sealed bids;
 - b. Award will be made only on the basis of price and price-related factors;
 - c. It is not necessary to conduct discussions with responding sources about their bids; and
 - d. There is a reasonable expectation of receiving more than one sealed bid.
2. Use of sealed bidding allows little discretion in the selection of a source. Bids are solicited using Invitations for Bids (IFB) under procedures that do not allow for pre-bid discussions with potential sources. A clear description/understanding of the requirement is needed to avoid having to conduct discussions. Sealed bidding requires more sophisticated contractors because minor errors in preparing a bid can make the bid non-responsive and prevent the government from accepting the offer. Only fixed-price type contracts are awarded using these procedures. Sealed bidding procedures are rarely used during active military operations in foreign countries because it is usually necessary to conduct discussions with responding offerors to ensure their understanding of, and capability to meet, U.S. requirements.

D. Methods of Acquisition – Negotiations (also called “competitive proposals”).

1. With this acquisition method, award is based on stated evaluation criteria, one of which must be cost, and is made to the responsible offeror whose proposal offers the ~~best value~~ to the government. The contracting officer informs potential offerors up front whether best value will be based upon an offeror submitting the ~~lowest cost, technically acceptable~~ solution to the government's requirement, or whether best value will be determined on a ~~cost-technical tradeoff~~ basis, which allows the government to accept a higher-priced offer if the perceived benefits of the higher-priced proposal outweigh the additional cost. The basis for award (low-cost, technically-acceptable *or* cost-technical tradeoff), and a description of all factors and major subfactors that the contracting officer will consider in making this determination, must be stated in the solicitation. *See* FAR Part 15.

2. Negotiations are used when the use of sealed bids is not appropriate. 10 U.S.C. § 2304(a)(2)(B). Negotiations permit greater discretion in the selection of a source, and allow consideration of non-price factors in the evaluation of offers, such as technical capabilities of the offerors, past performance history, etc. Offers are solicited by use of a Request for Proposals (RFP). Proposals are submitted by offerors and are evaluated in the manner stated in the solicitation. Consistent with the solicitation, the contracting officer may establish a competitive range comprised of the most highly-rated proposals and conduct discussions with those offerors, after which those offerors submit revised proposals for evaluation. Award is made to the offeror whose proposal represents the best value to the government. Negotiations permit the use of any contract type.

E. Simplified Acquisition Procedures

1. Thresholds. Simplified procedures may be used for procurements below certain dollar amounts. Simplified acquisition procedures can be used to procure goods and services up to the ~~“simplified acquisition threshold”~~ (SAT), which is normally \$150,000. Simplified acquisition procedures may also be used to purchase commercial items up to an amount well above the SAT – the commercial items test program threshold is normally \$6,500,000. The ~~“micro-purchase threshold,”~~ below which purchases may be made without competition, is normally \$3,000. On October 28, 2004, Section 822 of the Ronald W. Reagan National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2005, Pub. L. No. 108-375, amended 41 U.S.C. § 428a (Special Emergency Procurement Authority) to increase each of these thresholds for procurements in support of a contingency operation as defined in 10 U.S.C. § 101(a)(13), or to facilitate defense against or recovery from NBC or radiological attack. Presently, in a contingency operation, the thresholds are as follows:
 - a. Simplified acquisition threshold (SAT). For purchases supporting a contingency operation but made (or awarded and performed) inside the United States, the SAT is \$300,000. For purchases supporting a contingency operation made (or awarded and performed) outside the United States, the SAT is \$1,000,000. 41 U.S.C. § 428a(b)(2); FAR 2.101 (restating SAT and defining contingency operation). DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0009, Simplified Acquisition Threshold for Humanitarian or Peacekeeping Operations (28 Mar. 2011), sets the SAT at \$300,000 when soliciting or awarding contracts to be awarded and performed outside the United States to support a humanitarian or peacekeeping operation. *See* FAR 2.101 (defining humanitarian or peacekeeping operation).
 - b. Micro-purchase threshold. For purchases supporting a contingency operation but made (or awarded and performed) inside the United States, the micro-purchase threshold is \$15,000. For purchases supporting a contingency operation made (or awarded and performed) outside the United States, the micro-purchase threshold is \$30,000. 41 U.S.C. § 428a(b)(1); FAR 2.101.

- c. Commercial items. For purchases supporting a contingency operation, simplified acquisition methods may be used to purchase commercial item supplies and services up to \$12,000,000. 41 U.S.C. § 428a(c); FAR 13.500(e).
2. About 95% of the contracting activity conducted in a deployment setting will be simplified acquisitions (to include commercial items). The following are various methods of making or paying for these simplified purchases. Most of these purchases can be solicited orally, except for construction projects exceeding \$2000 and complex requirements. The types of simplified acquisition procedures likely to be used during a deployment are:
- a. Purchase Orders. FAR Subpart 13.302; DFARS Subpart 213.302; AFARS Subpart 5113.302 and 5113.306 (for use of the SF 44).
 - b. Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA). FAR Subpart 13.303; DFARS Subpart 213.303; AFARS Subpart 5113.303.
 - c. Imprest Fund Purchases. FAR 13.305; DFARS Subpart 213.305; DOD FMR vol. 5, para. 0209.
 - d. Government Purchase Card Purchases. FAR 13.301; DFARS 213.279, 213.301; AFARS Subpart 5113.2.
 - e. Accommodation checks/government purchase card convenience checks. DoD FMR, vol. 5, ch. 2, para. 0210; *see also* DFARS 213.270(c)(6).
 - f. Commercial Items Acquisitions. FAR 12 and 13.5.

3. Purchase Orders. A purchase order is an offer to buy supplies or services, including construction. Purchase orders usually are issued only after requesting quotations from potential sources. Issuance of an order does not create a binding contract. A contract is formed when the contractor accepts the offer either in writing or by performance. In operational settings, purchase orders may be written using three different forms.
 - a. DD Form 1155 or SF 1449. These are multi-purpose forms which can be used as a purchase order, blanket purchase agreement, receiving/inspection report, property voucher, or public voucher. They contain some contract clauses, but users must incorporate all other applicable clauses. FAR 13.307; DFARS 213.307; DFARS PGI 213.307. *See* clause matrix in FAR Part 52. When used as a purchase order, the KO may make purchases up to the simplified acquisition threshold. Only KOs are authorized to use these forms.
 - b. Standard Form (SF) 44. This is a pocket-sized form intended for over-the-counter or on-the-spot purchases. Clauses are not incorporated. Use this form for “cash and carry” type purchases. Ordering officers, as well as KOs, may use this form. Reserve unit commanders may use the SF 44 for purchases not exceeding the micro-purchase threshold when a Federal Mobilization Order requires unit movement to a Mobilization Station or site, or where procurement support is not readily available from a supporting installation. FAR 13.306; DFARS 213.306; AFARS 5113.306. Conditions for use:
 - (1) As limited by KO’s warrant or FOO’s appointment letter.
 - (2) Away from the contracting activity.
 - (3) Goods or services are immediately available.
 - (4) One delivery, one payment.

- c. Ordering officers may use SF 44s for purchases up to the micro-purchase threshold for supplies or services, except that purchases up to the simplified acquisition threshold may be made for aviation fuel or oil. During a contingency operation, a contracting officer may make purchases up to the simplified acquisition threshold. *See* DFARS 213.306(a)(1).

- 4. Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA). FAR Subpart 13.303; DFARS 213.303-5; and AFARS 5113.303. A BPA is a simplified method of filling anticipated repetitive needs for supplies or services essentially by establishing “charge account” relationships with qualified sources of supply. They are not contracts but merely advance agreements for future contractual undertakings. BPAs set prices, establish delivery terms, and provide other clauses so that a new contract is not required for each purchase. The government is not bound to use a particular supplier as it would be under a requirements contract. KO negotiates firm-fixed-prices for items covered by the BPA, or attaches to the BPA a catalog with pertinent descriptions/prices.
 - a. BPAs are prepared and issued on DD Form 1155 or SF 1449 and must contain certain terms/conditions. FAR 13.303-3:
 - (1) Description of agreement.
 - (2) Extent of obligation.
 - (3) Pricing.
 - (4) Purchase limitations.
 - (5) Notice of individuals authorized to place purchase orders under the BPA and dollar limitation by title of position or name.
 - (6) Delivery ticket requirements.

- (7) Invoicing requirements.
- b. KOs may authorize ordering officers and other individuals to place calls (orders) under BPAs. FAR 13.303, AFARS 5113.303-2. Existence of a BPA does not per se justify sole-source procurements. FAR 13.303-5(c). Consider BPAs with multiple sources. If insufficient BPAs exist, solicit additional quotations for some purchases and make awards through separate purchase orders.
5. Imprest Funds. An imprest fund is a cash fund of a fixed amount established by an advance of funds from a finance or disbursing officer to a duly appointed cashier. The cashier disburses funds as needed to pay for certain simplified acquisitions. Authorized individuals (ordering officers and contracting officers) make purchases and provide the receipts to the cashier. When documented expenditures deplete the amount of cash in the imprest fund, the cashier may request to have the fund replenished. FAR 13.305; DFARS 213.305; DOD FMR vol. 5, para. 0209.
- a. DOD activities are not authorized to use imprest funds unless the Under Secretary of Defense (Comptroller) approves an exception to policy for a contingency or classified operation. DOD FMR, vol. 5, para. 020902.
- b. Imprest funds may not exceed \$10,000 and a single transaction may not exceed \$500. During contingency operations, the designated area commander may increase the ceiling on cash holdings to \$100,000 and the single transaction limit to \$3,000. DOD FMR 020903.
- c. DOD FMR vol. 5, para. 0209, contains detailed guidance on the appointment, training, and procedures governing the use of imprest funds, to include permissible and prohibited expenditures. Imprest fund cashiers should receive training in their duties, liabilities, and the operation of an imprest fund prior to deployment.

6. Government-wide Purchase Card (GPC). Authorized GPC holders may use the cards to purchase goods and services up to the micro-purchase threshold. FAR 13.301(c). In a contingency operation, KOs may use the cards for purchases up to the SAT. DFARS 213.301(3). Overseas, even if not in a designated contingency operation, authorized GPC holders may make purchases up to \$30,000 for certain commercial items/services for use outside the U.S., but not for work to be performed by workers recruited within the United States. *See* DFARS 213.301(2) (containing additional limitations on this authority). The GPC can also be used as a payment instrument for orders made against Federal Supply Schedule contracts, calls made against a Blanket Purchase Agreement (BPA), and orders placed against Indefinite Delivery/Indefinite Quantity (IDIQ) contracts that contain a provision authorizing payment by purchase card. FAR 13.301(c); AFARS 5113.202-90. Funds must be available to cover the purchases. Special training for cardholders and billing/certifying officials is required. AFARS 5113.201(c). Issuance of these cards to deploying units should be coordinated prior to deployment, because there may be insufficient time to request and receive the cards once the unit receives notice of deployment.

7. Accommodation Checks/Purchase Card Convenience Checks. Commands involved in a deployment may utilize accommodation checks and/or GPC convenience checks in the same manner as they are used during routine operations. Checks should only be used when Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) or the use of the government purchase card is not possible. *See* DoD FMR, vol. 5, ch. 2, para. 0210. Government purchase card convenience checks may not be issued for purchases exceeding the micro-purchase threshold. *See* DoD FMR, vol. 5, ch. 2, para. 021001.B.1.

8. Commercial Items Acquisitions FAR Part 12. Much of our deployment contracting involves purchases of commercial items. The KO may use any simplified acquisition method to acquire commercial items, or may use one of the other two acquisition methods (sealed bidding or negotiations). All three acquisition methods are streamlined when procuring commercial items. FAR Part 12 sets out a series of special simplified rules, to include a special form, simplified clauses, and streamlined procedures, that may be used in acquiring commercial items up to \$6,500,000 (\$12,000,000 in a contingency operation). However, any contract for commercial items must be firm-fixed-price or fixed-price with economic price adjustment. FAR 12.207.

9. Simplified Acquisition Competition Requirements. The requirement for full and open competition does not apply to simplified acquisitions. However, for simplified acquisitions above the micro-purchase threshold, there is still a requirement to obtain competition ~~to~~ "to the maximum extent practicable," which ordinarily means soliciting at least 3 quotes from sources within the local trade area. FAR 13.104(b). For purchases at or below the micro-purchase threshold, there is no competition requirement at all, and obtaining just one oral quotation will suffice so long as the price is fair and reasonable. FAR 13.202(a)(2). Additional simplified acquisition competition considerations:
 - a. Micro-purchases. While there is no competition requirement, micro-purchases shall be distributed equitably among qualified sources to the extent practicable. FAR 13.202(a)(1). If practicable, solicit a quotation from other than the previous supplier before placing a repeat order. Oral solicitations should be used as much as possible, but a written solicitation must be used for construction requirements over \$2,000. FAR 13.106-1(d).

- b. Simplified acquisitions above the micro-purchase threshold. Because there is still a requirement to promote competition —to the maximum extent practicable,” KOs may not sole-source a requirement above the micro-purchase threshold unless the need to do so is justified in writing and approved at the appropriate level. FAR 13.501. Soliciting at least three sources is a good rule of thumb to promote competition to the maximum extent practicable. Whenever practicable, request quotes from two sources not included in the previous solicitation. FAR 13.104(b). You normally should also solicit the incumbent contractor. J. Sledge Janitorial Serv., B-241843, Feb. 27, 1991, 91-1 CPD ¶ 225.
 - c. Requirements aggregating more than the SAT or the micro-purchase threshold may not be broken down into several purchases merely to avoid procedures that apply to purchases exceeding those thresholds. FAR 13.003(c).
10. Publication (Notice) Requirements. Normally, contracting officers are required to publish a synopsis of proposed contract actions over \$25,000 on the Government-wide point of entry (GPE) at FedBizOpps.gov. 15 U.S.C. § 637(e); 41 U.S.C. § 416(a)(1); FAR 5.101(a)(1) and FAR 5.203. For actions estimated to be between \$15,000 and \$25,000, public posting (displaying notice in a public place) of the proposed contract action for 10 days is normally required. 15 U.S.C. § 637(e); 41 U.S.C. § 416(a)(1)(B); FAR 5.101(a)(2). None of these notice requirements exist if the disclosure of the agency’s needs would compromise national security. 15 U.S.C. § 637(g)(1)(B); 41 U.S.C. § 416(c)(1)(B); FAR 5.101(a)(2)(ii) and FAR 5.202(a)(1). Disclosure of most needs in a deployment would not compromise national security. Still, the requirement to publish notice in FedBizOpps.gov is often not required in deployment contracting because there are other exemptions listed at FAR 5.202 that will often apply. For example, publication is not required for contracts that will be made and performed outside the United States, and for which only local sources will be solicited. FAR 5.202(a)(12). Accordingly, notice of proposed contract actions overseas is accomplished primarily through public posting at the local equivalent of a Chamber of Commerce, bulletin boards outside the deployed contracting office, or other locations readily accessible by the local vendor community. *See* FAR 5.101(a)(2) & (b) and AFARS Manual No. 2, para. 4-3.e.

F. Use of Existing Contracts to Satisfy Requirements.

1. Existing ordering agreements, indefinite delivery contracts, and requirements contracts may be available to meet recurring requirements, such as fuel, subsistence items, and base support services. Investigate the existence of such contracts with external and theater support contracting activities. For a discussion of theater and external support contracts, *see supra* subpart III.C.
2. Theater Support Contracts. In developed theaters, the theater contracting activity (regardless of organizational type) may have existing indefinite quantity-indefinite delivery (IDIQ) contracts, BPAs, or requirements contracts available to efficiently satisfy a unit's needs. For example, C3 may have multiple award IDIQ contracts for base support services and security services. If a unit has a requirement for either of these services, C3 may expeditiously award the task order to one awardee of the underlying IDIQ contract utilizing the "fair opportunity" to be considered procedures in FAR 16.5.

G. Alternative Methods for Fulfilling Requirements. New and existing contracts are not the only method of meeting the needs of deployed military forces. The military supply system is the most common source of supplies and services. Cross-servicing agreements and host-nation support agreements exist with NATO, Korea, and other major U.S. allies. Similarly, under the Economy Act, other government agencies may fill requirements for deployed forces, either from in-house resources or by contract. Finally, service secretaries retain substantial residual powers under Public Law 85-804 that may be used to meet critical requirements that cannot be fulfilled using normal contracting procedures.

1. Host nation support and acquisition and cross-servicing agreements are also means of fulfilling the needs of deployed U.S. forces and are addressed in 10 U.S.C. § 2341-2350; governed by U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, DIR. 2010.9, ACQUISITION AND CROSS-SERVICING AGREEMENTS (28 Apr. 2003); and implemented by JOINT CHIEFS OF STAFF, INSTR. 2120.01A, ACQUISITION AND CROSS-SERVICING AGREEMENTS (27 Nov. 2006). Army guidance is located in U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 12-1, SECURITY ASSISTANCE, INTERNATIONAL LOGISTICS, TRAINING, AND TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE SUPPORT POLICY AND RESPONSIBILITIES (24 Jan. 2000). These authorities permit acquisitions and transfers of specific categories of logistical support to take advantage of existing stocks in the supply systems of the U.S. and allied nations. Transactions may be accomplished notwithstanding certain other statutory rules related to acquisition and arms export controls. For further information, *see* CONTRACT & FISCAL LAW DEP'T, THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL, U.S. ARMY, FISCAL LAW DESKBOOK, ch. 10, Funding U.S. Military Operations (updated frequently and available online at www.jagcnet.army.mil).

2. The Economy Act (31 U.S.C. § 1535) provides another alternative means of fulfilling requirements. An executive agency may transfer funds to another agency, and order goods and services to be provided from existing stocks or by contract. For example, the Air Force could have construction performed by the Army Corps of Engineers, and the Army might have Department of Energy facilities fabricate special devices for the Army. Procedural requirements for Economy Act orders, including obtaining contracting officer approval on such actions, are set forth in FAR 17.5; DFARS 217.5; U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, INSTR. 4000.19, INTERSERVICE AND INTRAGOVERNMENTAL SUPPORT (9 Aug. 1995); and DFAS-IN 37-1. For further information, *see* CONTRACT & FISCAL LAW DEP'T, THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL'S SCHOOL, U.S. ARMY, CONTRACT LAW DESKBOOK, ch. 11, Interagency Acquisitions (updated frequently and available online at www.jagcnet.army.mil).

3. Extraordinary contractual actions under Pubic Law 85-804. During a national emergency declared by Congress or the President and for six months after the termination thereof, the President and his delegees may initiate or amend contracts notwithstanding any other provision of law whenever it is deemed necessary to facilitate the national defense. Pub. L. No. 85-804, codified at 50 U.S.C. §§1431-1435; Executive Order 10789 (14 Nov. 1958); FAR Part 50; DFARS Part 250. These powers are broad, but the statute and implementing regulations contain a number of limitations. For example, these powers do not allow waiving the requirement for full and open competition, and the authority to obligate funds in excess of \$65,000 may not be delegated lower than the Secretariat level. This authority is rarely used. Additionally, despite this grant of authority, Congress still must provide the money to pay for obligations

- H. Leases of Real Property. The Army is authorized to lease foreign real estate for military purposes. 10 U.S.C. § 2675. True leases normally are accomplished by the Army Corps of Engineers using Contingency Real Estate Support Teams (CREST).

VI. POLICING THE CONTRACTING BATTLEFIELD.

- A. **Ratification of Contracts Executed by Unauthorized Government Personnel.**
Only warranted KOs can legally bind the government in contract. However, sometimes other government officials purport to bind the government. This may occur, for example, when a commander directs a contractor to take actions beyond the scope of an existing contract or in the absence of a contract. An “unauthorized commitment” is an agreement that is not binding on the government solely because it was made by someone who did not have authority to bind the government. (FAR 1.602-3).

1. Because the person making the unauthorized commitment had no authority to bind the government, the government has no obligation to pay the unauthorized commitment. However, someone with actual authority to bind the government may choose to subsequently ratify the unauthorized commitment. To get the vendor paid, the unit should obtain from the local contracting office the appropriate form with which to request ratification, typically entitled Request for Approval of Unauthorized Commitment. The person making the unauthorized commitment completes the first few parts of the Request, providing the details of the unauthorized commitment. The Request is forwarded up the chain of command for concurrence and to explain the remedial and disciplinary actions taken in response to the unauthorized commitment, then further forwarded to the contracting office for further processing.

2. Based upon the dollar amount of the unauthorized commitment, the following officials have the authority to ratify the unauthorized commitment (*See FAR 1.602-3; AFARS 5101.602-3*):
 - a. Up to \$10,000 - Chief of Contracting Office

 - b. \$10,000 - \$100,000 – PARC or SCO

 - c. Over \$100,000 – HCA

3. These officials may ratify only when (FAR 1.602-3(c)):
 - a. The government has received the goods or services.

 - b. The ratifying official has the authority to enter into a contractual commitment.

 - c. The resulting contract would have otherwise been proper if made by an appropriate contracting officer.

 - d. The price is fair and reasonable.

- e. The contracting officer recommends payment and legal counsel concurs, unless agency procedures do not require such concurrence.
 - f. Proper funds are available and were available at the time the unauthorized commitment was made.
- B. Extraordinary Contractual Actions. If ratification is not appropriate, for example, where no agreement was reached with the supplier, the taking may be compensated as an informal commitment. FAR 50.102-3; 50.103-2(c). Alternatively, the supplier may be compensated using service secretary residual powers. FAR Subpart 50.104.
- 1. Requests to formalize informal commitments must be based on a request for payment made within 6 months of furnishing the goods or services, and it must have been impracticable to have used normal contracting procedures at the time of the commitment. FAR 50.102-3(d).
 - 2. These procedures have been used to reimburse owners of property taken during the Korean War (AFCAB 188, 2 ECR § 16 (1966)); in the Dominican Republic (Elias Then, Dept. of Army Memorandum, 4 Aug. 1966); in Jaragua S.A., ACAB No. 1087, 10 Apr. 1968; and in Panama (Anthony Gamboa, Dep't of Army Memorandum, Jan. 1990).
- C. Quantum Meruit.
- 1. Prior to 1995-1996, the Comptroller General had authority under 31 U.S.C. § 3702 to authorize reimbursement on a quantum meruit or quantum valebant basis to a firm that performed work for the government without a valid written contract.
 - 2. Under quantum meruit, the government pays the reasonable value of services it actually received on an implied, quasi-contractual basis. Maintenance Svc. & Sales Corp., 70 Comp. Gen. 664 (1991).

3. The GAO used the following criteria to determine justification for payment:
 - a. The goods or services for which the payment is sought would have been a permissible procurement had proper procedures been followed;
 - b. The government received and accepted a benefit;
 - c. The firm acted in good faith; and
 - d. The amount to be paid did not exceed the reasonable value of the benefit received. Maintenance Svc. & Sales Corp., 70 Comp. Gen. 664 (1991).
 4. Congress transferred the claims settlement functions of the GAO to the Office of Management and Budget, which further delegated the authority. See The Legislative Branch Appropriations Act, 1996, Pub. L. 104-53, 109 Stat. 514, 535 (1995); 31 U.S.C. 3702.
 5. The Claims Division at the Defense Office of Hearings and Appeals (DOHA) settles these types of claims for the Department of Defense. DOHA decisions can be found at www.defenselink.mil/dodge/doha.
- D. Contract Disputes Act (CDA) claims. If the contractor believes it can meet its burden in proving an implied-in-fact contract, it can appeal a contracting officer's final decision to the United States Court of Federal Claims or the cognizant board of contract appeals. 41 U.S.C. §§ 601-613; FAR Subpart 33.2.

VII. CONCLUSION.

Chapter 31
**Contingency Contractor
Personnel**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 31

CONTINGENCY CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL (CCP)

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION..... | 1 |
| II. | REFERENCES..... | 1 |
| III. | CATEGORIES OF CONTRACTORS IN A CONTINGENCY ENVIRONMENT..... | 3 |
| | A. General..... | 3 |
| | B. DOD Contractors Accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces..... | 3 |
| | C. DOD Contractors Not Accompanying the Armed Forces in the CENTCOM AOR..... | 7 |
| | D. DOD Contractors Not Accompanying the Armed Forces Outside CENTCOM AOR..... | 8 |
| | E. Non-DOD Contractors in a Contingency Environment..... | 8 |
| | F. Summary..... | 8 |
| IV. | LEGAL STATUS..... | 8 |
| | A. International Law..... | 8 |
| | B. Host Nation (HN) and Third CountryNation (TCN) Laws..... | 9 |
| | C. Iraq..... | 11 |
| | D. Afghanistan..... | 11 |
| V. | ADMINISTRATIVE ACCOUNTABILITY AND PROCESSING..... | 12 |
| | A. General..... | 12 |
| | B. Joint Contractor Database..... | 13 |
| | C. Contractor Responsibilities..... | 15 |
| | D. CONUS Replacement Centers (CRCs) and Individual Deployment Sites (IDS)..... | 16 |
| | E. Joint Replacement Center (JRC)..... | 17 |
| | F. Army sponsored..... | 17 |
| VI. | LOGISTICS SUPPORT..... | 17 |
| | A. Policy..... | 17 |
| | B. Letter of Authorization (LOA)..... | 18 |
| | C. Individual Protective Equipment..... | 18 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| D. | Clothing..... | 19 |
| E. | Government Furnished Equipment..... | 19 |
| F. | Legal Assistance..... | 19 |
| G. | ID Cards..... | 20 |
| H. | Medical and Dental Care..... | 21 |
| I. | Evacuation, Next of Kin (NOK) Notification, Personnel Recovery, Mortuary Affairs..... | 21 |
| J. | Vehicle and Equipment Operation..... | 22 |
| K. | MWR Support..... | 22 |
| L. | Military Postal Service (MPS)..... | 23 |
| M. | American Red Cross (ARC) Services..... | 23 |
| N. | Family Readiness Groups (FRG)..... | 23 |
| O. | Religious Support..... | 23 |
| P. | Hostage Aid..... | 23 |
| VII. | SECURITY, WEAPONS, AND USE OF FORCE | 23 |
| A. | Security..... | 23 |
| B. | CCP Arming for Self-Defense..... | 24 |
| C. | Security Services..... | 25 |
| VIII. | COMMAND, CONTROL AND DISCIPLINE..... | 30 |
| A. | General..... | 30 |
| B. | Orders and Policies..... | 31 |
| C. | Discipline..... | 33 |
| IX. | CIVIL LIABILITY..... | 36 |
| A. | Overview..... | 37 |
| B. | Sovereign Immunity..... | 37 |
| C. | General Rule..... | 38 |
| D. | Two Primary Exceptions..... | 38 |
| E. | Government Contract-Based Indemnification..... | 41 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|-----------|
| X. | OTHER CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL ISSUES..... | 42 |
| A. | Living Conditions..... | 42 |
| B. | Life and Health Insurance. | 42 |
| C. | Workers' Compensation-Type Benefits:..... | 43 |
| D. | Pay..... | 44 |
| E. | Veteran's Benefits..... | 44 |
| F. | Continued Performance During a Crisis. | 44 |

CONTINGENCY CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL (CCP)

I. INTRODUCTION.

The U.S. military has long used contractors to provide supplies and services to deployed U.S. forces. However, the scale of contractor support the Department of Defense (DOD) relies on today in locations such as Iraq and elsewhere throughout Southwest Asia has increased considerably from what DOD relied on during previous military operations, such as Operation Desert Shield/Desert Storm and in the Balkans. Moreover, DOD's reliance on contractors continues to grow. The Army alone estimates that almost 60,000 contractor employees currently support ongoing military operations in Southwest Asia. By way of contrast, an estimated 9,200 contractor personnel supported military operations in the 1991 Gulf War. . . . Today, contractors provide deployed U.S. forces with communication services; interpreters who accompany military patrols; base operations support (e.g., food and housing); weapons systems maintenance; intelligence analysis; and a variety of other support. Many of these contractors live and work side by side with their military counterparts and share many of the same risks and hardships. . . . Although DOD has taken action to improve its guidance on the use of contractors to support deployed forces since our 2003 report, a number of long-standing problems continue to hinder DOD's management and oversight of contractors at deployed locations.

U.S. Gov't Accountability Office, Publ'n No. GAO-07-145, Military Operations: High-Level DOD Action Needed to Address Long-Standing Problems with Management and Oversight of Contractors Supporting Deployed Forces 1-3 (Dec. 2006).

II. REFERENCES.

A. General Servs. Admin. et al., Federal Acquisition Reg. 25.3, Contracts Performed Outside the United States [hereinafter FAR], with its accompanying clause at FAR 52.225-19, Contractor Personnel in a Designated Operational Area or Supporting a Diplomatic or Consular Mission Outside the United States.

B. U.S. Dep't of Defense, Defense Federal Acquisition Reg. Supp. 225.3, Contracts Performed Outside the United States [hereinafter DFARS].

C. DFARS 225.74, Defense Contractors Outside the United States, with its accompanying clause at DFARS 252.225-7040, Contractor Personnel Authorized to Accompany U.S. Armed Forces Deployed Outside the United States, and its accompanying Procedures, Guidance and Information (PGI) at DFARS PGI 225.74.

D. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004, Contractor Personnel in the United States Central Command Area of Responsibility, available at <http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/policy/policyvault/USA001267-11-DPAP.pdf>.

E. Private Security Contractors (PSCs) Operating in Contingency Operations, 74 Fed. Reg. 34,690 (July 17, 2009) (interim final rule to be codified at 32 C.F.R. pt. 159) [hereinafter PSC Interim Final Rule].

F. U.S. Dep't of Defense, Instr. 3020.41, Contractor Personnel Authorized to Accompany U.S. Armed Forces (3 Oct. 2005) [hereinafter DODI 3020.41].

G. U.S. Dep't of Defense, Instr. 3020.50, Private Security Contractors (PSCs) Operating in Contingency Operations (22 Jul. 2009) [hereinafter DODI 3020.50].

H. U.S. Dep't of Defense, Instr. 5525.11, Criminal Jurisdiction Over Civilians Employed By or Accompanying the Armed Forces Outside the United States, Certain Service Members, and Former Service Members (3 Mar. 2005) [hereinafter DODI 5525.11].

I. Article 2(a)(10), Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).

J. Procurement & Indus. Base Policy Office, Deputy Assistant Sec'y of the Army, Army Contractors Accompanying the Force (CAF) (AKA Contractors on the Battlefield) Guidebook (Sept. 2003) [hereinafter, Guidebook], *available at* <http://www.afsc.army.mil/gc/files/CAF%20Guidebook.doc>.

K. Army Sustainment Command (ASC) Contractor on the Battlefield Webpage, *located at* <http://www.aschq.army.mil/home/BattlefieldResourceLibrary.aspx>. (containing links to contingency contractor personnel related materials and websites).

L. Assistant Sec'y of the Army (Acquisition, Logistics and Tech.), Contingency Contracting and Contractor on the Battlefield Library, *available at* <https://www.alt.army.mil/portal/page/portal/oasaalt/SAAL-ZP-Contingency-Contracting> (containing links to materials relevant to contingency contracting; deployments; contingency contractor personnel; suggested contracting clauses; contingency contracting articles; etc.).

M. U.S. Dep't of Army, Reg. 715-9, Contractors Accompanying the Force (29 Oct. 1999) [hereinafter AR 715-9].

N. U.S. Dep't of Army, Reg. 700-137, Logistics Civil Augmentation Program (LOGCAP) (16 Dec. 1985) [hereinafter AR 700-37].

O. U.S. Dep't of Army, Field Manual 3-100.21, Contractors on the Battlefield (Jan. 2003) [hereinafter FM 3-100.21].

P. CENTCOM Contracting Command (C3) Training Website, *located at* <http://c3-training.net/> (containing training materials, checklists, policy documents, acquisition instructions, and contract clauses).

Q. Under Secretary of Defense, Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics, Defense Procurement and Acquisition Policy, Contingency Contracting, Defense Contingency Contracting Handbook: Essential Tools, Information, and Training to Meet Contingency Contracting Needs for the 21st Century (June 2010).

III. CATEGORIES OF CONTRACTORS IN A CONTINGENCY ENVIRONMENT

A. General. The contract is the principal legal basis for the relationship between a contractor and the U.S. Government. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.4. Applicable portions of the FAR, DFARS, and DOD instructions, regulatory, and policy guidance vary in a contingency environment depending on how a contract categorizes a contractor and its employees' relationship to the U.S. Government. A contract may generally characterize a contractor's relationship to the U.S. government into one of four broad categories: (1) DOD contractors Accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces; (2) DOD Contractors not accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces in the CENTOM AOR; (3) DOD contractors not accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces outside the CENTCOM AOR; and (4) Non-DOD contractors (e.g., Department of State, U.S. Agency for International Development, etc.).

B. DOD Contractors Accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces.

1. Authority. DODI 3020.41 establishes and implements policy and guidance, assigns responsibilities, and serves as a comprehensive source of DOD policy and procedures concerning DOD contractor personnel authorized to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces. DODI 3020.41, paras. 1, 6; DFARS PGI 225.7402(1).
2. Defined.
 - a) The Geneva Conventions and other international agreements define a contractor's status as a civilian accompanying the force in the field. Civilians accompanying the force are generally defined as persons who accompany the armed forces without actually being members thereof and are responsible for the welfare of the armed forces. FM 3-100.21, para. 1-21.

- b) Authorization to accompany the force is demonstrated by possession of a DD Form 489 (Geneva Conventions Identity Card for Persons who Accompany the Armed Forces). DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.1; FM 3-100.21, paragraph 1-21.

3. Types.

- a) Contingency Contractor Personnel (CCP): Defense contractors and employees of defense contractors and their subcontractors at all tiers under DOD contracts, including third country national (TCN) and host nation (HN) personnel, *who are authorized to accompany U.S. Armed Forces under such contracts*. This includes employees of external support, systems support, and theater support contractors. Such personnel are provided with an appropriate identification card under the Geneva Conventions. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.3.

(1) External Support Contracts.

- (a) Contract. Contracts awarded by supporting headquarters outside the contingency operation area that provide support for deployed operational forces. These contracts are usually prearranged, but may be awarded or modified during the mission based on the commander's needs. Examples include the Army Logistics Civil Augmentation Program (LOGCAP), the Air Force Contract Augmentation Program, the Navy Construction Capabilities Contract, Civil Reserve Air Fleet contracts, and war reserve materiel contracts. Support under external support contracts is often designated as "essential contractor services" under the contract. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.7; *see also infra* Section X.F.
- (b) Contractors. Contract personnel under external support contracts who are hired predominantly from outside the operational area to support deployed operational forces. External support contractors include TCN personnel and local national personnel who are hired under a subcontract relationship of a prime external support contract; while these TCN and local national subcontractor personnel may not

deploy through a deployment center or process, they are considered CDF for joint contractor database purposes and the prime external support contractor shall ensure their applicable personnel data is reflected in the joint contractor database. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.8.

(2) System Support Contracts.

- (a) Contract. Contracts awarded by Military Department program managers or by Component Commands outside the contingency operation area to support deployed operational forces. They provide essential support to specific systems throughout the system's life cycle (including spare parts and maintenance for key weapons systems, command and control infrastructure, and communications systems) across the range of military operations. Support under systems support contracts is often designated as "essential contractor services" under the contract. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.15; *see also infra* Section X.F.
- (b) Contractors. Contract personnel under systems support contracts, normally with high levels of technical expertise, hired to support specific military systems. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.16.

(3) Theater Support Contracts.

- (a) Contract. Contracts awarded within the contingency operation area to support deployed operational forces. Military contracting personnel with the deployed force, working under the contracting authority of the theater, component, or joint forces command contracting chief, normally award and administer these contracts. Theater support contracts provide goods, services, and minor construction, usually from the local vendor base, to meet the immediate needs of operational commanders. Most of these contracts do not provide essential contractor services; however, there are

exceptions such as fuel and transportation support. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.17.

- (b) Contractors. Contract personnel under theater support contracts that are hired in, and operating in, a specific operational area. DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.18.

- b) Contractors Deploying with the Force (CDF): Significant sub-category of CCP subject to special deployment, redeployment, and accountability requirements and responsibilities. Employees of system support and external support contractors, and associated subcontractors at all tiers, who are specifically authorized in their contract to deploy through a deployment center or process and provide support to US military forces in contingency operations or in other military operations. CDF do not include TCN or local national personnel hired in theater using local procurement (e.g., day laborers). DODI 3020.41, para. E2.1.4; *cf.* DODI 3020.41, para. para. E2.1.7 (defining “external support contractors”).

4. Standard DFARS Clauses.

- a) DODI 3020.41, para. 5.1.2, requires the development and implementation of standard DFARS clauses for inclusion in DOD contracts in which CCP are expected to support contingency operations or other appropriately designated military operations or exercises.
- b) DFARS 225.7402 and DFARS PGI 225.7402 provide policy and implementing guidance for CCP; DFARS 252.225-7040 provides the required clause.
- c) The clause at DFARS 252.225-7040, Contractor Personnel Authorized to Accompany US Armed Forces Deployed Outside the United States, must be used instead of the clause at FAR 52.225-19, Contractor Personnel in a Designated Operational Area or Supporting a Diplomatic or Consular Mission Outside the United States, in contracts and solicitations that authorize contractor personnel to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces deployed outside the United States (i.e., CCP) in:
 - (1) Contingency operations

- (2) Humanitarian or peacekeeping operations, or
- (3) Other military operations or exercises when designated by the combatant commander.

DFARS 225.7402-5; *see also* DFARS 225.7402-1.

C. DOD Contractors Not Accompanying the Armed Forces in the CENTCOM AOR.

1. Not all contractor personnel in a designated operational area are or will be authorized to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces. DFARS PGI 225.7402(2). As an example, the PGI states that contractor personnel performing reconstruction contracts generally are not authorized to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces. *Id.*
2. DODI 3020.41 and DFARS 225.7402 do not expressly apply to contractors who are not authorized to accompany the armed forces. See DODI 3020.41, para. 1; DFARS 225.7402-1. Instead, DFARS Class Deviation 20011-O0004, Contractor Personnel in the United States Central Command (CENTCOM) Area of Responsibility (AOR), governs contractor personnel in the CENTCOM AOR who are not authorized to accompany the force. DFARS 225.7402-5; DFARS PGI 225.7402-5.
3. Mixed Contracts. If a contract requires performance in the CENTCOM AOR, but some personnel performing the contract are authorized to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces, and other personnel performing the contract are not authorized to accompany the U.S. Armed Forces, include in the contract solicitation and contract both the clause at DFARS 252.225-7040 and the clause provided by Class Deviation 2011-O0004. Paragraph (b)(1) of each clause limits the applicability of each clause to appropriate personnel. DFARS PGI 225.7402-5.
4. Primary Substantive Distinction Between DFARS Clause and Class Deviation Clause:
 - a) Level of support to contractor personnel, and
 - b) Potential applicability of the UCMJ to contractors authorized to accompany the Armed Forces.

DFARS PGI 225.7402-5(a)(ii).

D. DOD Contractors Not Accompanying the Armed Forces Outside CENTCOM AOR.

1. DFARS 225.301-4 requires use of the clause at FAR 52.225-19 when defense contractors will (a) not accompany the armed forces and (b) perform in a designated operational area or support a diplomatic or consular mission outside the United States and outside the CENTCOM AOR.
2. Contractors accompanying the force anywhere outside the United States in a contingency operation, etc., remain subject to DFARS 252.225-7040. Defense contractors not accompanying the force within the CENTCOM AOR remain subject to Class Deviation 2011-O0004.

E. Non-DOD Contractors in a Contingency Environment. Contractors of other government agencies, such as the Department of State, are governed by the FAR Part 25.3 and its accompanying clause at FAR 52.225-19 as well as other agency specific regulations and directives.

F. Summary.

| IF A CONTRACTOR IS A: | THEN INSERT THE CLAUSE AT: |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| DOD Contractor Accompanying the Armed Forces (i.e., CCP) | DFARS 252.225-7040 |
| DOD Contractor Not Accompanying the Armed Forces in the CENTCOM AOR | DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004 |
| DOD Contractor Not Accompanying the Armed Forces Outside the U.S. and Outside the CENTCOM AOR | FAR 52.225-19 |
| Non-DOD Contractor | FAR 52.225-19 |

IV. LEGAL STATUS.

A. International Law. Contractors may support military operations as “civilians accompanying the force.” Contractors must be designated as such by the military force they are accompanying and must be provided an appropriate identification (ID) card under the Geneva Convention. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.1; FM 3-100.21, para. 1-21; *see also* DFARS 252.225-7040(b)(3) and (e)(1)(iii) (designating CCP as civilians accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces and requiring the issuance of a Geneva Conventions identification card).

1. If captured during international armed conflict, CCP are entitled to POW status. In contrast, defense contractors not authorized to accompany the force are designated as “civilians” under DFARS Class

Deviation 2011-00004(b)(3). As a result of being classified by the contract as “civilians,” it is possible these contractor personnel may not be entitled to POW status but rather the protections afforded civilian personnel under the Geneva Conventions and other international agreements.

2. CCP may support operations through indirect participation, such as by providing communications support, transporting munitions and other supplies, performing maintenance on military equipment, and other logistic services. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.1; AR 715-9, para. 3-3(d). CCP who “engage in hostilities” risk being treated as combatants (and thus being targeted, etc.). Further, they risk being treated as “unprivileged belligerents” (and thus as war criminals). Vernon, *Battlefield Contractors: Facing Tough Issues*, 33 Pub. Cont. L. J. 369 (Winter 2004) at 404-21.
3. Arming of CCP, and CCP performance of security services, are addressed below in **Section VII**.
4. Each service to be performed by CCP in contingency operations shall be reviewed, on a case-by-case basis, in consultation with the servicing legal office to ensure compliance with applicable law and regulation. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.1.

B. HN and TCN Laws. Subject to international agreements, CCP and other contractor personnel in a contingency environment are subject to HN law and the law of their home country (TCN law). DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.2.

1. Status of Forces Agreements (SOFAs). SOFAs are international agreements between two or more governments that provide various privileges, immunities and responsibilities and enumerate the rights and responsibilities of individual members of the deployed force. The United States does not have SOFA arrangements with every country and some SOFAs do not adequately cover all contingencies. As such, it is possible that CCP and Service Members will be treated differently by a host-nation. Guidebook, Topic 15.
 - a) CCP status will depend upon the specific provisions of the SOFA, if any, that are applicable between the United States and the country of deployment at the time of deployment.
 - b) CCP may or may not be subject to criminal and/or civil jurisdiction of the host country to which they are deploying. AR 715-9, para. 3-1(g).

- c) If an international agreement (e.g., SOFA) does not address CCP status, the contractor may be unable to perform because their employees may not be able to enter the country or the contractor could be treated as a foreign corporation subject to local laws and taxation policies. AR 715-9, para. 3-1(g).
- d) The North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) SOFA is generally accepted as the model for bilateral and multilateral SOFAs between the U.S. Government and host nations around the world.
- e) The NATO SOFA covers three general classes of sending state personnel: 1) Members of the “force” (i.e., members of the armed forces of the sending state); 2) Members of the “civilian component” (i.e., civilian employees of the sending state); and, 3) “Dependents” (i.e., the spouse or child of a member of the force or civilian component that is dependent upon them for support).
- f) Under the generally accepted view of the NATO SOFA, contractor employees are not considered members of the civilian component. Accordingly, special technical arrangements or international agreements generally must be concluded to afford contractor employees the rights and privileges associated with SOFA status.
- g) If there is no functioning government with which the Department of State can negotiate a SOFA, contract planners must comply with the policy and instructions of the combatant commander when organizing the use of contractors in that country.
- h) If there is any contradiction between a SOFA and an employer’s contract, the terms of the SOFA will take precedence. Such conflicts may require contract modification and result in increased cost.
- i) The following websites may help determine if the U.S. has a SOFA agreement with a particular country:
<http://www.jagcnet.army.mil> (CLAMO section);
<http://www.state.gov> (this webpage also contains country studies, a quick way to learn about a country to which personnel are deploying).

2. CCP remain subject to the laws of their home country. Application of U.S. law is discussed below in **Section VIII**.
3. Contractors not authorized to accompany the force also are subject to host-nation laws and the laws of their own country unless an international agreements provides otherwise.

C. Iraq.

1. Criminal, Civil and Administrative Jurisdiction. Iraq has the primary right to exercise criminal and civil jurisdiction over U.S. contractors and U.S. contractor employees. *See* The Agreement Between the United States of America and the Republic of Iraq on the Withdrawal of United States Forces from Iraq and the Organization of Their Activities During Their Temporary Presence in Iraq (Nov. 17, 2008), art. 12(2), available at http://www.mnf-iraq.com/images/CGs_Messages/security_agreement.pdf [hereinafter Security Agreement]. The United States may request Iraq to waive its primary right of jurisdiction in a particular case. Security Agreement, art. 12(6). The Security Agreement does not specify the level of due process standards or protections CCP will receive.
2. U.S. contractors and U.S. Contractor Employees Defined. Refer to non-Iraqi persons or legal entities, and their employees, who are citizens of the United States or a third country and who are in Iraq to supply goods, services, and security in Iraq to or on behalf of the United States Forces under a contract or a subcontract with or for the United States Forces. However, the terms do not include persons or legal entities normally resident in the territory of Iraq. Security Agreement, Art. 2(5).

D. Afghanistan.

1. Operation Enduring Freedom.
 - a) Authority. U.S. relations with the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan and immunities are discussed in the Agreement Regarding the Status of United States Military and Civilian Personnel of the U.S. Department of Defense Present in Afghanistan in Connection with Cooperative Efforts in Response to Terrorism, Humanitarian and Civic Assistance, Military Training and Exercises, and Other Activities. This Agreement, drafted as a Diplomatic Note, entered into force on 28 May 2003, as effected by exchanges of notes on 26

September 2002 (Note 202), 12 December 2002 (Note 791), and 28 May 2003 (Note 93).

- b) U.S. Military and Civilian Personnel. Provided a “status equivalent to that accorded to the administrative and technical staff of the Embassy of the United States of America under the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations of April 18, 1981.”
- c) Contractor Personnel.
 - (1) The Agreement confirms U.S. criminal jurisdiction over contractor personnel. However, contractors remain subject to the criminal jurisdiction of the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan. The Agreement does not state which country has primary jurisdiction.
 - (2) The Agreement precludes the transfer or surrender of contractor and other U.S. personnel to an international tribunal or any other entity or state without the express consent of the United States.

2. International Security Assistance Forces (ISAF).

- a) Governed by a 2002 Military Technical Agreement negotiated with the Afghan Interim Authority. *See* Jennifer K. Elsea, Congressional Research Service, *Private Security Contractors in Iraq and Afghanistan: Legal Issues*, CRS Report No. R40991, at 13-14 (Jan. 7, 2010).
- b) Provides that “all ISAF and supporting personnel are subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of their own governments. ISAF personnel are immune from arrest or detention by Afghan authorities, and may not be turned over to any international tribunal or any other entity or State without the express consent of the contributing nation.” *Id.*

V. ADMINISTRATIVE ACCOUNTABILITY AND PROCESSING

A. General. Combatant Commanders are responsible, with assistance from their Component Commanders, for overall contractor visibility within their AOR. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.6.

B. Joint Contractor Database.

1. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.6, tasked the Under Secretary of Defense (Personnel and Readiness) (USD(P&R)) in coordination with the Under Secretary of Defense (Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics) (USD (ATL)) to designate or develop a joint web-based database as the central repository of CDF personnel and contract capability information for all external support and systems support contracts. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.6.1.
 - a) The database shall provide by-name accountability of all CDF.
 - b) The database shall contain or link to minimum contract information, such as contract number; contractor, contracting office, and sponsoring military unit contact information, and a summary of services or capability to be provided under the contract.
 - c) Military Departments shall ensure that the joint database is designated, and its use required, in all external support and systems support contracts where CDF have the potential to support contingency operations or other military operations.
 - d) The Synchronized Predeployment and Operational Tracker (SPOT) was designated as the database to serve as the central repository for information on all CDF personnel and contract capability as required by DODI 3020.41. Information on SPOT is available at <http://www.dod.mil/bta/products/spot.html>.
2. Expansion of SPOT Registration Requirement.
 - a) The 2008 National Defense Authorization Act, Pub. L. No. 110-181, § 861, *as amended by* The Duncan Hunter National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2009, Pub. L. No. 110-417, § 854, directed the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of State, and the USAID Administrator to sign an MOU related to contracting in Iraq and Afghanistan. The law specified a number of matters to be covered in the MOU, including the identification of each agency's roles and responsibilities for matters relating to contracting in Iraq or Afghanistan, responsibility for establishing procedures for the movement of contractor personnel in Iraq or Afghanistan, responsibility for collecting and referring information related to

violations of the UCMJ or the Military Extraterritorial Jurisdiction Act (MEJA), and identification of common databases to serve as repositories of information on contract and contractor personnel in Iraq or Afghanistan. Under § 861, the joint database must track, at a minimum:

- (1) a brief description of each contract,
- (2) the total value of each contract,
- (3) whether each contract was awarded competitively,
- (4) the total number of personnel employed on contracts in Iraq and Afghanistan,
- (5) the total number of personnel performing security functions under contracts in Iraq and Afghanistan, and
- (6) the total number of personnel working under contracts in Iraq and Afghanistan who have been killed or wounded.

Id.; U.S. Gov't Accountability Office, Publ'n No. GAO-09-538T, Contingency Contracting: DOD, State, and USAID Are Taking Actions to Track Contracts and Contractor Personnel in Iraq and Afghanistan 2-3 (Apr. 1, 2009) [hereinafter GAO Tracking Contractors].

- b) DOD, State, and USAID executed the required memorandum in July 2008 and designated SPOT as the system of record for required contract and contractor personnel information. GAO Tracking Contractors at 3. Under the MOA, the agencies must include in the database information on contacts with more than 14 days of performance or valued at more than \$100,000. *Id.*
- c) DFARS 252.225-7040(g) mandates use of SPOT for all CCP. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(g) mandates use of SPOT for all Defense contractors in the CENTCOM AOR who are not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces. DFARS 225.301-4(2) mandates use of SPOT for defense contractors not accompanying the Armed Forces outside the CENTCOM AOR.

- d) Registration in SPOT is now a prerequisite to obtaining a Letter of Authorization (LOA). *See* USCENTCOM FRAGO 09-1451 MOD 2, Contractor Theater Entrance Requirements, dated 311844Z OCT 09.
3. Relationship to USCENTCOM Census. United States Central Command “initiated a quarterly census of contractor personnel in June 2007, as an interim measure until SPOT is fully implemented. The census relies on contractor firms to self-report their personnel data to DOD components, which then aggregate the data and report them to CENTCOM at the end of each quarter.” Contingency Contracting: DOD, State, and USAID Are Taking Actions to Track Contracts and Contractor Personnel in Iraq and Afghanistan, GAO-09-538T, at 2-3 (Apr. 1, 2009). The census remains in use an alternate means of providing more complete information on contractor personnel in Iraq and Afghanistan pending full implementation of the SPOT database. *See* CENTCOM Contacting Command C³, Acquisition Instruction (November 2010), Subpart 25.7703-5(e), Monthly Contractor Census Reporting, and its accompanying clause at C³ Clause 952.225-0005, Monthly Contractor Census Reporting, *available at* <http://c3-training.net/docs/C3%20ACQUISITION%20INSTRUCTION.pdf>.

C. Contractor Responsibilities.

1. Accountability. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.6.4, requires external support and systems support contractors to input employee data and maintain by-name accountability of CDF in the joint database specified in the contract (*i.e.*, SPOT). These contractors are responsible for knowing the general location of their employees and shall keep the database updated. The Clauses at DFARS 252.225-7040(g), DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(g), and DFARS 225.301-4(2) (which references the Clause at FAR 52.225-19) impose this same requirement on all defense contractors in any contingency environment covered by the clauses.
2. Personnel Requirements.
 - a) Medical. Contractors are responsible for providing medically and physically qualified CCP. Any CDF deemed unsuitable to deploy during the deployment process, due to medical or dental reasons, will not be authorized to deploy with the military force. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.5. The Clauses at DFARS 252.225-7040(e)(ii), DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(e)(2)(ii), and FAR 52.225-19(e)(2)(ii) impose this same requirement on all defense contractors in any contingency

environment covered by the clauses. Further, SECDEF may direct mandatory immunizations for CDF. See DODI 6205.4. Contracts must stipulate that CDF must provide medical, dental and DNA reference specimens, and make available medical and dental records. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.5.

- b) Contracting officers may authorize contractor-performed deployment processing. Contracting officers shall coordinate with and obtain approval from the military departments for contractor-performed processing. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.11.

D. CONUS Replacement Centers (CRCs) and Individual Deployment Sites (IDS).

1. CDF. All CDF shall report to the deployment center designated in the contract before deploying to a contingency operation. *See* DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.1; DFARS 252.225-7040(f). Actions at the deployment center include:
 - a) Validate accountability information in the joint database; verify: security background checks completed, possession of required vehicle licenses, passports, visas, next of kin/emergency data card;
 - b) Issue/validate proper ID card;
 - c) Issue applicable government-furnished equipment;
 - d) Provide medical/dental screenings and required immunizations. Screening will include HIV testing, pre- and post-deployment evaluations, dental screenings, and TB skin test. A military physician will determine if the contract employee is qualified for deployment to the AO and will consider factors such as age, medical condition, job description, medications, and requirement for follow-up care. FM 3-100.21, para. 3-39; *see also* DFARS 252.225-7040(e), (f);
 - e) Validate/complete required training (e.g., law of war, detainee treatment, Geneva Conventions, General Orders, standards of conduct, force protection, nuclear/biological/chemical, etc, as applicable);
 - f) All CDF shall receive deployment processing certification (annotated in the letter of authorization (LOA) or separate

certification letter) and shall bring this certification to the JRC and carry it with them at all times;

g) Waivers. For less than 30-day deployments, the Combatant Commander may waive some of the formal deployment processing requirements, including processing through a deployment center. Non-waivable requirements include possession of proper ID card, proper accountability, medical requirements (unless prior approval of qualified medical personnel). CDF with waivers shall carry the waiver with them at all times. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.2.

2. Contractor Personnel Other than CDF. DFARS 252.225-7040(f) extends similar requirements to all CCP unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer. Contractors not accompanying the Armed Forces and who are arriving from outside the area of performance must also process through the departure center specified in the contract or complete another process as directed by the contracting officer to ensure minimum theater admission requirements are satisfied. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(f).

E. Joint Replacement Center (JRC). CDF shall process through a JRC upon arrival at the deployed location. The JRC will validate personnel accountability, ensure theater-specific requirements are met, and brief CDF on theater-specific policies and procedures. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.1. DFARS 252.225-7040(f) subjects CCP to similar procedures. Contractors not accompanying the Armed Forces arriving from outside the area of performance must process through a reception center as designated by the contracting officer upon arrival at the place of performance. See DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(f)(3).

F. Army sponsored. All US Army sponsored contractor employees in the AO shall be designated to a military unit to maintain oversight and accountability. AR 715-9, para. 2-1(a).

VI. LOGISTICS SUPPORT.

A. Policy. Generally, contractors are responsible for providing for their own logistical support and logistical support for their employees. Logistical support shall be provided by the DOD only when the commander or contracting officer determines the provision of such support is needed to ensure continuation of essential contractor services and adequate support cannot be obtained by the contractor from other sources at a reasonable cost. DODI 3020.41, para. 4.3; DFARS 225.7402-3; DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(c); AR 715-9, para. 3-1(i). The contracting office is

required to verify the logistical and operational support that will be available for CCP. DFARS PGI 225.74.

B. Letter of Authorization (LOA). DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.4.

1. An LOA shall be issued by a contracting officer or designee for all CDF, and will be required for processing through a deployment center, travel to/from/within the AOR, and will detail the privileges and government support to which each contractor employee is entitled. DFARS PGI 225.74 provides a sample LOA. DFARS 225.7402-3(e) imposes this same requirement on all CCP. There is no requirement for contractors who are not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces to have an LOA unless they will receive government furnished support. *See* DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004.
2. The LOA shall provide, at a minimum, the contract number, emergency contact information for the contracting officer, emergency contact information for the contractor POC, and contact information for the sponsoring in-theater supported unit.
3. All CDF/CCP shall carry the LOA with them at all times. The LOA shall identify the CDF/CCP by-name.
4. The LOA shall state the intended length of assignment in the AOR, and identify the government facilities, equipment, and privileges CDF/CCP are entitled to use.

C. Individual Protective Equipment. Generally, contractors are responsible for providing all life, mission, and administrative support to their employees. If the government determines it is in its interests to provide protective equipment, the level of support must be stated in the contract. The contract should designate where/when the equipment will be provided, where/when it is to be returned, and whether it is being provided on a reimbursable basis. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.6.; *see also* DFARS 252.225-7040(i) (authorizing CCP to wear military unique organizational clothing and individual equipment (OCIE) required for safety and security, such as ballistic, nuclear, biological, or chemical protective equipment and stating providing guidance on training and return of the equipment); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(k) (allowing contractors not accompanying the armed forces to wear specific items required for safety or security). The decision of contractor personnel to wear any issued protective equipment is voluntary; however, the Combatant Commander, subordinate JFC and/or ARFOR Commander may require contractor employees to be prepared to wear Chemical, Biological, and Radiological Element (CBRE) and High-Yield Explosive defensive equipment. Guidebook, Topic 6; *see also* DFARS 252.225-7040(i) (prohibiting contractors “from wearing military clothing unless specifically authorized in writing by the combatant commander” and listing minimum

requirements to allow for distinction between contractor and military personnel if the combatant commander authorizes the wear of military clothing); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(K) (same).

D. Clothing. Generally, commanders SHALL NOT issue military clothing to any contractor personnel, nor allow contractor personnel to wear military or military look-alike uniforms. AR 715-9, para. 3-3(e). Individual contractor personnel are ordinarily responsible to provide their own clothing. Combatant commanders may authorize certain contractor personnel to wear military uniforms for operational reasons. This authorization shall be in writing and be carried at all times by subject contractor employee. Care must be taken to ensure contractor personnel are distinguishable from military personnel. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.7; DFARS 252.225-7040(i); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(k).

E. Government Furnished Equipment (may include protective equipment, clothing, or other equipment necessary for contract performance).

1. The contract must specify that the contractor is responsible for storage, maintenance, accountability, and performance of routine inspection of Government furnished property. The contract must also specify contractor responsibilities for training and must specify the procedures for accountability of Government furnished property. AR 700-137; AR 715-9, para. 3-1(j); Guidebook, Topic 6.
2. Contractor employees will be responsible for maintaining all issued items and must return them to the issuer upon redeployment. DFARS 252.225-7040(i). In the event that issued clothing and/or equipment is lost or damaged due to negligence, a financial liability investigation of property loss will be initiated IAW AR 735-5. *See* U.S. Dep't of Army. Reg. 735-5, Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability, chs. 13-14 (28 Feb 2005). According to the findings of the Survey Officer and terms of the contract, the government may require reimbursement from the contractor. AR 700-137; AR 735-5, chs. 13-14, Guidebook, Topic 6.

F. Legal Assistance. Generally, contractor personnel are NOT entitled to military legal assistance with personal legal affairs, either in theater or at the deployment center. Any authorization should be contained within the LOA, which should be carried by the contractor employee and be presented to the legal office to show entitlement. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.10; U.S. Dep't of Army Reg. 27-3, The Army Legal Assistance Program, para. 2-5a(7) (21 Feb. 1996) [hereinafter AR 27-3].

1. Contractual Obligation. The specific terms of the contract must be reviewed to verify if the government is obligated to provide legal service. AR 27-3, para. 2-5a(7). SJAs should recommend eliminating

legal assistance contractual obligations whenever such contracts are reviewed or renegotiated. AR 27-3, para. 2-5a(7).

2. If contractually obligated to provide legal assistance, the following limitations apply:
 - a) If the legal assistance is to be provided overseas, it must be in accordance with applicable international agreements or approved by the host nation government in some way. AR 27-3, para. 2-5.
 - b) Legal assistance is limited to ministerial service (for example notarial services), legal counseling (to include the review and discussion of legal correspondence and documents), and legal document preparation (limited to powers of attorney and advanced medical directives) and help on retaining civilian lawyers. AR 27-3, para. 2-5.
 - c) NOTE: Contract employee status is irrelevant if the person is an authorized recipient of legal assistance services (e.g., military retiree or family member otherwise authorized legal assistance services).

G. ID Cards.

1. CCP will receive one or more of the following three distinct forms of identification:
 - a) Common Access Card (CAC). Required for access to facilities and use of privileges afforded to military, government civilians and/or military dependents. CDF are issued CACs. Guidebook, Topic 4; *see also* DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.3.
 - b) DD Form 489 (Geneva Conventions Identity Card for Persons who Accompany the Armed Forces). Identifies one's status as a contractor employee accompanying the U.S. Armed Forces. Must be carried at all times when in the theater of operations. Pursuant to the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, Article 4(4), if captured, contractors accompanying the force are entitled to prisoner of war status. Guidebook, Topic 4; FM 3-100.21, para. 1-21; *see also* discussion of Status, *supra*.

- c) Personal identification tags. The identification tags will include the following information: full name, social security number, blood type and religious preference. These tags should be worn at all times when in the theater of operations. Guidebook, Topic 4; *see also* DODI 3020.41, para. 6.2.7.3.
2. In addition, other identification cards, badges, etc., may be issued depending upon the operation. For example, when U.S. forces participate in United Nations (U.N.) or multinational peace-keeping operations, contractor employees may be required to carry items of identification that verify their relationship to the U.N. or multinational force.
3. If the contractor processes CDF or CCP for deployment, it is the responsibility of the contractor to ensure CDF receive required identification prior to deployment.

H. Medical and Dental Care. Generally, DOD may provide resuscitative care, stabilization, and hospitalization at level III Military Treatment Facilities (MTF), and assistance with patient movement in emergencies where loss of life, limb, or eyesight could occur. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.8; DFARS 252.225-7040(c)(2). DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004 does not contain similar authorization.

1. All costs associated with treatment and transportation are reimbursable to the government.
2. Resuscitative care. The aggressive management of life and limb-threatening injuries. Examples of emergencies include refills of prescription/life-dependent drugs, broken bones, broken teeth.
3. Primary Care. Primary medical or dental care is NOT authorized and will not be provided unless specifically authorized under the terms of the contract and the corresponding LOA.
4. Long term care. Long term care will not be provided.

I. Evacuation, Next of Kin (NOK) Notification, Personnel Recovery, Mortuary Affairs.

1. Evacuation. The government will provide assistance, to the extent available, to U.S. and TCN contractors if the Combatant Commander orders a mandatory evacuation. DFARS 252.225-7040(m); DFARS Class Deviation 20011-O0004(l).

2. NOK Notification. The contractor is responsible for notification of the employee-designated NOK in the event an employee dies, requires evacuation due to an injury, or is isolated, missing, detained, captured, or abducted. DFARS 252.225-7040(n); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(m).
3. The government will assist, in accordance with U.S. Dep't of Defense, Dir. 2310.2, Personnel Recovery (Dec. 22, 2000) in the case of isolated, missing, detained, captured, or abducted contractor personnel. DFARS 252.225-7040(n). DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004 does not authorize similar support to contractors performing in the CENTCOM AOR not authorized to accompany the armed forces.
4. Mortuary Affairs. Mortuary affairs will be handled in accordance with U.S. Dep't of Defense, Dir. 1300.22, Mortuary Affairs Policy (Nov. 21, 2003). *See* DFARS 252.225-7040(o); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(n)

J. Vehicle and Equipment Operation. Deployed contractor employees may be required or asked to operate U.S. military, government owned or leased equipment such as generators and vehicles. Contractor personnel may also be required to obtain a local license for the deployment country (e.g. German driver's license). DFARS 252.225-7040(k); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(j); Guidebook, Topic 8.

1. Contractor-owned/leased vehicles shall meet all requirements established by the combatant commander and be maintained in a safe operating condition. Guidebook, Topic 8.
2. While operating a military owned or leased vehicle, a contractor employee is still subject to the local laws and regulations of the country, area, city, and/or camp in which he/she is deployed. Traffic accidents or violations usually will be handled in accordance with the local laws, the Status of Forces Agreement, and/or Combatant Commander guidance.
3. If a contractor employee does not enjoy special status under the Status of Forces Agreement, then he/she may be subject to criminal and/or civil liabilities. Therefore, the employee or contractor may be held liable for damages resulting from negligent or unsafe operation of government vehicles and equipment.

K. MWR Support. CCP may be eligible to use some or all MWR facilities and activities subject to the installation or Combatant Commander's discretion and the terms of the contract. *See* U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-1, MILITARY MORALE,

WELFARE, AND RECREATION PROGRAMS AND NONAPPROPRIATED FUND INSTRUMENTALITIES, ch. 7 (24 Sept. 2010). U.S. citizen contractor employees may be eligible for use of Army and Air Force Exchange Service (AAFES) facilities for health and comfort items. Use of these facilities will be based on the installation or Combatant Commander's discretion, the terms of the contract with the government, and the terms of the applicable Status of Forces Agreement. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-8, ARMY AND AIR FORCE EXCHANGE SERVICE OPERATIONS ch. 6 (30 Jul. 2008).

L. Military Postal Service (MPS). U.S. citizen contractor employees, and any accompanying dependents, are entitled to use the MPS only where there is no U.S. Postal Service available and the contract between the U.S. Government and contractor does not preclude the contractor's employees from using the MPS. Contract clauses authorizing a contractor employee to use the MPS must be reviewed and approved by the MPS agency.

M. American Red Cross (ARC) Services. ARC services such as emergency family communications and guidance for bereavement airfare are available to CDF in the area of operations.

N. Family Readiness Groups (FRG). CDF personnel are encouraged to form their own FRGs or may coordinate with supported unit leaders to determine whether to involve their family with the FRG group of the military unit to which they are attached.

O. Religious Support. CCP are entitled to receive Army chaplain religious support. The Army can restrict the right to the free exercise of religion by contractor personnel. The location and nature of the conflict will determine these parameters. AR 715-9, para. 2-1(b).

P. Hostage Aid. When the Secretary of State declares that U.S. citizens or resident aliens are in a "captive status" as a result of "hostile action" against the U.S. government, CDF personnel and his/her dependents become entitled to a wide range of benefits. Potential benefits include: continuation of full pay and benefits; select remedies under the Servicemembers' Civil Relief Act; physical and mental health care treatment; education benefits to spouses or dependents of unmarried captives; and, death benefits. Eligible persons must petition the Secretary of State to receive benefits. Responsibility for pursuing these benefits rests with the contractor employee, the employee's family members or the contractor.

VII. SECURITY, WEAPONS, AND USE OF FORCE

A. Security. It is DOD policy to develop a plan for protection of CCP in locations where there is not sufficient or legitimate civil authority and the commander decides

it is in the interests of the government to provide security because the contractor cannot obtain effective security services, such services are unavailable at a reasonable cost, or threat conditions necessitate security through military means. DODI 3020.41, para. 4.4; DFARS 252.225-7040(c). In contrast, DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(c), which pertains to contractors who are not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces, provides that the contractor is responsible for all security support required for contractor personnel engaged in the contract.

1. The contracting officer shall include the level of protection to be provided to CCP in the contract.
2. In appropriate cases, the Combatant Commander may provide security through military means, commensurate with the level of security provided to DOD civilians.
3. All CCP shall comply with applicable Combatant Commander and local commander force protection policies. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4. Contractors not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces must comply with force protection, security, health, or safety orders, directives, and instructions issued by the Combatant Commander. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(d).

B. CCP Arming for Self-Defense. DODI 3020.41, paras. 4.4.1, 6.3.4.1, 6.3.4.2.

1. In accordance with applicable U.S., HN, and international law, and relevant international agreements, on a CASE-BY-CASE basis, the Combatant Commander (or general officer designee) may authorize CCP arming for INDIVIDUAL self-defense when military force protection and legitimate civil authority are deemed unavailable or insufficient. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.
2. Acceptance of weapons by CCP must be voluntary and permitted by the contractor and the contract. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.
3. The government must furnish or ensure weapons training and briefings on the rules for the use of force. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.
4. The contractor must ensure that employees are not prohibited under U.S. law to possess firearms (e.g., Lautenberg Amendment, 18 U.S.C. 922(d)(9)). *See* DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.
5. CCP shall be advised that the inappropriate use of force may subject them to U.S. and HN prosecution and civil liability unless an

international agreement or international law provides immunity. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.

6. All applications for arming CCP shall be reviewed on a case-by-case basis by the Staff Judge Advocate to the Combatant Commander. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.4.1.
7. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(i) provides similar guidance for contractors not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces
8. C³ Clause 952.225-0001, Arming Requirements and Procedures for Personal Security Services Contractors and Requests for Personal Protection, provides significant additional guidance and restrictions on arming contractors for self defense.

C. Security Services. If consistent with applicable U.S., HN, and international law, international agreements, DODI 3020.41, and the PSC Interim Final Rule, a defense contractor may be authorized to provide security services for other than uniquely military functions. Contracts for security services shall be used cautiously in contingency operations where major combat operations are ongoing or imminent. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.5. Whether a particular use of contract security personnel to protect military assets or personnel is permissible is dependent on the facts and requires legal analysis considering the nature of the operation, the type of conflict, and a case-by-case determination. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.5.

1. Definitions.

- a) Private Security Company (PSC). A company employed by the DOD performing “private security functions” under a “covered contract” in a contingency operation.
 - (1) In an area of “combat operations,” as designated by the Secretary of Defense, the term PSC expands to include all companies employed by U.S. Government agencies that are performing “private security functions” under a “covered contract.” PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34692, § 159.3; DODI 3020.50, Glossary.
 - (2) The definition of PSC similarly expands in areas designated as “other significant military operations” by both the Secretary of Defense and Secretary of State. *See* The Ike Skelton National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2011, Pub. L. No. 111-383, § 832, 124 Stat. 4137, 4275 (Jan. 7, 2011) (amending § 862

of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2008, Pub. L. No. 110-181; 10 U.S.C. 2302 note) (adding “other significant military operations”).

“„[O]ther significant military operations’ means activities, other than combat operations, as part of an overseas contingency operation that are carried out by the United States Armed Forces in an uncontrolled or unpredictable high threat environment where personnel performing security functions may be called upon to use deadly force. “

- b) Private Security Function (PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34692, § 159.3; DODI 3020.50, Glossary).
 - (1) Guarding of personnel, facilities, designated sites, or property of a Federal agency, the contractor or subcontractor, or a third party.
 - (2) Any other activity for which personnel are required to carry weapons in the performance of their duties. Contractor personnel armed for self-defense are not subject to requirements of the PSC Interim Final Rule; DODI 3020.41 continues to prescribe policies related to the arming of individual contractors for self-defense.
 - (3) Contractors are not authorized to perform inherently governmental functions. Therefore, any private security function is limited to a defensive response to hostile acts or demonstrated hostile intent. *See also* PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34,693, § 159.6.

- c) Covered Contract. (PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34692, § 159.3; DODI 3020.50, Glossary).
 - (1) A DOD contract for the performance of security services in an area of contingency operations. A “contingency operation” is a military operation that is either designated as such by the Secretary of Defense or becomes a contingency operation as a matter of law under 10 U.S.C. § 101(a)(13). DODI 3020.50, Glossary.

- (2) A contract of a non-DOD Federal agency for performance of security services in an area of “combat operations” as designated by the Secretary of Defense. The Secretary of Defense may designate an area as “combat operations” when there is a need for enhanced coordination of PSCs working for U.S. Government agencies. DODI 3020.50, Glossary.
 - (3) A contract of a non-DOD Federal agency for performance of security services in an area of “other significant military operations” as agreed to and designated by both the Secretaries of Defense and State. *See* The Ike Skelton National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2011, Pub. L. No. 111-383, § 832, 124 Stat. 4137, 4275 (Jan. 7, 2011) (amending § 862 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2008, Pub. L. No. 110-181; 10 U.S.C. 2302 note).
2. Requests for permission to arm DOD PSCs shall be reviewed by the Staff Judge Advocate to the Combatant Commander. The request will then be approved or denied by the Combatant Commander, or a specifically identified designee no lower than general officer. PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34,693, § 159.6; DODI 3020.41, paragraph 6.3.5.1. Requests to arm non-DOD PSC personnel in an area of “combat operations” (and now assumedly in “areas of other significant military operations”) shall be approved by the Chief of Mission. The Chief of Mission must develop and implement procedures for non-DOD PSCs consistent with the standards set forth by the Combatant Commander or instruct the non-DOD PSCs to comply with the Combatant Commander’s procedures. PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34,692 to 34,693, §§ 159.4(c), 159.6; DODI 3020.50, paragraph 4.c.
3. If major combat operations are ongoing or imminent, contract security services will NOT be used to guard U.S. or coalition military supply routes, military facilities, military personnel, or military property except as specifically authorized by the Combatant Commander (non-delegable). DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.5.2.
4. IAW DODI 3020.41, paragraph 6.3.5.3, PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34,693, § 159.6, and DODI 3020.50, Encl. 3, requests for permission to arm CCP to provide security services shall include:

- a) A description of where such contract security personnel will operate, the anticipated threat, and what property, or personnel such personnel are intended to protect;
- b) A description of how the movement of contractor security personnel will be coordinated through areas of increased risk or planned or ongoing military operations including how the contractor security personnel will be rapidly identified by members of the Armed Forces;
- c) A communication plan to include a description of how relevant threat information will be shared between contractor security personnel and U.S. military forces, including how appropriate assistance will be provided to contractor security personnel who become engaged in hostile situations;
- d) Documentation of individual training covering weapons familiarization, rules for the use of deadly force, limits on the use of force including whether defense of others is consistent with HN Status of Forces Agreements or local law, the distinction between the rules of engagement applicable to military forces and the prescribed rules for the use of deadly force that control the use of weapons by civilians, and the Law of Armed Conflict.
- e) DD Form 2760, "Qualification to Possess Firearms and Ammunitions," certifying the individual is not prohibited under U.S. law from possessing a weapon or ammunition due to conviction in any court of a crime of domestic violence whether a felony or misdemeanor.
- f) Written acknowledgement by the defense contractor and individual contractor security personnel, after investigation of background and qualifications of contractor security personnel and organizations, certifying such personnel are not prohibited under U.S. law to possess firearms.
- g) Written acknowledgement by the defense contractor and individual contractor security personnel that: potential civil and criminal liability exists under U.S. and HN law for the use of weapons; proof of authorization to be armed must be carried; PSC may possess ONLY U.S. Government-issued and/or approved weapons and ammunition for which they have been qualified; PSC personnel were briefed and understand limitations on the use of force; authorization to possess

weapons and ammunition may be revoked for non-compliance with established rules for the use of force; and, PSC personnel are prohibited from consuming alcoholic beverages or being under the influence of alcohol while armed.

5. Upon approval of the request, the Combatant Commander will issue written authorization to the defense contractor identifying who is authorized to be armed and the limits on the use of force.
6. PSC Interim Final Rule, 74 Fed. Reg. at 34,693 to 34,694, § 159.6, tasks Combatant Commanders to develop and implement guidance and procedures to maintain accountability of PSC personnel. DODI 3020.50, Encl. 3, contains a near identical requirement. In addition to the requirements described above for approving arming requests, Combatant Commanders must develop procedures to implement and identify the organization responsible for:
 - a) Registering, processing, accounting for and keeping appropriate records of PSCs and PSC personnel IAW DODI 3020.41.
 - b) Verifying PSC personnel meet all legal, training, and qualification requirements for authorization to carry a weapon IAW their contract and host country law, to include the establishment of weapons accountability procedures.
 - c) Approving arming requests as described above.
 - d) Registering and identifying in SPOT armored vehicles, helicopters, and other vehicles operated by PSC personnel.
 - e) Reporting alleged criminal activity or other incidents involving PSCs or PSC personnel by another company or any other person, to include a weapon discharge; death or injury of any person occurring in the performance of duties or as a result of conduct by PSC personnel; property destruction by PSC personnel; any incident in which PSC personnel come under attack; and any incident in which non-lethal countermeasures are employed by PSC personnel in response to a perceived immediate threat during an incident that could significantly affect U.S. objectives.
 - f) The independent review and, if practicable, investigation of incidents reported IAW subsection v. immediately above.

- g) Identification of ultimate criminal and investigative jurisdiction where the conduct of PSCs and PSC personnel are in question;
 - h) A mechanism for subordinate commanders to request the removal of non-compliant PSC personnel from the operational area;
 - i) The interagency coordination of administrative penalties or removal, as appropriate, of non-DOD PSC personnel who fail to comply with the terms of their contract;
 - j) Implementation of the training requirements that must be accomplished before PSC personnel may be armed.
7. DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(i) requires contractors not authorized to accompany the Armed Forces to comply with all United States, DoD, and other rules and regulations as applicable, to include guidance and orders issued by the CENTCOM Commander regarding possession, use, safety, and accountability of weapons and ammunition.
 8. CENTCOM Contracting Command Clauses 952.225-0001, Arming Requirements and Procedures for Personal Security Services Contractors and for Requests for Personal Protection (Aug. 2010) and 952.225-0002, Armed Personnel Incident Reports, implement many of these requirements.

VIII. COMMAND, CONTROL AND DISCIPLINE.

A. General. Command and control, including direction, supervision, and discipline, of contractor personnel is significantly different than that of military personnel or even government civilian employees.

1. The contract is the principal legal basis for the relationship between DOD and the contractor. The contract shall specify the terms and conditions under which the contractor is to perform. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.4.
2. Functions and duties that are inherently governmental are barred from private sector performance. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.1.5. Additionally, the contracting officer is statutorily required to make certain determinations before entering into a contract for the performance of each function closely associated with inherently governmental

functions. *See* 10 U.S.C. § 2383; FAR 7.5, Inherently Governmental Functions.

- a) A revised, comprehensive definition of inherently governmental is forthcoming. Congress directed the Office of Management and Budget to analyze and develop a single government-wide definition of “inherently governmental function.” *See* Duncan Hunter National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2009, Pub. L. No. 110-417, § 321 (2008).
 - b) Interrogation of detainees is an inherently governmental function. *See* See Duncan Hunter National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2009, Pub. L. No. 110-417, § 1057 (2008); *see also id.* at §832 (expressing sense of Congress that private security contractors may not be authorized to perform inherently governmental functions in an area of combat operations).
3. Contractor personnel are not under the direct supervision of military personnel in the chain of command. AR 715-9, para. 3-2(f). Contractor personnel shall not be supervised or directed by military or government civilian personnel. FAR 37.104, Personal Services Contracts; AR 715-9, para. 3-3(b).
 4. The Contracting Officer is the designated liaison for implementing contractor performance requirements. The contracting officer is the only government official with the authority to increase, decrease or materially alter a contract scope of work or statement of objectives. AR 715-9, para. 3-2(e); *see also* FAR Part 42; AR 700-137. Only the designated contracting officer’s representative (COR) shall communicate the Army’s requirements to the contractor and prioritize the contractor’s activities consistent with the contract. AR 715-9, paras. 3-2(f), 3-3(b).
 5. Contractor personnel cannot command, supervise, or control military or government civilian personnel. AR 715-9, para. 3-3(a); AR 700-137; *see also* 10 U.S.C. § 2383; FAR 7.5, Inherently Governmental Functions.

B. Orders and Policies.

1. The general rule is that contractor personnel are subject to the terms of the contract under which they are performing, and contractor personnel are responsible for their performance to the contractor – their

employer. Commanders have no direct contractual relationship with contractor personnel. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.3.

2. All contracts involving contractor personnel should include provisions requiring them to comply with: U.S. and host nation laws; applicable international agreements; applicable U.S. regulations, directives, instructions, policies, and procedures; orders, directives, and instructions issued by the combatant commander relating to force protection, security, health, safety, or relations and interaction with local nationals. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.3; DFARS 252.225-7040(d); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(d); *see also* **Section III**, *supra* (describing the various authorities and contract clauses satisfying these requirements).
3. Commanders and legal advisers must be aware that interaction with contractor personnel may lead to unauthorized commitments and Anti-Deficiency Act (ADA) violations. While contracting officers are the only government officials authorized to change contracts, actions by other government officials, including commanders, contracting officer representatives, etc., may bind the government under alternative theories of recovery. Such actions would then constitute unauthorized commitments and possible ADA violations, which may result in criminal liability.
4. Contract changes (direction to contractor personnel) in emergency situations.
 - a) DFARS. The DFARS maintains the general rule that only contracting officers may change a contract, even in emergency situations. The DFARS clause does expand the scope of the standard Changes Clause, by allowing, in addition to changes otherwise authorized, that the contracting officer may, at any time, make changes to Government-furnished facilities, equipment, material, services, or site. DFARS 252.225-7040(p); DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(o).
 - b) DODI. The Instruction states that the ranking military commander may, in emergency situations (e.g., enemy or terrorist actions or natural disaster), direct CCP to take lawful action as long as those actions do not require them to assume inherently governmental responsibilities. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.3.

C. Discipline. The contractor is responsible for disciplining contractor personnel; commanders have LIMITED authority to take disciplinary action against contractor personnel. DODI 3020.41, para. 6.3.3.

1. Commander's Options.
 - a) Revoke or suspend security access or impose restriction from installations or facilities.
 - b) Request that the contracting officer direct removal of the individual.
2. Contracting Officer Options. The contracting officer may direct the contractor, at its own expense, to remove and replace any contractor personnel who jeopardize or interfere with mission accomplishment or who fail to comply with or violate applicable requirements of the contract. The contractor shall have on file a plan showing how the contractor would replace CCP who are so removed. DFARS 252.225-7040(h). DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004(h) contains a similar requirement but does not expressly require the contractor to have a similar personnel replacement plan on file.
3. Specific jurisdiction for criminal misconduct is subject to the application of international agreements. Application of HN and TCN law is discussed above in **Section IV**.
4. Military Extraterritorial Jurisdiction Act of 2000, Pub. L. No. 106-523, *codified as amended at* 18 U.S.C. §§ 3261-3267.
 - a) Background. Since the 1950s, the military has been prohibited from prosecuting by courts-martial civilians accompanying the Armed Forces overseas in peacetime who commit criminal offenses. Many Federal criminal statutes lack extraterritorial application, including those penalizing rape, robbery, burglary, and child sexual abuse. In addition, many foreign countries decline to prosecute crimes committed within their nation, particularly those involving U.S. property or another U.S. person as a victim. Furthermore, military members who commit crimes while overseas, but whose crimes are not discovered or fully investigated prior to their discharge from the Armed Forces are no longer subject to court-martial jurisdiction. The result is jurisdictional gaps where crimes go unpunished. DODD 5525.11, para. 2.4.

- b) Solution. The MEJA closes the jurisdictional gaps by extending Federal criminal jurisdiction to civilians overseas and former military members. DODD 5525.11, para. 2.5.
- c) Covered Conduct (18 U.S.C. § 3261; DODD 5525.11, para. 6.1.1):
 - (1) Conduct committed outside the U.S., that
 - (2) Would be a crime under U.S. law if committed within the U.S. special maritime and territorial jurisdiction, that is
 - (3) Punishable by imprisonment for more than one year.
- d) Covered persons include (18 U.S.C. §§ 3261, 3267; DODD 5525.11, paras. 6.1.2 to 6.1.9):
 - (1) Members of the Armed Forces who, by Federal indictment or information, are charged with committing an offense with one or more defendants, at least one of whom is not subject to the UCMJ;
 - (2) Members of a Reserve component who commit an offense when they are not on active duty or inactive duty for training;
 - (3) Former members of the Armed Forces who were subject to the UCMJ at the time the alleged offense was committed, but are not longer subject to the UCMJ;
 - (4) Civilians employed by the Armed Forces outside the United States, who are not a national of or resident in the HN, who commit an offense while outside the United States in connection with such employment. Such civilian employees include:
 - (a) Persons employed by DOD, including NAFIs;
 - (b) Persons employed as a DOD contractor, including subcontractors at any tier;

- (c) Employees of a DOD contractor, including subcontractors at any tier;
 - (d) Civilian employees, contractors (including subcontractors at any tier), and civilian employees of a contractor (including subcontractors at any tier) of any other Federal agency, or any provisional authority, to the extent such employment relates to supporting the mission of the DOD overseas.
 - (5) Civilians accompanying the Armed Forces:
 - (a) Dependents of anyone covered above if:
 - (b) The dependent resides with the person, allegedly committed the offense while outside the United States, and is not a national of or ordinarily resident in the HN. Command sponsorship is not required for the MEJA to apply.
 - (6) MEJA does not apply to persons whose presence outside the United States at the time the offense is committed is solely that of a tourist, student, or is otherwise not accompanying the Armed Forces.
 - (7) Foreign Criminal Jurisdiction. If a foreign government, in accordance with jurisdiction recognized by the United States, has prosecuted or is prosecuting the person, the United States will not prosecute the person for the same offense, absent approval by the Attorney General or Deputy Attorney General.
 - (8) TCNs who might meet the requirements above for MEJA jurisdiction, may have a nexus to the United States that is so tenuous that it places into question whether the Act should be applied. The DOS should be notified of any potential investigation or arrest of a TCN.
- e) DODD 5525.11 contains detailed guidance regarding the procedures required for MEJA use, including investigation, arrest, detention, representation, initial proceedings, and

removal of persons to the US or other countries. Further, much authority is delegated to Combatant Commanders, so local policies must be researched and followed. *See* U.S. Dep't of Defense, Dir. 5525.11, Criminal Jurisdiction Over Civilians Employed by or Accompanying the Armed Forces Outside the United States, Certain Service Members, and Former Service Members (Mar. 3, 2005).

5. UCMJ.

- a) Retired military members who are also CCP are subject to the UCMJ. Art. 2(a)(4), UCMJ. DA policy provides that retired Soldiers subject to the UCMJ will not be tried for any offense by any courts-martial unless extraordinary circumstances are present. Prior to referral of courts-martial charges against retired Soldiers, approval will be obtained from Criminal Law Division, ATTN: DAJA-CL, Office of The Judge Advocate General, HQDA. U.S. Dep't of Army, Reg. 27-10, Military Justice, para. 5-2b(3) (Dec. 16, 2005).
- b) Under the law for at least the past 30 years, contractor personnel were only subject to the UCMJ in a congressionally declared war. During that time, there was never UCMJ jurisdiction over contractor personnel because there were no congressionally declared wars.
- c) Congress amended the UCMJ in the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2007 (2007 NDAA). In the 2007 NDAA, Congress changed Article 2(a)(10), addressing UCMJ jurisdiction over civilians accompanying the Armed Forces, from "time of war" to "time of declared war or contingency operation." This subjects contractors who are designated as civilians accompanying the force (i.e., CCP) to the UCMJ in contingency operations. In contrast, contractors who are not designated as civilians accompanying the Armed Forces (i.e., contractors subject to DFARS Class Deviation 2011-O0004) may not be subject to this expanded UCMJ jurisdiction. *See* DFARS PGI 225.7402-5(a)(ii). Regardless, as this change has only recently been implemented, the full ramifications are not yet known.

IX. CIVIL LIABILITY.

A. Overview. The significant number of contractor personnel supporting U.S. forces in Iraq and Afghanistan has created a surge in civil lawsuits against contractors.

1. Types of Claims. Most commonly, plaintiffs (U.S. and/or host-nation personnel) seek damages from contractors for a failure to comply with:
 - a) State Tort Law. Including negligence, gross negligence, battery, intentional infliction of emotional distress, and wrongful death; or
 - b) Federal Law. Including the Alien Tort Statute [ATS], 28 U.S.C. § 1350 and the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations Act [RICO], 18 U.S.C. § 1961 et. seq.
 - c) For example, in *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009), Iraqi victims of alleged abuse at the Abu Ghraib military prison brought claims under the ATS, RICO, and common law tort (assault and battery, wrongful death, intentional infliction of emotional distress, and negligence) against Titan and CACI interrogators working at the prison facility under a contract with the United States. In contrast, *McMahon v. Presidential Airways, Inc.*, 502 F.3d 1331 (11th Cir. 2007), involved a wrongful death action by family members of three military members killed when the transport plane operated by Presidential Airways crashed into a mountain in Afghanistan.
2. Evolving Area of the Law. In resolving civil liability cases arising from contractor activities in a contingency operation, courts have wrestled with how to apply, modify, or expand existing immunity and preemption doctrines to properly take into account the circumstances surrounding contract performance. Each case is highly fact and contract specific.

B. Sovereign Immunity. The United States waived its sovereign immunity to state law tort suits “under circumstances where the United States, if a private person, would be liable to the claimant in accordance with the law of the place where the act or omission occurred.” Federal Tort Claims Act, 28 U.S.C. § 1346(b)(1). There are a number of significant exceptions to this waiver of sovereign immunity, to include:

1. Discretionary Function Exception. The FTCA exempts from the waiver of sovereign immunity “any claim . . . based upon the exercise or performance or the failure to exercise or perform a discretionary function or duty on the part of a federal agency or an employee of the

government, whether or not the discretion involved be abused.” 28 U.S.C. § 2680(a).

2. Combat Activities Exception. The FTCA exempts from the waiver of sovereign immunity “any claim arising out of the combatant activities of the military or armed forces, or the Coast Guard, during time of war.” 28 U.S.C. 2680(j).
3. The *Feres* Doctrine. In *Feres v. United States*, 340 U.S. 135 (1950), the Court held that the United States did not waive sovereign immunity under the FTCA for injuries to service members that “arise out of or are in the course of activity incident to service.” *Id.* at 146.
 - a) *Feres* precludes third party indemnity suits by contractors against the U.S. government for injuries sustained by service members incident to service. *Stencel Aero Engineering Corp. v. United States*, 431 U.S. 666, 673-74 (1977).
 - b) Contractors are not entitled to derivative sovereign immunity under the *Feres* doctrine for injuries sustained by service members “incident to service.” *McMahon v. Presidential Airways, Inc.*, 502 F.3d 1331 (11th Cir. 2007).

C. General Rule. Contractors performing in a contingency environment under a contract with the U.S. government may be held civilly liable for their actions in a U.S. court.

1. Any immunity of the U.S. Government to civil liability does not extend to contractors except under narrow, contact and fact specific circumstances. *See Boyle v. United Technologies Corp.*, 487 U.S. 500 (1988); *McMahon v. Presidential Airways, Inc.*, 502 F.3d 1331 (11th Cir. 2007).
2. Contractors may be held civilly liable for their actions under host-nation law unless an international agreement contains a provision to the contrary. *See supra* **Section IV** (discussing international agreements).

D. Two Primary Exceptions.

1. Government/Military Contractor Defense.

- a) Preempts contractor liability under state law for design defects in military **equipment** when (1) the United States approved reasonably precise specifications; (2) the equipment conformed to those specifications; and (3) the supplier warned the United States about the dangers in the use of the equipment that were known to the supplier but not to the United States. *Boyle v. United Technologies Corp.*, 487 U.S. 500, 512-13 (1988).
- b) The preemption of state law is premised on the unique federal interest of the United States in procuring federal equipment. *Id.* at 506-07. Preemption of state law should occur only where a “‘significant conflict’ exists between an identifiable ‘federal policy or interest and the [operation] of state law,’ or the application of state law would ‘frustrate specific objectives’ of federal legislation.” *Id.* at 507 (citations omitted).
- c) The FTCA’s “discretionary function” exemption from the waiver of sovereign immunity provides a basis for a uniquely federal interest. Since the design selection of military equipment is “assuredly a discretionary function,” state law is preempted and contractors may not be held liable where the three part test provided above is satisfied. *Id.* at 511-12. Otherwise, a contractor “could not satisfy both the government’s procurement design and the state’s prescribed duty of care.” *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009).
- d) Extended to service contracts by the D.C. Circuit Court of Appeals in *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009); *see also Hudgens v. Bell Helicopters*, 328 F.3d 1329, 1345 (11th Cir. 2003) (holding that the question of preemption “*vel non*” is not contingent on whether a contract is for goods or services). The *Saleh* court reasoned:
- (1) The FTCA exempts from the waiver of sovereign immunity “‘any claim arising out of the combatant activities of the military or armed forces.’” *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009) (quoting FTCA, 28 U.S.C. § 2680(j)).
 - (2) Control of combat activities is a uniquely federal interest. Therefore, “[d]uring wartime, where a private service contractor is integrated into combatant activities over which the military retains command authority, a

tort claim arising out of the contractor's engagement in such activities shall be preempted." *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009).

(3) Caveats.

(a) The *Saleh* holding is also based on "the Court's other preemption precedents in the national security and foreign policy field." *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009).

(b) A service contractor might be providing services in such a "discrete manner" on a battlefield that those services "could be considered separate and apart from combat activities of the U.S. military." *Saleh v. Titan Corp.*, 2009 U.S. App. LEXIS 20337 (D.C. Cir. Sept. 11, 2009).

2. Political Question Defense.

a) "„Excludes from judicial review those controversies which revolve around policy choices and value determinations constitutionally committed for resolution to the halls of Congress or the confines of the Executive Branch."” *Carmichael v. Kellog, Brown, & Root Serv., Inc.*, 572 F.3d 1271, 1280 (11th Cir. 2009) (quoting *Japanese Whaling Ass'n v. American Cetacean Soc.*, 478 U.S. 221, 230 (1986)).

b) *Baker v. Carr*, 369 U.S. 186 (1962) Factors. Used to determine whether "a dispute raises a nonjusticiable political question." *Carmichael*, 572 F.3d at 1280. At least one of these six factors must be present for a case to be dismissed on political question grounds:

(1) A textually demonstrable constitutional commitment of the issue to a coordinate political department;

(2) A lack of judicially discoverable and manageable standards for resolving it;

- (3) The impossibility of deciding without an initial policy determination of a kind clearly for nonjudicial discretion;
- (4) The impossibility of a court's undertaking independent resolution without expressing lack of the respect due coordinate branches of government;
- (5) An unusual need for unquestioning adherence to a political decision already made; or
- (6) The potentiality of embarrassment from multifarious pronouncements by various departments on one question.

Id. (quoting *Aktepe v. United States*, 105 F.3d 1400, 1402-03 (11th Cir. 1997)).

c) Examples.

- (1) *Carmichael v. Kellog, Brown, & Root Serv., Inc.*, 572 F.3d 1271, 1280 (11th Cir. 2009). Held a negligence suit nonjusticiable on political question grounds where the injuries arose during a military convoy operation in Iraq.
- (2) *Lane v. Halliburton*, 529 F.3d 548 (5th Cir. 2008). Stated that negligence claims resulting from injuries sustained in convoy operations “move precariously close to implicating the political question doctrine, and further factual development very well may demonstrate that the claims are barred.” In contrast, the court did not express the same degree of concern with fraud claims that the defendant provided misleading information during the hiring process.

E. Government Contract-Based Indemnification. Generally, the government is not contractually required to indemnify a contractor. However, there are exceptions to this rule.

1. Cost Reimbursement Contracts.

- a) May contain a clause requiring the government to indemnify (under limited circumstances) the contractor for costs arising from tort liability. *See* FAR 52.228-7.
 - b) Fiscal Constraints. GAO has “long held that absent specific statutory authority, indemnity provisions which subject the United States to indefinite or potentially unlimited contingent liability contravene” the Anti-Deficiency Act. *U.S. Park Police Indemnification Agreement*, B-242146, 1991 U.S. Comp. Gen. LEXIS 1070 (Aug. 16, 1991); *see also Assumption by Gov’t of Contractor Liability to Third Persons—Reconsideration*, B-201072, 62 Comp. Gen. 361 (1983) (stating the same in the context of the predecessor provision to FAR 52.228-7).
2. Unusually Hazardous or Nuclear Risks. FAR Part 50 and the clause at FAR 52.250-1, Indemnification Under Public Law 85-804, permit the government to indemnify contractors for tort liability resulting from risk defined in the contract as “unusually hazardous or nuclear.”

X. OTHER CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL ISSUES.

A. Living Conditions.

1. Generally, when provided by the government, CCP living conditions, privileges, and limitations will be equivalent to those of the units supported unless the contract with the Government specifically mandates or prohibits certain living conditions.
2. Tours of Duty. CCP tours of duty are established by the contractor and the terms and conditions of the contract between the contractor and the government. Emergency based on-call requirements, if any, will be included as special terms and conditions of the contract.
3. Hours of Work. Contractors must comply with local laws, regulations, and labor union agreements governing work hours. DFARS 252.222-7002. The “Eight-Hour Law” (40 USC §§ 321-26) does not apply to overseas locations. FAR 22.103.1 allows for longer workweeks if such a workweek is established by local custom, tradition, or law. SOFAs or other status agreements may impact work hours/workweek issues.

B. Life and Health Insurance.

1. Unless the contract states otherwise, the Army is not statutorily obligated to provide health and/or life insurance to a contractor employee. Policies that cover war time deployments are usually available from commercial insurers.
2. Contractors and their employees bear the responsibility to ascertain how a deployment may affect their life and health insurance policies and to remedy whatever shortcomings a deployment may cause.

C. Workers' Compensation-Type Benefits:

1. Several programs are available to ensure “workers comp” type insurance programs cover contractor employees while deployed and working on government contracts. *See generally* FAR 28.305 and AR 715-9.
2. Defense Base Act (DBA) 42 USC §§ 1651-54, FAR 28.309 and 52.228-3; DFARS 228.305 and 228.370(a).
 - a) Requires contractors to obtain workers compensation insurance coverage or to self-insure with respect to injury or death incurred in the scope of employment for “public work” contracts or subcontracts performed outside the United States. AR 715-9; *see Royal Indem. Co. v. Puerto Rico Cement Co.*, 142 F.2d 237, 239 (1st Cir. 1944), *cert. denied*, 323 U.S. 756 (1944) (holding that a construction employee working on a military base in Puerto Rico was covered by the DBA because the purpose of the DBA was to extend the benefits of the Longshore and Harbor Worker’s Compensation Act to areas overseas and to obtain insurance at reasonable rates); Berven v. Fluor Co., 171 F. Supp. 89 (S.D.N.Y. 1959) (explaining the statute covers individuals employed at any military, air, or naval base or contracts for the purpose of engaging in a public work); *see also University of Rochester v. Hartman*, 618 F.2d 170, 173 (2d Cir. 1980) (holding that a service contract lacking a nexus with overseas construction project or work connected with national defense does not constitute “public work” within the meaning of 42 U.S.C. § 1651(a)(4)); O’Keeffe v. Pan American World Airways Inc., 338 F.2d 319 (5th Cir. 1964), *cert. denied*, 380 U.S. 951 (1965) (holding that the frolic and detour rule for scope of employment analysis must be applied more broadly in the context of DBA claims because the statute was intended to avoid harsh results); Republic Aviation Co. v. Lowe, 164 F.2d 18 (2d Cir. 1947), *cert. denied*, 333 U.S. 845 (1948).

- b) DBA, FAR Clause 52.228-3, is required in all DoD service contracts performed, entirely or in part, outside the U.S and in all supply contracts that require the performance of employee services overseas. Office of the Under Secretary of Defense Memo, 8 December 2003.
- 3. Longshoreman and Harbor Worker's Compensation Act (LHWCA) 33 USC §§ 901-950, U.S. Dep't of Army, Pam. 715-16, Contractor Deployment Guide, paras. 10-5c to 10-5d (Feb. 27, 1998). Applicable by operation of the DBA. The LHWCA provides compensation for partial or total disability, personal injuries, necessary medical services/supplies, death benefits, loss of pay and burial expenses for covered persons. Statute does not focus on fault. Guidebook, Topic 11.
- 4. War Hazards Compensation Act (WHCA) 42 USC §§ 1701-17; FAR 52.228-4; DFARS 228.370(a); Huskisson v. Hawaiian Dredging Co., 212 F.2d 219, 220-21 (7th Cir. 1954); T&G Aviation, Inc., ASBCA No. 40428,01-1 BCA ¶ 31,147 (ASBCA, 2000). WHCA provides that any contractor employee who is killed in a "war risk hazard" will be compensated in some respects as if the CDF were a full time government civilian employee. WHCA benefits apply regardless of whether the injury or death is related to the employee's scope of employment. Guidebook, Topic 11. The WHCA also provides that if a contractor employee is missing from his place of duty or taken hostage, the employee will be considered totally disabled and receive commensurate disability. DA PAM 715-16, para. 10-6e.

D. Pay. The pay and benefits of contractor employees are governed by the contractor employees' employment contract with the contractor. The U.S. Government is not a party to this employee-employer relationship. Contractor personnel are not entitled to collect any special pay, cash benefits or other financial incentives directly from the U.S. Government.

E. Veteran's Benefits. Service performed under contracts containing the DFARS clause is NOT active duty or service under 38 U.S.C. § 106.

F. Continued Performance During a Crisis.

- 1. During non-mandatory evacuation times, contractors shall maintain personnel on location sufficient to meet contractual obligations. DFARS 252.225-7040(m).

2. DODI 3020.37 requires contractors to use all means available to continue to provide services deemed essential by DOD. U.S. Dep't of Defense, Instr. 3020.37, Continuation of Essential Contractor Services During a Crisis (Nov. 6, 1990) (incorporating change 1, Jan. 26, 1996). Contracts involving essential contractor services that support mission essential functions may contain the clause at DFARS Class Deviation 2009-O0010, Continuation of Essential Contractor Services.
3. There is no "desertion" offense for contractor personnel. Commanders should plan for interruptions in services if the contractor appears to be unable to continue support.

Chapter 32A

Army Nonappropriated Fund Contracting



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 32A

ARMY NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----------|
| I. | INTRODUCTION. | 1 |
| II. | REFERENCES. | 1 |
| III. | DEFINITIONS AND STATUTORY CONTROLS | 2 |
| IV. | NAFI FUNDING OVERVIEW. | 4 |
| A. | WHAT ARE NONAPPROPRIATED FUNDS (NAFs)? | 4 |
| B. | NONAPPROPRIATED FUND INSTRUMENTALITY (NAFI) | 5 |
| V. | AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT. | 6 |
| A. | GENERAL | 6 |
| B. | CONTRACTING OFFICERS AND RELATED PERSONNEL | 6 |
| VI. | ACQUISITION PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT | 9 |
| A. | PURPOSE | 9 |
| B. | REQUIRING ACTIVITY | 9 |
| C. | CONTRACTING OFFICE | 9 |
| D. | ACQUISITION PLANNING TEAM / ACQUISITION PLANS | 10 |
| E. | BULK FUNDING | 10 |
| F. | CONTRACTING METHODS | 10 |
| G. | TYPES OF CONTRACTS | 11 |
| H. | TYPES OF AGREEMENTS | 11 |
| I. | LENGTH OF CONTRACTS | 12 |
| VII. | COMPETITION AND SOURCES OF SUPPLIES AND SERVICES | 12 |
| A. | COMPETITION | 12 |
| B. | USE OF EXISTING CONTRACTS AND AGREEMENTS | 14 |
| C. | PROHIBITED SOURCES | 15 |
| VIII. | ACQUISITION METHODS | 19 |
| A. | DOD POLICY | 19 |
| B. | SIMPLIFIED ACQUISITIONS AND COMMERCIAL ITEMS | 19 |
| C. | NEGOTIATED ACQUISITIONS | 24 |
| D. | SEALED BIDDING | 30 |
| IX. | CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION. AR 215-4, Chapter 6. | 32 |
| A. | CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS | 32 |
| B. | CHANGE ORDERS | 32 |
| C. | CONSTRUCTIVE CHANGES | 32 |
| D. | CONTRACTING OFFICERS REPRESENTATIVE (COR) / ADMINISTRATIVE CONTRACTING OFFICERS (ACO) / ORDERING OFFICERS | 32 |
| E. | PERFORMANCE DELAY | 33 |
| F. | SUSPENSION OF WORK AND STOP-WORK | 33 |
| G. | TERMINATIONS | 34 |
| X. | SPECIAL CATEGORIES OF CONTRACTING | 37 |
| A. | CONCESSION CONTRACTS—GENERAL | 37 |

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----------|
| B. | LONG-TERM CONCESSION CONTRACTS..... | 38 |
| C. | SHORT-TERM CONCESSION CONTRACTS | 39 |
| D. | MERCHANDISE CONCESSIONS. | 40 |
| E. | VENDING AND AMUSEMENT MACHINES..... | 41 |
| F. | CONSIGNMENT AGREEMENTS..... | 41 |
| G. | ENTERTAINMENT CONTRACTS..... | 42 |
| H. | CONTRACTS WITH AMUSEMENT COMPANIES AND TRAVELING SHOWS | 42 |
| I. | SERVICE CONTRACTS..... | 42 |
| J. | INSURANCE CONTRACTS. | 44 |
| K. | INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY REQUIREMENTS..... | 44 |
| L. | CONSTRUCTION AND ARCHITECT-ENGINEER (A-E) CONTRACTS. | 44 |
| M. | PURCHASE OF ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES..... | 45 |
| N. | COMMERCIAL SPONSORSHIP..... | 45 |
| O. | MWR ADVERTISING. | 46 |
| XI. | LABOR AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC POLICIES..... | 46 |
| A. | SOCIOECONOMIC POLICIES. | 46 |
| B. | LABOR LAWS. | 47 |
| XII. | LEGAL REVIEW..... | 48 |
| A. | GENERAL..... | 48 |
| B. | REQUIRED LEGAL REVIEWS. | 48 |
| C. | REQUIRED LEGAL DETERMINATIONS | 49 |
| XIII. | LITIGATION INVOLVING NAF CONTRACTS. | 49 |
| A. | PROTESTS | 49 |
| B. | DISPUTES..... | 51 |
| XIV. | CONCLUSION. | 54 |

NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING

I. INTRODUCTION.

II. REFERENCES.

- A. 10 U.S.C. § 2783. Requires the Secretary of Defense to prescribe regulations governing NAF funds and sets out punishments for violating those regulations.
- B. 10 U.S.C. § 3013(b)(9). Provides Secretary of the Army the authority to administer the MWR program.
- C. U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, DIR. 4105.67, NONAPPROPRIATED FUND (NAF) PROCUREMENT POLICY (2 May 2001, current as of 21 Nov 2003) [hereinafter DODD. 4105.67].
- D. U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, INSTR. 1015.15, ESTABLISHMENT, MANAGEMENT, AND CONTROL OF NONAPPROPRIATED FUND INSTRUMENTALITIES AND FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT OF SUPPORTING RESOURCES (31 October 2007, with Change 1, administratively reissued 20 March 2008) [hereinafter DODI 1015.15].
- E. U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, INSTR. 4105.71, NONAPPROPRIATED FUND (NAF) PROCUREMENT PROCEDURE (26 February 2001, with Change 1, administratively reissued 30 July 2002) [hereinafter DODI 4105.71].
- F. U.S. DEP'T OF DEFENSE, REG. 7000.14-R, FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT REGULATION, vol. 13, *available at* <http://www.defenselink.mil/comptroller/fmr/> [hereinafter DOD FMR] (discussing nonappropriated funds policy and procedures).
- G. Army Regulations.

1. NAFI General Contracting and Funding Policies: The U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, ARMY FEDERAL ACQUISITION REG. SUPP. pt 5101.9001 [hereinafter AFARS], provides that NAF contracting policies and procedures are set forth in Army regulation. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-4, NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING (29 July 2008) [hereinafter AR 215-4]; U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-1, MORALE, WELFARE, AND RECREATION ACTIVITIES AND NONAPPROPRIATED FUND INSTRUMENTALITIES (24 September 2010) [hereinafter AR 215-1], and; U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-7, CIVILIAN NONAPPROPRIATED FUNDS AND MORALE, WELFARE, AND RECREATION ACTIVITIES (26 January 2001), govern overall Army nonappropriated contracting and funding policies. U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-8, ARMY AND AIR FORCE EXCHANGE SERVICE OPERATIONS ch. 8 (30 July 2008) [hereinafter AR 215-8], provides additional guidance on Army and Air Force Exchange contracting. Each Army Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentality (NAFI) also promulgates its own individual regulations governing their NAFI-specific funding policies, which must conform to the DOD and Army policies.

2. NAFI Construction and Funding Policies: U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 215-4, NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING (29 July 2008) [hereinafter AR 215-4]; U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 420-1, ARMY FACILITIES MANAGEMENT ch. 4 (12 February 2008, incorporating Rapid Action Revision 28 March 2009); U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, PAM 420-06, DIRECTORATE OF PUBLIC WORKS RESOURCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (15 May 1997), and; U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, PAM 420-1-2, ARMY MILITARY CONSTRUCTION AND NONAPPROPRIATED-FUNDED CONSTRUCTION PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT AND EXECUTION (2 April 2009), govern Army NAFI construction contracting and funding.

H. III U.S. GOV'T ACCOUNTABILITY OFFICE, PRINCIPLES OF FED. APPROPRIATIONS LAW, ch. 15, subch. C, Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentalities, GAO-08-978SP (2008) [hereinafter GAO REDBOOK].

III. DEFINITIONS AND STATUTORY CONTROLS

A. –Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentality (NAFI),” AR 215-4, Consolidated Glossary, Sec. II, Terms:

An integral DOD organizational entity that performs an essential Government function. It acts in its own name to provide or assist other DOD organizations providing morale, welfare, and recreational programs for military personnel and civilians. It is established and maintained individually or jointly by the heads of the DOD components. As a fiscal entity, it maintains custody and control over its nonappropriated funds. It is responsible for the prudent administration, safeguarding, preservation, and maintenance of those appropriated fund resources made available to carry out its function. With its nonappropriated funds, the NAFI contributes to the morale, welfare, and recreation programs of other authorized organizational entities when so authorized. It is not incorporated under the laws of any State or the District of Columbia and enjoys the legal status of an instrumentality of the United States.

- B. –Nonappropriated Funds (NAFs),” AR 215-4, Consolidated Glossary, Sec. II, Terms:

Cash and other assets received by NAFIs from sources other than monies appropriated by the Congress of the United States. NAFs are government funds used for the collective benefit of those who generate them: military personnel, their dependents, and authorized civilians. These funds are separate and apart from funds that are recorded in the books of the Treasurer of the United States.

- C. General NAFI Legal Structure. Congress directed DOD to issue regulations governing the management and use of NAFs, and has made DOD personnel subject to penalties for their misuse. All NAFIs are created by DOD and its components, and all NAFs are government funds. However, NAFs are not appropriated by Congress or controlled by the Treasury Department. NAFIs, as fiscal entities, control their NAFs. 10 U.S.C. § 2783. As a result, the basic fiscal structure of appropriated funds (Purpose, Time, Amount) may not apply to a NAFI, depending on the type of NAFI and the source of funds being used by a respective NAFI. Congress may legislate restrictions on the use of NAFs, and/or it may exempt *appropriated* funds from the basic fiscal structure when a NAFI is provided appropriated funds. For example:

1. Purchase of Malt Beverages and Wine. A NAFI in the United States may purchase beer and wine for resale on an installation only from in-State sources. 10 USC § 2495; Department of Defense Appropriations Act, 2010, Pub. L. 111-118, § 8070 (16 October 2009); *see also* AR 215-1, para. 10-6. In Alaska and Hawaii, this restriction extends to the purchase and delivery of alcoholic beverages containing distilled spirits. Department of Defense Appropriations Act, 2010, Pub. L. 111-118, § 8070 (16 October 2009); AR 215-1, para. 10-6.
2. Pricing of Wine Overseas. NAFIs located on military installations outside the United States must price and distribute wines produced in the United States equitably when compared with wines produced by the host nation. *See* AR 215-1, para.10-13.
3. MWR Programs and UFM accounting: MWR programs are a type of Army program authorized to use a mixture of appropriated (APF) funds and NAF to carry out its mission. MWR programs are designated by DOD as critical to provide for esprit de corps, comfort, pleasure, contentment, as well as mental and physical productivity of authorized DOD personnel. AR 215-1. Once DOD designates a NAFI to support an MWR program, the NAFI may use Uniform Funding and Management (UFM) procedures authorized by Congress. *See* 10 U.S.C. § 2491; *see also* DODI 1015.15; AR 215-1, para. 5-3. UFM accounting procedures allow the NAFI to treat any appropriated funds received by the program as if they were nonappropriated funds, subject only to the regulations of use.

IV. NAFI FUNDING OVERVIEW.

A. What are Nonappropriated Funds (NAFs)?

1. NAFs are Government funds subject to controlled use. All DOD personnel have a fiduciary responsibility to use NAFs properly and prevent waste, loss, mismanagement, or unauthorized use. Violators are subject to administrative and criminal sanctions. *See* 10 U.S.C. § 2783.

2. NAFs are monies which are not appropriated by the Congress of the United States. These funds are separate and apart from funds that are recorded in the books of the U.S. Treasury.
3. Within the Department of Defense (DOD), NAFs come primarily from the sale of goods and services to military and civilian personnel and their family members, and may be used to support Morale, Welfare, and Recreation (MWR), lodging, civilian welfare, post restaurant, certain religious and educational programs, and a variety of non-MWR activities.
4. NAFs are government funds used for the collective benefit of military personnel, their family members, and authorized civilians. DOD FMR, vol. 13, ch. 1, para. 010213; DODI 1015.15, para. 4; AR 215-1, Glossary.

B. Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentality (NAFI).

1. A U.S. Government organization and fiscal entity that performs an essential Government function. It acts in its own name to provide or assist other DOD organizations in providing a variety of MWR and non-MWR programs for military personnel, their families, and authorized civilians.
2. It is established and maintained individually or jointly by two or more DOD components. As a fiscal entity, it maintains custody and control over its NAFs, equipment, facilities, land, and other assets. It enjoys the legal status of an instrumentality of the United States. DOD FMR vol.13, ch. 1, para. 010214; DODD 1015.15, para. 4; AR 215-1, Glossary.
3. In *Standard Oil Co. of California v. Johnson*, 316 U.S. 481 (1942), the Supreme Court concluded that post exchanges were an integral part of the War Department and enjoyed whatever immunities the Constitution and federal statutes provided the Federal Government.

V. AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT.

- A. Generally. Only warranted contracting officers are authorized to execute, administer, and terminate NAF contracts. Army regulations govern the appointment of NAF contracting officers. Also, AFARS 5101.9002 authorizes APF contracting officers to receive NAF warrants.¹ The authority of these contracting officers is limited by their warrant. AR 215-4, paras. 1-11 to 1-13. An exception exists for ~~emergency situations.~~” *See infra* subparagraph VI.B.6.
- B. Contracting Officers and Related Personnel.
1. Commanding General, Installation Management Command (IMCOM): Responsible for developing centralized NAF contracting support where and when feasible and providing oversight of NAF procurement offices. AR 215-1, para. 2-3.
 2. Commanding General, Family and Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Command (FMWRC):
 - a. Prior to 3 June 2011. Commander responsible for implementing NAF contracting policies and procedures, establishing clear lines of authority, accountability, and responsibility for acquisition decision-making, ensuring the separation of functions to the maximum extent possible, and *authority to grant warrants to contracting officers at any dollar level.* AR 215-4, para. 1-8.
 - b. Deactivated as a command on 3 June 2011. Many FMWRC functions now fall under the Commander, IMCOM, or the IMCOM G-9. Per IMCOM’s webpage, the mission of the G9 is to serve the needs and interests of each individual in the Army community for the duration of their association with the military. Until FMWRC responsibilities are fully integrated into IMCOM, however, there may be some uncertainty as to which directorate within IMCOM is responsible for a particular function.

¹ Note that if an APF contracting officer obtains a NAF warrant, the NAF warrant will help establish that a NAF procurement is not an ~~agency procurement~~” for the purposes of GAO protest jurisdiction. For a discussion of GAO protest jurisdiction, *see infra* Subpart XIII.A.

3. Chief, Acquisition Officer: Senior acquisition advisor to senior leadership on NAF acquisition policies and processes. Possesses authority to appoint contracting officers with warrants not to exceed \$5 million. AR 215-4, para. 1-9.
4. Contracting officer authority. AR 215-4, para. 1-12.
 - (1) Negotiate, award, administer, or terminate contracts and make related determinations and findings.
 - (2) Appoint administrative contracting officers (ACOs), contracting officer's representatives (CORs), blanket purchase agreement (BPA) callers, and ordering officers, in writing, clearly defining responsibilities and the limits of authority.
5. A warranted contracting officer may appoint some, or all, of the following:
 - (1) Ordering Officers. Must be appointed in writing by a warranted contracting officer. Can place delivery orders against indefinite delivery type contracts, up to \$25,000, providing the ID/IQ contract terms permit such orders. AR 215-4, paras. 1-12b(2)(c), 6-7.
 - (2) Blanket Purchase Agreement (BPA) Callers. Must be appointed in writing by warranted contracting officer.
 - i. Call authority up to simplified acquisition threshold (currently \$100,000,² \$250,000 for commercial items) if caller is within the contracting office. AR 215-4, paras. 1-12b(2)(d), 3-12b(4), 3-12c.

² AR 215-4, para. 3-3, states that the simplified acquisition threshold for NAF contracting is \$100,000. FAR Case 2008-024, Inflation Adjustment of Acquisition –Related Thresholds, 30 August 2010 (effective 1 October 2010), however, recently changed the simplified acquisition threshold to \$150,000 for acquisitions subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulation. It is not clear at this time whether the the simplified acquisition threshold and similar acquisition-related thresholds in AR 215-4 will be adjusted in light of FAR Case 2008-024.

- ii. Limited to competition threshold (currently \$5,000) if caller is outside a contracting office. AR 215-4, paras. 1-12*b*(2)(*d*), 3-12*c*.
- (3) Administrative Contracting Officers (ACO). Appointed in writing by warranted contracting officer to handle certain delineated aspects of contract management. AR 215-4, paras. 1-12*b*(2)(*a*), 6-6.
 - (4) Contracting Officer's Representatives (COR). Appointed in writing by a warranted contracting officer and serves as liaison between the contractor and the contracting officer. Responsible for the technical and administrative monitoring of the contract. No authority to change the terms or conditions of the contract. AR 215-4, para. 1-12*b*(2)(*b*) and Glossary, Section II.
6. Emergency purchases – No warrant requirement.
- (1) When unforeseeable events occur that are likely to cause a loss of NAFI property, assets, or revenues if immediate action is not taken, unwarranted individuals may incur obligations on behalf of a NAFI. Emergency purchases create binding obligations, so they need not be ratified by the contracting officer. The emergency purchase action, however, must be received in the NAF contracting office not later than 2 working days following the emergency action. AR 215-4, para. 2-24.
 - (2) NAF contracting officers must train personnel in emergency contracting procedures and maintain a list individuals authorized to make such purposes.³ AR 215-4, para. 2-24.
6. Ratification actions. AR 215-4, para. 1-16. Contracting decisions made by unwarranted officials or by warranted officials exceeding

³ Under previous version of AR 215-4, the chief of the NAF contracting office appointed individuals to make purchases totaling \$2,500 or less after normal duty hours. This \$2,500 limitation is no longer in effect.

their warrant authority are not binding on the NAFI. Accordingly, requiring activities shall forward acquisition requirements to a warranted contracting officer for action in accordance with the policies and principles of this regulation. In the event that an official other than a contracting officer binds the NAFI, that action is an unauthorized commitment and requires ratification.

7. Restriction on Obligation of Appropriated Funds (APF). When obligating only NAF, contracting officials (both APF and NAF), shall follow the NAF policy and guidance contained in AR 215-4, and based on prudent discretion and sound business judgement, may employ other appropriate acquisition procedures that do not violate applicable laws, statutes, and regulations. AR 215-4, para. 1-1*b*; *see also* DODI 4105.67, para. 4.1. Generally, however, procurements that combine APF and NAF dollars will be accomplished by an APF contracting officer using APF contracting procedures. AR 215-4, para. 1-13*f*. There are two exceptions to this rule:
 - (a) MWR Utilization, Support, and Accountability Funding (MWRUSA) Funding. AR 215-4, para. 1-13*f*; *see* AR 215-1, para. 5-2.
 - (b) Uniform Funding and Management (UFM). 10 USC § 2491; AR 215-1, para. 5-3.

VI. ACQUISITION PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT.

- A. Purpose. Obtain the best value for its supply, service, and construction requirements. AR 215-4, para. 2-1.
- B. Requiring Activity. Requiring activity prepares a statement of work (SOW), justifies a sole-source or brand-name purchase where requested, and submits purchase request with necessary approvals and certification of funds availability. AR 215-4, para. 2-1*a*.
- C. Contracting Office. Provides advice to requiring activity, maintains source lists, determines appropriate acquisition process, awards contracts, appoints ACOs and CORs as necessary, and administers contracts. AR 215-4, para. 2-1*b*.

- D. Acquisition Planning Team / Acquisition Plans. Required for all acquisitions over \$100,000 (unless commercial items), including option years. AR 215-4, paras. 2-1c and 2-1d.
- E. Bulk Funding. System establishes a reserve of funds to be used for an approved purpose over an identified period of time (like a prepaid credit card). Enables contracting officers to purchase ongoing requirements more efficiently. Bulk funding should be used whenever practicable. AR 215-4, para. 2-1f(4).
- F. Contracting Methods. AR 215-4, para. 2-5; *see also infra* Part VIII (discussing acquisition methods).
 - 1. Simplified Acquisitions. AR 215-4, Chapter 3. Where the purchase of supplies and services, including construction, is not complex and does not exceed the simplified acquisition threshold (currently \$100,000),⁴ or for commercial items at \$250,000 or less.
 - a. Can be accomplished by oral quotations, or by a written paper or electronic solicitation to prospective offerors, if evaluating price alone.
 - b. Other simplified acquisition techniques include BPAs, purchase cards, delivery or task orders can also be used.
 - 2. Negotiations. AR 215-4, Chapter 4. Negotiations is the preferred method of contracting for NAFIs. AR 215-4, para. 4-1.
 - 3. Sealed Bidding. AR 215-4, Chapter 5. Sealed bidding may be used only when the following five factors are present:
 - a. Price is the only evaluation factor.

⁴ AR 215-4, para. 3-3, states the simplified acquisition threshold is \$100,000. However, FAR Case 2008-024, Inflation Adjustment of Acquisition –Related Thresholds, 30 August 2010 (effective 1 October 2010), recently changed the simplified acquisition threshold to \$150,000 for acquisitions subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulation. It is not clear at this time whether the the simplified acquisition threshold and similar acquisition-related thresholds in AR 215-4 will be adjusted in light of FAR Case 2008-024.

- b. *Current and accurate purchase descriptions or specifications have been developed.*
- c. Time permits the solicitation, submission and evaluation of bids.
- d. It is not necessary to conduct discussions with the respective bidders.
- e. There is a reasonable expectation of receiving more than one bid. AR 215-4, para. 5-1.

G. Types of Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 2-8.

- 1. Purchase Orders. Most commonly used to acquire simple supplies and services.
- 2. Firm-fixed price (FFP) contracts *are the preferred contract type for most NAF procurements.* Least risk to the NAFI. *See also DODD 4105.67, para. 4.6.*
- 3. FFP with economic price adjustments. Allows price fluctuation based on specified contingencies.
- 4. Indefinite delivery contracts. Permissible. Includes requirements contracts, indefinite quantity, and definite quantity contracts.
- 5. Cost-plus-percentage-of-cost contracts are prohibited.

H. Types of Agreements. AR 215-4, para. 2-9.

1. Basic Ordering Agreements (BOA). A written agreement between the NAFI and a contractor containing terms and conditions that will apply to future, potential orders, including pricing, a description of supplies or services to be provided, and the method for issuing orders under the agreement. A BOA is not a contract because it does not require the placement of any orders against it. An order placed in accordance with the terms of the BOA is a contractual instrument against which funds are obligated.
 2. Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA). A simplified method of procurement for filling anticipated, repetitive needs for goods or services. The BPA is not a contract because it does not require the placement of any orders and no funds are obligated until the time of ordering. Ordering officer places call orders against BPA when supplies or services are needed.
- I. Length of Contracts. Generally, contracts should not exceed five years, including options, without written justification and approval by the contracting officer. NAF contracts may not exceed 10 years except public-private venture contracts upon a written determination of the contracting officer. This limitation does not apply to construction contracts with a specified delivery date. AR 215-4, para. 2-4.

VII. COMPETITION AND SOURCES OF SUPPLIES AND SERVICES.

- A. Competition. The Competition in Contracting Act (CICA) does not apply to NAFIs unless appropriated funds are obligated. 10 U.S.C. § 2303; *Gino Morena Enters.*, B-224235, Feb. 5, 1987, 87-1 CPD ¶ 121; DODI 4105.67, para. 4.9.
1. Although CICA statutory requirements do not apply to NAFI acquisitions involving only NAFs, service regulations require maximum practicable competition. Sole source procurements must be justified. AR 215-4, paras. 1-1, 2-12, and 2-13.
 - a. For purchases of \$5,000 or less, NAFIs need not seek competition if the price obtained is fair and reasonable and purchases are distributed equitably among qualified suppliers. AR 215-4, para. 2-12.

- b. For purchases costing more than \$5,000, NAFIs must compete the acquisitions (except those for commercial entertainment) unless a sole source acquisition is justified. AR 215-4, paras. 2-12 and 2-13; *see also* AR 215-1, para. 8-18; AR 215-4, para. 7-8c (discussing “competition” rules for entertainment contracts) . Competition exists if:
 - (1) the activity solicits at least three responsible offerors; and
 - (2) at least two offerors independently submit responsive offers. AR 215-4, para. 2-12.
 - c. A NAFI may, but need not, synopsise acquisitions at fedbizopps.gov.
2. Sole source acquisitions. AR 215-4, para. 2-13.
- a. Contracting officers must approve all sole source acquisitions in writing. AR 215-4, para. 2-15.
 - b. Sole source acquisitions can be based on:
 - (1) The NAFI’s minimum needs can only be satisfied by unique supplies, services, or capabilities available from only one source and no other types or sources of supplies or services will satisfy the NAFI requirement;
 - (2) The supplies or services are protected by limited rights in data, patents, copyrights, secret processes, trade secrets, or other proprietary restrictions, warranties, or licenses and are available only from the originating source;
 - (3) The requester has determined that only specified makes or models of equipment, components, accessories, or specific academic or professional credentials will satisfy the requirement, and only one source meets the criteria;

- (4) The requirement is for unique repair or replacement parts for existing equipment for which substitutions cannot be made; or
 - (5) Access to utility services such as electric power or energy, gas, water, or cable television is restricted by local law, custom, or availability, and only one supplier can furnish the service within that geographical area or the contemplated contract is for construction of a part of a utility system and the local utility company is the only source available or authorized to work on the system.
3. Brand Name for Resale. There is no restriction on requests to purchase items for *resale purposes* on a brand-name basis. However, price competition requirements on requirements for brand-name items will be obtained among qualified suppliers who normally handle that brand. Award is generally made to the supplier who can furnish the desired brand-name items at the best price and within the time required. AR 215-4, paras. 2-25*b* and *c*.

B. Use of existing contracts and agreements.

1. Government sources of supply for NAFI requirements include the General Services Administration (GSA), Defense Supply Depots, and commissaries. AR 215-4, para. 2-22.
2. Other NAF sources include, but are not limited to, the Army and Air Force Exchange Service (AAFES), AFNAFPO, Navy Exchange Command, Marine Corps Exchange System, FMWRC, and NAF Contracting. AR 215-4, para. 2-22.
3. FAR Subparts 8.6 and 8.7, which require activities to purchase certain supplies from the Federal Prison Industries, Inc. (UNICOR) and the blind or severely disabled, apply to NAF acquisitions. 18 U.S.C. § 4124; 41 U.S.C. §§ 46-48; AR 215-4, para. 2-11.
4. Competition requirements for approved sources. AR 215-4, para. 2-22.

- a. Contracts / schedules that were previously awarded competitively, such as GSA multiple award schedules and the ID/IQ consolidated contracts, are considered to have met the competition requirement. Thus ordering officers need not obtain further competition or make a fair and reasonable price determination when using these sources. Procedures for using schedules that have not been competitively awarded:
 - (1) Ordering officers can place orders at or below the competition threshold.
 - (2) Orders exceeding the competition threshold (but not exceeding the maximum order threshold) should be placed with the schedule contractor that can provide the best value to the NAFI. At a minimum, at least three sources / schedules must be checked.
- 5. NAFIs may solicit commercial vendors. Activities may use solicitation mailing lists developed by the NAF contracting office or obtained from the APF contracting office. AR 215-4, para. 2-6.
- 6. A NAFI may contract with Government employees and military personnel when such contracts are funded solely with NAF. Such contracts shall be nonpersonal service contracts. Examples of these type of contracts include sports officials, arts and crafts instructors, and other MWR activities. Under previous regulations, such contracts were prohibited without installation commander's approval. AR 215-4, para. 1-21.

C. Prohibited Sources.

- 1. Generally, NAFIs may not solicit or consent to subcontracts with firms or individuals that have been suspended, debarred, or proposed for debarment. AR 215-4, para. 1-20.

- a. NAFIs may or may not continue contracts or subcontracts in existence at the time the contractor was debarred, suspended, or proposed for debarment. The CG, FMWRC, or designee, with input from contracting, technical personnel, and legal counsel, will make a determination, in writing, as to whether continued performance is in the best interest of the NAFI.
 - b. Absent termination, the NAFI can continue to place orders against existing contracts.
 - c. Options may be extended only if the CG, FMWRC,⁵ IMCOM regional director, garrison commander, or designee, states in writing the compelling reason for the extension or renewal.
2. Contractors on the “List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs” as having been declared ineligible on the basis of statute or other regulatory procedure are excluded from receiving contracts or subcontracts. AR 215-4, para. 1-20c.

⁵ On 3 June 2011, the Army Family and Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Command deactivated in a ceremony at Fort Sam Houston. Army Family and Morale, Welfare and Recreation functions will likely fall upon the Commander, IMCOM, or the IMCOM G9. Until FMWRC responsibilities are fully integrated into IMCOM, however, there may be some uncertainty as to which directorate within IMCOM is responsible for a particular function.

3. Economy Act and Interagency Acquisition Authority. NAFIs are instrumentalities of the Federal Government. *Standard Oil Co. of California v. Johnson*, 316 U.S. 481 (1942); GAO REDBOOK, 15-238 to 15-241. Notwithstanding this status, the Comptroller General has determined that the Economy Act and other interagency acquisition authorities do not extend to NAFIs. *Obtaining Goods & Servs. from Nonappropriated Fund Activities Through Intra-Dept. Procedures*, B-148581, Nov. 21, 1978, 78-2 CPD ¶ 353; GAO REDBOOK, 15-249 to 15-250. “[O]btaining goods and services from a NAFI is tantamount to obtaining them from non-Governmental, commercial sources.” GAO REDBOOK, 15-250 (quoting *Obtaining Goods & Servs. from Nonappropriated Fund Activities Through Intra-Dept. Procedures*, B-148581, Nov. 21, 1978, 78-2 CPD ¶ 353). Therefore, absent a statutory exception, agencies must use competitive contractual procedures or sole source justifications for other than full and open competition when acquiring goods or services from a NAFI. GAO REDBOOK, 15-250.

4. Historically, the Comptroller General questioned whether it was even appropriate for agencies to contractually acquire goods and services from a NAFI because NAFIs exist “primarily to help foster the morale, welfare, and recreation needs of government officers and employees.” GAO REDBOOK, 15-250. Notwithstanding these concerns, the Comptroller General had “recognized situations in which it may be appropriate for agencies to procure goods and services from NAFIs through the competitive procurement process and sole sourcing procurements [with proper justification and approval].” GAO REDBOOK, 15-250 to 15-252

5. Major DOD NAFI Statutory Exception. In 1997, Congress provided that Department of Defense NAFIs — may enter into a contract or other agreement with another element of the Department of Defense or with another Federal Department, agency, or instrumentality to provide or obtain goods and services beneficial to the efficient management and operation of the exchange system or that morale, welfare, and recreation system.” 1997 National Defense Authorization Act, Pub. L. 104-201, § 341(a)(1), 110 Stat. 2422, 2488 (Sept. 23, 1996), *codified at* 10 U.S.C. §2492; DODI 4105.67, para. 4.10; AR 215-1, para. 13-12*d*; AR 215-8, para. 8-1*e* (AAFES).⁶ Note, however, that:
- a. There is no statutory definition of “other agreements”; and
 - b. In applying 10 U.S.C. §2492, there must be a benefit to the NAFI which is usually financial in nature. Accordingly, the Government may not require performance by a NAFI to benefit the Government without any benefit to the NAFI.
 - c. Department of Defense NAFIs may not enter into contracts or agreements with DOD elements or other federal agencies that will result in the loss of existing contractor jobs on the installation created pursuant to the Randolph-Sheppard, Javits-Wagner-O’Day Act, or small business programs. AR 215-1, para. 13-12*d*; AR 215-8, para. 8-1*e* (AAFES).
 - d. AR 215-1, para. 13-12*c*(2) specifically authorizes the use of APF Government Purchase Cards at NAFIs, including AAFES, up to \$2,500⁷ provided the Government rotates purchases among available vendors.

⁶ Government agencies may consider AAFES as a provider of goods and services pursuant to 10 U.S.C. § 2492 prior to the initiation of the competitive procurement process. However, if the competitive procurement process by other Government activities has been initiated, then pursuant to 10 U.S.C. § 2492, AAFES may submit bids or proposals in response to the competitive procurement. AR 215-8, para. 8-1*f*.

⁷ It is unclear why AR 215-1, which was revised on 24 September 2010, limits the GPC threshold to \$2,500. Prior to the regulation’s republication, the APF micro-purchase threshold increased to \$3,000 (except for construction contracts (\$2,000) and contracts subject to the Services Contract Act (\$2,500)).

VIII. ACQUISITION METHODS.

- A. DOD Policy. DODD 4105.67, paras. 4.1. and 4.2, provide that NAFIs shall conduct procurements:
1. Primarily through competitive negotiation;
 2. By trained procurement personnel;
 3. In a fair, equitable, and impartial manner; and
 4. To the advantage of the NAFI.
- B. Simplified Acquisitions and Commercial Items. AR 215-4, ch. 3.
1. Policy.
 - a. NAFIs shall use Simplified Acquisition procedures to the maximum extent practical for the acquisition of supplies and services, including construction, that do not exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. NAFIs may use simplified acquisition procedures for “commercial items” up to \$250,000. AR 215-4, para. 3-2.
 - (1) Construction is not considered a commercial item.
 - (2) Authorized personnel shall make purchases using the simplified acquisition method that is most suitable, efficient, and economical based on the circumstances of each acquisition using any appropriate combination of simplified acquisition procedures and formal acquisition procedures. AR 215-4, para. 3-2e.
 - b. Do not split purchases to get under the simplified acquisition threshold.

- c. Contracting officer must also:
 - (1) Promote competition by soliciting at least three sources;
 - (2) Establish reasonable deadlines for submissions;
 - (3) Consider all quotations or offers timely received; and
 - (4) Use innovative simplified acquisition procedures where appropriate and not otherwise prohibited. AR 215-4, para. 3-2f.
- 2. The NAF policy for using Simplified Acquisitions does not apply if NAFI can meet its requirement using –
 - a. Required sources of supply;
 - b. Existing indefinite delivery contracts; or
 - c. Other established contracts. AR 215-4, para. 3-2a.
- 3. When using simplified acquisition procedures, the NAF contracting officer should solicit quotations orally or electronically where appropriate. AR 215-4, para. 3-6.
- 4. Construction. Solicitations for construction contracts must be in writing if requirement exceeds \$2,000. AR 215-4, para. 3-6d.
- 5. Competition.
 - a. The contracting officer shall solicit at least three sources of supplies or services from the sources whose offer may be the most advantageous to the NAFI. AR 215-4, para. 3-6a.

- b. If the contracting officer determines that there are fewer than three sources available that can meet the requirement, the contracting officer must document the file with the reasons why additional sources could not be obtained. AR 215-4, para. 3-6*a*.
 - c. The contracting officer shall not solicit on a sole source basis unless the provisions of AR 215-4, paras. 2-13 or 2-14 apply. AR 215-4, para. 3-6*a*.
 - d. When soliciting offers or quotations, the contracting officer must notify potential offerors of the basis upon which award might be made (price alone or price and other factors such as past performance and quality). Solicitations may, but need not, inform potential offerors of relative weights of evaluation factors. AR 215-4, para. 3-6*b*.
6. Legal effect of quotations. AR 215-4, para. 3-4.
- a. A quote received in response to a request for quotation (DA form 4067) is not an offer and cannot be accepted by the NAFI to form a binding contract. Issuance by the NAFI of an order for supplies and services also does not form a contract – the order in response to the quote constitutes the offer.
 - b. The order/offer becomes a contract if and when the contractor accepts the order, either in writing or by furnishing the requested supplies, or beginning performance on the requested service.
 - c. The NAFI may amend or cancel its order at any time prior to the contractor accepting the order.
7. Evaluations of quotes and offers. AR 215-4, para. 3-5
- a. Generally. The contracting officer will evaluate all offers received by the specified date in an impartial manner, inclusive of transportation costs, against criteria established in the solicitation.

- b. The contracting officer has broad discretion in developing suitable evaluation procedures.
 - c. Formal evaluation plans, establishing competitive ranges, conducting discussions, and scoring offers are not required, but contracting officers must ensure that offers can be evaluated in a fair and efficient manner.
 - d. Evaluation of factors other than price, such as past performance, are not required, but if used, they must be based on information such as the contracting officer's knowledge of and previous experience with the supply or service being requested, customer surveys, or other reasonable basis.
8. Award and documentation. AR 215-4, para. 3-7.
- a. Fair and reasonable price determination must be made before award.
 - b. File documentation should be minimal, but must support contracting officer's process and decisions.
 - c. The contracting officer can request a contractor's written acceptance of a purchase order if acceptance prior to performance is deemed appropriate by the contracting officer. AR 215-4, para. 3-8.
9. Solicitation and Contract Forms.
- a. Commercial Items. Use DA Form 4066.
 - b. Other than Commercial Items. Use DA Form 4067 unless quotes are solicited orally or electronically.

- c. Generally, a purchase order is used for simplified acquisitions unless the contracting officer determines that due to risk or other factors, a formal contract, including all of its requisite clauses, is appropriate.
10. Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA). BPAs provide a simplified method for filling anticipated repetitive needs for supplies and services by establishing “charge accounts” with qualified sources of supply. AR 215-4, paras. 3-10.
- a. Prepared on DA Form 4067-1. Do not cite accounting codes. AR 215-4, para. 3-12a.
 - b. Must include: terms of agreement; a list of authorized BPA callers authorized to make purchases under the BPA; extent of obligations; purchase limits; requirement for delivery tickets; invoicing information. AR 215-4, para. 3-12b.
 - c. Existence of BPA does not justify sole source procurement. AR 215-4, para. 3-12c(5).
 - d. Review requirements. A sampling of BPAs must be reviewed annually by the contracting officer to ensure proper procedures are being followed. All BPAs exceeding \$100,000 in annual usage must be reviewed annually. AR 215-4, para. 3-13.
11. Purchase Card Program. The Army NAF purchase card program provides a method of payment for the purchase of supplies and services for Government/NAFI use. AR 215-4, para. 3-16a; *see also* AR 215-1, para. 13-12.
- a. GSA is the issuing authority for the purchase card program contract. AR 215-4, para. 3-16a.
 - b. The FMWRC, NAF Contracting Directorate, Policy Division coordinates the program. AR 215-4, para. 3-16.

12. Contracting officers may issue task or delivery orders for the future delivery of supplies, or the future performance of nonpersonal services against existing contracts. The NAFI must pay the amount stated on the order if the contractor performs. Contract clauses are not used with task or delivery orders because they are already included in the contract against which the orders are placed. AR 215-4, para. 3-17.

C. Negotiated Acquisitions. AR 215-4, ch. 4.

1. Generally.
 - a. Negotiation is a means of contracting using either competitive or noncompetitive proposals and discussions. It is a flexible contracting method that permits contracting personnel to discuss contractual issues related to price, schedule, technical requirements, type of contract, or other terms. AR 215-4, para. 4-1.
 - b. Negotiation is the preferred method of contracting for NAF procurements and will be accomplished on a competitive basis to the maximum extent practicable. AR 215-4, para. 4-1.
 - c. Best Value. Contracting officers can obtain ~~best value~~ "best value" by either a tradeoff process or a lowest priced, technically acceptable process. AR 215-4, para. 4-2.
 - d. Price and quality must be an evaluation factor in every source selection. AR 215-4, paras. 4-2*c* and 4-2*d*.
 - e. Multiple Awards. Solicitation must inform potential offerors if multiple awards will be considered. AR 215-4, para. 4-2*e*.
 - f. Solicitation terms and conditions. AR 215-4, para. 4-3.
 - (1) Options. Permissible. The NAFI, not the contractor, exercises options.

- (2) Delivery performance and time. Must be realistic and stated in all contracts.
 - (3) Quality assurance. Include appropriate inspection, acceptance, and warranty requirements.
 - (4) Liquidated damages. AR 215-4, para. 1-26 and 4-3d. Amount must be reasonable. Consider using only if:
 - i. The time of delivery or performance is critical; and
 - ii. The exact amount of damage would be difficult or impossible to ascertain or prove if contractor fails to perform.
 - g. Uniform Contract Format. AR 215-4, para. 4-7. Contracting officers will normally prepare solicitations and resulting contracts using the uniform contract format located at Appendix D, AR 215-4.
2. Negotiation procedures.
- a. Source Selection Authority. The contracting officer is the source selection authority unless the Chief Acquisition Officer formally appoints another individual as the SSA for a particular acquisition or group of acquisitions. AR 215-4, para. 4-4.
 - b. Early exchange of information with industry is encouraged. AR 215-4, para.4-5.
 - c. Request for proposals (RFP). Instrument by which negotiated acquisitions are initiated.
 - (1) Issued on a DA Form 4069. AR 215-4, para. 4-6.

- (2) Proposal in response to an RFP is an offer that the government can accept to form a binding contract.

- d. Amending the solicitation. AR 215-4, para. 4-8.
 - (1) Before closing date, issue amendments on DA Form 4073 to all prospective offerors.
 - (2) After closing date for RFP, issue to all offerors who have not been eliminated from the competition.
 - (3) If amendment is so substantial as to alter the playing field and additional sources may be interested, the contracting officer shall cancel the original solicitation and re-solicit, regardless of the stage of the process.

- e. Late proposals and late modifications. AR 215-4, para. 4-11.

- f. Exchanges with offerors after receipt of proposals. AR 215-4, para. 4-14.
 - (1) Clarifications. If award will be made without discussions, clarifications may be used to allow an offeror to clarify certain aspects of its proposal (for example, the relevance of an offeror's past performance information and adverse past performance information to which the offeror has not had a previous opportunity to respond) or to resolve minor or clerical errors.
 - (2) Communications. Exchanges with offerors after receipt of proposals leading to the establishment of the competitive range. The competitive range is the group of most highly rated offerors with whom discussions will be conducted.
 - i. Limited to offerors who submitted proposals.

- ii. May only be held with offerors whose exclusion or inclusion in the competitive range is uncertain.
 - iii. Shall be held with offerors whose past performance information is the determining factor preventing them from being placed in the competitive range.
 - iv. May be conducted to enhance NAFI understanding of the proposal, allow reasonable interpretation of the proposal, or facilitate the NAFI's evaluation process.
 - v. Are for the purpose of addressing issues that must be explored to determine whether a proposal should be placed in the competitive range.
 - vi. Do not provide an opportunity for an offeror to revise its proposal.
- (3) Discussions. Negotiations that occur after establishment of a competitive range that may, at the contracting officer's discretion, result in an offeror being allowed to revise its proposal.
- i. Discussions must be held with each offeror in the competitive range and must be tailored to the individual offeror's proposal.
 - ii. The contracting officer should disclose to offeror the significant weaknesses, deficiencies, and other aspects of its proposal (such as cost, price, technical approach, past performance, and terms and conditions) that in the contracting officer's opinion could be altered or amended to materially enhance the proposal's potential for award.
 - iii. Primary purpose is to maximize best value to NAFI.

- iv. Award may be made without discussions if the solicitation states that is the NAFI's intent.
- (4) Limitations on discussions.
- i. Can not favor one offeror over another.
 - ii. Can not reveal names of other offerors.
 - iii. Can not reveal another offeror's technical solution or any other information that would compromise an offeror's intellectual property.
 - iv. Can not reveal other offerors' prices, but can reveal to an offeror that its price is considered too high or low and reveal the results of analysis supporting that conclusion.
 - v. Can not reveal the names of individuals providing reference information about an offeror's past performance.
- g. Proposal Revisions. AR 215-4, para. 4-15.
- h. Contract award and Debriefing Offerors. AR 215-4, paras. 4-18 through 4-20.
- i. Protests. AR 215-4, para. 4-21.
- (1) A protest is a written objection by an interested party. An interested party is an actual or prospective offeror whose direct economic interest would be affected by the award of, or failure to award, a particular contract.

- (2) Protests are made to the contracting officer. The contracting officer has the authority to resolve protests below \$250,000 by issuing a written decision. For protests of \$250,000 or more, the contracting officer must forward the protest to the Chief Acquisition Officer for resolution.
- (3) Protests prior to award. Award should be delayed until the protest is resolved unless contracting officer's supervisor makes a determination that the award should be made in accordance with AR 215-4, para. 4-21c, and legal advice is obtained.
- (4) The contracting officer or CAO, as appropriate, considers the merits of protest and takes appropriate actions which can include rejection of all proposals and the issuance of a new solicitation or using revised evaluation criteria (with corresponding notice to potential offerors and adjusting the due date for proposals).
- (5) Protests after award. To be considered, a protest must be received within 10 days of notification of award. No requirement to suspend performance, but if compelling reasons dictate performance should be suspended, the contracting officer or CAO as appropriate should seek a no-cost suspension with the awardee until the protest can be resolved. If no-cost suspension cannot be reached, seek legal counsel.
- (6) Written decision required by the contracting officer or CAO as appropriate with notice of appeal rights to the CG, FMWRC.
- (7) Appeals. Appellate authority must seek legal advice before deciding appeal.
- (8) Litigation. For a discussion of NAFI protest litigation, *see infra* Part XIII.A.

- j. Mistakes after award. AR 215-4, para. 4-22. Generally, only correct a mistake if there is a benefit to the NAFI and if modification does not change the essential requirements of the contract.

D. Sealed Bidding. AR 215-4, Chapter 5.

- 1. Sealed bidding is not preferred for NAFI contracting. It may be used only if:
 - a. Price is the only evaluation factor;
 - b. Current and accurate purchase descriptions or specifications have been developed;
 - c. Time permits the solicitation, submission, and evaluation of bids;
 - d. Discussions with bidders are unnecessary; and
 - e. There is a reasonable expectation of receiving more than one sealed bid. *See* AR 215-4, para. 5-1.
- 2. Sealed bidding procedures. AR 215-4, paras. 5-2 through 5-23.
 - a. Invitations for bids (IFBs). AR 215-4, para. 5-2.
 - b. Late bids, late bid modifications, and late bid withdrawals. Generally, bidders are responsible for submitting bids, modifications, or withdrawals to the NAFI office designated in the IFB by the time specified in the IFB. Bidders may use any method of transmission authorized in the IFB, to include facsimile. If no time is specified, the time for receipt is 4:30 pm. local time for the designated NAFI location on the date the bids are due. AR 215-4, para. 5-12.
 - (1) The government mishandling rule.

- (2) Late modification of successful bid.
- c. Amendment and cancellation of bids. AR 215-4, paras. 5-10, 5-11.
- d. Mistakes. AR 215-4, paras. 5-16 and 5-18.
- e. Two-step sealed bidding. AR 215-4, para. 5-19 through 5-23.
 - (1) Generally. A combination of competitive procedures designed to obtain benefits of sealed bidding when adequate specifications are not available.
 - (2) Step 1. Requests for, submission, evaluation, and (if necessary) discussion of technical proposals. No pricing is involved. The objective is to determine the acceptability of the supplies or services offered.
 - (3) Step 2. Sealed priced bids submitted by those who submitted acceptable technical proposals. Submitted bids are evaluated and the awards made in accordance with evaluation factors stated in the solicitation.
 - (4) Use in preference to negotiated procurement if:
 - i. Available specifications are not definite or complete or may be too restrictive without technical evaluation, and any necessary discussion of the technical aspects of the requirement to ensure mutual understanding between each source and the NAFI;
 - ii. Definite criteria exist for the evaluation of the technical proposals;
 - iii. More than one technically qualified source is expected to be available;

- iv. Sufficient time is available; and
- v. A firm-fixed price or FFP with EPA contract will be used.
- f. Contract award. Award to the lowest responsible, responsive bidder. Only award contracts that are firm-fixed price (FFP) or FFP with economic price adjustment. AR 215-4, para. 5-17.
- g. Protests. AR 215-4, para. 4-21. *See supra* para. VIII.C.2.i (discussing protests to the agency); *infra* subpart XIII.A (discussing protest litigation).

IX. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION. AR 215-4, Chapter 6.

- A. Contract Modifications. Contracting officers acting within the scope of their authority may issue contract modifications using DA Form 4073 electronic formats. AR 215-4, para. 6-2.
- B. Change Orders. NAF contracts generally contain a changes clause that permits the contracting officer to make unilateral changes, in designated areas, within the general scope of the contract. The contractor must continue performance of the contract as changed. The changes clause provides for an equitable adjustment to be made if the contractor experiences an increase or decrease in cost of the work as a result of the change. AR 215-4, para. 6-3.
- C. Constructive Changes. Any conduct by a contracting officer or other authorized representative, other than an ordered change, having the effect of requiring the contractor to perform new work or work different from that required by the contract. Constructive changes entitle the contractor to relief under the changes clause. Examples include: requiring a contractor to meet a delivery schedule despite an excusable delay; NAFI furnishing defective specs or misinterpreting the contract; or overzealous inspection.
- D. Contracting Officers Representative (COR) / Administrative Contracting Officers (ACO) / Ordering Officers. AR 215-4, paras. 6-5 to 6-7.

1. A COR may be appointed by the contracting officer in writing. Terms and limitations of COR must be set out in appointment memo. However, COR may not issue, authorize, agree to, or sign any contract or modification or in any way obligate the payment of funds by the NAFI.
2. Administrative Contracting Officers (ACO). The contracting officer shall appoint ACOs in writing. ACOs must be warranted contracting officers in their own right.
3. Ordering Officers. Ordering officers appointed in writing by the CO can place delivery orders against indefinite delivery type contracts awarded by the contracting officer. The ordering officer will be under the technical supervision and review of the contracting officer.

E. Performance Delay. AR 215-4, para. 6-8.

1. Excusable delay for causes beyond the contractor's control should be handled by a bilateral contract modification extending contract performance or terminating the contract for convenience.
2. Inexcusable delays have a variety of remedies from termination to bilateral modification and downward price adjustment.

F. Suspension of Work and Stop-Work. AR 215-4, para. 6-9.

1. The contracting officer may order a suspension of work for a reasonable period of time in a construction contract where appropriate.
2. The contracting officer may give a stop work order in either a service or supply contract where appropriate. Work stoppage may be required for state-of-the-art breakthroughs in technology or program realignment.
3. The contracting officer must include a suspension of work clause in all fixed price construction or architect-engineer contracts.

4. The contracting officer may include a stop-work order clause in solicitations and contracts for supplies and services.

G. Terminations. AR 215-4, para. 6-10.

1. The terminations clause authorizes contracting officers to terminate contracts when it is in the NAFI's best interest. Terminations can be for convenience or default. Contracting officers can enter settlement agreements.
2. No-fault terminations. For use in concession contracts only, under the no-fault clause (optional), either party can terminate by giving advanced written notice of a predetermined amount of time (usually 30 days).
3. Termination for default.
 - a. Cure notice. Issue if time permits prior to delivery date.
 - b. Show cause notice. Issue if no realistic time for a cure notice or if delivery period has expired.
 - c. Contractor may be liable for excess reprocurement costs under a default termination.
4. Contract Disputes and Appeals. AR 215-4, para. 6-11.

- a. In accordance with the Disputes Clause, the Contracts Disputes Act (CDA) does not apply to NAFI contracts. AR 215-4, para. 6-11a.⁸ As an exception, the CDA applies to contracts with military exchange services, including the Army and Air Force Exchange Service. 41 U.S.C. § 602(a); 28 U.S.C. §§ 1346, 1491; AR 215-8, para. 8-3b; *see also Pacrim Pizza Co. v. Prie*, 304 F.3d 1291 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *PNL Commercial Corp.*, ASBCA No. 53816, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32552.

- b. Prior to final decision, the contracting officer should make every reasonable attempt to settle the dispute amicably. If that fails, the contracting officer issues a final decision.

- c. Requirements for final decision.
 - (1) Burden rests on the contractor, ~~to~~ “the satisfaction of the contracting officer,” on both merits and quantum of claim.
 - (2) Final decision must be in writing. Include relevant facts and basis for the decision.
 - (3) Notice that this is a final decision and notice of appeal. See required paragraph language at AR 215-4, para. 6-11c(3).
 - (4) Mail final decision to contractor by certified mail, return receipt requested.

- d. Processing Appeals with the ASBCA. Contractor will forward notice of appeal, together with envelope showing postmark, to relevant higher headquarters without comment, and to the ASBCA for docketing. A copy of the notice of appeal and the transmittal letter to the ASBCA will be forwarded to the local staff judge advocate.

⁸ *But see infra* Part XIII.B.2 (discussing *Slattery v United States*, 635 F.3d 1298 (C.A.F.C. 2011), in which the *en banc* Federal Circuit overruled *AINS* and found that the Court of Federal Claims had Tucker Act jurisdiction over contract disputes involving all NAFIs if the NAFIs were performing a governmental function).

- e. Within 30 days of notice of appeal, the contracting officer, with the assistance of legal counsel, will compile five copies of the appeal file (Rule 4 file) and comply with the direction of the trial attorney at the Contract and Fiscal Law Division who will coordinate with the ASBCA.
 - f. The decision of the ASBCA is a final decision.
 - g. Litigation. For a discussion of NAFI disputes litigation, *see infra* Part XIII.B.
5. Contract Claims. AR 215-4, para. 6-12.
- a. Claims arising out of the operations of the Army installation and regional NAFIs, other than AAFES and the Army Civilian Welfare Funds (ACWF) will be paid out of the IMCOM Regional Single MWR Fund.
 - b. Claims arising from operations of the ACWF will be settled as directed in AR 215-7.
 - c. Claims arising out of AAFES claims will be settled as directed in AR 215-8.
 - d. The Equal Access to Justice Act,⁹ 5 U.S.C. § 504, does not apply to NAFI contracts with the exception of exchange services contracts because jurisdiction to award fees and cost under the EAJA is limited to appeals adjudicated under the Contracts Disputes Act. *See PNL Commercial Corp.*, ASBCA No. 53816, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32552
6. Payment.

⁹ The EAJA provides that “[a]n agency that conducts an adversary adjudication shall award, to a prevailing party other than the United States, fees and other expenses incurred by that party in connection with that proceeding, unless the adjudicative officer of the agency finds that the position of the agency was substantially justified or that special circumstances make an award unjust.” 5 U.S.C. § 504(a)(1).

- a. Advance payments may be provided on any type of contract, but they are the least preferred method of contract financing. They are not authorized if other standard payments (partial, progress, or on-receipt) are available. AR 215-4, para. 6-18.
 - b. Prompt Payment Act. 5 C.F.R. 1315. NAF contracting officers must comply with policies and clauses for implementing Office of Management and Budget (OMB) prompt payment regulations. Include specific prompt payment clause in each applicable solicitation. Refer to FAR, Subpart 32.9 for details. AR 215-4, para. 6-16.
 - c. Fiscal issues. Because Congress does not appropriate NAF monies, **funds do not expire at the end of the fiscal year**. However, finance offices may close out actions based on fiscal years so contracting officers must coordinate with their finance offices to keep monies active if contracts cross fiscal years. AR 215-4, para. 6-28.
7. Contract Close-out. AR 215-4, para. 6-32.

X. SPECIAL CATEGORIES OF CONTRACTING

- A. Concession Contracts—General. AR 215-4, para. 7-1.
 1. A concession contract is a license or permit for an activity/business to sell goods and services to authorized NAFI patrons at a designated location for a specified period of time. Examples include retail merchandise, vending or amusement machines, special events, food service or instruction. Concession contracts may be for a long or short term.
 2. Before a concession contract is awarded, the garrison commander or general manager at an AFRC, ARMP, or designee, must determine that the requirement is normally a part of, and directly related to, the purpose of the MWR program as specified in AR 215-1 and must authorize, in writing, the MWR activity to operate a resale activity by concession contract.

3. The NAFI receives a flat fee or percentage of gross sales from the concessionaire.
4. Insurance. Contracting officer shall determine the types of insurance coverage necessary for the contractor to obtain to protect the interests of the NAFI. Coverage may include bodily injury and property damage; workmen's compensation; property insurance; automobile liability; etc. Contact FMWRC risk management office (RIMP) for assistance in determining appropriate amounts of insurance.
 - a. Amusement company contracts must include requirements for public liability insurance in the amounts specified by the contracting officer.
 - b. Certificates of insurance, in the types and amounts determined appropriate by the contracting officer, must be provided to the contracting officer before beginning contract performance.

B. Long-Term Concession Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 7-2.

1. Over 30 days, even if days do not run consecutively (for example, every Sunday for one year).
2. Solicitation must put offerors on notice of:
 - a. Records that must be kept;
 - b. NAFI's right to audit and inspect records and premises;
 - c. Concessionaire's responsibility to safeguard all assets in its possession in which the Government or NAFI have an interest;
 - d. Concessionaire must certify the integrity of its financial records;
 - e. The reports the concessionaire must provide;

- f. Whether the concessionaire fee is a fixed fee or based on a percentage of sales;
 - g. The fact that prices must be clearly listed in English and that the contracting office approves prices and changes to pricing;
 - h. A schedule of prices for any service charges and the fee or commission to be offered the NAFI;
- 3. Price competition may be based on the selling price, concession fee, or both.
 - 4. If a service over \$2,500 is involved, the Service Contract Act may apply. AR 215-4, para. 7-2 and 7-9. *See Ober United Travel Agency v. Department of Labor*, 135 F.3d 822 (D.C. Cir. 1998) (citing DOL provision that adopts contractor gross receipts under a concession contract as the contract “value”).

C. Short-Term Concession Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 7-5.

- 1. Performance for 30 days or less (regardless whether days are consecutive).
- 2. The contracting officer may format a standard short-term concessionaire contract (DA Form 5756) for a one-time legal sufficiency determination for repetitive short-term concession contracts.
- 3. Contract will include, at a minimum:
 - a. NAFI furnished supplies and services (space, water, etc);
 - b. Concessionaire furnished supplies and equipment (signage, displays, chairs, etc.);

- c. Any limitations on performance or non-competition clauses, such as restrictions on concessionaire advertisements or selling beyond booth area;
- d. Days and hours of operation;
- e. Concessionaire's responsibility for site appearance and clean up;
- f. Points of contact;
- g. Responsibility for obtaining licenses, passes, permits, and health and safety requirements;
- h. Mandatory clauses (termination, disputes, and audit).

D. Merchandise Concessions. AR 215-4, para. 7-3.

- 1. Prices for items should be included in contract.
- 2. In addition to requirements for concession contracts generally, additional requirements to be included in merchandise concession contract include:
 - a. Party responsible for purchasing supplies to be sold in shop;
 - b. The type of items to be offered in the concession;
 - c. Vandalism / theft reporting requirements;
 - d. Party responsible for equipment maintenance and utilities;
 - e. Procedures for clean up and disposition of unsold merchandise at conclusion of contract.

- E. Vending and Amusement Machines (not including slot machines or other machines operated by the ARMP). AR 215-4, para 7-4.
1. In addition to general concession contract requirements, vending and amusement machine contracts must include:
 - a. The number of machines plus the machine type, manufacturer, and ID number;
 - b. Location of machines during contract performance;
 - c. Procedures for locking devices and sales accountability (*see* AR 215-1);
 - d. Customer refund procedures;
 - e. Capability of coin counting machines to reject slugs;
 - f. Requirements for inspection and handling of food placed in vending machines;
 - g. Space, plumbing, electrical requirements available to the concessionaire.
 2. Randolph-Sheppard Act may apply. *See* 20 U.S.C. § 107, *et. seq.*; U.S. DEP'T OF ARMY, REG. 210-25, VENDING FACILITY PROGRAM FOR THE BLIND ON FEDERAL PROPERTY (30 June 2004).
- F. Consignment Agreements. Use DA form 5755, Consignment Agreement (Nonappropriated Funds). AR 215-4, para. 7-6.

G. Entertainment Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 7-8.

1. AR 215-4 does not normally require competition for these contracts; however, it does prohibit the exclusive use of one entertainer or agent when there is more than one entertainer or agent who can provide similar, comparably priced services within the geographic area.
2. Copyrighted material.
 - a. Clearances are required before copyrighted material can be performed on stage. Procedures for obtaining these clearances is contained in AR 215-1, Appendix H.
 - b. Copyright and royalty clearances will be included in the contract file.
3. Government Employees. An entertainment contract will not be entered into between an MWR activity and a government employee or any organization substantially owned or controlled by one or more government employees unless the activity's needs can not otherwise reasonably be met. AR 215-1, para. 8-18b(7). *But see* AR 215-4, para. 1-21, for language generally permitting contracts with government employees when funded only with NAF.
4. The SCA may apply if the entertainment requires the use of stage hands or other technicians.
5. The contract must contain a cancellation clause and a liquidated damages clause. AR 215-4, para. 7-8d.

H. Contracts with Amusement Companies and Traveling Shows. AR 215-4, para. 7-7.

I. Service Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 7-9.

1. Contracts to perform an identifiable task, rather than furnish an end product. Examples include operation of NAFI equipment or facilities, instructions and training, sports officials, architect-engineer services (*see* AR 215-4, para. 8-2), housekeeping, grounds maintenance, repair of equipment, etc.
2. Nonpersonal service contracts are those in which contractor personnel are not subject, whether by the contract terms or by the manner of its administration, to the supervision and control usually prevailing in relationships between the Government or the NAFI and its employees
3. Personal services contracts are contracts that, by their express terms or by the manner of its administration, make the contractor personnel appear to be NAFI or Government employees.
4. Policy:
 - a. Agencies should use performance based contracting methods to the maximum extent practicable for the acquisition of services except for: construction, architect-engineer services, utility services, and services that are incidental to supply purchases.
 - b. A NAFI shall not award a contract for the performance of an inherently governmental function. *See* AR 215-3, Nonappropriated Funds Personnel Policy (29 August 2003).
 - c. Personal services contracts are generally prohibited. AR 215-4, para. 7-9d.
5. The Service Contract Act (SCA).
 - a. 41 U.S.C 351-357; FAR 22.1007 and 22.1008.

- b. The SCA is primarily for services performed by non-exempt service workers. The SCA provides for minimum wages and fringe benefits for service workers engaged in contracts valued over \$2,500. The contracting officer is responsible for incorporating wage determinations acquired from Department of Labor at www.dol.gov/esa/minwage/america.htm into the solicitation.
 - c. The Army labor advisor has determined that the exception to the Services Contract Act for National Park Service concession contracts does not apply to MWR NAFIs.¹⁰
 - 6. Davis Bacon Act. 40 U.S.C 276a; FAR 22.403-1. Generally covers wages for construction contractor employees. However, certain services performed under construction contracts are still covered by the SCA. If construction contract is solely for services contract for dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements without follow on construction, then the SCA applies. Otherwise the Davis-Bacon Act applies (federally funded construction projects over \$2000). AR 215-4, para. 7-9*l*.
- J. Insurance Contracts. AR 215-4, para. 7-10.
- K. Information Technology Requirements. AR 215-4, para. 7-11.
- L. Construction and Architect-Engineer (A-E) Contracts. AR 215-4, Chapter. 8.
 - 1. The process for awarding NAF construction and A-E service contracts is similar to that for the same type of APF contracts.
 - 2. Performance and payment bonds are required for most construction projects. AR 215-4, paras. 2-19; 7-10*o* and *p*.

10 36 C.F.R. § 51.3 describes National Park Service concession contracts as follows: –Concession contracts are not contracts within the meaning of . . . the Contracts Dispute Act and are not service or procurement contracts within the meaning of statutes, regulations or policies that apply only to federal service contracts or other types of federal procurement actions.”

3. Labor standards. The Davis-Bacon Act, the Copeland Act, and Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act apply to construction contracts that exceed \$2,000. AR 215-4, para. 8-11.
 4. Buy American Act. The Buy American Act – Balance of Payments Program (Construction Materials) is not applicable to NAF funded construction contracts. By its terms, the Act only applies to APF funded contracts. AR 215-4, para. 1-25b.
 5. AR 215-1, Chapter 15, Section II, contains additional guidance on NAFI construction planning, programming, funding, and project documentation. AR 215-1, Appendix E, contains detailed construction funding guidance. AR 420-1 and DA PAM 420-1-3, Army Military Construction and Nonappropriated-Funded Construction Program Development and Execution (2 April 2009) contain additional significant guidance.
- M. Purchase of Alcoholic Beverages. See Section III.C.1 and .2 above.
- N. Commercial Sponsorship. AR 215-1, Chapter 11, Section II.
1. Definition. –Commercial sponsorship is the act of providing assistance, funding, goods, equipment (including fixed assets), or services to a MWR program(s) or event(s) by . . . [a sponsor] . . . for a specific (limited) period of time in return for public recognition or opportunities for advertising or other promotions.” AR 215-1, para. 11-6.
 2. Advertising and Commercial Sponsorship are marketing, not contracting functions and are performed by personnel specifically designated by a command authority (normally the Director, Family Morale, Welfare, and Recreation). AR 215-1, para. 11-13.
 3. Procedures. Activities using commercial sponsorship procedures must ensure, among other matters, that:

- a. Obligations and entitlements of the sponsor and the MWR program are set forth in a written agreement that does not exceed one year, though such agreements may be renewed for a total of 5 years. All agreements require a legal review by the servicing legal office. AR 215-1, para. 11-8a;
- b. The activity disclaims endorsement of any supplier, product, or service in any public recognition or printed material developed for the sponsorship event. AR 215-1, para. 11-8d;
- c. The commercial sponsor certifies in writing that it shall not charge costs of the sponsorship to any part of the government. AR 215-1, para. 11-9c; and
- d. Officials responsible for contracting are not directly or indirectly involved with the solicitation of commercial vendors, except for those officials who administer NAF contracts. AR 215-1, para. 11-13a.

O. MWR Advertising. AR 215-1, Chapter 11, Section I.

XI. LABOR AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC POLICIES.

A. Socioeconomic Policies.

- 1. The Small Business Act (SBA). The SBA does not apply to NAF acquisitions. However, contracting officers may solicit small businesses and minority firms to compete for NAF requirements. AR 215-4, para. 1-23.
- 2. Foreign acquisition. NAF contracting officers will comply with the following when acquiring foreign supplies and services, as applicable. AR 215-4, para. 1-25.

- a. Buy American Act – Balance of Payments Program (excluding NAF funded construction because the Buy American Act by its terms only applies to APF funded contracts). 41 U.S.C § 10a-10d; AR 215-4, para. 1-25*b*.
 - b. DOD International Balance of Payments Program. DOD Directive 7060.3.
 - c. The Trade Agreements Act of 1979. 19 U.S.C § 2501, *et seq.*
 - d. The Caribbean Basin Recovery Act. Pub. L. No. 98-67, Title II, as amended.
 - e. Israeli Free Trade Implementation Act of 1985. 19 U.S.C § 2112 note.
 - f. The North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of 1993. 19 U.S.C § 3301 *et seq.*
- B. Labor laws. AR 215-4, para. 1-22.
- 1. NAF contracting officers shall comply with the following labor laws when acquiring supplies, services, and construction, as applicable.
 - a. Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C § 3141 *et. seq.*) – construction wages.
 - b. Copeland Act (18 U.S.C § 874 and 40 U.S.C § 3145) – construction – anti-kickback.
 - c. Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act (41 U.S.C §§ 35-45; FAR 22.602) – all contracts over \$15,000 – wages and working conditions.
 - d. Equal Employment Opportunity. Executive Order 11246, as amended; FAR 22.807.

- e. Service Contract Act of 1965 as amended (41 U.S.C § 351 *et seq.*; FAR 22-1007 and 22-1008). Minimum wage in service contracts.
- f. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C § 3701 *et seq.*).

XII. LEGAL REVIEW

- A. Legal counsel should review NAF contracting actions in all cases required by regulation and in any other cases when requested by the NAF contracting officer.
- B. Required legal reviews. New to the current regulation. AR 215-4, para. 1-17.
 - 1. Proposed awards resulting from unsolicited proposals.
 - 2. Decisions concerning claims, disputes, protests, and appeals.
 - 3. Novations, change of name agreements, and assignment of claims.
 - 4. Termination actions.
 - 5. Recommendations for suspension or debarment.
 - 6. Requests for release of information under the FOIA.
 - 7. Ratification actions.
 - 8. Congressional inquiries related to NAF acquisitions.
 - 9. Joint Ethics Regulation / Fraud violations.
 - 10. Proposed contractual documents related to the purchase or sale of real estate.
 - 11. Questions regarding NAFI tax status.
 - 12. Labor irregularities.
 - 13. Show cause and cure notices.
 - 14. Determinations of personal / nonpersonal services.
 - 15. Decisions concerning late proposals.
 - 16. Determinations of nonresponsiveness or nonresponsible offerors.

17. Prior to initial use, standard form BPAs, BOAs, consignment, and concessionaire contracts.
18. Any time an alternate contract form is used.
19. All revenue generating contracts not covered in 17 above.
20. Solicitations and contracts in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold.
21. Awards incorporating contractor terms or conditions.
22. Indefinite delivery solicitations and contracts with aggregate orders expected to exceed \$100,000.
23. Technical data issues.
24. Bankruptcy proceedings related to a contractor.
25. Contracts with Government employees and military personnel.
26. Questions concerning EEO exemptions.
27. Potential contractor conflicts of interest.
28. Delivery or task orders above \$500,000.

C. Legal review will, in writing, state whether a proposed action is legally sufficient and will recommend a course of action to overcome any deficiencies. If action is legally sufficient but contains other deficiencies, those should be addressed separately from the legal sufficiency decision.

XIII. LITIGATION INVOLVING NAF CONTRACTS.

A. Protests. AR 215-4, para. 4-21.

1. GAO Jurisdiction.

- a. NAFI procurements. Normally the GAO will not exercise jurisdiction regarding protests of NAFI contracts. The GAO normally lacks jurisdiction over procurements conducted by NAFIs because its authority extends only to ~~“federal agency”~~ acquisitions. *See* 31 U.S.C. § 3551; 4 C.F.R. § 21.5(g) (GAO bid protest rule implementing its statutory jurisdiction). A NAFI is not a ~~“federal agency.”~~ *See DSV, GmbH*, B-253724, June 16, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 468; GAO REDBOOK, 15-253 to 15-254. Protests are resolved under agency ~~“appeal”~~ procedures set forth in AR 215-4, para. 4-21, as discussed *supra* Part VIII.C.2.i.
- b. Exceptions:
- (1) Procurements conducted by an APF contracting officer. The GAO has jurisdiction to consider protests involving procurements conducted ~~“by or for a federal agency,”~~ regardless of the source of funds involved. *Barbarosa Reiseservice GmbH*, B-225641, May 20, 1987, 87-1 CPD ¶ 529. *See also Thayer Gate Development Corp.*, B-242847.2, Dec. 9, 1994 (GAO will assert jurisdiction if it finds the agency involvement so pervasive that the NAFI has become a conduit for the agency). APF activities may also provide ~~“in-kind”~~ support to NAFIs. APF contracting support to NAFIs may subject the action to the Competition in Contracting Act.
 - (2) The GAO may consider a protest involving a NAFI if the protestor alleges the agency used a NAFI to avoid competition requirements. *Premier Vending*, B-256560, July 5, 1994, 94-2 CPD ¶ 8; *cf. LDDS Worldcom*, B-270109, Feb. 6, 1996, 96-1 CPD ¶ 45 (no evidence Exchange was acting as a conduit for Navy or that Navy participation was pervasive).

2. COFC Jurisdiction. The COFC also normally will not exercise jurisdiction over protests involving a NAFI contract. But note that the COFC held in *Southern Foods* that because the NAFI did not meet all four prongs of the *AINS* test (specifically in that the Army NAFI did receive some appropriated funds), the COFC could exercise jurisdiction over the contractor's claim. *Southern Foods, Inc. v. United States*, 76 Fed. Cl. 769 (2007).¹¹

B. Disputes. AR 215-4, paras. 6-11 to 6-13.

1. The requirement for a final decision.
 - a. If the contracting officer fails to resolve a dispute arising under or relating to the contract, the contracting officer issues a final decision per the disputes clause contained in the NAF contract. AR 215-4, para. 6-11; *see supra* Subpart IX.G.4 (discussing the final decision process).
 - b. The contracting officer's decision lacks finality if it advises the contractor of its appeal rights under the contract incorrectly and the contractor is prejudiced by the deficiency. *Decker & Co. v. West*, 76 F.3d 1573 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *Wolverine Supply, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 39250, 90-2 BCA ¶ 22,706.
2. Historically, courts and boards did not exercise jurisdiction over NAFI contract disputes. As instrumentalities of the United States, NAFIs were immune from suit because Congress has not waived immunity for NAFIs under the Tucker Act (28 U.S.C. § 1346(a)(2)), the Contract Disputes Act (CDA) (41 U.S.C. § 602(a)), or the Administrative Procedures Act. *See Swiff-Train Co. v. United States*, 443 F.2d 1140 (5th Cir. 1971); *AINS, Inc. v. United States*, 56 Fed. Cl. 522 (2003) (aff'd at 365 F. 3d. 1333, Fed. Cir. 2004); *Commercial Offset Printers, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 25302, 81-1 BCA ¶ 14,900).

¹¹ In *Southern*, the court based its decision on a finding that the U.S. Army Community and Family Support Center (CFSC), the predecessor of FMWRC, was not a NAFI. Although the CFSC was not a NAFI, the court attributed the execution of the contract to CFSC instead of correctly attributing the execution of the contract to the Army Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Fund. Therefore, the court may have based its decision on a faulty premise.

- a. Established Exceptions.
- (1) Express or implied-in-fact contracts entered into by DOD, Coast Guard, and NASA exchange services, although NAFIs, are contracts of the United States for purposes of determining jurisdiction under the Tucker Act and the Contract Disputes Act. 28 U.S.C. § 1491(a)(1); *Pacrim Pizza Co. v. Prie*, 304 F.3d 1291 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *PNL Commercial Corp.*, ASBCA No. 53816, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32552.
 - (2) The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC) held that the COFC has jurisdiction over a contract dispute with the Navy Resale and Services Support Office (NAVRESSO) even though it was not mentioned by name in the Tucker Act as an enumerated NAFL. The court treated NAVRESSO the same as the exchange services because of its responsibility for managing Navy exchanges. *McDonald's Corp. v. United States*, 926 F.2d 1126 (Fed. Cir. 1991).
- b. Court of Federal Claims (COFC) Treatment. It held in *AINS* that the COFC did not have jurisdiction over a contract dispute with the U.S. Mint because the Mint is a NAFL and as such, there is no waiver of sovereign immunity. *AINS* at 543. To determine whether a federal entity is a "NAFL" and thus not subject to the CDA (so, federal courts are generally without jurisdiction), the *AINS* court used a four-part test:
- (1) It must *not* receive its monies by federal appropriations;
 - (2) Its funding must derive ~~primarily~~ from [the entity's] own activities, services, and product sales";
 - (3) There ~~must~~ be a clear expression by Congress that the agency was to be separated from general federal revenues"; and

- (4) Absent a statutory amendment, there is no situation in which appropriated funds could be used to fund the federal entity.
- c. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit Overrules *AINS*:
- (1) In *Slattery v United States*, 635 F.3d 1298 (C.A.F.C. 2011), the *en banc* Federal Circuit overruled *AINS* and found that the Court of Federal Claims had Tucker Act jurisdiction over contract disputes involving all NAFIs if the NAFIs were performing a governmental function.
 - (2) —The jurisdictional criterion is not how the government entity is funded or its obligations met, but whether the government entity was acting on behalf of the government.” *Slattery*, 635 F.3d at 1301. —When a government agency is asserted to have breached an express or implied contract that it entered on behalf of the United States, there is Tucker Act jurisdiction of the cause unless such jurisdiction was explicitly withheld or withdrawn by statute.” *Id.* at 1321. Accordingly, the court found that Tucker Act jurisdiction does not depend on nor is limited by whether the government entity receives or draws upon appropriated funds.
 - (3) The *Slattery* case is not yet final. The Solicitor General may apply for a *certiori*.
3. The Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA) has jurisdiction over NAF contract disputes if:
- a. The contract incorporates a disputes clause that grants such jurisdiction. *COVCO Hawaii Corp.*, ASBCA No. 26901, 83-2 BCA ¶ 16,554.
 - b. The contract contains no disputes clause, but DOD regulations require incorporation of a jurisdiction-granting clause in the NAF contract. *Recreational Enters.*, ASBCA No. 32176, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,675.

- c. The contractor seeks non-monetary, declaratory judgment. *See SUFI Network Services, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 54503, 04-01 BCA ¶ 32,606.
4. The CAFC has refused to hear appeals from decisions of the ASBCA concerning NAFI contracts. *Strand Hunt Constr., Inc. v. West*, 111 F.3d 142 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (unpub); *Maitland Bros. v. Widnall*, 41 F.3d 1521 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (unpub).
5. The ASBCA has refused to read the Protest After Award clause into a NAF contract awarded by an APF contracting officer, even though the clause was required by regulation. *F2M, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 49719, 97-2 BCA ¶ 28,982 (citing *Dawn Cleaners, Inc.*, ASBCA No. 20653, 76-2 BCA ¶ 12,198 for the proposition that the Christian Doctrine is inapplicable to NAFI procurements).

XIV. CONCLUSION.

Chapter 32B
Air Force
Nonappropriated Fund
Contracting



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 32B

AIR FORCE NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING

I. REFERENCES 1

II. OVERVIEW, DEFINITIONS, AND STATUTORY CONTROLS 3

III. AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT 6

IV. SPECIAL NAF REQUIREMENTS 10

V. COMPETITION, SOLICITATION, AND AWARD 12

VI. ACQUISITION METHODS..... 14

VII. LITIGATION INVOLVING NAF PROCUREMENTS..... 17

VIII. COMMERCIAL SPONSORSHIP 22

THIS PAGE NOT USED

CHAPTER 32B

AIR FORCE NONAPPROPRIATED FUND CONTRACTING

I. REFERENCES

- A. 10 U.S.C. § 2783 (grants the Secretary of Defense authority to publish regulations governing Nonappropriated Funds Instrumentalities (NAFIs) and sets forth penalties for misuse of funds).
- B. 10 U.S.C. § 8013(b)(9) (grants the Secretary of the Air Force authority to promulgate Morale, Welfare, and Recreation (MWR) regulations).
- C. GAO, [Principles of Federal Appropriations Law](#) (“Red Book”), vol. III, ch. 15, part C. Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentalities, 15-226 to 15-277 (3d ed. Sep 08). PRACTICE TIP: Also check the Annual Update, at <http://www.gao.gov/legal/redbook/redbook.html>.
- D. DOD Regulations
 - 1. [DODD 4105.67](#), Nonappropriated Fund Procurement Policy (2 May 01, Change 1, 30 Jul 02).
 - 2. DODD 7000.14-R, DOD Financial Management Regulation, [Volume 13](#), Nonappropriated Funds Policy and Procedures (dates vary by chapter thru Jun 11).
 - 3. [DODI 1015.10](#), Military Morale Welfare, and Recreation Programs (6 Jul 09, Change 1, 6 May 11).
 - 4. [DODI 1015.15](#), Establishment, Management, and Control of Non-Appropriated Fund Instrumentalities and Financial Management of Supporting Resources (31 Oct 07, Change 1, 20 Mar 08).
 - 5. [DODI 1330.09](#), Armed Services Exchange Policy (7 Dec 05).
 - 6. [DODI 4105.71](#), Nonappropriated Fund (NAF) Procurement Procedure (26 Feb 01, Change 1, 30 Jul 02).

- E. Air Force Regulations. Several Air Force instructions, policy directives, and manuals also govern NAF contracting and commercial sponsorships:
1. 32 Series: [AFI 32-1022](#), Planning and Programming Nonappropriated Fund Facility Construction Projects (20 May 09); AFI 32-7086, Hazardous Materials Management (1 Nov 04);
 2. 34 Series: [AFPD 34-2](#), Managing Nonappropriated Funds (NAF) (7 Jan 94); [AFI 34-124](#), Air Force Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Advisory Board (AFMWRAB) (25 Jul 94); [AFI 34-201](#), Use of Nonappropriated Funds (17 Jun 02); [AFI 34-202](#), Protecting Nonappropriated Fund Assets (27 Aug 04); [AFI 34-407](#), Air Force Commercial Sponsorship Program (19 Jul 05); [AFMAN 34-416](#), Air Force Commercial Sponsorship and Sale of NAFI Advertising Procedures (5 Oct 04);
 3. 64 Series: [AFPD 64-3](#), The Nonappropriated Fund Contracting System (1 Dec 05); [AFI 64-301](#), Nonappropriated Fund Contracting Policy (12 Feb 02); [AFMAN 64-302](#), Nonappropriated Fund Contracting Procedures (3 Nov 00); and
 4. 65 Series: [AFI 65-106](#), Appropriated Fund Support of Morale, Welfare, and Recreation and Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentalities (6 May 09); [AFI 65-107](#), Nonappropriated Funds Financial Management Oversight Responsibilities (1 Dec 99, Change 1, 4 Jan 10).
- F. AFNAF Purchasing Office Website: <http://www.afnafpo.com/>. This office sets AF NAF policy for the field. See the “Policy and Training” link for standard contract provisions and policy memoranda.
- G. MAJCOM and Installation Supplements. Occasionally MAJCOMs or installations provide additional guidance in supplements to the above regulations. These can usually be located by consulting the local Communications Squadron publications webpage or office.

II. OVERVIEW, DEFINITIONS, AND STATUTORY CONTROLS

- A. Historical Overview (see GAO Red Book, vol. III, pp. 15-226 to 15-237).
1. Since the American Revolution, nonappropriated funds have arisen to provide goods and services to benefit U.S. servicemembers and their families. The 1775 American Articles of War recognized the right of private merchants, called “sutlers,” to sell goods to soldiers, and regulated the time and place of such sales. The Articles also created a fund for sick soldiers, collected from fines on unit members behaving inappropriately—the first American nonappropriated fund instrumentality.
 2. As the U.S. military established installations nationwide in the 1800s, and then around the world following World Wars I and II, the sutler system gave way to canteens (forerunners of post exchanges), libraries, movie theaters, and other programs to benefit servicemembers and their families—all regulated by military regulations. The law recognizes the authority of military services to establish and operate such morale activities, but also Congress’s constitutional authority to regulate the military. Congress has also cautiously permitted some use of appropriated funds with NAFs.
- B. Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentality (NAFI). AFMAN 64-302, Atch 1, Glossary. An integral DOD organizational entity that performs a government function. It acts in its own name to provide or assist DOD components in providing morale, welfare and recreational programs for military personnel and authorized civilians. As a fiscal entity, it maintains custody and control over its nonappropriated funds. It is not incorporated under the law of any state or of the District of Columbia and it enjoys the legal status of an instrumentality of the United States. (E.g., sovereign immunity from suit or state taxation and regulation, unless waived).
- C. Nonappropriated Funds (NAFs). AFI 34-201, para. 1.1 and 1.2. NAFs are government funds but are separate and apart from funds that are recorded in the books of the US Treasury. They are not appropriated by the Congress. NAFs come primarily from the sale of goods and services to DOD military and civilian personnel and their families. The purpose of NAF funds is for the “collective benefit of military personnel, their families, and authorized civilians. These funds support morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) programs, lodging, certain religious and educational programs, and other programs”

D. Statutory Controls on Nonappropriated Funds (NAFs). Congress has recognized the historical authority of the Secretary of Defense, and of the Air Force, to issue regulations governing NAFIs and NAFs. DOD NAFIs are created by DOD and its components, and NAFI property and funds collected are considered government-owned. DOD personnel are also subject by statute to penalties for misuse of NAF funds. However, NAFs are not appropriated by Congress nor controlled by the U.S. Department of Treasury. NAFIs, as fiscal entities, control their own NAFs, subject to Congressional regulation. For example:

1. 10 U.S.C. § 2783(a) states the Secretary of Defense shall prescribe regulations governing—(1) the purpose for which NAFs of a DOD NAFI may be expended; and (2) the financial management of such funds to prevent waste, loss, or unauthorized use.
2. 10 U.S.C. § 8013(b)(9) states the “Secretary of the Air Force is responsible for and has the authority necessary to conduct all affairs of the Department of the Air Force, including . . . administering (including the morale and welfare of personnel).”
3. Violation. § 2783(b) contains provisions sometimes referred to as the “NAF Anti-Deficiency Act,” stating that a DOD civilian employee paid by NAF funds who commits a “substantial violation” of DOD NAF regulations “shall be subject to the same penalties” for misuse of appropriated funds (i.e. \$5,000 fine or two years confinement or both).
4. Alcohol. A NAFI in the United States may purchase/sell beer and wine only from sources doing business in the state in which the military installation is located. 10 U.S.C. § 2495(a)(2). NAFIs located on military installations outside the United States may purchase/sell wine from host nation sources so long as the NAFI gives “appropriate treatment” to wines produced in the United States to ensure such wines are given “equitable distribution, selection, and price” when compared to wines produced by the host nation. 10 U.S.C. § 2495a (separate from § 2495).

E. Regulatory Controls on NAFs

1. DODI 1015.10, Programs for Military Morale Welfare, and Recreation, para 4.3. MWR activities are placed into three separate categories based on the purpose of the program. The category is also important for determining how the program is funded, i.e., by NAFs, appropriated funds, or both.
 - a. Category A, Mission Sustaining Activities. Programs promoting the physical and mental well-being of military members, a requirement that supports accomplishment of the basic military mission. *They are supported almost entirely by appropriated funds (APFs) and rarely are authorized to generate their own revenue for support. Use of NAFs is limited to specific instances where APFs are prohibited by law or where use of NAFs is essential for the operation of a facility or program. Examples: libraries, physical fitness facilities, unit-level sports activities, and parks and picnic areas.*
 - b. Category B, Basic Community Support Activities. Programs satisfying basic physiological and psychological needs of the services members and families, providing community support systems that make “DOD installations temporary home towns for a mobile military population.” *They are supported by a “substantial amounts of APF support” but differ from category A programs as they have authority to generate some NAF revenue, but cannot support themselves and could not function without APF. Examples: automotive skills centers, youth activities, child development programs, arts and crafts centers, recreational swimming, riding stables, small bowling alleys (12 lanes or less), and outdoor recreation centers.*
 - c. Category C, Revenue-Generating Activities. Programs with the business capability to generating enough income to cover most of their operation expenses, but lack the ability to sustain themselves based purely on operations expenses. *They receive limited APF support. Examples: golf courses, boating activities, lodging, commercial travel services, clubs, and large bowling alleys (over 12 lanes).*
2. AFI 65-106, Chapter 2 discusses the various categories and funding levels of MWR activities in more detail, and should be consulted on any fiscal law questions re: APF use for MWR.

III. AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT

- A. General. Only warranted contracting officers are authorized to execute, administer, and terminate NAF contracts. The authority of these contracting officers is limited by their warrants. The Director of NAF Purchasing, Headquarters Air Force Services Agency appoints NAF contracting officers and issues warrants commensurate with each applicant's training and experience. There are limited and unlimited NAF contracting officer warrants. AFMAN 64-302, Chapter 2.
 - 1. Exception: Emergency purchases. When unforeseeable events occur that are likely to cause a loss of NAFI property or assets if immediate action is not taken, unwarranted individuals may incur obligations on behalf of a NAFI. AFMAN 64-302, para. 2.6.
 - 2. Exception: Certain purchases. Warrants are not required for Special Morale and Welfare (SM&W) purchases under the commander's SM&W expenditure authority, petty cash purchases, or purchases from other NAFIs. AFMAN 64-302, para. 2.7.
- B. Contracting Offices. Three different offices oversee NAF contracting: the installation NAF contracting office, the Air Force NAF Purchasing Office (AFNAFPO), and the Servicing Contracting Office (SCO).
 - 1. Installation NAF Contracting Officers
 - a. The Director of NAF Purchasing, Headquarters Air Force Services Agency (HQ AFSVA/SVC) appoints installation NAF contracting officers. There are two types of "limited" NAF contracting officer warrants, with dollar limits of \$5,000 and \$25,000. The higher dollar limit requires completion of additional contracting courses. The Force Support Squadron commander at the installation where the contracting officer is assigned recommends and provides justification for the appointment of a NAF contracting officer. AFMAN 64-302, paras. 2.1 and 2.2. (NOTE: References to "Services" or "Services Squadron" refer to the newly-reorganized/renamed Force Support Squadron).
 - b. Additional limits on a NAF contracting officer's authority to contract. AFMAN 64-302, para 2.2.3.

- i. Nonpersonal services, interior design service, concessionaire contracts for services, and training services: The NAF contracting officer may obligate up to \$2,500 CONUS (\$5,000 overseas). NAF Contracting Policy Memo #[11-C-01](#) (6 May 11), available at <http://www.afnafpo.com/>, waives the \$5,000 limit for certain special events executed and performed overseas.
 - ii. Construction: The NAF contracting officer may obligate up to \$2,000 CONUS (\$5,000 overseas).
 - c. Unlimited Contracting Officer Authority: The NAF contracting officer's authority to purchase items for resale or bingo prizes, contract for entertainment, contract for concessionaire services for open house events/tickets and tours, and make purchase from specified government sources (e.g., GSA, commissaries, exchanges, other AF Force Support or DoD activities), is unlimited, except as set forth in the basic contract or as limited by the installation commander. AFMAN 64-302, para 2.3.
2. The Air Force NAF Procurement Office (AFNAFPO). The AFNAFPO formulates and oversees NAF contracting procedures throughout the Air Force. AFI 64-301, para. 1. AFNAFPO is responsible for:
 - a. Formulating Air Force NAF contracting procedures.
 - b. Managing the Commander's Smart Buy Program (a cooperative purchasing program between AFNAFPO and base level NAF activities).
 - c. Providing NAF contract training and issuing NAF contracting warrants.
 - d. Approving ratification actions above base level thresholds.
 - e. Requesting qualified sources evaluate contracting processes and actions.

- f. Providing support for NAF requirements exceeding base level warrant authorization.
 - g. Representing the Air Force on the DOD subcommittee for NAF contracting.
 - h. Awarding contracts exceeding the authority of a NAF contracting officer.
3. Servicing Contracting Office (SCO)
- a. A base, central, or regional appropriated fund (APF) contracting office supporting one or more installations. AFMAN 64-302, Atch 1, Glossary.
 - b. The SCO coordinates with NAF contracting officers to ensure an effective NAF contracting program. AFI 64-301, para. 5.
 - c. The SCO purchases, using FAR procedures, all NAF requirements other than those specifically assigned to the AFNAFPO or to NAF contracting officers. AFI 64-301, para. 5.2. For example, the SCO must solicit, award, and administer:
 - i. All NAF construction contracts performed in the United States and expected to exceed \$2,000. AFMAN 64-302, para. 4.2.3.
 - ii. All purchases made with both NAF and APF. AFMAN 64-302, para. 6.2.

C. Responsibilities of the Staff Judge Advocate. AFI 64-301, para. 6. The SJA “shall provide legal oversight” of all NAF contracting activities and conduct annual ethics briefings or other authorized training. Additionally, the SJA will determine:

1. Whether conflicts of interest exist.
2. Whether NAF contracting actions comply with AFI 64-301.
3. Whether proposed ratifications are legally sufficient.
4. Whether a proposed resolution of a contract dispute is legally supportable.
5. The legal sufficiency of proposed contracting actions.

D. NAF Ratification Procedures. AFMAN 64-302, para. 12.8.

1. Personnel holding the following positions are authorized to approve or disapprove ratification of unauthorized commitments in the following amounts:
 - a. \$5,000 or less: Management Level above the Resource Management Flight Chief.
 - b. Over \$5000 to \$25,000: Installation Commander.
 - c. Over \$25,000: AFNAFPO.
2. Procedures
 - a. The individual who committed the unauthorized act prepares a statement of all pertinent facts and a purchase request/contract and forwards to his/her supervisor.

- b. The supervisor reviews the statement and certifies whether items were received and used for an authorized purpose; that proper funds were available; and indicates what actions were taken to prevent recurrence. The supervisor then forwards all documentation (employee's statement, supervisor's certification, invoice, and funded purchase request) to the NAF contracting officer.
- c. The NAF contracting officer then reviews the ratification package for adequacy, prepares the necessary contractual documents, and forwards to the servicing legal office for review.
- d. The legal office reviews for legal sufficiency, then forwards to the ratification authority.
- e. The ratification authority reviews the ratification package and if approved, he/she forwards the package to the contracting officer who will sign the purchase request (officially binding the government) and forward for distribution.

IV. SPECIAL NAF REQUIREMENTS

- A. The FAR, DFARS, and AFFARS do not apply to NAF procurements except as required by AFMAN 64-302 and AFI 64-301. While FAR procedures may be used as guidance for NAF purchases, only clauses required by law or otherwise stated shall be mandatory. For discussion of mandatory NAF contracting requirements, see AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.1.
 - 1. General Rule. NAF contracts shall contain only those clauses and certifications required for the purpose of complying with federal law, DOD requirements and protecting the interests of the NAFI. AFMAN 64-302, para. 6.1.
 - 2. Standard NAF contract provisions, representations, certifications, etc. are available online at <http://www.afnafpo.com/>.
 - 3. When using FAR clauses in NAFI contracts, change references to "Government" to "NAFI." AFMAN 64-302, para. 6.2.

- B. Performance Period. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.13.
1. If the contract is subject to the Service Contract Act (SCA), then the performance period is restricted to 5 years.
 2. If the contract is *not* subject to SCA, then the performance period will be determined by the contracting officer. Contracts exceeding 10 years duration must be supported by the contracting officer's determination that it is in the NAFI's best interest.
 3. There is no restriction on the performance period regarding contracts for the lease of real property.
- C. Requirements and Planning
1. Purchase Requests (PR). AFMAN 64-302, chap. 7. PRs specify the requirement and set aside funds for potential obligation.
 - a. PRs shall at a minimum identify the requesting NAFI, the requirement, and the requested delivery date.
 - b. PRs for services should also have a Performance Work Statement or Statement of Need. There are no prescribed forms for submitting the PR. The submission must be in a form determined acceptable by the contracting officer.
 - c. All PRs must contain certification of fund availability (signed by a fund certifying authority) before initiating purchasing action.
 2. Construction contracts executed by the AFNAFPO may be executed using the FAR as a guideline. However, the acquisition may be based on standard commercial practices if such practices are in the best interest of the NAFI. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.4.
 3. Architect and Engineering Service contracts. AFNAFPO will establish dollar limits for associated contracts and delivery orders. AFMAN, 64-302, para. 5.3.

V. COMPETITION, SOLICITATION, AND AWARD

A. Competition. The Competition in Contracting Act (CICA) does not apply to NAFIs unless appropriated funds are obligated. 10 U.S.C. § 2303; Gino Morena Enters., B-224235, Feb. 5, 1987, 87-1 CPD ¶ 121.

1. Purchases of \$5,000 or less. Competition is not required; contracting officer's signature certifies prices are fair and reasonable. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.6.1.
2. Purchases exceeding \$5,000 and up to \$100,000. At least two sources must be solicited. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.6.2.
3. Purchases exceeding \$100,000. Written or electronic solicitations must be issued to a minimum of three qualified sources. If only one bid/offer is received, the contracting officer must include a written determination of price reasonableness. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.6.2.

B. Special Source Requirements

1. Brand Name/Sole Source. Requesting activity must provide written justification for brand name/sole source purchases. Contracting officer determines if there is sufficient justification. AFMAN 64.302, para. 5.8.
2. Activities are to be aware of and place orders for products on the mandatory "Procurement List" from the blind and severely disabled, following the procedures set forth in FAR Part 8. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.14.
3. Procedures in FAR 8.6 apply to those products or classes of products/services provided by Federal Prison Industries. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.15.
4. Orders/contracts that include the purchase of hazardous materials must be coordinated with the Hazardous Materials Management Program (see AFI 32-7086, formerly the HAZMAT Pharmacy) and include FAR 52.223-3, Hazardous Material Safety Data, by reference or in full text. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.16

5. Controlled medical substances purchased for the base veterinarian must include the veterinarian's Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) number. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.17.
 6. Resale/Rental items. Competition is not required for resale or rental items. When competition is not obtained, the contracting officer will prepare a determination of price reasonableness for the file. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.7.
- C. Synopsis. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.2.
1. Not required for NAF purchases., but NAF contracting officers may synopsise requirements when in the NAFI's best interest.
 2. Solicitation and contract award notices for synopsized NAF purchases shall include special language regarding the purchase:

"This is a nonappropriated fund purchase and it does not obligate appropriated funds of the United States Government. Nonappropriated funds are generated by the military community through the sale of goods and services and the collection of fees and charges for participation in military community programs. This purchase does not involve federal tax dollars."
- D. Solicitations. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.1.
1. May be *written or verbal* depending on the dollar value/complexity of the requirement.
 2. Written solicitations *must* be used for open market purchases exceeding \$100,000.
- E. Basis for Award. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.4.
1. If factors other than price alone are used as the basis for award, these factors shall be *identified in the solicitation with their order of importance*. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.4.

2. Purchases up to and including \$100,000. Using price and other factors as the basis of award, the contracting officer will document the file with the rationale for making the award to a particular contractor. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.4.1.
 3. Purchases over \$100,000. Using price and other factors as the basis of award, the contracting officer will prepare a written summary of the analysis of all offers showing the results of the evaluation in relation to price, technical factors, and past performance. This document is marked "Source Selection Sensitive" and will not be released to the public. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.9 and 8.4.2.
- F. Responsibility. Before award of any contract, the contracting officer must determine whether the prospective awardee is responsible, using the responsibility standards in FAR 9.104-1. AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.10.
- G. Debriefings. Debriefings to unsuccessful offerors will be conducted following award if determined appropriate by the contracting officer. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.11.

VI. ACQUISITION METHODS

- A. DOD Policy. DODI 4105.71, para. 4, and DODD 4105.67, para. 4, provide that NAFIs shall conduct procurements:
1. By competitive negotiation, to the maximum extent practicable;
 2. By trained procurement personnel;
 3. In a fair, equitable, and impartial manner; and
 4. To the best advantage of the NAFL.
- B. Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPAs) provide a method of purchasing supplies and services on a recurring basis when the use of the government purchase card is not practicable. NAF contracting officers negotiate BPAs. AFMAN 64-302, Chapter 10.

- C. Delivery Orders are orders written against an existing contract or agreement. Terms and conditions set forth in the basic contract will apply to deliver orders issued. Competition is not required when issuing a delivery order. AFMAN 64-302, para. 8.8.

- D. NAF Government Purchase Card. AFMAN 64-302, Chapter 9 (see also AFI 34-275, Air Force NAF Government Purchase Card Program).
 - 1. AFNAFPO establishes purchasing thresholds for use of the NAF government purchase card.

 - 2. Warranted contracting officers may use the purchase card as a method of payment on purchase orders/delivery orders up to the limit of their warrant.

 - 3. AFMAN 64-302, para. 9.4.3, provides that the purchase card shall not be used for the following:
 - a. Personal purchases.

 - b. Use as a travel card for official government travel or cash Advances.

 - c. Rental or lease of land or buildings.

 - d. Purchase of hazardous/dangerous items, such as munitions, toxin, firearms.

 - e. Items designated for purchase with APFs.

- E. Purchase Order. AFMAN 64-302, para 8.5.
 - 1. A purchase order (PO) is a unilateral Government offer to buy items on the open market at a specified price.

 - 2. POs are binding when the commercial business accepts the offer either by signing the order or by initiating performance. POs over \$100,000 must be bilateral (signed by both parties), except resale.

- F. Special Contracts and Agreements. AFMAN 64-302, Chapter 11 provides details on these special contracts/agreements. Check the AFNAFPO website, Policy and Planning section, for additional guidance.
1. Entertainment Contracts. Para. 11.2.
 2. Aircraft Lease Agreements. Para. 11.3.
 3. Flight and Ground Instructors Contracts. Para. 11.4.
 4. Individual Service Contracts. Para. 11.5.
 5. Nonpersonal Services Contracts. Para. 11.6.
 6. Concessionaire Contracts. Para. 11.8.
 7. Training and Education Contracts. Para. 11.10.
 8. Contracting with Government Employees. Para. 11.11.
 9. Contracting with Appropriated Fund Activities. Para. 11.13.

VII. LITIGATION INVOLVING NAF PROCUREMENTS

A. IMPORTANT UPDATE

1. The longstanding general rule is that contracts awarded by NAFIs, funded purely by NAFs, are subject only to agency review, but not by the GAO or the federal courts, unless Congress or the contract provides otherwise. See Standard Oil Co. of Cal. v. Johnson, 316 U.S. 481 (1942). This is known as the *NAFI doctrine*.
2. A 2011 Federal Circuit case, discussed in subpart VIII.D. below, now directly challenges this doctrine. As the case's reach remains unsettled, the Deskbook includes in subparts VIII.A. to C. the law as it existed prior to the case, as well as discussion of the new case in subpart D. and its potential impact. *It remains to be seen how much the law in subparts A to C will change.*
3. If handling a potential litigation matter involving a NAF contract, consult AFLOA/JAQ for the latest guidance.

B. Protests (Solicitation, Pre/Post-Award, Option Exercise)

1. Agency Protest Procedures. (AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.2).
 - a. The majority of NAF protests can only be submitted for agency review. They generally involve reconsideration, plus the right to appeal final decisions one level higher.
 - b. AFNAFPO makes determinations on protests for NAF contracts executed centrally. The contractor has *10 days* from the date of a decision to appeal to Contract Support, Deputy Assistant Secretary (Contracting).
 - c. The NAF contracting officer resolves protests filed at base level. The servicing legal office reviews all protests prior to the contracting officer's final decision. Appeals of the contracting officer's decision must be filed *within 10 days* and are forwarded to AFNAFPO. The Director of NAF Purchasing is the decision authority on appeals.

2. GAO Jurisdiction

- a. Normally the GAO will not exercise jurisdiction regarding protests of NAFI contracts. GAO's authority extends only to "federal agency" acquisitions. See 31 U.S.C. § 3551; 4 C.F.R. §§ 21.5(g), 21.13 (GAO bid protest rules implementing its statutory jurisdiction). A NAFI is not a "federal agency." See DSV, GmbH, B-253724, June 16, 1993, 93-1 CPD ¶ 468.
- b. Protests are resolved under agency appeal procedures set forth in AFMAN 64-302, para. 5.2. The first response to a GAO protest should seek dismissal on this ground, among any others available, and coordinated through JAQ.
- c. Exceptions
 - i. *Procurements by an APF contracting officer.* The GAO may consider protests of procurements conducted "by or for a federal agency," regardless of the source of funds. Barbarosa Reiseservice GmbH, B-225641, May 20, 1987, 87-1 CPD ¶ 529. See also Thayer Gate Development Corp., B-242847.2, Dec. 9, 1994 (GAO will assert jurisdiction if agency involvement is so pervasive that the NAFI has become a conduit for the agency). APF activities may also provide "in-kind" or other support to NAFIs which may subject the action to the Competition in Contracting Act.
 - ii. *Procurements using NAFIs to circumvent CICA.* The GAO may consider a protest involving a NAFI if the protestor alleges the agency used a NAFI to avoid competition requirements. Premier Vending, B-256560, July 5, 1994, 94-2 CPD ¶ 8; cf. LDDS Worldcom, B-270109, Feb. 6, 1996, 96-1 CPD ¶ 45 (no evidence Exchange was acting as a conduit for Navy or that Navy participation was pervasive).

3. Court of Federal Claims (COFC) Jurisdiction.
 - a. The Administrative Disputes Act (ADRA) of 1996, § 12, codified at 28 U.S.C. § 1491(b), grants COFC jurisdiction over solicitation or bid protests. The court may provide declaratory and injunctive relief, and monetary relief in the form of reimbursed bid preparation costs.
 - b. Separately, a long line of cases exempted NAFIs from monetary relief (and therefore COFC jurisdiction), based on 28 U.S.C. § 2517(a) and its predecessors, which provides that judgments against the United States be paid out of “any general appropriations therefor. . . .” See, e.g., Kyer v. United States, 369 F.2d 714 (Ct.Cl.1966) (finding no jurisdiction against a NAFI as judgment could not be satisfied from APF). This exemption *did not apply* to suits seeking declaratory and injunctive relief under the ADRA, but until recently barred jurisdiction over complaints for recovery of bid protest costs. See Southern Foods, Inc. v. United States, 76 Fed. Cl. 769, 774–76 (2007).
 - c. To determine whether an entity was a NAFI, and therefore APF support was not available, COFC used a four-part test, set forth in AINS, Inc. v. United States, 56 Fed. Cl. 522 (2003) (aff’d at 365 F. 3d. 1333, Fed. Cir. 2004):
 - i. It must *not* receive its monies by federal appropriations;
 - ii. Its funding must derive “primarily from [the entity’s] own activities, services, and product sales”;
 - iii. There “must be a clear expression by Congress that the agency was to be separated from general federal revenues”; and
 - iv. Absent a statutory amendment, there is no situation in which appropriated funds could be used to fund the federal entity.

- d. Failure to meet any one of the AINS prongs resulted in a finding of jurisdiction over monetary claims for bid protest costs. See, e.g., Southern Foods, 76 Fed. Cl. at 776 (holding that as the office conducting the procurement received some APF support; it was not a NAFI and COFC had jurisdiction over an unsuccessful offeror's protest of a 100% NAF-funded contract for food services).

C. Claims/Disputes (Regarding Contract Performance)

1. The contracting officer is responsible for processing contract claims filed against the NAFI and rendering a final decision thereon. AFMAN 64-302, para. 12.6.
2. In past cases, courts and boards declined to exercise jurisdiction over NAF-funded contract disputes due to the NAFI doctrine.
 - a. As discussed above, NAFIs were deemed immune from suits seeking monetary damages under 28 U.S.C. § 2517(a), due to lack of APF to satisfy judgments. Several decisions held that Congress had not waived immunity for NAFIs under the Tucker Act (28 U.S.C. § 1346(a)(2)), the Contract Disputes Act (CDA) (41 U.S.C. § 602(a)), or the Administrative Procedures Act (5 U.S.C. § 551 *et. seq.*). See, e.g., Swiff-Train Co. v. United States, 443 F.2d 1140 (5th Cir. 1971); Commercial Offset Printers, Inc., ASBCA No. 25302, 81-1 BCA ¶ 14,900.
 - b. Exception. Express or implied-in-fact contracts entered into by DOD, Coast Guard, and NASA *exchange services*, which are NAFIs, nevertheless are contracts of the United States for purposes of determining jurisdiction under the Tucker Act and the CDA. Congress expressly waived their immunity in 1970. See 28 U.S.C. § 1491(a)(1).
3. The Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA) has jurisdiction over NAF contract disputes if:
 - a. The contract incorporates a disputes clause that grants such jurisdiction. SUFI Network Services, Inc., ASBCA No. 54503, 04-1 BCA ¶ 32,606 (Apr. 22, 2004).

- b. The contract contains no disputes clause, but DOD regulations require incorporation of a jurisdiction-granting clause in the NAF contract. Recreational Enters., ASBCA No. 32176, 87-1 BCA ¶ 19,675 (Feb. 20, 1987).
- c. The Federal Circuit Court of Appeals historically refused to hear appeals of ASBCA decisions concerning NAFI contracts. Strand Hunt Constr., Inc. v. West, 111 F.3d 142 (Fed. Cir. 1997)(unpub); McDonald's Corp. v. United States, 926 F.2d 1126 (Fed. Cir. 1991)(unpub); Maitland Bros. V. Widnall, 41 F.3d 1521 (Fed. Cir. 1994)(unpub).

D. 2011 Repeal of the NAFI Doctrine?

- 1. In a sharply divided (6-4) *en banc* decision, the Federal Circuit recently overturned the NAFI doctrine's barrier to jurisdiction over cases seeking monetary relief under the Tucker Act. See Slattery v. United States, 635 F.3d. 1298 (Fed. Cir. 2011).
- 2. Shareholders of a failed bank sued the United States, alleging the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), a NAFI, had breached regulatory contracts with a private bank, resulting in the bank's seizure and sale. The majority rejected the longstanding belief that 28 U.S.C. § 2517(a) precluded jurisdiction, holding that:
 - a. When a government agency is asserted to have breached an express or implied contract that it entered on behalf of the United States, there is Tucker Act jurisdiction of the cause *unless such jurisdiction was explicitly withheld or withdrawn by statute*, and
 - b. The jurisdictional foundation of the Tucker Act is *not limited* by the appropriation status of the agency's funds or the source of funds by which any judgment may be paid (abrogating Kyer, AINS, and ten other cases).
- 3. The Solicitor General twice filed for an extension of time to seek certiorari, but ultimately the United States elected not to appeal. Absent Congressional action, this case opens the doors to federal courts for suits seeking monetary relief from NAFIs, at least under the Tucker Act. The case's ultimate reach remains to be seen.

VIII. COMMERCIAL SPONSORSHIP

A. Definition

1. Commercial sponsorship is the outside partial underwriting of an MWR event (as an element of a Services event) by a consumer product and/or service company using money, goods, and/or services to obtain limited recognition and advertising benefits. AFI 34-407, Atch 1.
2. Only Services MWR programs may use the commercial sponsorship program. AFI 34-407, para. 1.2.
3. The commercial sponsorship program cannot be used to offset expenses of programs/activities by other Air Force organizations, units, or private organizations. AFI 34-407, para. 1.2.

B. Key Players

1. MAJCOM Commanders: Approve or disapprove sponsorships of \$5,000 through \$100,000, and may delegate approval authority for up to \$50,000 to the MAJCOM Vice Commander, Chief of Staff, or Services Director. The MAJCOM Commander may delegate authority up to \$25,000 to an installation commander. AFI 34-407, para. 2.3. *MAJCOM supplements to AFI 34-407, or separate memoranda, often list such delegations.*
2. Installation Commanders: Approve or disapprove sponsorship worth \$5,000 or less, or other values as delegated by the MAJCOM commander. The Installation Commander may delegate authority for approval or disapproval and acceptance or sponsorships worth up to \$5,000 to the Support Group Commander or Services Commander or Division Chief. AFI 34-407, para. 2.5.
3. Force Support Squadron Commander: Appoints a commercial sponsorship program manager and reviews all proposals and agreements. AFI 34-407, para. 2.6.

4. Commercial Sponsorship Program Manager: Manages the agreements, and fosters program awareness among the installation and civilian sectors. AFI 34-407, para. 2.7.
5. Legal Officers. Review *all* sponsorship agreements at their respective levels. AFI 34-407, para. 2.8.
6. Supporting Contracting Officers. AFI 34-407, para. 2.10.
 - a. Both NAF and APF contracting officers review agreements to ensure offers are not accepted from barred contractors, and do not conflict with existing contracts, memoranda of understanding, or other similar agreements.
 - b. The NAF contracting officer reviews and coordinates on sponsorship agreements for technical sufficiency, completeness, and content.

C. Types of Commercial Sponsorships

1. Unsolicited Commercial Sponsorships. AFI 34-407, para. 3.
 - a. Must be entirely initiated by prospective sponsors or their representatives.
 - b. Services activities may generate sponsorship awareness using various means, such as brochures, advertisements, news releases or information letters, however, they may not provide information about specific needs.
2. Solicited Commercial Sponsorships. AFI 34-407, para. 4.
 - a. The Solicited Commercial Sponsorship Program is the only authorized method for soliciting commercial sponsors for MWR events.
 - b. Announcements. All sponsorship solicitations must be announced to the maximum number of potential sponsors.

- c. Restrictions. Per AFI 34-407, para. 4.1, MWR elements of Force Support *may not* solicit sponsorship from:
 - i. Alcohol or tobacco companies under any circumstances. Companies that manufacture or distribute alcoholic beverages or tobacco products may be allowed to provide *unsolicited* sponsorship if the events are open to the public or the companies have sponsored similar events in a civilian community. AFI 34-407, para. 7.6.1.
 - ii. “Military systems divisions of defense contractors.” Solicitations may, however, be sent to defense contractor *domestic consumer products* divisions. Also, *unsolicited* offers may be accepted from any segment of a defense contractor. AFI 34-407, para. 4.1.

- D. General Considerations. AFI 34-407, paras. 6 and 7 and AFMAN 34-416, paras. 5 and 6. Activities using commercial sponsorship procedures must ensure that:
 - 1. Obligations and entitlements of the sponsor and the MWR program are set forth in a written agreement.
 - 2. The activity disclaims endorsement of any supplier, product, or service in any public recognition or printed material developed for the sponsorship event.
 - 3. The commercial sponsor certifies in writing that it shall not charge costs of the sponsorship to any part of the government.
 - 4. Officials responsible for contracting are not directly or indirectly involved with the solicitation of commercial vendors, except for those officials who administer NAF contracts.

END OF CHAPTER

Chapter 33
Contract Law
Research Materials



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

CHAPTER 33

CONTRACT LAW RESEARCH

| | | |
|-------|---|----|
| I. | STARTING POINT – THE CONTRACT..... | 1 |
| II. | STATUTES..... | 2 |
| III. | REGULATIONS..... | 4 |
| IV. | COURTS..... | 11 |
| V. | BOARDS OF CONTRACT APPEALS. | 13 |
| VI. | COMPTROLLER GENERAL’S DECISIONS. | 14 |
| VII. | JOURNALS, PERIODICALS, CITATORS AND REPORTERS. | 15 |
| VIII. | TEXTS..... | 17 |
| IX. | REFERENCES ON CONDUCTING CONTRACT LAW RESEARCH..... | 20 |
| X. | COMPUTER-ASSISTED LEGAL RESEARCH..... | 20 |
| XI. | TRAINING. | 21 |
| | APPENDIX - Websites..... | 24 |

CHAPTER 33

CONTRACT LAW RESEARCH

I. STARTING POINT – THE CONTRACT.

A. What Does the Contract Say?

1. Solicitation Provisions and Contract Clauses.

- a. “Solicitation provision” or “provision” means a term or condition used only in solicitations and applying only before contract award. [FAR 2.101](#).
- b. “Contract clause” or “clause” means a term or condition used in contracts or in both solicitations and contracts, and applying after contract award or both before and after award. [FAR 2.101](#).

2. For provisions/clauses incorporated by reference, see FAR Part 52 and Part 52 of the appropriate supplements. See [FAR 52.102](#).

B. What Should the Contract Have Said?

1. Clauses required by statute or regulation will be incorporated into a contract by operation of law. G. L. Christian & Assoc. v. United States, 160 Ct. Cl. 1, 312 F.2d 418, cert. denied, 375 U.S. 954 (1963) (regulations published in the Federal Register and issued under statutory authority have the force and effect of law).
2. Clauses included in a contract in violation of statutory or regulatory criteria will be read out of a contract. Carrier Corp., GSBICA No. 8516, 90-1 BCA 22,409; Charles Beseler Co., ASBCA No. 22669, 78-2 BCA 13,483 (where contracting officer acts beyond scope of actual authority, Government not bound by his acts).
3. A clause incorporated erroneously will be replaced with the correct one. S.J. Amoroso Constr. Co. v. United States, 12 F.3d 1072 (Fed. Cir. 1993).

II. STATUTES.

- A. The Armed Services Procurement Act of 1947 (ASPA). [10 U.S.C. §§ 2301-2329](#).
 - 1. Basic procurement statute.
 - 2. Covers DoD, NASA, and Coast Guard.

- B. The Federal Property and Administrative Service Act (FPASA). [41 U.S.C. §§ 251-260](#).
 - 1. Basic procurement statute.
 - 2. Covers GSA and other federal agencies not covered by ASPA.

- C. Competition in Contracting Act (CICA). Pub. L. No. 98-369 (1983). Current statutes: [10 U.S.C. §§ 2301-2306](#); [41 U.S.C. § 403](#).
 - 1. Amended ASPA and FPASA to make both statutes identical.
 - 2. Changes have been made to both the ASPA and the FPASA since the enactment of CICA, so there now are differences between the statutes.

- D. Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (CDA). [41 U.S.C. §§ 601-613](#).
 - 1. Waiver of sovereign immunity for contract appeals to agency boards of contract appeals (BCAs) and direct access suits to the United States Court of Federal Claims.
 - 2. Covers claim process, certification, litigation, boards of contract appeals, etc.

- E. Tucker Act. [28 U.S.C. § 1491](#).
 - 1. Basic jurisdictional statute for the United States Court of Federal Claims.

2. Creates “exclusive” judicial forum for resolution of pre-award protests. [28 U.S.C. § 1491\(a\)\(3\)](#).
- F. Equal Access To Justice Act (EAJA). [5 U.S.C. § 504](#), [28 U.S.C. § 2412\(d\)](#).
1. Requires the government to pay attorney’s fees if the prevailing party is a small business and the government’s position was not substantially justified.
 2. Title 5 applies to the BCAs. Title 28 applies to the U.S. Court of Federal Claims. The EAJA does not apply to bid protest actions.
- G. Annual Authorization and Appropriation Acts.
3. **Practice Note:** The Library of Congress website “Thomas” (<http://thomas.loc.gov/>) is your best source for recent legislative materials. Limited coverage (mainly the text of enacted legislation) begins with the 93rd Congress (1973). Complete coverage (including legislative history) begins with the 104th Congress (1995).
- G. Statutory Research.
1. The FAR normally cites the pertinent statutory citation that is being implemented by that portion of the FAR.

Example: FAR Subpart 22.4 deals with labor standards for contracts that involve construction. FAR 22.403 cross-references the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. §§ 276a – 276a-7), the Copeland Act (18 U.S.C. § 874 and 40 U.S.C. 276c), and the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. §§ 327 – 333) which are the statutes that are being implemented in FAR Subpart 22.4.
 2. Laws Relating to Federal Procurement. A compilation of statutes dealing with government contracting prepared by the House Committee on Armed Services. An electronic version (amended through Dec. 31, 2002) is available at: <http://armedservices.house.gov/comdocs/reports/FederalProcurement-2003.PDF>.

3. The U.S. Code is broken down into titles which typically cover a given subject-matter area.

Example: Statutes pertaining to DOD are typically found in Title 10. A statute dealing only with restrictions on DOD's ability to enter into a contract will likely be found in Title 10. Statutes dealing with restrictions applicable to all federal agencies or to all civilian agencies are generally found in Title 41.

4. You can run a general boolean search on either a specialized legal database, such as LEXISTM or WestlawTM, or on the U.S. Code website (located at: <http://www.gpoaccess.gov/uscode/index.html>).
5. U.S. Code Annotated Index. This index contains a listing arranged by subject of the codified U.S. statutes.

III. REGULATIONS.

A. Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR).

1. Became effective on 1 April 1984. The FAR replaced the Defense Acquisition Regulation (DAR), the Federal Procurement Regulation (FPR), and the NASA Procurement Regulation (NASAPR). [Note: you may also hear some "old-timers" refer to the Armed Services Procurement Regulation (or ASPR) – the ASPR went into effect in 1948 and remained in effect until it was replaced by the DAR in 1978.]
2. The General Services Administration has been tasked with the responsibility for publishing the FAR and any updates to it. [FAR 1.201-2](#).
3. Locating the FAR.
 - a. The Government Printing Office (GPO) previously printed periodic updates to the FAR in the form of Federal Acquisition Circulars (FAC). Effective 31 December 2000, the GPO no longer produces printed copies of the FACs or updated versions of the FAR. [See 65 Fed. Reg. 56,452 \(18 September 2000\)](#).

- b. Currently only electronic versions of the FAR and the FACs are available. The FAR is found at Chapter 1 of Title 48 of the Code of Federal Regulations (C.F.R.). Proposed and final changes to the FAR are published electronically in the Federal Register.
- c. The official electronic version of the FAR (maintained by GSA) is available at <http://www.arnet.gov/far/> [Note: this site also permits you to sign up for an electronic notification of proposed and final changes to the FAR]. The Air Force FAR Site contains a very user-friendly version of the FAR as well as several supplements. It is found at: <http://farsite.hill.af.mil/>.

B. Departmental and Agency Supplemental Regulations. [FAR Subpart 1.3](#).

- 1. Agencies are permitted to issue regulations that implement or supplement the FAR.
- 2. Most agencies have some form of supplemental regulation. The FAR requires these supplements to be published in Title 48 of the C.F.R. [FAR 1.303](#). The following chart shows the location within Title 48 for each of the respective agency supplementation:

| <u>Chapter</u> | <u>Agency/Department</u> |
|----------------|--|
| 2 | Defense FAR Supplement (DFARS). The DFARS was completely revised in 1991. Available at each of the following sites: http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/dars/dfarspgi/current/index.html and http://farsite.hill.af.mil/VFDFARA.HTM . |
| 3 | Health and Human Services (HHSAR) |
| 4 | Agriculture (AGAR) |
| 5 | General Services Administration Regulation (GSAR) |
| 6 | State (DOSAR) |
| 7 | Agency For International Development (AIDAR) |
| 8 | Veterans Affairs (VAAR) |
| 9 | Energy Acquisition Regulation (DEAR). Available at: http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfdoea.htm/ |
| 10 | Treasury (DTAR) |

| <u>Chapter</u> | <u>Agency/Department</u> |
|----------------|---|
| 12 | Transportation Acquisition Regulation (TAR) |
| 13 | Commerce (CAR) |
| 14 | Interior (DIAR) |
| 15 | Environmental Protection Agency (EPAAR) |
| 16 | Office of Personnel Management |
| 17 | NASA FAR Supplement (NFS). Available at: http://farsite.hill.af.mil/VFnasaa.HTM . |
| 19 | United States Information Agency |
| 22 | Small Business Administration |
| 24 | Housing And Urban Development (HUDAR) |
| 25 | National Science Foundation |
| 28 | Justice (JAR) |
| 29 | Labor (DOLAR) |
| 30 | Homeland Security (HSAR) |
| 35 | Panama Canal Commission |
| 44 | Federal Emergency Management Agency |
| 51 | Army FAR Supplement (AFARS). Also available at: http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfafara.htm . |
| 52 | Navy Acquisition Procedures Supplement (NAPS). Also available at: http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfnapsa.htm . |
| 53 | Air Force FAR Supplement (AFFARS). Also available at: http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfaffara.htm . |
| 54 | Defense Logistics Acquisition Regulation Supplement (DLAR) |

C. The FAR System.

1. The FAR is divided into eight (8) subchapters and fifty-three (53) parts. Parts are further divided into subparts, sections, and subsections.

| Subchapter A: General | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Part 1: | Federal Acquisition Regulations System |
| Part 2: | Definitions of Words and Terms |
| Part 3: | Improper Business Practices and Personal Conflicts of Interest |
| Part 4: | Administrative Matters00 |

Subchapter B: Acquisition Planning

- Part 5: Publicizing Contract Actions
- Part 6: Competition Requirements
- Part 7: Acquisition Planning
- Part 8: Required Sources of Supplies and Services
- Part 9: Contractor Qualifications
- Part 10: Market Research
- Part 11: Describing Agency Needs
- Part 12: Acquisition of Commercial Items.

Subchapter C: Contracting Methods and Contract Types

- Part 13: Simplified Acquisition Procedures
- Part 14: Sealed Bidding
- Part 15: Contracting by Negotiation
- Part 16: Types of Contracts
- Part 17: Special Contracting Methods
- Part 18: Emergency Acquisitions

Subchapter D: Socioeconomic Programs

- Part 19: Small Business Programs.
- Part 20: [Reserved]
- Part 21: [Reserved]
- Part 22: Application of Labor Law to Government Acquisitions
- Part 23: Environment, Conservation, Occupational Safety, and Drug-Free Workplace
- Part 24: Protection of Privacy and Freedom of Information
- Part 25: Foreign Acquisition
- Part 26: Other Socioeconomic Programs

Subchapter E: General Contracting Requirements

- Part 27: Patents, Data, and Copyrights
- Part 28: Bonds and Insurance
- Part 29: Taxes
- Part 30: Cost Accounting Standards
- Part 31: Contract Cost Principles and Procedures

| | |
|-----------|--|
| Part 32: | Contract Financing |
| Part 33: | Protests, Disputes, and Appeals |
| | Subchapter F: Special Categories of Contracting |
| Part 34: | Major System Acquisition |
| Part 35: | Research and Development Contracting |
| Part 36: | Construction and Architect-Engineer Contracts |
| Part 37: | Service Contracting |
| Part 38: | Federal Supply Schedule Contracting |
| Part 39: | Acquisition of Information Resources |
| Part 40: | [Reserved] |
| Part 41: | Acquisition of Utility Services. |
| | Subchapter G: Contract Management |
| Part 42: | Contract Administration |
| Part 43: | Contract Modifications |
| Part 44: | Subcontracting Policies and Procedures |
| Part 45: | Government Property |
| Part 46: | Quality Assurance |
| Part 47: | Transportation |
| Part 48: | Value Engineering |
| Part 49: | Termination of Contracts |
| Part 50: | Extraordinary Contractual Actions |
| Part 51: | Use of Government Sources by Contractors |
| | Subchapter H: Clauses and Forms |
| Part 52: | Solicitation Provisions and Contract Clauses |
| Part 53: | Forms |
| Appendix: | Cost Accounting Standards |

2. The FAR organizational system applies to the FAR and all agency supplements to the FAR. See [FAR 1.303](#).

3. Arrangement. The digits to the left of the decimal point represent the part number. The digits to the right of the decimal point AND to the left of the dash represent the subpart and section. The digits to the right of the dash represent the subsection. See [FAR 1.105-2](#).

Example: FAR 45.303-2. We are dealing with FAR Part 45. The Subpart is 45.3. The Section is 45.303 and the subsection is 45.303-2.

4. Correlation Between FAR Parts and Clauses/Provisions. All clauses and provisions are found in FAR Subpart 52.2. As a result, they each begin with “52.2.” The next two digits in each clause or provision corresponds to the FAR Part in which that particular clause or provision is discussed and prescribed. The number following the hyphen is assigned sequentially and relates to the number of clauses and provisions dealing with that FAR Part. See [FAR 52.101\(b\)](#).

Example: FAR 52.245-2 (prescribed by FAR 45.303-2). This was the second clause developed dealing with Government Property (the subject of FAR Part 45).

5. Correlation Between FAR and Agency Supplements. Agency FAR Supplements that further implement something that is also addressed in the FAR must be numbered to correspond to the appropriate FAR number. Agency FAR Supplements that supplement the FAR (discuss something not addressed in the FAR) must utilize the numbers 70 and up. See [FAR 1.303\(a\)](#).

Example: FAR 45.407 discusses contractor use of government equipment. The portion of the DFARS addressing this same topic is found at DFARS 245.407. The portion of the AFARS further implementing this topic is found at AFARS 5145.407. FAR 6.303-2 addresses what needs to be included in a justification and approval document (for other than full & open competition). It does not prescribe the actual format, however. The Army has developed a standardized format for its justification and approval documents. AFARS 5106.303-2-90 provides the supplemental requirement to use this format which is contained in the supplemental form AFARS 5153.9005.

D. Other Regulations.

1. Universally Applicable Regulations. Outside of the FAR, there are several miscellaneous areas (i.e. environmental, labor) related to government contracts that have extensive regulatory systems. As with statutes, the FAR normally provides a cross-reference to these other regulations.

Example: FAR Subpart 22.4 deals with labor standards for contracts that involve construction. FAR 22.403 cross-references the Department of Labor's set of regulations that it has issued to implement the Davis-Bacon Act, the Copeland Act, and the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.

2. Agency-Specific Regulations. In addition to agency supplements to the FAR, agencies will occasionally have regulations that provide guidance on procurements and acquisitions.

- a. Normally, these regulations are found on the agency's "Publication's Website." Each of the defense services and agencies (and many of the civilian agencies) has a website containing electronic copies of most of their regulations. Below is a listing of several such websites:

- (1) DOD Regulations: <http://www.dtic.mil/whs/directives/>.

- (2) Joint Publications (joint doctrine and procedures for the employment of forces in joint operations): <http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/>.

- (3) Army Regulations: <http://www.usapa.army.mil/>.

- (4) Air Force Regulations: <http://www.e-publishing.af.mil/>.

- (5) Navy Regulations: <http://doni.daps.dla.mil/default.aspx>.

- (6) Marine Corps Regulations: <http://www.usmc.mil/>.

(7) Coast Guard Regulations: <http://www.uscg.mil/directives/>.

(8) Department of the Interior Regulations:
<http://www.doi.gov/pfm/>.

- b. Search Techniques. Most publication websites allow you to perform a boolean search of the text of the regulations. The Army website above only permits a search of the titles (not the text) of the regulations. Those individuals with a JAGCNET password may conduct a search of the text of all publications contained within the JAGCNET library of publications (most DOD regulations and TJAGLCS deskbooks). JAGCNET is found at: <https://www.jagcnet.army.mil/>.

In addition, most agencies normally group their regulations by subject matter.

Example: The Army groups all regulations related to research, development, and/or acquisition into its 70 series of regulations (AR 70-1 deals with Army Acquisition Policy etc.). The Air Force breaks down its regulations a little more vigorously. All regulations related to research and development are found in the 61 series, all regulations related to acquisition are found in the 63 series, and all regulations dealing with contracting are located in the 64 series. The Department of Defense groups all regulations related to acquisition into its 4200 series (DOD Directive 4205.2 deals with acquiring advisory and assistance services).

IV. COURTS.

- A. General. Most court cases concerning government contracts are decided in the U.S. Court of Federal Claims (formerly the Court of Claims, and the U.S. Claims Court), the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, and the U.S. Supreme Court. A few contract cases have been decided in the federal district courts and numbered U.S. Courts of Appeals.
- B. United States Supreme Court.
1. Decisions are reported in the official Supreme Court Reporter (U.S.) and unofficial reporters (S. Ct. and L.Ed.2d).

2. United States Federal Claims Court Reporter (Fed. Cl.) contains procurement-related decisions of the U.S. Supreme Court resulting from appeals from the U.S. Court of Federal Claims (COFC) and the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC).
 3. Federal Court Procurement Decisions (FPD) contains procurement-related decisions of the U.S. Supreme Court resulting from appeals from the U.S. Court of Federal Claims and the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. This Reporter was discontinued in 1998. Cited in older publications.
 4. New decisions are reported and summarized in United States Law Week (U.S.L.W.).
 5. Recent opinions of the Supreme Court can also be found electronically at: <http://www.supremecourtus.gov/opinions/opinions.html>.
- C. United States Courts of Appeals. Cases are reported in West's Federal Reporter (F., F.2d, and F.3d). Of primary interest are the decisions of the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit upon appeals from the U.S. Court of Federal Claims and the boards of contract appeals. The court's contract decisions are reprinted in the FPD, Cl. Ct., Fed. Cl. and CCF. Recent CAFC opinions can be found electronically at: <http://www.cafc.uscourts.gov/>.
- D. United States District Courts. Cases are reported in West's Federal Supplement (F. Supp.) and West's Federal Supplement 2d Series (F. Supp. 2d).
- E. United States Court of Claims. Decisions of the old Court of Claims appear in the official United States Court of Claims reports (Ct. Cl.) and in West's Federal Reporter (before 1960 in West's Federal Supplement). The Federal Courts Improvement Act (FCIA) of 1982 bifurcated the Court of Claims and created the United States Claims Court and the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. 28 U.S.C. § 171 *et seq.*, §§ 1494-1497, and §§ 1499-1503.
- F. United States Court of Federal Claims. Decisions since the Court's inception in October 1982 are published in West's Claims Court Reporter (Cl. Ct.). In 1992 (Vol. 27) this publication was renamed the Federal Claims Reporter (Fed. Cl.) with the change in the court's name. Recent COFC opinions (those published since July, 1997) can be found at: <http://www.uscfc.uscourts.gov/opinions-decisions-0>.

V. BOARDS OF CONTRACT APPEALS.

A. History Behind the Boards.

1. Before 1855, government contractors had no forum in which to sue the United States. In 1855, the Congress created the Court of Claims as an Article I (legislative) court to consider claims against the United States and recommend private bills to Congress. Act of February 24, 1855, 10 Stat. 612. The service secretaries, however, continued to resolve most contract claims. As early as 1861, the Secretary of War appointed a board of three officers to consider and decide specific contract claims. See Adams v. United States, 74 U.S. 463 (1868).
2. During World War I (WWI), the War and Navy Departments established full-time BCAs to hear claims involving wartime contracts. The War Department abolished its board in 1922, but the Navy board continued in name (if not fact) until World War II (WWII). WWII again showed that boards of contract appeals were needed to resolve the massive number of wartime contract disputes. See Penker Constr. Co. v. United States, 96 Ct. Cl. 1 (1942). Thus, the War Department created a board of contract appeals, and the Navy revived its board. In 1949, the Department of Defense (DOD) merged the two boards to form the current ASBCA.
3. In 1966, the Supreme Court clarified the relationship between the Court of Claims and the agency BCAs by limiting the jurisdiction of the boards to cases “arising under” remedy granting clauses in the contract. See Utah Mining and Constr. Co. v. United States, 384 U.S. 394 (1966). The enactment of the Contract Disputes Act (CDA) in 1978 resulted in BCAs having jurisdiction equivalent to the Court of Claims.

- B. Board of Contract Appeals Decisions (BCA). Published by CCH in bound casebooks dating from 1956 (first volume is 56-2). Includes most decisions and orders of the various boards of contract appeals. One or more volumes are published annually depending on the number of decisions issued (three volumes per year since 1984). Features: alphabetical list of appellants, docket number by title of board, and topical index.

C. BCA Websites. The following board websites are also available:

1. Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA):
<http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca/>.
2. Civilian Board of Contract Appeals (CBCA):
<http://www.cbca.gsa.gov/mission.htm>.

VI. COMPTROLLER GENERAL'S DECISIONS.

A. The Budget and Accounting Act of 1921 established the GAO as an investigative arm of Congress charged with examining all matters relating to the receipt and disbursement of public funds. 31 U.S.C. § 702. The Comptroller General heads the GAO and issues legal opinions and reports to agencies concerning the availability and use of appropriated funds. The GAO entertained bid protests concomitant to this function until the Competition in Contracting Act of 1984 (CICA) was passed at which point the GAO was officially given authority to consider bid protests. DataVault Corp., B-249054, Aug. 27, 1992, 92-2 CPD 133. See also Cibinic and Lasken, The Comptroller General and Government Contracts, 38 Geo. Wash. L. Rev. 349 (1970); [FAR Subpart 33.201](#).

B. Decisions of the Comptroller General of the United States (Comp. Gen.).

1. The Government Printing Office (GPO) publishes decisions of the Comptroller General. Prior to September 30, 1994, the GPO distributed written copies of selected decision.
 - a. Separate topical indices & digests from 1894 to the present.
 - b. Contains only about 10% of total decisions issued each year.
 - c. No legal distinction between published and unpublished decisions.
2. The GPO Access website contains electronic copies of decisions from October, 1995 to the present. GPO indicates that it places new decisions onto this database within two business days after the decision has been released. The GPO Access website is located at:
<http://www.gpoaccess.gov/>.

3. The GAO website (<http://www.gao.gov/decisions/bidpro/bidpro.htm>) also contains electronic copies of decisions issued within the past 60 days. You can also subscribe to a GAO electronic alert that will issues daily notifications of the reports, decisions, and opinions that GAO has issued (sign up for this service at: <http://www.gao.gov/subscribe/>).
4. Information regarding a pending protest (file number, protester's name, agency involved, solicitation number involved, and expected date a decision is due) can also be found on the following GAO website: <http://www.gao.gov/decision/docket/>.
5. For unpublished decisions and Government Accountability Office (GAO) Reports, call the GAO at (202) 512-6000.
6. Comptroller General's Procurement Decisions (CPD). Published by West Publishing Group. Contains every decision in a loose-leaf reporter updated monthly. Also has a separate index volume with three indices: 1) B-Number Index; (2) Government Volume Index; and (3) Subject-Matter Index.

VII. JOURNALS, PERIODICALS, CITATORS AND REPORTERS.

- A. The Government Contractor (GC). Published by the West Publishing Company since January 1959. Produced weekly in loose-leaf format (three-hole punch version). Contains reports and analyses of all significant government contract decisions and rulings by the courts, boards, and Comptroller General. It also gives notice of proposed and final statutory and regulatory changes. Material is indexed by name, decision number, and subject matter. Available at: <http://west.thomson.com/productdetail/5062/15864283/productdetail.aspx?promcode=555366>.
- B. Federal Contracts Reports (Fed. Cont. Rep.). Published by the Bureau of National Affairs, Inc. (BNA) since 1964 in a weekly newsletter format. Reports on all major developments in government contracts. Provides commentary and "history" leading up to changes in law and regulation. Indexed by subject matter and contains a table of cases reported. Cumulative indices are issued each quarter and every six months. Available at: <http://www.bna.com/products/corplaw/fcr.htm>.

- C. Public Contract Law Journal (Pub. Cont. L.J.). Specializes in contract law articles. Published by Section on Public Contract Law of the ABA. Website: <http://www.pclj.org/>.
- D. The Nash & Cibinic Report (N&CR). Published monthly by West Publishing Company beginning January 1987. Provides government contract analysis by Professors Ralph C. Nash and John Cibinic. Articles cover various topics within government contract law the authors feel require more detailed commentary. A N&C Roundtable held in early December of each year is complimentary to subscribers. The Roundtable offers a discussion by guest experts of several major areas of current interest. Available at: <http://west.thomson.com/store/product.asp?product%5Fid=15864305>.
- E. Briefing Papers. Monthly issue deals with a specific area of contract law - emphasis is practical and very thorough. Published by West Publishing Company. Available at: <http://west.thomson.com/store/product.asp?product%5Fid=15864283>.
- F. Government Contracts Reporter. Comprehensive procurement legal research tool. Published by CCH and available either through the internet or a CD-ROM issued monthly. Available at: <http://onlinestore.cch.com/default.asp?SessionID=1400794&ProductID=125&WBID={4058371F-7BC7-11D7-A917-00508BE3712D}>
- G. Government Contracts Citator. Published by West Publishing Company. Updated quarterly. Arranged in two major divisions (court and agency decisions in one and comptroller general decisions in another). Each of these lists decisions and then also lists the names of any subsequent decisions that cite that particular decision. Available at: <http://west.thomson.com/store/product.asp?product%5Fid=15865557>.

- H. CCH Cost Accounting Standards Guide. Available in loose-leaf and CD-ROM format (also available at: <http://onlinestore.cch.com/default.asp?SessionID=1400794&ProductID=88&WBIID={4058371F-7BC7-11D7-A917-00508BE3712D}>). Updated monthly. Covers actions of the Cost Accounting Board, federal agencies, and Congress concerning cost accounting practices.
- I. National Contract Management Journal. Published by the National Contract Management Association (NCMA) twice each year. NCMA also publishes the Contract Management magazine on a monthly basis. Both publications typically contain a non-legal discussion of broad range of procurement and contract administration issues. Website: <http://www.ncmahq.org/>.
- J. The Army Lawyer. Contains an article devoted to recent developments in contract and fiscal law - *Contract and Fiscal Law Developments of 200X - The Year in Review* which was published in the January issue each year through 2008. Also contains Contract Law Notes published on an ad hoc basis. Available at: <https://www.jagcnet.army.mil/JAGCNETInternet/Homepages/AC/ArmyLawyer.nsf/AL?OpenForm>.

VIII. TEXTS.

- A. Note: These are both current and historical texts.
- B. Frank M. Alston, Margaret M. Worthington & Lewis P. Goldsman, Contracting with the Federal Government, published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 4th edition, 1998. Written primarily for accounting audience. Incorporates numerous FAR forms.
- C. Donald P. Arnavas and William J. Ruberry, Government Contract Guidebook, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 1st edition, 1986, 1990 supplement. Broad overview of formation and administration issues.
- D. James P. Bedingfield and Louis I. Rosen, Government Contract Accounting, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 2d edition, 1985.
- E. Richard J. Bednar, John Cibinic, Jr., Ralph C. Nash, Jr., et al., Construction Contracting, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 1991.

- F. John Cibinic, Jr. and Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Formation of Government Contracts, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 3d edition, 1998.
- G. John Cibinic, Jr. and Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Administration of Government Contracts, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 3d edition, 1995.
- H. John Cibinic, Jr. and Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Cost Reimbursement Contracting, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 2d edition, 1993.
- I. Department of Defense, Armed Services Pricing Manual (ASPM), published by the Government Printing Office in 2 volumes in 1986, 1987.
- J. John Cibinic, Jr. and Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Competitive Negotiation: The Source Selection Process, published by the George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 2d edition, 1999.
- K. DoD Defense Contract Audit Agency, DCAA Contract Audit Manual, DCAAM 7640.1, published by the Government Printing Office in 2 volumes, updated regularly. Available at: <http://www.dcaa.mil/cam.htm>.
- L. Brian C. Elmer, Jean-Pierre Swennen and Richard L. Beizer, Government Contract Fraud, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 1st edition, 1985.
- M. Government Accountability Office, Principles of Federal Appropriations Law:
 Third Edition (with annual updates)
 Vol. I, January 2004 (<http://www.gao.gov/special.pubs/d04261sp.pdf>)
 Vol. II, February 2006 (<http://www.gao.gov/special.pubs/d06382sp.pdf>)
 Second Edition
 Vol. III, November 1994 (<http://www.gao.gov/special.pubs/og94033.pdf>)
 Vol. IV, March 2001 (<http://www.gao.gov/special.pubs/d01179sp.pdf>)
 Vol. V, April 2002 (<http://www.gao.gov/special.pubs/d02271sp.pdf>)
- N. Andrew K. Gallagher, Negotiated Procurement, published by GCA Publications, Inc. in hardback with loose-leaf supplements through 1984. Outdated, but still useful.

- O. Noel Keyes, Government Contracts Under The FAR, published by West Publishing, 1986, and pocket part. Organized to coincide with the FAR's 53 parts.
- P. Peter S. Latham, Government Contract Disputes, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 2d edition, 1988, 1991 supplement.
- Q. James F. Nagle, How to Review a Federal Contract: Understanding and Researching Government Solicitations and Contracts, published by the American Bar Association, 2d edition, 2000.
- R. James F. Nagle, History of Government Contracting, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 2d edition, 1999.
- S. Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Government Contract Changes, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 2d edition, 1989.
- T. Ralph C. Nash, Jr. and Leonard Rawicz, Intellectual Property in Government Contracts, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 5th edition, 2001.
- U. Ralph C. Nash, Jr., Steven L. Schooner, and Karen R. O'Brien, The Government Contracts Reference Book: A Comprehensive Guide to the Language of Procurement, published by The George Washington University Government Contracts Program, 1998.
- V. Walter Pettit, Carl Vacketta, and David Anthony, Government Contract Default Terminations, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 1st edition, 1991.
- W. Melvin Rishe, Contract Costs, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 1st edition, 1984.
- X. William Rudland, Defective Pricing, published by Federal Contracting Press, 1990. (Update No. 4, 1995).
- Y. Seyfarth, Shaw, Fairweather & Geraldson, The Government Contract Compliance Handbook published by Federal Publications, Inc., 2d edition, 1991. Good appendices.

- Z. Paul Shnitzer, Government Contract Bidding, published by Federal Publications, Inc., 3rd edition, 1987, 1991 supplement.
- Z. John W. Whelan and James F. Nagle, Federal Government Contracts: Cases and Materials, published by Foundation Press in 2002, with supplements.
- AA. Steven W. Feldman, Government Contracts Awards: Negotiation & Sealed Bidding, published by Clark Boardman Callaghan in 1995 in three volumes, with annual supplements.

IX. REFERENCES ON CONDUCTING CONTRACT LAW RESEARCH.

- A. Patricia A. Tobin, Michelle Wu, Leslie Lee, and Ian D. Rupell, Practitioners' Research Guide: An Update To Researching Government Contracts Law On The Internet, 28 Pub. Cont. L. J. 247 (1999).
- B. Holmes and Holmes, Techniques for Researching Public Contract Law, 10 Pub. Cont. L. J. 58 (1978).

X. COMPUTER-ASSISTED LEGAL RESEARCH.

- A. LEXIS (Mead Data Central). www.lexis.com. Use: Legal: Area of Law - By Topic: Public Contracts.
- B. WESTLAW (West Publishing Company). www.westlaw.com. Use: Topical Practice Areas: Government Contracts.

- C. Federal Legal Information Through Electronics (FLITE). Managed by the US Air Force, Legal Services and Research Division; Maxwell AFB, Alabama. Covers BCA decisions, Comptroller General opinions, federal court decisions, Army regulations, and Air Force instructions. Free to Air Force and Army Attorneys. Other federal agencies must pay a fee (amount varies with size of search). However, the Legal Research Division will perform research for all DoD attorneys free of charge. Phone number: (334) 953-3008, DSN 493-3008. You can FAX your questions to the Research Division at: (334) 953-3008, DSN 493-7159. Internet access: <https://aflsa.jag.af.mil/>.
- D. JAGCNET. Operated by the Department of the Army, Office of The Judge Advocate General. Internet access: <http://www.jagcnet.army.mil>. Serves as a clearinghouse for information and questions on government contract and fiscal law; environmental law, ethics and standards of conduct; and procurement integrity, among others. Free to Department of Defense attorneys, paralegals, and enlisted legal personnel. TJAGLCS Contract and Fiscal Law Deskbooks regularly uploaded to bulletin board/database and may be downloaded by authorized users. Publications of The Judge Advocate General's School (TJAGLCS) are also available at: <https://www.jagcnet.army.mil/8525736A005BC8F9>. The TJAGLCS portion of JAGCNET is open to the general public, without registration.

XI. TRAINING.

- A. TJAGLCS. A schedule of upcoming TJAGLCS courses may be found at: <https://www.jagcnet.army.mil/8525736A005BC8F9>.
1. Contract Attorneys Course, intended for attorneys practicing contract law as their primary practice with less than two years experience in contract law. Course offered twice per year.
 2. Operational Contracting Course, intended for attorneys who have attended either a Contract Attorneys Course or the Graduate Course and who will be deploying to provide contract law support. Course offered once each spring.
 3. Fiscal Law Course, intended for anyone affecting the use of appropriated funds. Course offered twice each year at TJAGLCS, as well as distributed via satellite once each spring.

4. Advanced Contract Law Course, intended for attorneys practicing contract law for more than two years. This course explores current, advanced, and specialty areas of contract law. Course offered in March of odd-numbered years – 2009, 2011, etc);
 5. Procurement Fraud Course. Course offered in the spring of even-numbered years – 2008, 2010, etc;
 6. Advanced Contract Litigation Course. Course offered in March of even-numbered years – 2008, 2010, etc;
 7. Contract and Fiscal Law Symposium, intended for senior practitioners interested in discussing policy level issues impacting federal acquisition. This course is held the first week of December.
-
- B. Defense Acquisition University. Course info and schedule found at: <http://www.dau.mil/catalog/>.
 - C. Federal Acquisition Institute. Course info found at: <http://www.fai.gov/>.
 - D. Federal Publications. Course info and schedules found at: <http://www.fedpubseminars.com/seminar/gcplist.html>.
 - E. National Contract Management Association. Information on local chapters and training events found at: <http://www.ncmahq.org/>.
 - F. ESI, International. Course info and schedules found at: <http://www.esi-intl.com/public/contracting/governmentcontracting.asp>.
 - G. Northwest Procurement Institute: <http://www.npi-training.com/>.
 - H. Management Concepts, Inc.: <http://www.mgmtconcepts.com/acquisition/acquisition.asp>.
 - I. Business Management Research Associates: <http://www.bmra.com/catalog.htm>.

- J. Department of Agriculture Graduate School (a non-appropriated fund instrumentality of the USDA). Course info and schedules found at: <http://grad.usda.gov/>.

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--------------|-------------|
|--------------|-------------|

APPENDIX - WEBSITES

GOVERNMENT CONTRACT AND FISCAL LAW WEBSITES AND ELECTRONIC NEWSLETTERS

The first table below contains hypertext links to websites that practitioners in the government contract and fiscal law fields utilize most often. If you are viewing this document in an electronic format, you can click on the web address in the second column and open the requested website. Particularly useful websites are in **bold** type. It may be easier to access the AF secure sites through WebFLITE.

The second table on the final page below contains links to websites that allow you to subscribe to various electronic newsletters of interest to practitioners. Once you have joined one of these news lists, the list administrator will automatically forward electronic news announcements to your email address. These electronic newsletters are convenient methods of keeping informed about recent and/or upcoming changes in the field of law.

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--------------|-------------|
|--------------|-------------|

A

| | |
|---|---|
| Acquisition Network (AcqNet) | http://www.arnet.gov |
| Acquisition Review Journal (from DAU) | http://www.dau.mil/pubs/arqtoc.asp |
| AT&L Knowledge Sharing System | https://akss.dau.mil/default.aspx |
| Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System (ASSIST) | http://assist.daps.dla.mil/online/start/ |
| ACQWeb (Office of Undersecretary of Defense for Acquisition Logistics & Technology) | http://www.acq.osd.mil |
| Agency for International Development | http://www.usaid.gov/ |
| Air Force Acquisition | http://www.safaq.hq.af.mil/ |
| Air Force Alternative Dispute Resolution (ADR) Program | http://www.adr.af.mil |
| Air Force Audit Agency | https://www.afaq.hq.af.mil/domainck/index.shtml |
| Air Force Contracting | http://ww3.safaq.hq.af.mil/contracting/ |
| Air Force FAR Site | http://farsite.hill.af.mil |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--|---|
| Air Force FAR Supplement | http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfaffar1.htm |
| Air Force Materiel Command FAR Supplement | http://farsite.hill.af.mil/vfafmc1.htm |
| Air Force Materiel Command Homepage | https://www.afmc-mil.wpafb.af.mil/index.htm |
| Air Force Materiel Command Contracting Toolkit | https://www.afmc-mil.wpafb.af.mil/HQ-AFMC/PK/pkopr1.htm |
| Air Force Financial Management & Comptroller | http://www.saffm.hq.af.mil/ |
| Air Force General Counsel | http://www.safgc.hq.af.mil/ |
| Air Force Home Page | http://www.af.mil/ |
| Air Force Logistics Management Agency | http://www.aflma.hq.af.mil/ |
| Air Force Materiel Command | https://www.afmc-mil.wpafb.af.mil/ |
| Air Force Materiel Command Staff Judge Advocate | https://www.afmc-mil.wpafb.af.mil/HQ-AFMC/JA/ |
| Air Force Publications | http://www.e-publishing.af.mil/ |
| American Bar Administration (ABA) Legal Technology Resource Center | http://www.lawtechnology.org/lawlink/home.html |
| ABA Network | http://www.abanet.org/ |
| ABA Public Contract Law Journal (PCLJ) | http://www.pclj.org/ |
| ABA Public Contract Law Section | http://www.abanet.org/contract/ |
| ABA Public Contract Law Section Bid Protests Committee | http://www.abanet.org/dch/committee.cfm?com=PC402000 |
| Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals (ASBCA) | http://docs.law.gwu.edu/asbca/ |
| Army Acquisition (ASA(ALT)) | https://www.alt.army.mil/portal/page/portal/oasaalt |
| Army Acquisition Support Center | http://asc.army.mil/ |
| Army Audit Agency | http://www.hqda.army.mil/AAAWEB/ |
| Army Contracting Agency | http://aca.saalt.army.mil/ |
| Army Corps of Engineers Home Page | http://www.usace.army.mil/ |
| Army Corps of Engineers Legal Services | http://www.usace.army.mil/CECC/Pages/Home.aspx |
| Army Field Support Command Contractor on the Battlefield Library | http://www.afsc.army.mil/gc/battle2.asp |
| Army Financial Management & Comptroller | http://www.asafm.army.mil/ |
| Army General Counsel | http://www.hqda.army.mil/ogc/ |
| Army Home Page | http://www.army.mil/ |
| Army Materiel Command (AMC) | http://www.amc.army.mil/ |
| AMC Contracting Policy Vault | http://www.amc.army.mil/amc/rda/pvault.html |
| AMC Counsel | http://www.amc.army.mil/amc/command_counsel/ |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|---|---|
| AMC Logistics Web Portal | https://aeps.ria.army.mil/ |
| Army Portal | https://www.us.army.mil/appiansuite/login/login.fc?TYPE=33554433&REALMOID=06-b476a858-73dc-10a1-9a8e-832f882fff3d&GUID=&SMAUTHREASON=0&METHOD=GET&SMAGENTNAME=\$SM\$wMjEqv5sB44%2bpUfE3qs4QL2G7Q0LjAUZ221N62Zll%2bTwHPFwKZd8Wg%3d%3d&TARGET=\$SM\$http%3a%2f%2fwww%2eus%2earmy%2emil%3a81%2fsuite%2fportal%2fauthenticate%2edo |
| Army Publishing Directorate (Army Pubs) | http://www.usapa.army.mil |
| Army Single Face to Industry (ASFI) | https://acquisition.army.mil/asfi/ |

B

| | |
|--|---|
| Boards of Contract Appeals Bar Association | http://www.bcaba.org/ |
| Budget of the United States | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/ |

C

| | |
|---|---|
| Central Contractor Registration (CCR) | http://www.ccr.gov/ |
| Civilian Board of Contract Appeals | http://www.cbca.gsa.gov/mission.htm |
| Coast Guard Home Page | http://www.uscg.mil |
| Code of Federal Regulations | http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/cfr-table-search.html |
| Electronic Code of Federal Regulations (eCFR) | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/ecfr |
| Comptroller General | http://www.gao.gov/index.html |
| Comptroller General Bid Protest Decisions | http://www.gao.gov/decisions/bidpro/bidpro.htm |
| Comptroller General Decisions via GPO Access | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/gaodecisions/index.html |
| Comptroller General Legal Products | http://www.gao.gov/legal.htm |
| Comptroller General Principles of Federal Appropriations Law | http://www.gao.gov/legal/redbook.html |
| Congressional Bills | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/bills/index.html |
| Congressional Documents | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/legislative.html |
| Congressional Documents via Thomas | http://thomas.loc.gov/ |
| Congressional Record | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/crecord/index.html |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|---|---|
| Contingency Contracting (Army AMC) | http://www.amc.army.mil/amc/rda/rda-ac/ck/ck-source.htm |
| Contract Pricing Reference Guides | http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/cpf/contract_pricing_reference_guides.html |
| Contract Review Checklist (AF Electronic Systems Command – Secure Site) | https://www.my.af.mil/gcss-af/USAF/ep/browse.do?categoryId=-951901&parentCategoryId=-64698&channelPageId=-64679 |
| Cornell University Law School (extensive list of links to legal research sites) | www.law.cornell.edu |
| Cost Accounting Standards (CAS – found in the Appendix to the FAR) | http://farsite.hill.af.mil/reghtml/regs/far2afmcfars/fardfars/far/farapndx1.htm |
| Cost Accounting Standards Board (CASB) (Currently unavailable due to change in administration – January 2009) | http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/procurement/casb.html |
| Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC) | http://www.cafc.uscourts.gov/ |
| Court of Federal Claims (COFC) | http://www.uscfc.uscourts.gov/ |

D

| | |
|--|---|
| Davis Bacon Wage Determinations | http://www.gpo.gov/davisbacon/ |
| Debarred List (known as the Excluded Parties Listing System) | http://epls.arnet.gov |
| Defense Acquisition Guidebook | http://akss.dau.mil/dag/ |
| Defense Acquisition Regulations Systems Directorate (the DAR Council) | http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/dars/index.htm |
| Defense Acquisition University (DAU) | http://www.dau.mil/ |
| Defense Installation & Environment | http://www.acq.osd.mil/ie/ |
| Defense Comptroller | http://www.dtic.mil/comptroller/ |
| Defense Contract Audit Agency (DCAA) | http://www.dcaa.mil/ |
| Defense Contract Management Agency (DCMA) | http://www.dcm.mil/ |
| Defense Procurement and Acquisition Policy (DPAP) Electronic Business | http://www.acq.osd.mil/scst/index.htm |
| Defense Finance and Accounting Service (DFAS) | http://www.dod.mil/dfas/ |
| DFAS Electronic Commerce Home Page | http://www.dfas.mil/contractorpay/electroniccommerce.html |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--|---|
| Defense Logistics Agency (DLA) Home Page | http://www.dla.mil/default.aspx |
| Defense Procurement and Acquisition Policy (DPAP) | http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/ |
| Defense Standardization Program | http://dsp.dla.mil/ |
| Defense Technical Information Center | http://www.dtic.mil |
| Department of Commerce, Office of General Counsel, Contract Law Division | http://www.ogc.doc.gov/ogc/contracts/cld/cld.html#ContractLaw |
| Department of Energy Acquisition Guide | http://management.energy.gov/policy_guidance/Acquisition_Guide.htm |
| Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation | http://management.energy.gov/DEAR.htm |
| Department of the Interior Acquisition Regulation | http://www.doi.gov/pam/aindex.html |
| Department of Justice | http://www.usdoj.gov |
| Department of Justice Legal Opinions | http://www.usdoj.gov/olc/opinionspage.htm |
| Department of Labor Acquisition Regulation | http://www.dol.gov/dol/allcfr/OASAM/Title_48/Part_2901/toc.htm |
| Department of State Acquisition Regulation | http://www.statebuy.state.gov/dosar/dosartoc.htm |
| Department of Transportation Acquisition Regulation | http://www.dot.gov/ost/m60/tamtar/tar.htm |
| Department of Transportation Acquisition Manual | http://www.dot.gov/ost/m60/earl/tam.htm |
| Department of Veterans Affairs | http://www.va.gov |
| Department of Veterans Affairs Board of Contract Appeals | http://www1.va.gov/bca/ |
| DOD E-Mall | https://emall6.prod.dodonline.net/main/welcome_to_DOD_EMALL.jsp |
| DOD Financial Management Regulations | http://www.dtic.mil/comptroller/fmr/ |
| DOD General Counsel | http://www.defenselink.mil/dodgc/ |
| DOD Home Page | http://www.defenselink.mil |
| DOD Inspector General (Audit Reports) | http://www.dodig.osd.mil |
| DOD Instructions and Directives | http://www.dtic.mil/whs/directives/ |
| DOD Purchase Card Program | http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/pdi/pc/policy_documents.html |
| DoD Single Stock Point for Military Specifications, Standards and Related Publications | http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil/ |
| DOD Standards of Conduct Office (SOCO) | http://www.defenselink.mil/dodgc/defense_ethics/ |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--------------|-------------|
|--------------|-------------|

E

| | |
|---|---|
| ESI, International (training in government contracts) | http://www.esi-intl.com/public/contracting/governmentcontracting.asp |
| Excluded Parties Listing System | http://epls.arnet.gov |
| Executive Orders | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/wcomp/index.html |
| Executive Orders (alternate site) | http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/executive_orders/disposition_tables.html |
| Export Administration Regulations | http://www.gpo.gov/bis/index.html |

F

| | |
|--|---|
| FAR Site (Air Force) | http://farsite.hill.af.mil |
| FAR – GSA Alternate Site | http://www.arnet.gov/far/ |
| Federal Acquisition Institute (FAI) | http://www.fai.gov/ |
| Federal Business Opportunities (FedBizOpps) | http://www.fedbizopps.gov/ |
| Federal Legal Information Through Electronics (FLITE) (AF WebFLITE) | https://aflsa.jag.af.mil/php/dlaw/dlaw.php (registration required) |
| Federal Marketplace | http://www.fedmarket.com/ |
| Federal Prison Industries, Inc (UNICOR) | http://www.unicor.gov/ |
| Federal Procurement Data System | https://www.fpds.gov/ |
| Federal Publications | http://www.fedpubseminars.com/seminar/gcplist.html |
| Federal Register via GPO Access | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/fr/index.html |
| Federally Funded R&D Centers (FFRDC) | http://www.nsf.gov/sbe/srs/nsf99334/start.htm |
| Financial Management Regulations | http://www.dod.mil/comptroller/fmr/ |
| FindLaw | http://www.findlaw.com |
| FirstGov | http://www.usa.gov/ |

G

| | |
|---|---|
| Government Accountability Office (GAO) Appropriations Decisions | http://www.gao.gov/decisions/appro/appro.htm |
| GAO Comptroller General Bid Protest Decisions | http://www.gao.gov/decisions/bidpro/bidpro.htm |
| GAO Comptroller General Decisions via GPO Access | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/gaodecisions/index.html |
| GAO Comptroller General Legal Products | http://www.gao.gov/legal.htm |
| GAO Home Page | http://www.gao.gov |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--|---|
| General Services Administration (GSA) Acquisition Manual | http://www.arnet.gov/GSAM/gsam.html |
| GSA Advantage | http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/contentView.do?contentType=GSA_OVERVIEW&contentId=11887 |
| GSA Federal Supply Service (FSS) | http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/contentView.do?contentId=10322&contentType=GSA_BASIC |
| GovCon (Government Contracting Industry) | http://www.govcon.com/content/homepage |
| Government Online Learning Center | http://www.golearn.gov/ |
| Government Printing Office (GPO) Access | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/index.html |

J

| | |
|---|---|
| JAGCNET (Army JAG Corps Homepage) | http://www.jagcnet.army.mil/ |
| TJAGLCS Homepage | http://www.jagcnet.army.mil/TJAGLCS |
| Javits-Wagner-O'Day Act (JWOD) | http://www.jwod.gov/jwod/index.html |
| Joint Electronic Library (Joint Publications) | http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/index.htm |
| Joint Travel Regulations (JFTR/JTR) | http://perdiem.hqda.pentagon.mil/perdiem/ |

L

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Library of Congress | http://lcweb.loc.gov |
|---------------------|---|

M

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Marine Corps Home Page | http://www.usmc.mil |
| MEGALAW | http://www.megalaw.com |
| MWR Home Page (Army) | http://www.ArmyMWR.com |

N

| | |
|--|---|
| NAF Financial (Army) | http://www.asafm.army.mil/fo/fod/naf/naf.asp |
| National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) Acquisition | http://prod.nais.nasa.gov/cgi-bin/nais/index.cgi |
| National Contract Management Association | http://www.ncmahq.org/ |
| National Industries for the Blind (NIB) | www.nib.org |
| National Industries for the Severely | www.nish.org/ |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|---|---|
| Handicapped (NISH) | |
| National Partnership for Reinventing Government (aka National Performance Review or NPR). Note: the library is now closed & only maintained in archive. | http://govinfo.library.unt.edu/npr/index.htm |
| Naval Supply Systems Command (NAVSUP) | https://www.navsup.navy.mil/navsup |
| Navy Acquisition One Source | http://acquisition.navy.mil/rda/home/acquisition_one_source |
| Navy Electronic Commerce On-line | https://www.neco.navy.mil/ |
| Navy Financial Management and Comptroller | http://www.fmo.navy.mil/policies/regulations.htm |
| Navy General Counsel | http://www.ogc.navy.mil/ |
| Navy Home Page | http://www.navy.mil |
| Navy Directives and Regulations | http://doni.daps.dla.mil/default.aspx |
| Navy Research, Development and Acquisition | http://www.acquisition.navy.mil/ |
| North American Industry Classification System (formerly the Standard Industry Code) | http://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html |

O

| | |
|---|---|
| Office of Acquisition Policy within GSA | http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/channelView.do?pageTypeId=8203&channelPage=/ep/channel/gsaOverview.jsp&channelId=-13069 |
| Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP) Best Practices Guides | http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/omb/management/procurement_index_guides/ |
| Office of Government Ethics (OGE) | http://www.usoge.gov |
| Office of Management and Budget (OMB) | http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/ |

P

| | |
|---|---|
| Per Diem Rates (GSA) | http://www.gsa.gov/Portal/gsa/ep/channelView.do?pageTypeId=8203&channelId=-15943 |
| Per Diem Rates (DoD) | http://perdiem.hqda.pentagon.mil/perdiem/ |
| Producer Price Index | http://www.bls.gov/ppi/ |
| Program Manager (a periodical from DAU) | http://www.dau.mil/pubs/pmtoc.asp |
| Public Contract Law Journal | http://www.pclj.org/ |
| Public Papers of the President of the | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/pubpapers/search.html |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--------------|-------------|
|--------------|-------------|

| | |
|--|---|
| United States Purchase Card Program | http://www.acq.osd.mil/dpap/pdi/pc/policy_documents.html |
|--|---|

R

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Rand Reports and Publications | http://www.rand.org/publications/ |
|-------------------------------|---|

S

| | |
|---|---|
| Service Contract Act Directory of Occupations | http://www.dol.gov/esa/whd/regs/compliance/wage/SCADirV5/SCADirectVers5.pdf |
| Share A-76 (DOD site) | http://sharea76.fedworx.org/sharea76/Home.aspx |
| Small Business Administration (SBA) | http://www.sba.gov/ |
| Small Business Administration (SBA) Government Contracting Home Page | http://www.sba.gov/GC/ |
| Small Business Innovative Research (SBIR) | http://www.acq.osd.mil/sadbu/sbir/ |
| Standard Industry Code (now called the North American Industry Classification System) | http://www.osha.gov/oshstats/sicser.html |
| Steve Schooner's homepage | http://www.law.gwu.edu/Faculty/profile.aspx?id=1740 |

T

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Travel Regulations | http://perdiem.hqda.pentagon.mil/perdiem/trvregs.html |
|--------------------|---|

U

| | |
|---|---|
| U.S. Business Advisor (sponsored by SBA) | http://www.business.gov |
| U.S. Code | http://uscode.house.gov/ |
| U.S. Code | http://www.gpoaccess.gov/uscode/index.html |
| U.S. Congress on the Net | http://thomas.loc.gov |
| U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (CAFC) | http://www.cafc.uscourts.gov/ |
| U.S. Court of Federal Claims | http://www.uscfc.uscourts.gov/ |
| U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Graduate School | http://grad.usda.gov/ |
| UNICOR (Federal Prison Industries, Inc.) | http://www.unicor.gov/ |

| Website Name | Web Address |
|--------------|-------------|
|--------------|-------------|

W

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Wage Determination On-Line | http://www.wdol.gov/ |
| Where in Federal Contracting? | http://www.wifcon.com/ |
| | |
| | |

| Newsletter Name | Web Address to Subscribe |
|---|---|
| Army Material Command (AMC) Updates (see subscribe link bottom of website) | http://www.amc.army.mil/amc/rda/pvault.html |
| Defense and Security Publications via GPO Access | http://listserv.access.gpo.gov/scripts/wa.exe?SUBED1=gpo-defpubs-l&A=1 |
| Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (DFARS) News | http://www.acq.osd.mil/mailman/listinfo/dar/ |
| Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) News | http://www.arnet.gov/far/mailframe.html |
| Federal Register via GPO Access | http://listserv.access.gpo.gov/scripts/wa.exe?SUBED1=fedregtoc-l&A=1 |
| Government Accountability Office (GAO) Reports Testimony, and/or Decisions | http://www.gao.gov/subtest/subscribe.html |
| GovTrack.us (Legislation Web-site) | http://www.govtrack.us/ |
| GPO Listserv | http://listserv.access.gpo.gov/ |
| GSA Listserv | http://listserv.gsa.gov/archives/index.html |

Appendix A
**Alphabetical Listing of
Contract Abbreviations**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

APPENDIX A

ALPHABETICAL LISTING OF CONTRACT & FISCAL ABBREVIATIONS

A

| | |
|---------------|---|
| AAA..... | U.S. Army Audit Agency |
| ACAB..... | Army Contract Adjustment Board |
| ACA..... | Army Contracting Agency |
| ACO..... | Administrative Contracting Officer |
| ACSA..... | Acquisition and Cross Servicing Agreement |
| ADA..... | Anti-Deficiency Act |
| ADPE..... | Automatic Data Processing Equipment |
| ADR..... | Alternative Dispute Resolution |
| AECA..... | Arms Export Control Act |
| AFARS..... | Army Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement |
| AFFARS..... | Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement |
| AGBCA..... | Department of Agriculture Board of Contract Appeals |
| AL..... | Acquisition Letter |
| ANA..... | Afghan National Army |
| APF..... | Appropriated Funds |
| AP Plan..... | Advance Procurement Plan |
| AR..... | Army Regulation |
| ASA(ALT)..... | Assistant Secretary of the Army for Acquisition, Logistics and Technology |
| ASBCA..... | Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals |
| ASPA..... | Armed Services Procurement Act of 1947 |
| ASPM..... | Armed Services Pricing Manual |
| ASPR..... | Armed Services Procurement Regulation (replaced by the DAR) |
| ASSF..... | Afghan Security Forces Fund |

B

| | |
|----------|--|
| BAA..... | Buy American Act <u>or</u> Broad Agency Announcement |
| BCA..... | Board of Contract Appeals |
| BCM..... | Business Clearance Memorandum |
| BOA..... | Basic Ordering Agreement |
| BPA..... | Blanket Purchase Agreement |
| BPD..... | Board of Contract Appeals Bid Protest Decisions |

C

| | |
|--------------|---|
| CAP..... | Commercial Activities Program |
| CAFC..... | U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit |
| CAS..... | Cost Accounting Standards |
| CBA..... | Collective Bargaining Agreement |
| CBCA..... | Civilian Board of Contract Appeals |
| CCCI..... | Central Criminal Court of Iraq |
| CCH..... | Commerce Clearing House |
| CCIF..... | Combatant Commander's Initiative Fund |
| CDA..... | Contract Disputes Act of 1978 |
| CERP..... | Commander's Emergency Response Program |
| CFR..... | Code of Federal Regulations |
| CICA..... | Competition in Contracting Act |
| CKO..... | Contingency Contracting Officer |
| CLEAs..... | Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies |
| CN..... | Congressional Notification |
| CO..... | Contracting Officer |
| COC..... | Certificate of Competency |
| COFC..... | U.S. Court of Federal Claims (formerly U.S. Claims Court) |
| COR..... | Contracting Officer's Representative |
| COTR..... | Contracting Officer's Technical Representative |
| CPA..... | Coalition Provisional Authority |
| CPAF..... | Cost-Plus-Award-Fee |
| CPD..... | Comptroller General's Procurement Decisions |
| CPFF..... | Cost-Plus-Fixed-Fee |
| CPIF..... | Cost-Plus-Incentive-Fee |
| CPPC..... | Cost-Plus-A-Percentage-of-Cost |
| CQB/CQC..... | Close Quarter Battle/Close Quarter Combat Training |
| CRA..... | Continuing Resolution Act |
| CWAS..... | Contractor Weighted Average Share |
| CWAS-NA..... | Contractor Weighted Average Share - Not Applicable |
| CWHASSA..... | Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act |

D

| | |
|--------------|--|
| DA..... | Department of the Army |
| DAC..... | Defense Acquisition Circular |
| DA Form..... | Department of the Army Form |
| DAR..... | Defense Acquisition Regulation (replaced by the FAR) |
| DARC..... | Defense Acquisition Regulatory Council |
| DCCEP..... | Developing County Exercise Program |
| DBA..... | Davis-Bacon Act; Defense Base Act |
| DCA..... | Defense Communications Agency |

DCAA Defense Contract Audit Agency
DCMAO..... Defense Contract Management Office
DCMA..... Defense Contract Management Agency (formerly DCMC)
DCMCR Defense Contract Management Command Region
DCO Defense Coordinating Officer (DOMOPS)
DEAR..... Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation
DFARS..... Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement
DFAS Defense Finance and Accounting Service
D&F Determinations and Findings
DLA Defense Logistics Agency
DLAAR..... Defense Logistics Agency Acquisition Regulation
DOD Department of Defense
DOE Department of Energy
DOI Department of Interior
DOL Department of Labor
DOMOPS Domestic Operations
DOT Department of Transportation
DOT CAB Department of Transportation Contract Appeals Board
DPA..... Delegation of Procurement Authority
DPC..... Defense Procurement Circular (replaced by the DAC)
DPRO Defense Plant Representative's Office
DSCA Defense Security Cooperation Agency

E

EAJA..... Equal Access to Justice Act
EBCA..... Department of Energy Board of Contract Appeals
EDA Excess Defense Articles
EEE Emergency and Extraordinary Expenses (“triple-e”)
EEO..... Equal Employment Opportunity
ESF..... Emergency Support Functions (DOMOPS)
ENG BCA U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Board of Contract Appeals
E.O. Executive Order
8(a) Section 8(a) of the Small Business Act

F

FAA..... Foreign Assistance Act
FAC..... Federal Acquisition Circular
FAR..... Federal Acquisition Regulation
FARA..... The Federal Acquisition Reform Act of 1996
FASA The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994
FCAA The Federal Courts Administration Act of 1992
FCIA The Federal Courts Improvement Act of 1982

FCO..... Federal Coordinating Officer (DOMOPS)
 FFP..... Firm-Fixed-Price
 FIPR..... Federal Information Processing Resources
 FIRMR..... Federal Information Resource Management Regulation
 FLSA..... Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938
 FMFP..... Foreign Military Financing Program
 FMR..... Financial Management Regulation (DoD 7000.14-R)
 FMS..... Foreign Military Sales
 FOAA..... Foreign Operations Appropriations Act
 FP/EPA..... Fixed Price Contract with Economic Price Adjustment
 FPASA..... Federal Property and Administrative Services Act
 FPD..... Federal Court Procurement Decisions
 FPI..... Federal Prison Industries (AKA UNICOR); or Fixed Price Incentive Contract
 FPR..... Federal Procurement Regulation (now FAR); Final Proposal Revision
 FSS..... Federal Supply Schedule
 FUSMO..... Funding U.S. Military Operations
 FY..... Fiscal Year

G

GAO..... Government Accountability Office
 GBL..... Government Bill of Lading
 G&A..... General and Administrative Costs
 GFE..... Government Furnished Equipment
 GFM..... Government Furnished Material
 GFP..... Government Furnished Property
 GOCO..... Government-Owned, Contractor-Operated
 GOGO..... Government-Owned, Government-Operated
 GPE..... Government-wide Point of Entry
 GPO..... Government Printing Office
 GSA..... General Services Administration
 GSAR..... General Services Administration Acquisition Regulation
 GSBCA..... General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals
 GWAC..... Government-Wide Agency Contract

H

HA (or HAO)..... Humanitarian Assistance (Other) (10 USC § 2561)
 HCA..... Humanitarian and Civic Assistance (10 USC § 401)
 HCA..... Head of Contracting Activity
 HIDTA..... High Intensity Drug Trafficking Area
 HUD BCA..... Department of Housing and Urban Development Board of
 Contract Appeals

I

| | |
|------------|--|
| IAW..... | Inspection, Acceptance & Warranty |
| IBCA..... | Department of Interior Board of Contract Appeals |
| ICC..... | International Criminal Court |
| ID/IQ..... | Indefinite Demand, Indefinite Quantity |
| IFB | Invitation for Bids |
| IFF..... | Iraq Freedom Fund |
| IGA..... | Intra-governmental Acquisitions |
| IGO | International Governmental Organization |
| IL&FM..... | Installation, Logistics and Financial Management |
| IMET..... | International Military Education and Training |
| IMPAC..... | International Merchant Purchase Authorization Card |
| IP..... | Iraqi Police |
| IRRF..... | Iraq Relief and Reconstruction Fund |
| ISF..... | Iraq Security Forces |
| ISSF..... | Iraq Security Forces Fund |
| IRT | Innovative Readiness Training |
| ITMRA..... | The Information Technology Management and Reform Act of 1996 |

J

| | |
|--------------|--|
| J&A..... | Justification and Approval |
| JA | Judge Advocate |
| JAGC..... | Judge Advocate General's Corps |
| JCC-I/A..... | Joint Contracting Command – Iraq/Afghanistan |
| JDOMS | Joint Director of Military Support (DOMOPS) |
| JWOD..... | Javits-Wagner-O'Day Act |

K

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| K..... | Contract |
| KO..... | Contracting Officer |
| Kr, or Kor..... | Contractor |

L

| | |
|------------|---|
| LBCA..... | Department of Labor Board of Contract Appeals |
| LOE..... | Level of Effort |
| LPTA..... | Lowest Price Technically Acceptable |
| LSSS | Logistic Supplies Support and Services |
| L&S..... | Lift and Sustain |

M

MA Mission Assignment (DOMOPS)
MAST Military Assistance to Safety and Traffic (DOMOPS)
MILCON..... Military Construction
MIPR..... Military Interdepartmental Purchase Request
MCA Military Construction Appropriation Act
MMCA..... Minor Military Construction, Army
MNC-I..... Multinational Corps - Iraq
MNF-I Multinational Forces - Iraq
MNSTC-I..... Multinational Security Transition Command - Iraq
MOUT..... Military Operations in Urban Terrain Training

N

NAF..... Nonappropriated Fund
NAFI Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentality
NAFTA North American Free Trade Agreement
NASA..... National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NASA BCA National Aeronautics and Space Administration Board
of Contracts Appeals (dissolved in 1993 and merged with ASBCA)
NCD Navy Contract Directives
NDAA..... National Defense Authorization Act (generally)
NMCARS..... Navy Marine Corps Acquisition Regulation Supplement
NIB/NISH..... National Industries for the Blind/National Industries for the Severely Disabled
NSN..... National Stock Number

O

OASD..... Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense
OCOTF Overseas Contingency Operations Transfer Fund
OFCC Office of Federal Contract Compliance
OFDA..... Office for Foreign Disaster Assistance
OFPP..... Office of Federal Procurement Policy
OHDACA Overseas Humanitarian, Disaster and Civic Assistance (Appropriation)
O&M..... Operation & Maintenance
OMA Operation & Maintenance, Army
OPA..... Other Procurement, Army
ORHA Office of Reconstruction and Humanitarian Assistance
OSD..... Office of the Secretary of Defense

P

PARC Principal Assistant Responsible for Contracting
PCO..... Procuring Contracting Officer
PDD..... Presidential Decision Directive
PIL..... Procurement Information Letter (replaced by AL)
POTUS..... President of the United States
PR&C..... Purchase Request and Commitment
PSBCA..... U.S. Postal Service Boards of Contract Appeals
PWD..... Procurement Work Directive
PWS Performance Work Statement

Q

QPL Qualified Products List

R

R&D..... Research and Development
RD&A..... Research, Development and Acquisition
RDT&E..... Research, Development, Test, and Evaluation
RFP Request for Proposals
RFQ..... Request for Quotations
RS..... Revised Statutes
Rule 4 File (R4) . Administrative Record Required by Rule Four of the Procedures of the
Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals. *See DFARS, App A.*

S

SAP Simplified Acquisition Procedures
SBA..... Small Business Administration
SBP Small Business Programs Office
SCA..... McNamara-O'Hara Service Contract Act of 1965
SDB..... Small Disadvantaged Business
SOW..... Statement of Work (now referred to as a PWS)
SSA Source Selection Authority
SSAC..... Source Selection Advisory Council
SSEB Source Selection Evaluation Board
SSP.....Source Selection Plan

T

T&M.....Time-and-Materials Contract
TAA Trade Agreements Act
TALF..... Trial Attorney Litigation File
TAR..... Department of Transportation Acquisition Regulation
TCO..... Termination Contracting Officer
T for C..... Termination for Convenience (usually written T4C or T/C)
T for D..... Termination for Default (usually written T4D or T/D)
T&E..... Train and Equip
TINA Truth in Negotiations Act

U

UCA.....Undefinitized Contract Action, or letter contract
UMMIPS..... Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System
UNICOR..... A priority source under FAR Part 8; aka Federal Prison Industries (FPI)
UNPA..... United Nations Participation Act
USAID US Agency for International Development
USAREUR..... U.S. Army, Europe
USD (A&T) Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition & Technology

V

VABCA..... Department of Veterans Affairs Board of Contract Appeals
VACAB..... Department of Veterans Affairs Contract Appeals Board

W

WHA Walsh-Healey Act
WRD Wage Rate Determination

Appendix B
**FAR CASE 2008-24,
Inflation Adjustment of
Acquisition-Related
Thresholds**



2011 Contract Attorneys Deskbook

• ~~*Fax:* Comments may be faxed to 202-566-0272; Attention Docket ID No. EPA-HQ-SFUND-2009-0834.~~

• ~~*Mail:* Send your comments to the Identification of Additional Classes of Facilities for Development of Financial Responsibility Requirements under CERCLA Section 108(b) Docket, Attention Docket ID No., EPA-HQ-SFUND-2009-0834, Environmental Protection Agency, Mailcode: 5305T, 1200 Pennsylvania Ave., NW., Washington, DC 20460. Please include a total of two copies.~~

• ~~*Hand-Delivery:* Deliver two copies of your comments to the Identification of Additional Classes of Facilities for Development of Financial Responsibility Requirements under CERCLA Section 108(b) Docket, Attention Docket ID No., EPA-HQ-SFUND-2009-0834, EPA/DC, EPA West, Room 3334, 1301 Constitution Ave., NW., Washington, DC 20460. Such deliveries are only accepted during the Docket's normal hours of operation, and special arrangements should be made for deliveries of boxed information.~~

~~*Instructions:* Direct your comments to Docket ID No. EPA-HQ-SFUND-2009-0834. EPA's policy is that all comments received will be included in the public docket without change and may be made available online at <http://www.regulations.gov>, including any personal information provided, unless the comment includes information claimed to be confidential business information (CBI) or other information whose disclosure is restricted by statute. Do not submit information that you consider to be CBI or otherwise protected through <http://www.regulations.gov> or e-mail. The <http://www.regulations.gov> Web site is an "anonymous access" system, which means EPA will not know your identity or contact information unless you provide it in the body of your comment. If you send an e-mail comment directly to EPA without going through <http://www.regulations.gov>, your e-mail address will be automatically captured and included as part of the comment that is placed in the public docket and made available on the Internet. If you submit an electronic comment, EPA recommends that you include your name and other contact information in the body of your comment and with any disk or CD-ROM you submit. If EPA cannot read your comment due to technical difficulties and cannot contact you for clarification, EPA may not be able to consider your comment. Electronic files should avoid the use of special characters, any form of encryption, and be free of any defects or viruses. For additional information~~

about EPA's public docket, visit the EPA Docket Center homepage at <http://www.epa.gov/epahome/dockets.htm>.

~~*Docket:* All documents in the docket are listed in the <http://www.regulations.gov> index. Although listed in the index, some information is not publicly available, e.g., CBI or other information whose disclosure is restricted by statute. Certain other material, such as copyrighted material, will be publicly available only in hard copy. Publicly available docket materials are available either electronically in <http://www.regulations.gov> or in hard copy at the Identification of Additional Classes of Facilities for Development of Financial Responsibility Requirements under CERCLA Section 108(b) Docket, Docket ID No. EPA-HQ-SFUND-2009-0834, EPA/DC, EPA West, Room 3334, 1301 Constitution Ave., NW., Washington, DC 20460. This Docket Facility is open from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, excluding legal holidays. The Docket telephone number is (202) 566-0276. The Public Reading Room is open from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, excluding legal holidays. The telephone number for the Public Reading Room is (202) 566-1744.~~

~~**FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:** For more information on this notice, contact Ben Lesser, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Resource Conservation and Recovery, Mail Code 5302P, 1200 Pennsylvania Ave., NW., Washington, DC 20460; telephone (703) 308-0314; or (e-mail) lesser.ben@epa.gov; or Barbara Foster, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Resource Conservation and Recovery, Mail Code 5303P, 1200 Pennsylvania Ave., NW., Washington, DC 20460; telephone (703) 308-7057; or (e-mail) foster.barbara@epa.gov.~~

~~**SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:** On January 6, 2010, the Agency published in the *Federal Register* (75 FR 816) an Advance Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (ANPRM) that identified the classes of facilities within three industries—the Chemical Manufacturing industry (NAICS 325), the Petroleum and Coal Products Manufacturing industry (NAICS 324), and the Electric Power Generation, Transmission, and Distribution industry (NAICS 2211)—as those for which the Agency plans to develop, as necessary, proposed regulations identifying appropriate financial responsibility requirements under section 108(b) of the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA). In addition, the Agency~~

~~identified the Waste Management and Remediation Services industry (NAICS 562), the Wood Product Manufacturing industry (NAICS 321), the Fabricated Metal Product Manufacturing industry (NAICS 332), the Electronics and Electrical Equipment Manufacturing industry (NAICS 334 and 335), as well as facilities engaged in the recycling of materials containing CERCLA hazardous substances as requiring further study before EPA decides whether to begin the regulatory development process.~~

~~Following publication of the ANPRM, several members of the public requested that the Agency extend the comment period. The Agency received extension requests for 30 days, 45 days, and 60 days. In response to these requests, the Agency is extending the comment period for 60 days, until April 6, 2010. Members of the public also will be able to provide additional comments to EPA~~

FAR CASE 2008-024, INFLATION ADJUSTMENT OF ACQUISITION- RELATED THRESHOLDS

**GENERAL SERVICES
ADMINISTRATION**

**NATIONAL AERONAUTICS AND
SPACE ADMINISTRATION**

**48 CFR Parts 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 13,
15, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 28, 32, 36, 42, 43,
50, and 52**

**[FAR Case 2008-024; Docket 2010-0079,
Sequence 1]**

RIN 9000-AL51

**Federal Acquisition Regulation; FAR
Case 2008-024, Inflation Adjustment of
Acquisition-Related Thresholds**

AGENCIES: Department of Defense (DoD),
General Services Administration (GSA),
and National Aeronautics and Space
Administration (NASA).

ACTION: Proposed rule.

SUMMARY: The Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) are proposing to amend the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) to implement Section 807 of the Ronald W. Reagan National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2005. The Act requires an adjustment every 5 years of acquisition-related thresholds for inflation using the Consumer Price Index for all urban consumers, except for Davis-Bacon Act, Service Contract Act, and trade agreements thresholds. The Councils are also proposing to use the same methodology to change nonstatutory FAR acquisition-related thresholds for adjustment in 2010.

DATES: Interested parties should submit written comments to the Regulatory Secretariat on or before April 5, 2010 to be considered in the formulation of a final rule.

ADDRESSES: Submit comments identified by FAR case 2008–024 by any of the following methods:

- *Regulations.gov:* <http://www.regulations.gov>. Submit comments via the Federal eRulemaking portal by inputting “FAR Case 2008–024” under the heading “Comment or Submission.” Select the link “Send a Comment or Submission” that corresponds with FAR Case 2008–024. Follow the instructions provided to complete the “Public Comment and Submission Form.” Please include your name, company name (if any), and “FAR Case 2008–024” on your attached document.

- *Fax:* 202–501–4067.

- *Mail:* General Services Administration, Regulatory Secretariat (MVPR), 1800 F Street, NW., Room 4041, ATTN: Hada Flowers, Washington, DC 20405.

Instructions: Please submit comments only and cite FAR case 2008–024 in all correspondence related to this case. All comments received will be posted without change to <http://www.regulations.gov>, including any personal and/or business confidential information provided.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Mr. Michael Jackson, Procurement Analyst, at (202) 208–4949 for clarification of content. For information pertaining to status or publication schedules, contact the Regulatory Secretariat at (202) 501–4755. Please cite FAR case 2008–024.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

A. Background

This rule proposes to amend multiple FAR parts to implement Section 807 of the Ronald W. Reagan National Defense

Authorization Act for Fiscal Year (FY) 2005 (Pub. L. 108–375). Section 807 requires an adjustment every 5 years (in years evenly divisible by 5) of acquisition-related thresholds for inflation using the Consumer Price Index for all urban consumers, except for Davis-Bacon Act, Service Contract Act, and trade agreements thresholds (see FAR 1.109). The Councils are also proposing to use the same methodology to change nonstatutory FAR acquisition-related thresholds for adjustment in 2010.

This is the second review of FAR acquisition-related thresholds. The last review was conducted under FAR case 2004–033 during FY 2005. The final rule was published in the **Federal Register** on September 28, 2006 (71 FR 57363).

B. Analysis

1. What is an acquisition-related threshold?

This case builds on the review of FAR thresholds in FY 2005 and uses the same interpretation of the statutory definition of acquisition-related threshold. The statute defines an acquisition-related dollar threshold as a dollar threshold that is specified *in law* as a factor in defining the scope of the applicability of a policy, procedure, requirement, or restriction provided *in that law* to the procurement of property or services by an executive agency, as determined by the FAR Council.

There are other thresholds in the FAR that, while not meeting this statutory definition of “acquisition-related,” nevertheless meet all the other criteria. These thresholds may have their origin in executive order or regulation.

Therefore, as used in this case, an acquisition-related threshold is a threshold that is specified *in law, executive order, or regulation* as a factor in defining the scope of the applicability of a policy, procedure, requirement, or restriction provided *in that law, executive order, or regulation* to the procurement of property or services by an executive agency, as determined by the FAR Council. The Councils conclude from this definition that acquisition-related thresholds are generally tied to the value of a contract, subcontract, or modification.

Examples of thresholds that are not viewed as “acquisition-related” as defined in this case are thresholds relating to claims, penalties, withholding, payments, required levels of insurance, small business size standards, liquidated damages, *etc.* This report does not address thresholds that are not acquisition-related.

2. What acquisition-related thresholds are not subject to escalation adjustment under this case?

The statute does not permit escalation of acquisition-related thresholds established by the Davis-Bacon Act, the Service Contract Act, or the United States Trade Representative pursuant to the authority of the Trade Agreements Act of 1979.

The statute does not authorize the FAR to escalate thresholds originating in executive order or the implementing agency (such as the Department of Labor or the Small Business Administration), unless the executive order or agency regulations are first amended.

3. How do the Councils analyze a statutory acquisition-related threshold?

If an acquisition-related threshold is based on statute, the matrix at <http://www.regulations.gov> (search FAR case 2008–024) identifies the statute, and the statutory threshold, both the original threshold and any revision to it in 2006.

With the exception of thresholds set by the Davis-Bacon Act, Service Contract Act, and the United States Trade Representative pursuant to the authority of the Trade Agreements Act of 1979, the statute requires that the FAR Council adjust the acquisition-related thresholds for inflation using the Consumer Price Index (CPI) for all-urban consumers. Acquisition-related thresholds in statutes that were in effect on October 1, 2000 are only subject to escalation from that date forward. For purposes of this proposed rule, the matrix includes calculation of escalation based on the CPI from October 2000 to April 2010. Inflation from the average CPI value for 2007 to the average value for 2008 was 3.8 percent. The Councils have currently estimated the inflation for the next year at 4.2 percent, but will subsequently adjust as necessary before issuance of the final rule. Acquisition-related thresholds in statutes that took effect after October 1, 2000 are escalated from the date that they took effect.

Once the escalation factor is applied to the acquisition-related threshold, then the threshold must be rounded as follows:

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| < \$10,000 | Nearest \$500. |
| \$10,000–< \$100,000 | Nearest \$5,000. |
| \$100,000– < \$1,000,000. | Nearest \$50,000. |
| \$1,000,000 or more ... | Nearest \$500,000. |

The calculations in this proposed rule are all based on the base year amount, because escalated amounts in the 2005 rule were subject to rounding and using them as the base would distort future calculations.

In 2005, thresholds of \$1,000, \$10,000, \$100,000, and \$1,000,000, although subject to inflation calculation, did not actually change, because the inflation in 2005 was insufficient to overcome the rounding requirements—the escalation factor, when applied, did not cause the escalated values to be high enough to round to the next higher value. However, in FY 2010, these thresholds will now escalate because of 5 additional years of inflation.

Section 807(c) of the statute states that this statute supersedes the applicability of any other provision of law that provides for the adjustment of any acquisition-related threshold that is adjustable under this statute.

The thresholds for defining a major system were previously stated in Fiscal Year 1990 constant dollars for DoD and in Fiscal Year 1980 constant dollars for civilian agencies. The 2005 rule converted these major system thresholds to current year dollars, as of the date that the statute was enacted, that will now be adjusted every 5 years and both DoD and civilian agencies now abide by these thresholds.

This proposed rule has been coordinated with the Department of Labor and the Small Business Administration in areas of the regulation for which they are the lead agency. As appropriate, changes to cost accounting standards (CAS) thresholds will be dealt with under a separate case.

4. How do the Councils analyze a nonstatutory acquisition-related threshold?

No statutory authorization is required to escalate thresholds that were set as policy within the FAR. Escalation of the FAR policy acquisition-related thresholds is recommended using the same formula applied to the statutory thresholds, unless a reason has been provided for not doing so. Escalation is calculated using the same procedures as were explained for the statutory thresholds, to provide consistency.

In one case where a non-acquisition-related threshold was intended to equal the micro-purchase threshold, the Councils have revised it to specifically reference the micro-purchase threshold, in order to provide future escalation under follow-on cases (FAR 52.209–5).

5. What is the effect of this proposed rule on the most heavily-used thresholds?

This rule includes the following proposed changes to heavily-used thresholds:

- The micro-purchase base threshold of \$3,000 (FAR 2.101) will not be changed.

- The simplified acquisition threshold (FAR 2.101) will be raised from \$100,000 to \$150,000.
- The FedBizOpps preaward and post-award notices (FAR Part 5) remain at \$25,000 because of trade agreements.
- Commercial items test program ceiling (FAR 13.500) will be raised from \$5,500,000 to \$6,500,000.
- The cost and pricing data threshold (FAR 15.403–4) will be raised from \$650,000 to \$700,000.
- The prime contractor subcontracting plan (FAR 19.702) floor will be raised from \$550,000 to \$650,000, and the construction threshold of \$1,000,000 increases to \$1,500,000.

This proposed rule is based on a projected CPI of 222 in April 2010. If the actual CPI in April 2010 is higher than 222, then additional statutory thresholds will be subject to escalation in the final rule, even though not included in the proposed rule. For example, if the CPI is 224 in April 2010 (an inflation rate of about 5 percent), the following statutory thresholds will increase as indicated in the table, although not included in the text of this proposed rule:

| | | |
|--|----------|----------|
| FAR 2.101(b) “micro-purchase threshold” | \$15,000 | \$20,000 |
| FAR 2.101(b) “small business subcontractor” | 10,000 | 15,000 |
| FAR 13.003(b), FAR 13.201(g), and FAR 19.502–1(b) .. | 15,000 | 20,000 |

This proposed rule is a significant regulatory action and, therefore, was subject to review under Section 6(b) of Executive Order 12866, Regulatory Planning and Review, dated September 30, 1993. This rule is not a major rule under 5 U.S.C. 804.

C. Regulatory Flexibility Act

The Councils do not expect this proposed rule to have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities within the meaning of the Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 601, *et seq.*, because the adjustment of acquisition-related thresholds for inflation is intended to maintain the status quo. The Councils note that the set-aside threshold of \$100,000 increases to \$150,000, which is not believed to be a detriment to small business. An Initial Regulatory Flexibility Analysis has, therefore, not been performed. The Councils invite comments from small business concerns and other interested parties on the expected impact of this rule on small entities.

The Councils will also consider comments from small entities concerning the existing regulations in parts affected by this rule in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 610. Interested parties must submit such comments separately and should cite 5 U.S.C. 610 (FAR Case 2008–024) in correspondence.

D. Paperwork Reduction Act

The Paperwork Reduction Act does apply. The proposed changes to the FAR do not impose new information collection requirements that require the approval of the Office of Management and Budget under 44 U.S.C. 3501, *et seq.* By adjusting the thresholds for inflation, they maintain at the status quo the current information collection requirements under the following OMB clearance numbers: 9000–0006, Subcontracting Plans/Subcontracting Report for Individual Contract (SF 294)—Sections Affected: Subpart 19.7, 52.219–9; 9000–0007, Summary Subcontract Report—FAR Sections Affected: Subpart 19.7, 53.219, SF 295; 9000–0013, Cost or Pricing Data Exemption—FAR Sections Affected: Subparts 15.4, 42.7, 52.214–28, 52.215–12, 52.215–13, 52.215–20, 52.215–21; 9000–0018, Certification of Independent Price Determination and Parent Company and Identifying Data—Sections Affected: 3.103, 3.302; 9000–0022, Duty-Free Entry—FAR 48 CFR 52.225–8—FAR Section Affected: 52.225–8; 9000–0026, Change Order Accounting—43.205(f), 52.243–6; 9000–0027, Value Engineering Requirements—FAR Sections Affected: Subparts 48.1 and 48.2, 52.248–1, 52.248–2, 52.248–3; 9000–0034, Examination of Records 5 CFR 1320.5(b) by Comptroller General and Contract Audit—Sections Affected: 52.215–2, 52.212–5, 52.214–26; 9000–0045, Bid, Performance, and Payment Bonds—FAR Sections Affected: Subparts 28.1 and 28.2, 52.228–1, 52.228–2, 52.228–13, 52.228–15, 52.228–16; 9000–0058, Schedules for Construction Contracts—FAR Section Affected: 52.236–15; 9000–0060, Accident Prevention 48 CFR, 52.236–13, Plans and Recordkeeping—FAR Section Affected: 52.236–13; 9000–0065, Overtime—FAR Sections Affected: 22.103, 52.222–2; 9000–0066, Professional Employee Compensation Plan, Subpart 22.11, 52.222–46; 9000–0073, Advance Payments—FAR Sections Affected: Subpart 32.4 and 52.232–12; 9000–0077, Quality Assurance Requirements—FAR Sections Affected: Subparts 46.1 through 46.3, 52.246–2 through 52.246–8, 52.246–10, 52.246–12, 52.246–15; 9000–0080, Integrity of Unit Prices—Sections Affected: 15.408(f) and 52.215–14;

9000-0091, Anti-Kickback Procedures—FAR Sections Affected: 3.502, 52.203-7; 9000-0094, Debarment and Suspension, FAR Sections Affected: 9.1, 9.4, 52.209-5, 52.212-3(h); 9000-0101, Drug-Free Workplace—FAR Section Affected: 52.223-6(b)(5); 9000-0115, Notification of Ownership Changes—FAR Sections Affected: 15.408(k), 52.215-19; 9000-0133, Defense Production Act Amendments—FAR Sections Affected: 34.1 and 52.234-1; 9000-0134, Environmentally Sound Products—FAR Sections Affected: 23.406 and 52.223-4; 9000-0135, Prospective Subcontractor Requests for Bonds, FAR 28.106-4(b), 52.228-12; 1215-0072, OFCCP Recordkeeping and Reporting Requirements—Supply and Service; and 1215-0119, Requirements of a Bona Fide Thrift or Savings Plan (29 CFR part 547) and Requirements of a Bona Fide Profit-Sharing Plan or Trust (29 CFR part 549).

List of Subjects in 48 CFR Parts 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 28, 32, 36, 42, 43, 50, and 52

Government procurement.

Dated: January 29, 2010.

Al Matera,

Director, Acquisition Policy Division.

Therefore, DoD, GSA, and NASA propose amending 48 CFR parts 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 28, 32, 36, 42, 43, 50, and 52 as set forth below:

1. The authority citation for 48 CFR parts 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 28, 32, 36, 42, 43, 50, and 52 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 40 U.S.C. 121(c); 10 U.S.C. chapter 137; and 42 U.S.C. 2473(c).

PART 1—FEDERAL ACQUISITION REGULATIONS SYSTEM

1.109 [Amended]

2. Amend section 1.109 by removing from paragraph (d) “<http://acquisition.gov/far/facsframe.htm>” and adding “<http://www.regulations.gov> (search FAR case 2008-024)” in its place.

PART 2—DEFINITIONS OF WORDS AND TERMS

2.101 [Amended]

3. Amend section 2.101 in paragraph (b) by—

a. Amending the definition “Major system” by removing from paragraph (1) “\$173.5 million” and adding “\$193.5 million” in its place, removing “\$814.5 million” and adding “\$907.5 million” in its place; and removing from paragraph (2) “\$1.8 million” and adding “\$2 million” in its place;

b. Amending the definition “Micro-purchase threshold” by removing from paragraph (3)(ii) “\$25,000” and adding “\$30,000” in its place; and

c. Amending the definition “Simplified acquisition threshold” by removing from the introductory paragraph “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place; and removing from paragraph (1) “\$250,000” and adding “\$300,000” in its place.

PART 3—IMPROPER BUSINESS PRACTICES AND PERSONAL CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

3.502-2 [Amended]

4. Amend section 3.502-2 by removing from paragraph (i) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

3.804 [Amended]

5. Amend section 3.804 by removing “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

3.808 [Amended]

6. Amend section 3.808 by removing from paragraphs (a) and (b) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

PART 5—PUBLICIZING CONTRACT ACTIONS

5.101 [Amended]

7. Amend section 5.101 by removing from the introductory text of paragraph (a)(2) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

5.205 [Amended]

8. Amend section 5.205 by removing from paragraph (d)(2) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

5.206 [Amended]

9. Amend section 5.206 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (a)(1) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place; and

b. Removing from paragraph (a)(2) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place, and removing “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

5.303 [Amended]

10. Amend section 5.303 by removing from the introductory text of paragraph (a) “\$3.5 million” and adding “\$4 million” in its place.

PART 6—COMPETITION REQUIREMENTS

6.304 [Amended]

11. Amend section 6.304 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (a)(1) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (a)(2) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its

place, and removing “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place;

c. Removing from the introductory text of paragraph (a)(3) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place, removing “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place; and

d. Removing from paragraph (a)(4) “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place.

PART 7—ACQUISITION PLANNING

7.104 [Amended]

12. Amend section 7.104 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (d)(2)(i)(A) “\$7.5 million” and adding “\$8 million” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (d)(2)(i)(B) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6 million” in its place; and

c. Removing from paragraph (d)(2)(i)(C) “\$2 million” and adding “\$2.5 million” in its place.

7.107 [Amended]

13. Amend section 7.107 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (b)(1) “\$86 million” and adding “\$95.5 million” in its place; and

b. Removing from paragraph (b)(2) “\$8.6 million” and adding “\$9.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$86 million” and adding “\$95.5 million” in its place.

PART 8—REQUIRED SOURCES OF SUPPLIES AND SERVICES

8.405-6 [Amended]

14. Amend section 8.405-6 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (h)(1) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (h)(2) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place;

c. Removing from the introductory text of paragraph (h)(3) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13.5 million” in its place, removing “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place; and

d. Removing from paragraph (h)(4) “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place.

PART 12—ACQUISITION OF COMMERCIAL ITEMS

12.102 [Amended]

15. Amend section 12.102 by removing from the introductory text of

paragraph (f)(2) “\$16 million” and adding “\$18 million” in its place; and removing from paragraph (g)(1)(ii) “\$27 million” and adding “\$30 million” in its place.

12.203 [Amended]

16. Amend section 12.203 by removing “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place.

PART 13—SIMPLIFIED ACQUISITION PROCEDURES

13.000 [Amended]

17. Amend section 13.000 by removing “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place.

13.003 [Amended]

18. Amend section 13.003 by—
a. Removing from paragraph (b)(1) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place, and removing “\$250,000” and adding “\$300,000” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (c)(1)(ii) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place; and

c. Removing from paragraph (g)(2) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million”, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place.

13.005 [Amended]

19. Amend section 13.005 by removing from paragraph (a)(5) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

13.201 [Amended]

20. Amend section 13.201 by removing from paragraph (g)(1)(ii) “\$25,000” and adding “\$30,000” in its place.

13.303–5 [Amended]

21. Amend section 13.303–5 by—
a. Removing from paragraph (b)(1) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place; and

b. Removing from paragraph (b)(2) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place.

13.500 [Amended]

22. Amend section 13.500 by—
a. Removing from paragraph (a) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place; and

b. Removing from the introductory text of paragraph (e) “\$11 million” and adding “\$12 million” in its place.

13.501 [Amended]

23. Amend section 13.501 by—

a. Removing from paragraph (a)(2)(i) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place, and removing “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (a)(2)(ii) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place;

c. Removing from paragraph (a)(2)(iii) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place, removing “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place; and

d. Removing from paragraph (a)(2)(iv) “\$57 million” and adding “\$64 million” in its place, and removing “\$78.5 million” and adding “\$87 million” in its place.

PART 15—CONTRACTING BY NEGOTIATION

15.304 [Amended]

24. Amend section 15.304 by removing from paragraph (c)(4) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and by removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

15.403–1 [Amended]

25. Amend section 15.403–1 by removing from paragraph (c)(3)(iv) “\$16 million” and adding “\$18 million” in its place.

15.403–4 [Amended]

26. Amend section 15.403–4 by removing from the introductory texts of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(1)(iii) “\$650,000” and adding “\$700,000” in its place.

15.404–3 [Amended]

27. Amend section 15.404–3 by removing from paragraph (c)(1)(i) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place.

15.407–2 [Amended]

28. Amend section 15.407–2 by removing from paragraph (c)(1) and the introductory text of paragraph (c)(2) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place.

15.408 [Amended]

29. Amend section 15.408 in Table 15–2, “II. Cost Elements” which follows paragraph (n)(2)(iii), by removing from paragraph “A(2)” “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million”.

PART 16—TYPES OF CONTRACTS

16.206–2 [Amended]

30. Amend section 16.206–2 by removing from the introductory paragraph “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

16.206–3 [Amended]

31. Amend section 16.206–3 by removing from paragraph (a) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

16.207–3 [Amended]

32. Amend section 16.207–3 by removing from paragraph (d) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

16.503 [Amended]

33. Amend section 16.503 by removing from paragraph (b)(2) “\$100 million” and adding “\$105 million” in its place; and removing from paragraph (d)(1) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place.

16.504 [Amended]

34. Amend section 16.504 by removing from the introductory texts of paragraphs (c)(1)(ii)(D)(1) and (c)(1)(ii)(D)(3) “\$100 million” and adding “\$105 million” in its place; and removing from the introductory text of paragraph (c)(2)(i) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place.

16.505 [Amended]

35. Amend section 16.505 by—

a. Removing from the introductory text of paragraph (b)(1)(ii) “\$5 million” and adding “\$5.5 million” in its place;

b. Removing from the heading of paragraph (b)(1)(iii) “\$5 million” and adding “\$5.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$5 million” and adding “\$5.5 million” in its place; and

c. Removing from the heading of paragraph (b)(4) “\$5 million” and adding “\$5.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$5 million” and adding “\$5.5 million” in its place.

16.506 [Amended]

36. Amend section 16.506 by removing from paragraphs (f) and (g) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place.

PART 17—SPECIAL CONTRACTING METHODS

17.108 [Amended]

37. Amend section 17.108 by removing from paragraph (a) “\$11.5 million” and adding “\$13 million” in its place; and removing from paragraph (b) “\$114.5 million” and adding “\$127.5 million” in its place.

PART 19—SMALL BUSINESS PROGRAMS**19.502–2 [Amended]**

38. Amend section 19.502–2 by—
a. Removing from paragraph (a) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place each time it appears (twice), and removing “\$250,000” and adding “\$300,000” in its place; and
b. Removing from paragraph (b) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

19.508 [Amended]

39. Amend section 19.508 by removing from paragraph (e) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

19.702 [Amended]

40. Amend section 19.702 by—
a. Removing from paragraph (a)(1) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place; and
b. Removing from paragraph (a)(2) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

19.704 [Amended]

41. Amend section 19.704 by removing from paragraph (a)(9) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

19.708 [Amended]

42. Amend section 19.708 by removing from paragraph (b)(1) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

19.805–1 [Amended]

43. Amend section 19.805–1 by removing from paragraph (a)(2) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place, and removing “\$3.5 million” and adding “\$4 million” in its place.

19.1202–2 [Amended]

44. Amend section 19.1202–2 by removing from paragraph (a) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

19.1306 [Amended]

45. Amend section 19.1306 by removing from paragraph (a)(2)(i) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6.5 million” in its place; and removing from paragraph (a)(2)(ii) “\$3.5 million” and adding “\$4 million” in its place.

19.1406 [Amended]

46. Amend section 19.1406 by removing from paragraph (a)(2)(i) “\$5.5 million” and adding “\$6 million” in its

place; and removing from paragraph (a)(2)(ii) “\$3 million” and adding “\$3.5 million” in its place.

PART 22—APPLICATION OF LABOR LAWS TO GOVERNMENT ACQUISITIONS**22.305 [Amended]**

47. Amend section 22.305 by removing from paragraph (a) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

22.602 [Amended]

48. Amend section 22.602 by removing “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

22.603 [Amended]

49. Amend section 22.603 by removing from paragraph (b) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

22.605 [Amended]

50. Amend section 22.605 by removing from paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), and (a)(5) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place each time it appears (six times).

22.1103 [Amended]

51. Amend section 22.1103 by removing “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place.

22.1402 [Amended]

52. Amend section 22.1402 by removing from paragraph (a) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

22.1408 [Amended]

53. Amend section 22.1408 by removing from the introductory text of paragraph (a) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

PART 23—ENVIRONMENT, ENERGY AND WATER EFFICIENCY, RENEWABLE ENERGY TECHNOLOGIES, OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY, AND DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE**23.406 [Amended]**

54. Amend section 23.406 by removing from paragraph (d) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

PART 28—BONDS AND INSURANCE**28.102–1 [Amended]**

55. Amend section 28.102–1 by removing from paragraphs (a) and (b)(1) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

28.102–2 [Amended]

56. Amend section 28.102–2 by removing from the headings of paragraphs (b) and (c) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

28.102–3 [Amended]

57. Amend section 28.102–3 by removing from paragraphs (a) and (b) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

PART 32—CONTRACT FINANCING**32.404 [Amended]**

58. Amend section 32.404 by removing from paragraph (a)(7)(i) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

PART 36—CONSTRUCTION AND ARCHITECT—ENGINEER CONTRACTS**36.501 [Amended]**

59. Amend section 36.501 by removing from paragraph (b) “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place each time it appears (twice).

PART 42—CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION AND AUDIT SERVICES**42.709 [Amended]**

60. Amend section 42.709 by removing from paragraph (b) “\$650,000” and adding “\$700,000” in its place.

42.709–6 [Amended]

61. Amend section 42.709–6 by removing “\$650,000” and adding “\$700,000” in its place.

42.1502 [Amended]

62. Amend section 42.1502 by removing from paragraph (e) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place each time it appears (twice).

PART 50—EXTRAORDINARY CONTRACTUAL ACTIONS AND THE SAFETY ACT**50.102–1 [Amended]**

63. Amend section 50.102–1 by removing from paragraph (b) “\$55,000” and adding “\$65,000” in its place.

50.102–3 [Amended]

64. Amend section 50.102–3 by removing from paragraph (b)(4) “\$28.5 million” and adding “\$32 million” in its place; and removing from paragraphs (e)(1)(i) and (e)(1)(ii) “\$55,000” and adding “\$65,000” in its place.

PART 52—SOLICITATION PROVISIONS AND CONTRACT CLAUSES**52.203–7 [Amended]**

65. Amend section 52.203–7 by removing from the clause heading “(Jul 1995)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (c)(5) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.203–12 [Amended]

66. Amend section 52.203–12 by removing from the clause heading “(Sep 2007)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(3) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.204–8 [Amended]

67. Amend section 52.204–8 by removing from the provision heading “(Feb 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (c)(1)(ii) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.212–3 [Amended]

68. Amend section 52.212–3 by removing from the provision heading “(Aug 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (e) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.212–5 [Amended]

69. Amend section 52.212–5 by—
a. Removing from the clause heading “(Dec 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (b)(11)(i) “(Apr 2008)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

c. Removing from paragraph (b)(24) “(Jun 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

d. Removing from paragraph (e)(1)(ii) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place;

e. Removing from paragraph (e)(1)(vi) “(Jun 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and

f. In Alternate II by—

1. Removing from the Alternate heading “(Dec 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

2. Removing from paragraph (e)(1)(ii)(C) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place; and

3. Removing from paragraph (e)(1)(ii)(F) “(June 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its place.

52.213–4 [Amended]

70. Amend section 52.213–4 by—
a. Removing from the clause heading “(Dec 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (a)(2)(vi) “(Dec 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

c. Removing from paragraph (b)(1)(ii) “(Dec 1996)” and adding “(Date)” in its place, and removing “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place; and

d. Removing from paragraph (b)(1)(iv) “(June 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its

place, and removing “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

52.219–9 [Amended]

71. Amend section 52.219–9 by—

a. Removing from the clause heading “(Apr 2008)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (d)(9) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place;

c. Removing from the introductory text of paragraph (d)(11)(iii) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place; and

d. Removing from paragraph (l)(2)(i)(C) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place.

52.222–20 [Amended]

72. Amend section 52.222–20 by removing from the clause heading “(Dec 1996)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from the introductory paragraph “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

52.222–36 [Amended]

73. Amend section 52.222–36 by removing from the clause heading “(Jun 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (d) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

52.225–8 [Amended]

74. Amend section 52.225–8 by removing from the clause heading “(Feb 2000)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from the introductory texts of paragraphs (c)(1) and (j)(2) “\$10,000” and adding “\$15,000” in its place.

52.228–15 [Amended]

75. Amend section 52.228–15 by removing from the clause heading “(Nov 2006)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from the introductory text of paragraph (b) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.244–6 [Amended]

76. Amend section 52.244–6 by—

a. Removing from the clause heading “(Dec 2009)” and adding “(Date)” in its place;

b. Removing from paragraph (c)(1)(iii) “\$550,000” and adding “\$650,000” in its place, and removing “\$1,000,000” and adding “\$1.5 million” in its place; and

c. Removing from paragraph (c)(1)(vi) “(Jun 1998)” and adding “(Date)” in its place.

52.248–1 [Amended]

77. Amend section 52.248–1 by removing from the clause heading “(Feb

2000)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (l) “\$100,000” and adding “\$150,000” in its place.

52.248–3 [Amended]

78. Amend section 52.248–3 by removing from the clause heading “(Sep 2006)” and adding “(Date)” in its place; and removing from paragraph (h) “\$55,000” and adding “\$65,000” in its place.

[FR Doc. 2010–2318 Filed 2–3–10; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 6820–EP–P

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION**Office of the Secretary****49 CFR Part 40**

[Docket OST–2010–0026]

RIN 2105–AD95

Procedures for Transportation Workplace Drug and Alcohol Testing Programs

AGENCY: Office of the Secretary, DOT.

ACTION: Notice of proposed rulemaking.

SUMMARY: The Department of Transportation is proposing to amend certain provisions of its drug testing procedures dealing with laboratory testing of urine specimens. Some of the proposed changes will also affect the roles and standards applying to collectors and Medical Review Officers. The proposed changes are intended to create consistency with new requirements established by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Mandatory Guidelines.

DATES: Comments to the notice of proposed rulemaking should be submitted by April 5, 2010. Late-filed comments will be considered to the extent practicable.

ADDRESSES: To ensure that you do not duplicate your docket submissions, please submit them by only one of the following means:

- *Federal eRulemaking Portal:* Go to <http://www.regulations.gov> and follow the online instructions for submitting comments.

- *Mail:* Docket Management Facility, U.S. Department of Transportation, 1200 New Jersey Ave., SE., West Building Ground Floor Room W12–140, Washington, DC 20590–0001;

- *Hand Delivery:* West Building Ground Floor, Room W–12–140 1200 New Jersey Ave., SE., between 9 a.m. and 5 p.m., Monday through Friday, except Federal holidays. The telephone number is 202–366–9329;